

multiSIM™ and Electronics Workbench™ copyright © 1989, 1992-1999 Interactive Image Technologies Ltd. All rights reserved.

All other brand or product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

Portions of this product are provided under license from:

- Green Mountain Computing Systems
- Metamor, Inc.

ISBN 1-55169-091-8 © 1999 Interactive Image Technologies Ltd. All rights reserved. Published May 1999. Printed in Canada.

## Preface

Congratulations on choosing Multisim from Electronics Workbench. We are confident that it will deliver years of increased productivity and superior designs.

Electronics Workbench is the world's leading supplier of circuit design tools. Our products are used by more customers than those of any other EDA vendor, so we are sure you will be pleased with the value delivered by Multisim, and any other Electronics Workbench products you may select.

## Documentation Conventions

When Multisim manuals refer to a toolbar button, an image of the button appears in the left column.

The manuals show circuits in black and white—although Multisim is configured to use color by default, you can change the color scheme.



When you see this icon, the functionality described is only available in certain version of Multisim, or to users who have purchased add-in modules.

Multisim manuals use the convention **Menu/Item** to indicate menu commands. For example, **File/Open** means choose the **Open** command from the **File** menu.

Multisim manuals use the convention of an arrow (➤) to indicate procedural information.

## The Multisim Documentation Set

Multisim documentation consists of a *Getting Started and Tutorial* manual, this *User Guide*, and on-line help. All Multisim users receive PDF versions of the *Getting Started and Tutorial* manual and the *User Guide*. Depending on your version of Multisim, you may also receive a printed version of the manuals.

## Getting Started and Tutorial

The *Getting Started and Tutorial* manual introduces you to the Multisim interface. It also offers an introductory tutorial that takes you through the stages of circuit design, simulation, analysis and reporting.

## User Guide

The *User Guide* describes Multisim and its many functions in detail. The manual is organized based on the stages of circuit design, and explains all aspects of using Multisim, in detail.

## On-Line Help

Multisim offers a full help file system to support your use of the product. Choose **Help/Multisim Manual** to display the help file that explains the Multisim program in detail, or choose **Help/Multisim Reference** to display the help file that contains reference material (from the printed appendices) such as details on all the components families provided with Multisim. Both are standard Windows help files, offering a table of contents and index.

In addition, you can display context-sensitive help by pressing F1 from any command or window, or by clicking the **Help** button on any dialog that offers it.

## Adobe PDF Files

Both the *Getting Started and Tutorial* manual and the full *User Guide* are provided on the Multisim CD as Adobe PDF files and are accessible from the Multisim program folder on the Windows Start menu.

# License Agreement

Please read the license agreement included in the *Multisim Getting Started and Tutorial Manual* carefully before installing and using the software contained in this package. By installing and using the software, you are agreeing to be bound by the terms of this license. If you do not agree to the terms of this license, simply return the unused software within thirty days to the place where you obtained it and your money will be refunded.

# Table of Contents

## Chapter 1 Introduction

1.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	1-1
1.2	About this Manual. . . . .	1-1
1.3	What is Multisim? . . . . .	1-1
1.4	Multisim Features Summary. . . . .	1-2
1.5	About the Circuit Design Process. . . . .	1-4

## Chapter 2 User Interface

2.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	2-1
2.2	Introduction to the Multisim Interface . . . . .	2-2
2.3	Introduction to the Design Bar . . . . .	2-3
2.4	Customizing the Interface. . . . .	2-4
2.4.1	About User Preferences . . . . .	2-4
2.4.2	Other Customization Options . . . . .	2-4
2.4.3	Controlling Circuit Display. . . . .	2-5
2.4.4	Controlling Circuit Window Display . . . . .	2-6
2.4.5	Setting Autosave and Symbol Set . . . . .	2-8
2.4.6	Print Page Setup Tab . . . . .	2-8
2.5	Working with Multiple Circuit Windows. . . . .	2-9
2.6	System Toolbar Buttons . . . . .	2-10
2.7	Menus and Commands . . . . .	2-10
2.7.1	File Menu . . . . .	2-10
2.7.2	Edit Menu . . . . .	2-13
2.7.3	View Menu . . . . .	2-16
2.7.4	Simulate Menu . . . . .	2-18
2.7.5	Transfer Menu . . . . .	2-23
2.7.6	Tools Menu. . . . .	2-25
2.7.7	Window Menu. . . . .	2-25
2.7.8	Help Menu . . . . .	2-25

## Chapter 3 Schematic Capture

3.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	3-1
3.2	Introduction to Schematic Capture . . . . .	3-1
3.3	Setting up Your Circuit Window . . . . .	3-1
3.3.1	Setting up a Sheet Size . . . . .	3-2
3.3.2	Displaying or Hiding Grid, Title Block and Page Borders . . . . .	3-2
3.3.3	Selecting a Symbol Set. . . . .	3-3
3.4	Selecting Components from the Database . . . . .	3-3
3.5	Placing Components . . . . .	3-4
3.5.1	Choosing a Component Using the Component Group Toolbars and Browser Screen . . . . .	3-4
3.5.2	Choosing a Component with the Place Component Command . . . . .	3-6
3.5.3	Using the “In Use” List . . . . .	3-8
3.5.4	Moving a Placed Component . . . . .	3-8
3.5.5	Copying a Placed Component . . . . .	3-9
3.5.6	Controlling Component Color . . . . .	3-9
3.6	Wiring Components . . . . .	3-9
3.6.1	Wiring Components Automatically . . . . .	3-10
3.6.2	Wiring Components Manually. . . . .	3-10
3.6.3	Combining Automatic and Manual Wiring. . . . .	3-11
3.6.4	Modifying Wire Path . . . . .	3-12
3.6.5	Controlling Wire Color. . . . .	3-12
3.7	Manually Adding a Junction (Connector) . . . . .	3-13
3.8	Rotating/Flipping Components . . . . .	3-13
3.9	Placed Component Properties . . . . .	3-14
3.9.1	Displaying Identifying Information about a Placed Component . . . . .	3-15
3.9.2	Viewing a Placed Component’s Value/Model . . . . .	3-16
3.9.3	Controlling How a Placed Component is Used in Analyses . . . . .	3-18
3.10	Finding Components in Your Circuit. . . . .	3-19
3.11	Labelling . . . . .	3-19
3.11.1	Modifying Component Labels . . . . .	3-19
3.11.2	Modifying Node Numbers . . . . .	3-20
3.11.3	Adding a Title Block . . . . .	3-21
3.11.4	Adding Miscellaneous Text. . . . .	3-21
3.12	Virtual Wiring . . . . .	3-22

3.13	Subcircuits and Hierarchy . . . . .	3-23
3.13.1	Subcircuits vs. Hierarchy . . . . .	3-23
3.13.2	Setting up a Circuit for Use as a Subcircuit . . . . .	3-24
3.13.3	Adding Subcircuits to a Circuit . . . . .	3-25
3.14	Printing the Circuit . . . . .	3-26
3.15	Placing a Bus . . . . .	3-27
3.16	Using the Pop-up Menu . . . . .	3-29
3.16.1	From Circuit Window, with no Component Selected . . . . .	3-29
3.16.2	From Circuit Window, with Component or Instrument Selected . . . . .	3-30
3.16.3	From Circuit Window, with Wire Selected. . . . .	3-31

## Chapter 4 Components

4.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	4-1
4.2	Structure of the Component Database. . . . .	4-1
4.2.1	Database Levels . . . . .	4-1
4.2.2	Displaying Database Level Information . . . . .	4-2
4.2.3	Classification of Components in the Database . . . . .	4-3
4.3	Locating Components in the Database . . . . .	4-19
4.3.1	Browsing for Components . . . . .	4-19
4.3.2	Standard Searching for Components . . . . .	4-19
4.3.3	Advanced Searching for Components . . . . .	4-22
4.4	Types of Information Stored for Components . . . . .	4-23
4.4.1	Pre-Defined Fields . . . . .	4-24
4.4.2	User Fields . . . . .	4-26
4.5	Component Nominal Values and Tolerances. . . . .	4-26

## Chapter 5 Component Editor

5.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	5-1
5.2	Introduction to the Component Editor. . . . .	5-1
5.3	General Procedures for Starting the Component Editor . . . . .	5-2
5.3.1	Editing Components . . . . .	5-3
5.3.2	Adding Components . . . . .	5-5
5.3.3	Removing Components . . . . .	5-5
5.4	Specifying or Editing General Component Properties . . . . .	5-6
5.4.1	Specifying a Component's User Properties . . . . .	5-8

5.5	Editing and Creating a Component Symbol . . . . .	5-8
5.5.1	Copying a Component's Symbol . . . . .	5-10
5.5.2	Creating and Editing a Component's Symbol with the Symbol Editor . . . . .	5-11
5.6	Creating or Editing a Component Model . . . . .	5-18
5.6.1	Editing a Component's Model Information . . . . .	5-20
5.6.2	Copying a Component's Model . . . . .	5-21
5.6.3	Loading an Existing Model . . . . .	5-21
5.7	Creating and Editing Component Packages/Footprints . . . . .	5-24
5.7.1	Pin Group Naming Convention . . . . .	5-26
5.7.2	Pin Type Naming Convention . . . . .	5-26
5.8	Creating a Component Model Using the Model Makers. . . . .	5-28
5.8.1	BJT Model Maker . . . . .	5-29
5.8.2	Diode Model Maker. . . . .	5-41
5.8.3	MOSFET (Field Effect Transistor) Model Maker. . . . .	5-46
5.8.4	Operational Amplifier Model Maker . . . . .	5-55
5.8.5	Silicon Controlled Rectifier Model Maker . . . . .	5-63
5.8.6	Zener Model Maker. . . . .	5-67
5.9	Creating a Model Using Code Modeling. . . . .	5-72
5.9.1	What is Code Modeling?. . . . .	5-73
5.9.2	Creating a Code Model. . . . .	5-73
5.9.3	The Interface File (Ifspec.ifs) . . . . .	5-74
5.9.4	The Implementation File (Cfunc.mod) . . . . .	5-80

## Chapter 6 Instruments

6.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	6-1
6.2	Introduction to the Multisim Instruments. . . . .	6-1
6.3	Working with Multiple Instruments . . . . .	6-4
6.4	Default Instrument Analysis Settings . . . . .	6-4
6.5	Bode Plotter . . . . .	6-6
6.5.1	Magnitude or Phase . . . . .	6-7
6.5.2	Vertical and Horizontal Axes Settings. . . . .	6-7
6.5.3	Readouts . . . . .	6-8
6.6	Distortion Analyzer . . . . .	6-9
6.6.1	Harmonic Distortion . . . . .	6-10
6.6.2	SINAD. . . . .	6-10
6.7	Function Generator . . . . .	6-10
6.7.1	Waveform Selection . . . . .	6-11

6.7.2	Signal Options	6-11
6.7.3	Rise Time	6-12
6.8	Logic Converter	6-12
6.8.1	Deriving a Truth Table from a Circuit	6-13
6.8.2	Entering and Converting a Truth Table	6-14
6.8.3	Entering and Converting a Boolean Expression	6-14
6.9	Logic Analyzer	6-15
6.9.1	Start, Stop & Reset	6-17
6.9.2	Clock	6-17
6.9.3	Triggering	6-18
6.10	Multimeter	6-19
6.10.1	Measurement Options	6-20
6.10.2	Signal Mode (AC or DC)	6-22
6.10.3	Internal Settings	6-23
6.11	Network Analyzer	6-23
6.12	Oscilloscope	6-24
6.12.1	Time Base (0.1 ns/Div — 1s/Div)	6-26
6.12.2	Grounding	6-26
6.12.3	Channel A and Channel B Settings	6-27
6.12.4	Trigger	6-28
6.12.5	Using Cursors and Readouts	6-29
6.13	Spectrum Analyzer	6-29
6.14	Wattmeter	6-30
6.15	Word Generator	6-31
6.15.1	Entering Words	6-32
6.15.2	Controls	6-32
6.15.3	Creating, Saving and Reusing Word Patterns	6-33
6.15.4	Addressing	6-33
6.15.5	Triggering	6-34
6.15.6	Frequency and Data Ready	6-34
6.16	Ammeter and Voltmeter	6-34

## Chapter 7 Simulation

7.1	About this Chapter	7-1
7.2	Introduction to Simulation	7-1
7.2.1	What Type of Simulation Should I Use?	7-1
7.2.2	What Kind of Simulation Does Multisim Support?	7-2



7.3	Using Multisim Simulation . . . . .	7-2
7.3.1	Start/Stop/Pause Simulation . . . . .	7-3
7.3.2	Interactive Simulation . . . . .	7-4
7.3.3	Circuit Consistency Check . . . . .	7-4
7.3.4	Miscellaneous SPICE Simulation Capabilities . . . . .	7-4
7.4	Multisim SPICE Simulation: Technical Detail . . . . .	7-5
7.4.1	BSpice/XSpice Support . . . . .	7-5
7.4.2	Circuit Simulation Mechanism . . . . .	7-5
7.4.3	Four Stages of Circuit Simulation . . . . .	7-6
7.4.4	Equation Formulation . . . . .	7-6
7.4.5	Equation Solution . . . . .	7-7
7.4.6	Numerical Integration . . . . .	7-8
7.4.7	User Setting: Maximum Integration Order . . . . .	7-9
7.4.8	Convergence Assistance Algorithms . . . . .	7-9
7.5	RF Simulation . . . . .	7-10
7.6	VHDL Simulation . . . . .	7-10
7.7	Verilog Simulation . . . . .	7-11

## Chapter 8 Analyses

8.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	8-1
8.2	Introduction to Multisim Analyses . . . . .	8-1
8.3	Working with Analyses . . . . .	8-1
8.3.1	General Instructions . . . . .	8-2
8.3.2	The Analysis Parameters Tab . . . . .	8-2
8.3.3	The Output Variables Tab . . . . .	8-3
8.3.4	The Miscellaneous Options Tab . . . . .	8-6
8.3.5	The Summary Tab . . . . .	8-8
8.3.6	Incomplete Analyses . . . . .	8-8
8.4	DC Operating Point Analysis . . . . .	8-9
8.4.1	About the DC Operating Point Analysis . . . . .	8-9
8.4.2	Setting DC Operating Point Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-9
8.4.3	Troubleshooting DC Operating Point Analysis Failures . . . . .	8-10
8.5	AC Analysis . . . . .	8-11
8.5.1	About the AC Analysis . . . . .	8-11
8.5.2	Setting AC Analysis Frequency Parameters . . . . .	8-11
8.6	Transient Analysis . . . . .	8-13
8.6.1	About the Transient Analysis . . . . .	8-13

8.6.2	Setting Transient Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-13
8.6.3	Troubleshooting Transient Analysis Failures . . . . .	8-15
8.7	Noise Analysis . . . . .	8-16
8.7.1	About the Noise Analysis . . . . .	8-16
8.7.2	Noise Analysis Example . . . . .	8-17
8.7.3	Setting Noise Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-17
8.8	Distortion Analysis . . . . .	8-20
8.8.1	About the Distortion Analysis . . . . .	8-20
8.8.2	Setting Distortion Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-20
8.9	DC Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-22
8.9.1	About the DC Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-22
8.9.2	Setting DC Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-23
8.10	DC and AC Sensitivity Analyses . . . . .	8-24
8.10.1	About the Sensitivity Analyses . . . . .	8-24
8.10.2	Sensitivity Analyses Example . . . . .	8-25
8.10.3	Setting Sensitivity Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-26
8.11	Parameter Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-28
8.11.1	About the Parameter Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-28
8.11.2	Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-28
8.12	Temperature Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-31
8.12.1	About the Temperature Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-31
8.12.2	Setting Temperature Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-31
8.13	Transfer Function Analysis . . . . .	8-33
8.13.1	About the Transfer Function Analysis . . . . .	8-33
8.13.2	Setting Transfer Function Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-34
8.14	Worst Case Analysis . . . . .	8-35
8.14.1	About the Worst Case Analysis . . . . .	8-35
8.14.2	Setting Worst Case Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-37
8.15	Pole Zero Analysis . . . . .	8-38
8.15.1	About the Pole Zero Analysis . . . . .	8-38
8.15.2	Setting Pole Zero Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-42
8.16	Monte Carlo Analysis . . . . .	8-43
8.16.1	About the Monte Carlo Analysis . . . . .	8-43
8.16.2	Setting Monte Carlo Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-46
8.17	Fourier Analysis . . . . .	8-46
8.17.1	About the Fourier Analysis . . . . .	8-46
8.17.2	Setting Fourier Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-47

8.18	Trace Width Analysis . . . . .	8-50
8.18.1	About Trace Width Analysis . . . . .	8-50
8.18.2	Setting Trace Width Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-52
8.19	RF Analyses . . . . .	8-53
8.20	Nested Sweep Analyses . . . . .	8-54
8.21	Batched Analyses . . . . .	8-55
8.22	User-Defined Analyses . . . . .	8-57
8.23	Noise Figure Analysis . . . . .	8-57
8.24	Viewing the Analysis Results: Error Log/Audit Trail . . . . .	8-58
8.25	Viewing the Analysis Results—Grapher . . . . .	8-58
8.26	Working with Pages . . . . .	8-60
8.27	Working with Graphs . . . . .	8-61
8.27.1	Grids and Legends . . . . .	8-62
8.27.2	Cursors . . . . .	8-63
8.27.3	Zoom and Restore . . . . .	8-64
8.27.4	Title . . . . .	8-65
8.27.5	Axes . . . . .	8-66
8.27.6	Traces . . . . .	8-67
8.28	Viewing Charts . . . . .	8-68
8.29	Cut, Copy and Paste . . . . .	8-68
8.30	Print and Print Preview . . . . .	8-69
8.31	Analysis Options . . . . .	8-70

## Chapter 9

### Postprocessor

9.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	9-1
9.2	Introduction to the Postprocessor . . . . .	9-1
9.3	Using the Postprocessor . . . . .	9-2
9.3.1	Basic Steps . . . . .	9-2
9.3.2	Working with Pages, Graphs and Charts . . . . .	9-7
9.4	Postprocessor Variables . . . . .	9-8
9.5	Available Functions . . . . .	9-8

## Chapter 10

### HDLs and Programmable Logic

10.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	10-1
10.2	Overview of HDLs within Multisim . . . . .	10-1
10.2.1	About HDLs . . . . .	10-1
10.2.2	Using Multisim with Programmable Logic . . . . .	10-2
10.2.3	Using Multisim for Modeling Complex Digital ICs . . . . .	10-3
10.2.4	How to Use HDLs in Multisim . . . . .	10-3
10.2.5	Introduction to VHDL . . . . .	10-3
10.2.6	Introduction to Verilog . . . . .	10-5
10.3	Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device . . . . .	10-6
10.4	Designing, Simulating, and Debugging with Multisim's VHDL . . . . .	10-7
10.4.1	What is Multisim's VHDL? . . . . .	10-7
10.4.2	Creating a Project and Using the Hierarchy Browser . . . . .	10-9
10.4.3	Using the VHDL Wizard . . . . .	10-15
10.4.4	Using the Test Bench Wizard . . . . .	10-23
10.4.5	Using Simulation . . . . .	10-28
10.4.6	Working with Waveforms and Cursors . . . . .	10-37
10.4.7	Using the Debug Window . . . . .	10-38
10.4.8	Using Multisim's LIB . . . . .	10-46
10.5	VHDL Synthesis and Programming of FPGAs/CPLDs . . . . .	10-48
10.5.1	What does VHDL Synthesis do? . . . . .	10-48
10.5.2	Multisim's VHDL Synthesis Features . . . . .	10-49
10.5.3	Using Multisim's VHDL Synthesis . . . . .	10-50
10.6	Simulating a Circuit Containing a Verilog-Modeled Device . . . . .	10-55
10.7	Design, Simulation and Debug with Multisim' Verilog . . . . .	10-55
10.8	Verilog Synthesis and Programming of CPLDs/FPGAs . . . . .	10-56

## Chapter 11

### Reports

11.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	11-1
11.2	Bill of Materials (BOM) . . . . .	11-1
11.3	Database Family List . . . . .	11-2
11.4	Component Detail Report . . . . .	11-4

## Chapter 12

### Transfer/Communication

12.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	12-1
12.2	Introduction to Transfer/Communication . . . . .	12-1
12.3	Transferring Data . . . . .	12-1
12.3.1	Transferring from Multisim to Ultiboard for PCB Layout . . . . .	12-1
12.3.2	Transferring to Other PCB Layout . . . . .	12-2
12.4	Exporting Simulation Results . . . . .	12-2
12.4.1	Exporting to MathCAD . . . . .	12-2
12.4.2	Exporting to Excel . . . . .	12-3

## Chapter 13

### Project/Team Design Module

13.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	13-1
13.2	Introduction to the Multisim Project/Team Design Module . . . . .	13-1
13.3	Project Management and Version Control . . . . .	13-1
13.3.1	Setting up Projects . . . . .	13-1
13.3.2	Working with Projects . . . . .	13-3
13.3.3	Working with Files Contained in Projects . . . . .	13-3
13.3.4	Version Control . . . . .	13-4
13.4	Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-5
13.4.1	About Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-5
13.4.2	Setting up and Using Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-6
13.5	Remote Control/Design Sharing . . . . .	13-6
13.6	Working with “Corporate” Level Data . . . . .	13-7
13.7	Working with User Fields . . . . .	13-7

## Chapter 14

### RF

14.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	14-1
14.2	Introduction to the Multisim RF Module . . . . .	14-1
14.3	Components . . . . .	14-2
14.3.1	About RF Components . . . . .	14-2
14.3.2	Multisim’s RF Components . . . . .	14-3
14.3.3	Theoretical Explanation of the RF Models . . . . .	14-3

14.4	RF Instruments . . . . .	14-9
14.4.1	Spectrum Analyzer . . . . .	14-9
14.4.2	Network Analyzer . . . . .	14-15
14.5	RF Analyses . . . . .	14-18
14.5.1	RF Characterizer Analysis . . . . .	14-18
14.5.2	Matching Network Analysis . . . . .	14-20
14.5.3	Noise Figure Analysis . . . . .	14-24
14.6	RF Model Makers . . . . .	14-26
14.6.1	Waveguide . . . . .	14-27
14.6.2	Microstrip Line . . . . .	14-28
14.6.3	Open End Microstrip Line . . . . .	14-29
14.6.4	RF Spiral Inductor . . . . .	14-30
14.6.5	Strip Line Model . . . . .	14-31
14.6.6	Stripline Bend . . . . .	14-32
14.6.7	Lossy Line . . . . .	14-33
14.6.8	Interdigital Capacitor . . . . .	14-35
14.7	Tutorial: Designing RF Circuits . . . . .	14-36
14.7.1	Selecting Type of RF Amplifier . . . . .	14-37
14.7.2	Selecting an RF Transistor . . . . .	14-37
14.7.3	Selecting a DC-operating Point . . . . .	14-38
14.7.4	Selecting the Biasing Network . . . . .	14-38

## Appendix A VHDL Primer

## Appendix B Verilog Primer

## Appendix C Sources Components

## Appendix D Basic Components

## Appendix E Diodes Components

Appendix F  
Transistors Components

Appendix G  
Analog Components

Appendix H  
TTL Components

Appendix I  
CMOS Components

Appendix J  
Misc. Digital Components

Appendix K  
Mixed Components

Appendix L  
Indicators Components

Appendix M  
Misc. Components

Appendix N  
Controls Components

Appendix O  
RF Components

Appendix P  
Electro-Mechanical Components

Appendix Q  
Functions (4000 Series)

Appendix R  
Functions (74XX Series)

Index





# Chapter 1

## Introduction

1.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	1-1
1.2	About this Manual. . . . .	1-1
1.3	What is Multisim? . . . . .	1-2
1.4	Multisim Features Summary. . . . .	1-2
1.5	About the Circuit Design Process. . . . .	1-4



# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 About this Chapter

This chapter briefly introduces you to this manual and to Multisim itself. It also provides a summary of Multisim's features and in which version they are available.

### 1.2 About this Manual

This manual is written for all Multisim users. It explains, in detail, all aspects of the Multisim product. The manual contains both:

- chapters, which explain features and functions, and which are organized based on the Design Bar buttons
- appendices, which contain reference-type information.

Depending on your Multisim version, this manual, or just its appendices, may be available only on-line, not in print.

This manual describes a number of functions that are available only in some versions of Multisim, or to users who have purchased optional modules. Such functions are identified by the icon shown in the column to the left. To order optional modules, contact Electronics Workbench. For a list of features in each product, see page 1-2.



This manual assumes that you are familiar with Windows applications and know how, for example, to choose a menu from a command, use the mouse to select an item, and enable/disable an option box. If you are new to Windows, see your Windows documentation for help.

### 1.3 What is Multisim?

Multisim is a complete system design tool that offers a large component database, schematic entry, full analog/digital SPICE simulation, VHDL/Verilog design entry/simulation, FPGA/CPLD synthesis, RF capabilities, postprocessing features and seamless transfer to PCB layout

## Introduction

packages such as Ultiboard, also from Electronics Workbench. It offers a single, easy-to-use graphical interface for all your design needs.

Multisim provides all the advanced functionality you need to take designs from specification to production. And because the program tightly integrates schematic capture, simulation, PCB layout and programmable logic, you can design with confidence, knowing that you are free from the integration issues often found when exchanging data between applications from different vendors.

## 1.4 Multisim Features Summary

Module	Personal Version	Professional Version	Power Professional Version
Basic Schematic Capture	✓	✓	✓
Interactive Simulation	✓	✓	✓
Symbol Editor	✓	✓	✓
SPICE Analog/Digital Simulation	✓	✓	✓
Editable Footprint Field	✓	✓	✓
Electro-mechanical Components	✓	✓	✓
DC Operating Point Analysis	✓	✓	✓
AC Analysis	✓	✓	✓
Transient Analysis	✓	✓	✓
Fourier Analysis	✓	✓	✓
Noise Analysis	✓	✓	✓
Distortion Analysis	✓	✓	✓
DC Sweep Analysis	✓	✓	✓
AC and DC Sensitivity Analysis	✓	✓	✓
Virtual Instruments	✓	9	11

## Multisim Features Summary

Module	Personal Version	Professional Version	Power Professional Version
Component Database and Editor	standard, with 6,000 parts	standard, with 12,000 parts	advanced, with 16000 parts
Model Expansion Package	Optional	Optional	✓
SPICE Import		✓	✓
Distortion Analysis Instrument		✓	✓
Virtual Wiring		✓	✓
Menu-driven Simulation from Netlist (without schematic)		✓	✓
Multiple Circuit Windows		✓	✓
Parameter Sweep Analysis		✓	✓
Temperature Sweep Analysis		✓	✓
Pole Zero Analysis		✓	✓
Transfer Function Analysis		✓	✓
Worst Case Analysis		✓	✓
Monte Carlo Analysis		✓	✓
Trace Width Analysis		✓	✓
Component Search Engine		standard	advanced
Bill of Material		standard	advanced
VHDL		optional	design/debug and simulation
Project/Team Design Module		optional	✓
RF Module		optional	✓
Analog & Digital Model Maker		optional	✓
Code Modelling			✓
Postprocessor			✓

Module	Personal Version	Professional Version	Power Professional Version
Batched Analysis			✓
Nested Sweep Analysis			✓
User Defined Analysis			✓
PSpice Import		✓	✓
Network version		✓	✓

## 1.5 About the Circuit Design Process

Multisim supports every step of the overall circuit design process, which typically includes the following phases:

1. Entering the design (using schematic capture, behavioral language formats or other methods) into the software tool being used.
2. Verifying that the behavior of the circuit matches expectations. This step is performed using simulation, and analysis.
3. Modifying the circuit design if the behavior does **not** meet expectations, and returning to step 2 as often as necessary.
4. Depending on how the circuit is to be physically implemented, passing the design through the appropriate process. For example, if it is to be placed on a Printed Circuit Board (PCB), the next step is to use a PCB layout program such as Electronic Workbench's Ultiboard product. If it is to be placed on a programmable logic device (PLD, CPLD, FPGA, etc.), the next step is to use a synthesis tool such as that available from Electronics Workbench.

## Chapter 2

# User Interface

2.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	2-1
2.2	Introduction to the Multisim Interface . . . . .	2-2
2.3	Introduction to the Design Bar . . . . .	2-3
2.4	Customizing the Interface. . . . .	2-4
2.4.1	About User Preferences. . . . .	2-4
2.4.2	Other Customization Options. . . . .	2-4
2.4.3	Controlling Circuit Display . . . . .	2-5
2.4.4	Controlling Circuit Window Display . . . . .	2-7
2.4.5	Setting Autosave and Symbol Set . . . . .	2-8
2.4.6	Print Page Setup Tab. . . . .	2-9
2.5	Working with Multiple Circuit Windows. . . . .	2-9
2.6	System Toolbar Buttons . . . . .	2-10
2.7	Menus and Commands . . . . .	2-10
2.7.1	File Menu . . . . .	2-10
2.7.2	Edit Menu. . . . .	2-13
2.7.3	View Menu . . . . .	2-16
2.7.4	Simulate Menu . . . . .	2-18
2.7.5	Transfer Menu . . . . .	2-24
2.7.6	Tools Menu . . . . .	2-25
2.7.7	Window Menu . . . . .	2-25
2.7.8	Help Menu . . . . .	2-26





# Chapter 2

## User Interface

### 2.1 About this Chapter

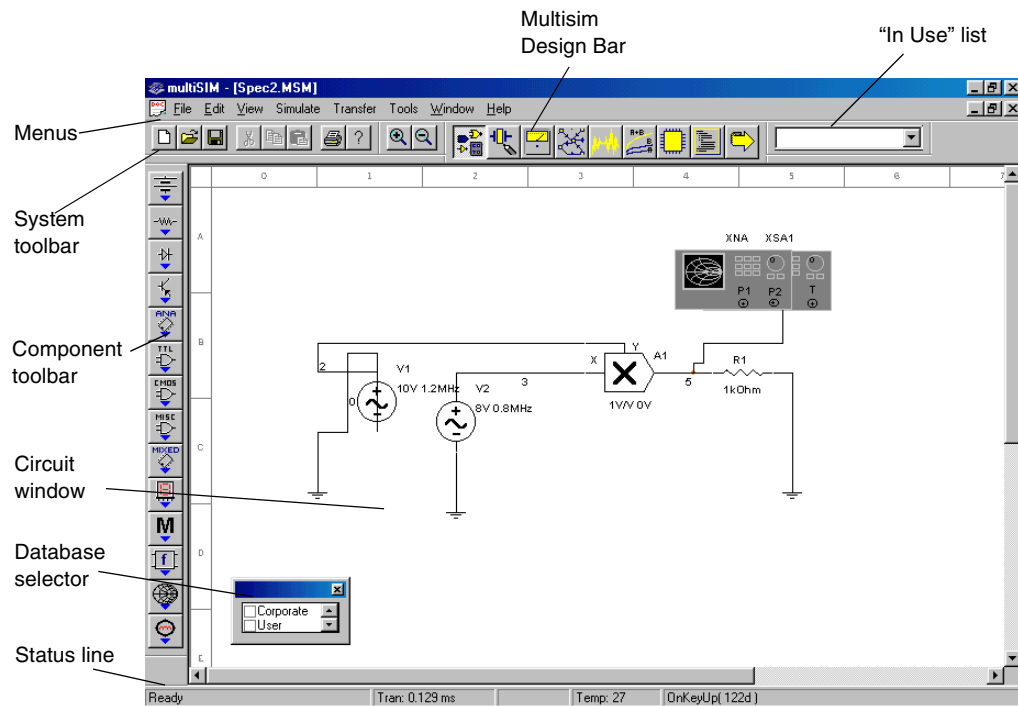
This chapter explains the basic operation of the Multisim user interface, and briefly describes all available Multisim commands.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

## 2.2 Introduction to the Multisim Interface

Multisim's user interface consists of the following basic elements:



**Note** Your circuit window may, by default, have a black background; however, for the purposes of this document, we show a white background. To change the background color, see “Controlling Circuit Display” on page 2-5.

**Menus** are, as in all Windows applications, where you find commands for all functions.

The **system toolbar** contains buttons for commonly-performed functions, as described on page 2-10.

The **zoom toolbar** allows you to zoom in and out on the circuit.

The **Multisim Design Bar** is an integral part of Multisim, and is explained in more detail below.

The **“In Use” list** lists all the components used in the current circuit, for easy re-use.

The **component toolbar** contains Parts Bin buttons that let you open component family toolbars (which, in turn, contain buttons for each family of components in the Parts Bin), as described on page 3-4.

The **circuit window** is where you build your circuit designs.

The **database selector** allows you to choose which database levels are to be visible as Component toolbars, as described on page 4-1.

The **status line** displays useful information about the current operation and a description of the item the cursor is currently pointing to.

## 2.3 Introduction to the Design Bar

The Design Bar is a central component of Multisim, allowing you easy access to the sophisticated functions offered by the program. The Design Bar guides you through the logical steps of building, simulating, analyzing and, eventually, exporting your design. Although Design Bar functions are available from conventional menus, this manual assumes you are taking advantage of the ease of use offered by the Design Bar.



The Component design button is selected by default, since the first logical activity is to place components on the circuit window. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Components” chapter.



The Component Editor button lets you modify the components in Multisim, or add components. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Component Editor” chapter.



The Instruments button lets you attach instruments to your circuit. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Instruments” chapter.



The Simulate button lets you simulate your design. The details of how this function operates are described in the “Simulation” chapter.



The Analysis button lets you choose the analysis you want to perform on your circuit. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Analyses” chapter.



The Postprocessor button lets you perform further operations on the results of your simulation. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the the “Postprocessor” chapter.



The VHDL/Verilog button allows you to work with VHDL modeling (not available in all versions). The functions associated with this button are described in the the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.



The Reports button lets you print reports about your circuits (Bill of Materials, list of components, component details). The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Reports” chapter.



Finally, the Transfer button lets you communicate with and export to other PCB layout programs, such as Ultiboard, also from Electronics Workbench. You can also export simulation results to programs such as MathCAD and Excel. The functions associated with this button are described in detail in the “Transfer/Communication” chapter.

## 2.4 Customizing the Interface

### 2.4.1 About User Preferences

You can customize virtually any aspect of the Multisim interface, including the toolbars, colors in your circuit, page size, zoom factor, time for autosave, symbol set (ANSI or DIN) and printer setup. Your customization settings are saved individually with each circuit file you use so you could, for example, have one color scheme for one circuit and another for a different circuit. You can also override the settings for individual instances (for example, change one particular component from red to orange) or for the entire circuit.

To change settings for the **current** circuit, you generally right-click on the circuit window. This is described in this section.

Your user preferences (set using **Edit/User Preferences**) form the default settings to be used for all **subsequent** circuits, but do not (generally) affect the current circuit. Any newly created circuit uses, by default, the user preferences of the current circuit. For example, if your current circuit shows component labels, when you choose **File/New** and create a new circuit, that circuit will be set to show component labels as well.

### 2.4.2 Other Customization Options

You can also customize the interface by showing or hiding, dragging to a new location and, optionally, resizing any of the following:

- system toolbar
- Design Bar
- “In Use” list
- database selector.

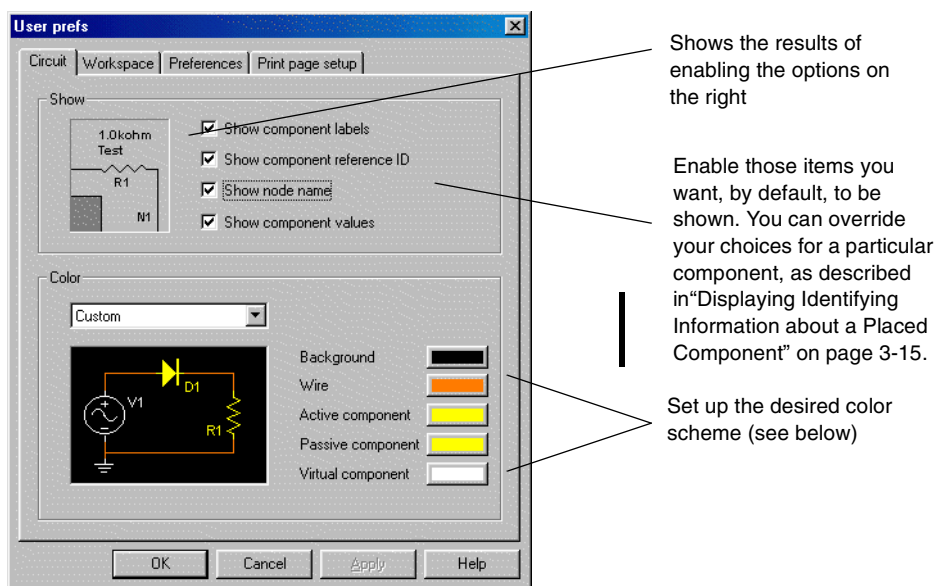
These changes apply to all circuits you are working with. Moved or resized items will return to that location and size when next opened.

Finally, you can use the **View** menu to display or hide various elements, as described on page 2-16.

## 2.4.3 Controlling Circuit Display

You can control the way your circuit and its components appear on the screen, and the level of detail which appears.

- To set the default circuit display options for **subsequent** circuits, choose **Edit/User Preferences**. The User Preferences screen appears, offering you four tabs of options, with the Circuit tab being the active tab. Use this tab to control the colors and display details for your circuit.



- To set the circuit options for the **current** circuit, right-click on the circuit window and choose either **Show**, which displays a screen identical to the **Show** options in the Circuit tab of the User Preferences screen (shown above), or **Color**, which displays a screen identical to the **Color** options in the Circuit tab

Multisim comes with several color schemes that affect the circuit window background color, wire color, and component color. You can also develop your own color scheme to meet your individual needs.

## User Interface

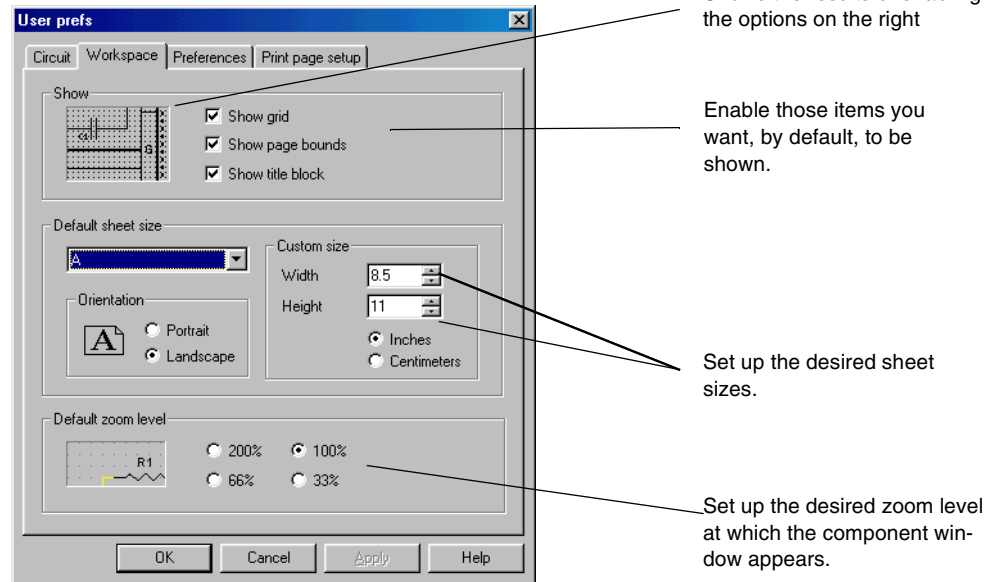
---

- To use one of the built-in color schemes:
  1. Choose the scheme from the drop-down list.
  2. A representation of the scheme's settings appears in the preview box below the list.
  3. To save your settings and close the screen, click **OK**. To cancel your settings, click **Cancel**.
- To create a custom color scheme:
  1. Choose **Custom** from the drop-down list.
  2. Click on the color bar next to any items. A Color selector screen appears.
  3. Click on the color you want to use for that item and click **OK**. You are returned to the User Preferences screen. The results of your choice appear in the preview box.
  4. Repeat until all your color settings are made.
  5. To save your settings and close the screen, click **OK**. To cancel your settings, click **Cancel**.

### 2.4.4 Controlling Circuit Window Display

Circuit window display options determine the appearance and behavior of the circuit window.

- To set the default circuit window options for **subsequent** circuits, choose **Edit/User Preferences** and click the Workspace tab.



- To set the circuit window options for the **current** circuit, do one or all of the following:
  - to show or hide the grid, page bounds or title block, right-click on the circuit window and choose the corresponding command (**Grid Visible**, **Show Page Bounds**, or **Show Title Block and Border**) from the menu that appears
  - to set the sheet size, choose **Edit/Set Sheet Size**—a screen similar to the Default sheet size of the User preferences screen appears
  - to set the zoom level, choose **View/Zoom**, or use the zoom buttons.

Multisim comes with several sheet sizes that you can use for laying out your circuit. You can modify any of the settings of these sizes.

- To use one of the provided sheet sizes as the default:
  1. Choose the sheet size from the drop-down list. That size's settings (orientation and measurements) appear.
  2. To save your settings and close the screen, click **OK**. To cancel your settings, click **Cancel**.
- To modify the settings for a specific sheet size:
  1. Choose the desired sheet size from the drop-down list. That size's settings (orientation and measurements) appear.
  2. Change any of the settings.



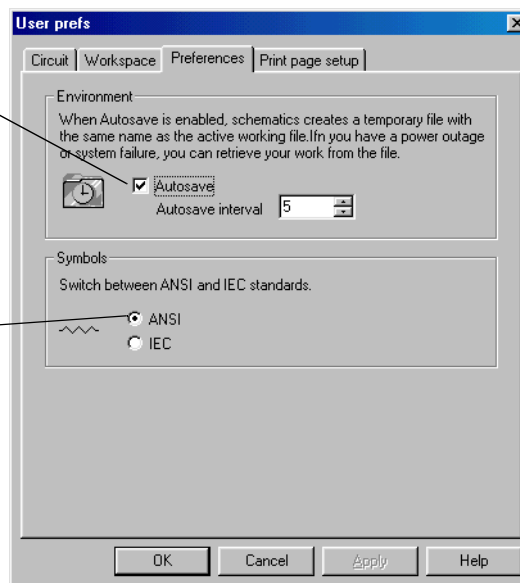
3. To save your settings and close the screen, click **OK**. To cancel your settings, click **Cancel**.

## 2.4.5 Setting Autosave and Symbol Set

- To set the autosave options and symbol set for both the current circuit and any subsequent circuits, set the default circuit visibility for subsequent circuits, choose **Edit/User Preferences** and click the Preferences tab.

Enable or disable autosave and specify the interval at which it will be performed.

Select the symbol set to be used for components. The graphic changes to represent the selected symbol set. To override this setting for individual components, see "Creating and Editing a Component's Symbol with the Symbol Editor" on page 5-11.



## 2.4.6 Print Page Setup Tab

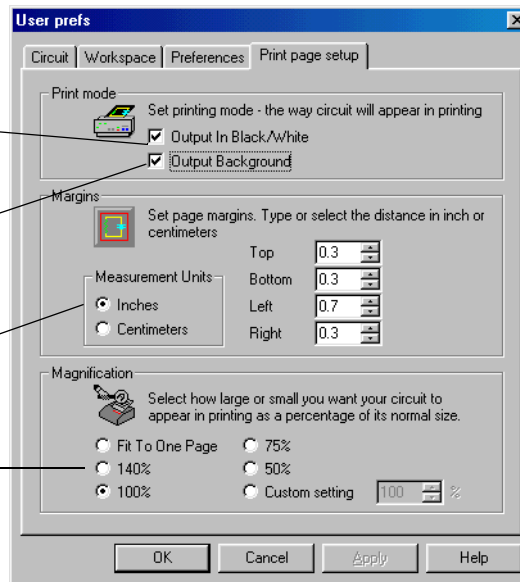
- To set the default print settings for **subsequent** circuits, choose **Edit/User Preferences** and click the Print page setup tab.

Enable to output circuit in black and white (for non-color printers). When disabled, colored components print in shades of grey.

Enable to include background in printed copy. Use for color printers or white on black output.

Set page margins for printed output.

Select an option to scale the circuit down or up in printed output.



- To set these options for the **current** circuit, choose **File/Print Setup** and click **Page Setup**. The above options are presented on a series of tabs.

## 2.5 Working with Multiple Circuit Windows

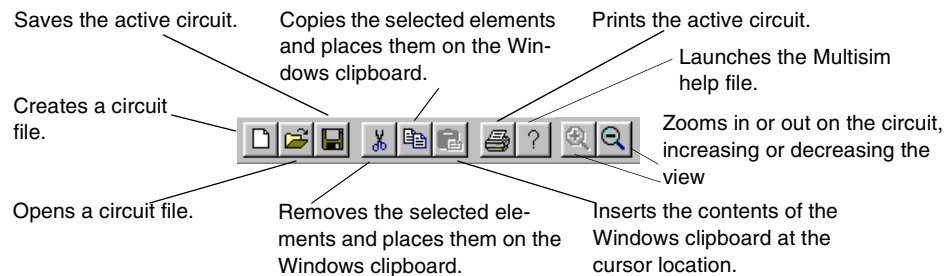


If you are a Professional or Power Professional user, you can open as many circuits as you want at the same time. Each circuit appears in its own circuit window. The active circuit window is, as in other Windows applications, the window with a highlighted title bar. You can use the Window menu to move from circuit window to circuit window or just click on the one you want to use.

Each window is distinct, and can have its own preferences, set of components and so on. You can copy, but not move, a component or instrument from one circuit window to another.

## 2.6 System Toolbar Buttons

The system toolbar offers the following standard Windows functions:



## 2.7 Menus and Commands

This section explains, in brief, all available Multisim commands. It is intended primarily as a reference.

### 2.7.1 File Menu

Contains commands for managing circuit files created with Multisim.

#### 2.7.1.1 File/New

**Ctrl+N**

Opens an untitled circuit window that can be used to create a circuit. The new window opens using your circuit preferences. Until you save, the circuit window is named “Circuit#”, where “#” is a consecutive number. For example, you could have “Circuit1”, “Circuit2”, “Circuit3”, and so on.

You can create an unlimited number of circuits in one session.

**Note** Users of versions other than Professional or Power Professional can only have one circuit open at a time. For these users, the **File/New** command closes the currently open circuit file.

#### 2.7.1.2 File/Open

**Ctrl+O**

Opens a previously created circuit file or netlist. Displays a file browser. If necessary, change to the location of the file you want to open.

**Note** You can open files created with Version 5 of Electronics Workbench, files created in Multisim and netlist files.



If you are a Professional or Power Professional user, you can open an unlimited number of circuits in one session.

### 2.7.1.3 File/Close

Closes the active circuit file. If any changes were made since the last save of the file, you are prompted to save those changes before closing.

### 2.7.1.4 File/Save

**Ctrl+S**

Saves the active circuit file. If this is the first time the file is being saved, displays a file browser. If you want, change to the desired location for saving the file. You can save a circuit file with a name of any length.

The extension `.msm` is added to the file name automatically. For example, a circuit named `Mycircuit` will be saved as `Mycircuit.msm`.

**Tip** To preserve the original circuit without changes, choose **File/Save As**.

### 2.7.1.5 File/Save As

Saves the current circuit with a new file name. The original circuit remains unchanged.

**Tip** Use this command to experiment safely on a copy of a circuit, without changing the original.



### 2.7.1.6 File/New Project

Creates a new project for grouping together related circuit designs (for users with Project/Team Design module only). For details, see “Setting up Projects” on page 13-1.



### 2.7.1.7 File/Open Project

Opens an existing project (for users with Project/Team Design module only). For details, see “Working with Projects” on page 13-3.



### 2.7.1.8 File/Save Project

Saves a project (for users with Project/Team Design module only). For details, see “Working with Projects” on page 13-3.



### 2.7.1.9 File/Close Project

Closes an open project (for users with Project/Team Design module only). For details, see “Working with Projects” on page 13-3.



### 2.7.1.10 File/Version Control

Backs up or restores a project (for users with Project/Team Design module only). For details, see “Version Control” on page 13-4.

### 2.7.1.11 File/Prints

Prints all or some aspects of a circuit and/or its instruments on a printer attached to your system. You can choose one of the following to print:



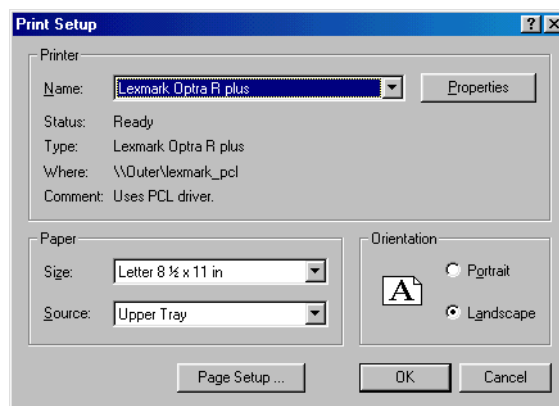
- circuit - see “Printing the Circuit” on page 3-26
- Bill of Materials (B.O.M.) — see “Bill of Materials (BOM)” on page 11-1
- list of components — see “Database Family List” on page 11-2
- component details — see “Database Family List” on page 11-2.

### 2.7.1.12 File/Print Preview

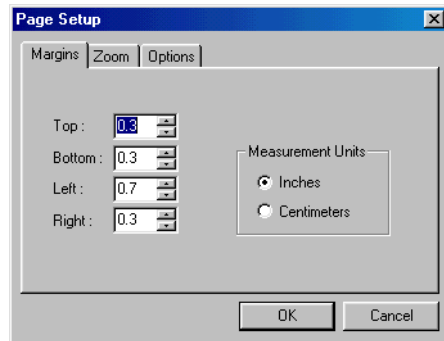
Previews the circuit as it will be printed. Opens a separate window, where you can move from page to page and zoom in for details. You can also print what you preview. For details, see page 3-26.

### 2.7.1.13 File/Print Setup

Changes the page setup for a selected printer.



When you click **Page Setup**, you can set the page characteristics for this printer.



These settings apply only to the current circuit. For details on these fields, see page 2-8.

### 2.7.1.14 File/Exit

Closes all open circuit windows and exits Multisim. If you have unsaved changes in any circuits, you are prompted to save or cancel them.

### 2.7.1.15 File/Recent Files

Displays a list of all recently opened circuit files. To re-open a file, select it from the list.



### 2.7.1.16 File/Recent Projects

Displays a list of all recently opened projects. To re-open a project, select it from the list.

## 2.7.2 Edit Menu

Contains commands for removing, duplicating or selecting information. If a command is not applicable to the selected item (for example, a component), it is dimmed.

### 2.7.2.1 Edit/Place Component

Lets you browse the entire database (“Multisim master” level, “corporate” level and “user” level) for components to be placed. For details, see page 3-6.

### 2.7.2.2 Edit/Place Junction

**Ctrl+J**

Places a connector when you click. For details, see page 3-13.

**2.7.2.3 Edit/Place Bus****Ctrl+G**

Places a bus with segments created as you click. For details, see page 3-27.

**2.7.2.4 Edit/Place Input/Output****Ctrl+I**

Adds connecting nodes to a circuit for use as a subcircuit. For details, see page 3-24.

**2.7.2.5 Edit/Place Hierarchical Block****Ctrl+H**

Places a circuit in a hierarchical structure. For details, see page 3-25.

**2.7.2.6 Edit/Place Text****Ctrl+T**

Lets you place text on the circuit. For details, see page 3-21.

**2.7.2.7 Edit/Undo****Ctrl+Z**

Undoes the most recently performed delete action.

**2.7.2.8 Edit/Redo****Ctrl+Y**

Redoes the last undone actions.

**2.7.2.9 Edit/Cut****Ctrl+X**

Removes selected components, circuits or text. What you cut is placed on the Windows clipboard so you can paste it elsewhere.

**2.7.2.10 Edit/Copy****Ctrl+C**

Copies selected components, circuits or text. The copy is placed on the Windows clipboard. You can then use the Paste command to paste the copy elsewhere, including other applications such as word processors.

**2.7.2.11 Edit/Paste****Ctrl+V**

Places the contents of the clipboard. The cursor shows a “ghosted” image of the item to be pasted. Click to indicate where the item is to be pasted.

**2.7.2.12 Edit/Paste as Subcircuit/Macro****Ctrl+B**

Places the contents of the clipboard as a subcircuit. For details, see page 3-25.

### 2.7.2.13 Edit/Delete

**Del**

Permanently removes selected components or text. Does not place the selection on the clipboard and does not affect anything currently on the clipboard.

---

**Caution**

Use the Delete command with care. Deleted information cannot be retrieved, although the most recent deletion can be recovered using the Undo command.

---

**Note** Deleting a component or instrument removes it from the circuit window, not from its toolbar.

### 2.7.2.14 Edit/Select All

**Ctrl+A**

Selects all items in the active circuit window.

**Tip** To select all but a few items, use the **Select All** command and then deselect the ones you don't want by CTRL-clicking.

### 2.7.2.15 Edit/Flip Horizontal

**Alt+X**

Flips the selection vertically. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.

### 2.7.2.16 Edit/Flip Vertical

**Alt+Y**

Flips the selection horizontally. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.

### 2.7.2.17 Edit/90 Clockwise

**Ctrl+R**

Rotates the selection 90 degrees clockwise. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.

### 2.7.2.18 Edit/90 CounterCW

**Shift+Ctrl+R**

Rotates the selection 90 degrees counter-clockwise. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.



### 2.7.2.19 Edit/Set Sheet Size

Sets the sheet size on which the circuit is designed. Choose from the drop-down list and modify settings (orientation and size) if necessary. For details, see page 3-2.

### 2.7.2.20 Edit/Set Title Block

Lets you enter data to appear in the circuit's title block. For details, see page 3-21.

### 2.7.2.21 Edit/User Preferences

**Ctrl+U**

Lets you specify default preferences for this circuit. For details, see page 2-4.

## 2.7.3 View Menu

### 2.7.3.1 View/Toolbars

Shows or hides the selected toolbar. Choose to show or hide any or all of the following toolbars:

- system toolbar
- design toolbar
- components toolbar
- instruments toolbar
- database selector
- zoom toolbar (the “zoom” buttons of the system toolbar)
- “In Use” list.

For information on these elements, see page 2-2.

### 2.7.3.2 View/Project Workspace



Shows/hides the project workspace on the left of the screen. See “Setting up Projects” on page 13-1.

### 2.7.3.3 View/Status Bar

Shows/hides the status bar, which provides useful information about the current operation and a description of the item the cursor is currently pointing to.

### 2.7.3.4 View/(Show/Hide) Simulation Error Log / Audit Trail

Shows/hides the simulation log, which records all the events of a circuit simulation. For details about this log, see “Start/Stop/Pause Simulation” on page 7-3.

### 2.7.3.5 View/(Show/Hide) Command Line Interface

Opens a window into which you can type Xspice commands to be executed. Press RETURN to execute the command. The command is listed at the top part of the window and any errors are reported in the error log/audit trail.

### 2.7.3.6 View/(Show/Hide) Grapher

Shows/hides the Grapher screen, which shows the results of simulation on a graph or chart. For details about this screen, see “Viewing the Analysis Results—Grapher” on page 8-58.

### 2.7.3.7 View/Show Simulate Switch

Shows or hides the simulation on/off switch. An alternative to using the Design Bar button or menu commands.



### 2.7.3.8 View/Grid Visible

Shows or hides grid in the background of the circuit window. This helps you place elements in specific locations on a grid. For details, see page 3-2.

### 2.7.3.9 View/Show Page Bounds

Shows or hides page boundaries in the circuit window. This helps you note where circuits will appear on printed output. For details, see page 3-2.

### 2.7.3.10 View/Show Title Block and Border

Shows or hides the circuit's title block and border. For details, see page 3-2.

### 2.7.3.11 View/Color

Lets you choose or modify the color scheme for the circuit. Overrides the defaults set in **File/Preferences**. For details, see page 2-5.

### 2.7.3.12 View/Show

Lets you choose what component elements appear on the circuit window. Overrides the defaults set in **File/Preferences**. For details, see page 2-6.

### 2.7.3.13 View/Zoom

Lets you choose a magnification of 33%, 60%, 100%, 200% or other for viewing the circuit.

### 2.7.3.14 View/Find

**Ctrl+F**

Displays a list of the reference IDs in the current circuit. You can select one or more of these reference IDs, which are then selected in the circuit window. For details, see page 3-19.

### 2.7.3.15 View/Refresh Component Toolbars

Refreshes the Component toolbar display so it reflects any additions made to the user or corporate toolbars, as described in the “Component Editor” chapter.

## 2.7.4 Simulate Menu

### 2.7.4.1 Simulate/Run/Stop

Runs or stops the circuit. Running a circuit starts a sequence of mathematical operations to compute values for the nodes (testpoints) in the circuit.

**Tip** You can also activate a digital circuit from the word generator.

### 2.7.4.2 Simulate/Pause/Resume

Pauses/resumes the current simulation.

### 2.7.4.3 Simulate/Default Instrument Settings

Allows you to set defaults settings for instruments that are based on a transient analysis (such as the oscilloscope, spectrum analyzer and logic analyzer). For details, see page 6-4.

### 2.7.4.4 Simulate/Instruments

Contains commands you use to place instruments (an alternative to using the instruments toolbar or the Design Bar). For details on these instruments, see the “Instruments” chapter.

**Note** Ammeter and voltmeter instruments are available from the Indicators Component toolbar.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Multimeter**

Places a multimeter on the circuit window. A multimeter is used to measure AC or DC voltage or current, resistance, or decibel loss between two nodes in a circuit. For details, see “Multimeter” on page 6-19.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Function Generator**

Places a function generator on the circuit window. A function generator is a voltage source that supplies sine, triangular or square waves. It provides a convenient and realistic way to supply power to a circuit. For details, see “Function Generator” on page 6-10.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Wattmeter**

Places a wattmeter on the circuit window. A wattmeter provides the combined functions of a voltmeter and an ammeter. It is used to measure the magnitude of the active power, that is, the product of the voltage difference and the current flowing through the current terminals, in a circuit. For details, see “Wattmeter” on page 6-30.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Oscilloscope**

Places an oscilloscope on the circuit window. The dual-channel oscilloscope displays the magnitude and frequency variations of electronic signals. It can provide a graph of the strength of one or two signals over time, or allow comparison of one waveform to another. For details, see “Oscilloscope” on page 6-24.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Bode Plotter**

Places a Bode plotter on the circuit window. A Bode plotter produces a graph of a circuit’s frequency response and is useful for analyzing filter circuits. For details, see “Bode Plotter” on page 6-6.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Word Generator**

Places a word generator on the circuit window. A word generator sends digital words or patterns of bits into circuits to test them. For details, see “Word Generator” on page 6-31.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Logic Analyzer**

Places a logic analyzer on the circuit window. A logic analyzer displays the levels of up to 16 digital signals in a circuit. It is used for fast data acquisition of logic states and advanced timing analysis to help design large systems and carry out troubleshooting. For details, see “Logic Analyzer” on page 6-15.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Logic Converter**

Places a logic converter on the circuit window. A logic converter is able to perform several transformations of a circuit representation. It has no real world counterpart. For details, see “Logic Converter” on page 6-12.



### **Simulate/Instruments/Distortion Analyzer**

Places a distortion analyzer on the circuit window. A typical distortion analyzer provides distortion measurements for audio signals in the range of 20 Hz to 100 KHz. For details, see “Distortion Analyzer” on page 6-9.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Spectrum Analyzer**

Places a spectrum analyzer on the circuit window. The spectrum analyzer is used to measure frequency versus amplitude. For details, see “Spectrum Analyzer” on page 6-29.

### **Simulate/Instruments/Network Analyzer**

Places a network analyzer on the circuit window. The network analyzer is used to measure the scattering parameters (or S-parameters) of a circuit, commonly used to characterize a circuit intended to operate at higher frequencies. For details, see “Network Analyzer” on page 6-23.

## **2.7.4.5 Simulate/Analyses**

Contains commands you use to set up and run the circuit’s analysis (an alternative to using the Design Bar). For details on these analyses, see the “Analyses” chapter.

### **Simulate/Analyses/DC Operating Point**

Sets up and runs DC operating point analysis, which determines the DC operating point of a circuit. For details, see “DC Operating Point Analysis” on page 8-9.

### **Simulate/Analyses/AC Analysis**

Sets up and runs AC analysis, in which the DC operating point is first calculated to obtain linear, small-signal models for all nonlinear components. Then a complex matrix (containing both real and imaginary components) is created. For details, see “DC Operating Point Analysis” on page 8-9.

### **Simulate/Analyses/Transient Analysis**

Sets up and runs Transient analysis, also called time-domain transient analysis, which computes the circuit’s response as a function of time. For details, see “Transient Analysis” on page 8-13.

### **Simulate/Analyses/Noise Analysis**

Sets up and runs Noise analysis, which is used to detect the magnitude of noise power in the output of electronic circuits. For details, see “Enter the desired variables in the appropriate fields.” on page 8-45.

### **Simulate/Analyses/Distortion Analysis**

Sets up and runs Distortion analysis, which measures harmonic distortion and intermodulation distortion products. For details, see “Distortion Analysis” on page 8-20.

### **Simulate/Analyses/DC Sweep**

Sets up and runs DC Sweep analysis, which computes the DC operating point of a node in the circuit for various values of one or two DC sources in the circuit. For details, see “DC Sweep Analysis” on page 8-22.

### **Simulate/Analyses/Sensitivity**

Sets up and runs Sensitivity analysis, which calculates the sensitivity of an output node voltage or current with respect to the parameters of all components (DC sensitivity) or one component (AC sensitivity) in a circuit. For details, see “DC and AC Sensitivity Analyses” on page 8-24.



### **Simulate/Analyses/Parameter Sweep**

Sets up and runs Parameter Sweep analysis, which verifies the operation of a circuit by simulating it across a range of values for a component parameter. For details, see “Parameter Sweep Analysis” on page 8-28.



### **Simulate/Analyses/Temperature Sweep**

Sets up and runs Temperature Sweep analysis, which quickly verifies the operation of a circuit by simulating it at different temperatures. The effect is the same as simulating the circuit several times, once for each different temperature. You control the temperature values. For details, see “Temperature Sweep Analysis” on page 8-31.



### **Simulate/Analyses/Transfer Function**

Sets up and runs Transfer Function analysis, which calculates the DC small-signal transfer function between an input source and two output nodes (for voltage) or an output variable (for current) in a circuit. It also calculates input and output resistances. For details, see “Transfer Function Analysis” on page 8-33.

**Simulate/Analyses/Worst Case**

Sets up and runs Worst Case analysis, a statistical analysis that lets you explore the worst possible effects on circuit performance of variations in component parameters. For details, see “Worst Case Analysis” on page 8-35.

**Simulate/Analyses/Pole Zero**

Sets up and runs Pole Zero analysis, which finds the poles and zeros in the small-signal AC transfer function of a circuit. For details, see “Pole Zero Analysis” on page 8-38.

**Simulate/Analyses/Monte Carlo**

Sets up and runs Monte Carlo analysis, a statistical analysis that lets you explore how changing component properties affects circuit performance. For details, see “Monte Carlo Analysis” on page 8-43.

**Simulate/Analyses/Fourier Analysis**

Sets up and runs Fourier analysis, which evaluates the DC, fundamental and harmonic components of a time-domain signal. For details, see “Fourier Analysis” on page 8-46.

**Simulate/Analyses/Trace Width Analysis**

Contains information about setting trace width analysis parameters for normal or advanced use. For details, see “Trace Width Analysis” on page 8-50.

**Simulate/Analyses/Batched Analyses**

Sets up and runs batched analyses, which let you set up a series of different analyses, or different variations on the same analysis, to be performed on a circuit in sequence. For details, see “Batched Analyses” on page 8-55.

**Simulate/Analyses/User-Defined Analysis**

Sets up and runs a user-defined analysis. This command presents you with a screen into which you can type the SPICE commands to be executed to perform the analysis. For details, see “User-Defined Analyses” on page 8-57.

**Simulate/Analyses/Noise Figure Analysis**

This analysis is part of Multisim’s RF Design module (standard in the Power Professional version, optional in the Professional version) and is described in the “RF” chapter.



### **Simulate/Analyses/RF Analyses**

Included in the menu for the purposes of completeness. RF analyses are available from the Network Analyzer instrument. This command places the Network Analyzer for you. For details, see “Network Analyzer” on page 14-15.

### **Simulate/Analyses/Stop**

Stops the currently running analysis.



### **2.7.4.6 Simulate/Postprocess**

Opens the Postprocessor screen, which you use to combine the results of several analyses in different ways. To use the Postprocessor, you must have performed at least one analysis on your circuit. For details, see the “Postprocessor” chapter.



### **2.7.4.7 Simulate/VHDL Simulation**

Runs the VHDL simulation module. For details, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.



### **2.7.4.8 Simulate/Verilog Simulation**

Runs the Verilog simulation module. For details, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.



### **2.7.4.9 Simulate/Auto Fault Option**

Randomly applies faults to randomly selected components in the circuit. You choose the number of faults (either in total, or the number of each type of fault) to be applied. For details, see the “Educator’s Notes” chapter.

### **2.7.4.10 Simulate/Global Component Tolerances**

Multisim components are, by default, “ideal”— they have no internal resistance and their output is consistent. You can choose to use global components instead. These randomly introduce variances to simulate the performance of actual, physical components. Global component settings affect the simulation results. See “Component Nominal Values and Tolerances” on page 4-26 for details.

## **2.7.5 Transfer Menu**



### 2.7.5.1 Transfer/Transfer to Ultiboard

Displays a file browser where you choose or enter a file name for the transferred data. A file of the correct format is created. If you plan to use backannotation, you **must** save your file immediately.

### 2.7.5.2 Transfer/Transfer to other PCB Layout

Displays a file browser where you choose or enter a file name for the transferred data. You can also choose the appropriate file type from a list of available types.

### 2.7.5.3 Transfer/Backannotate from Ultiboard

Backannotates changes made to a circuit in Ultiboard (for example, deleted components) to the Multisim circuit file. Displays a file browser where you choose the backannotation file corresponding to your circuit file. The circuit file must be open



### 2.7.5.4 Transfer/VHDL Synthesis

Runs the VHDL Synthesis program on a file created from the current circuit. You are prompted to save the file, and then VHDL Synthesis appears with the file loaded in it. For details, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.



### 2.7.5.5 Transfer/Verilog Synthesis

Runs the VHDL Synthesis program on a file created from the current circuit. You are prompted to save the file, and then VHDL Synthesis appears with the file loaded in it. For details, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.

### 2.7.5.6 Transfer/Export Simulation Results to MathCAD

Exports the results of your simulation to a file format readable by MathCAD™. For details, see the “Transfer/Communication” chapter.

### 2.7.5.7 Transfer/Export Simulation Results to Excel

Exports the results of your simulation to a file format readable by Excel™. For details, see the “Transfer/Communication” chapter.

### 2.7.5.8 Transfer/Export Netlist

Exports the netlist of your design. Opens a standard file selector window where you can choose the file name and folder.

## 2.7.6 Tools Menu

### 2.7.6.1 Tools/Component Editor

Displays the Component Editor. For details on using this editor, see the “Component Editor” chapter.



### 2.7.6.2 Tools/Remote Control / Design Sharing

Allows you to communicate with and share designs with other members of your team, either across a network or using the Internet. For Project/Team Design module users only. For details, see the “Project/Team Design Module” chapter.

## 2.7.7 Window Menu

Contains commands used to control the display of Multisim windows. Lists all open circuit windows.

### 2.7.7.1 Windows/Cascade

Arranges circuit windows so that they overlap.

### 2.7.7.2 Windows/Tile

Resizes all open circuit windows so they all show on the screen. Allows you to quickly scan all open circuit files.

### 2.7.7.3 Windows/Arrange Icons

Lines up minimized windows.

### 2.7.7.4 Windows (open files)

Lists the open Multisim circuit files. Select one to display it.

## 2.7.8 Help Menu

Contains commands that display on-line help and Multisim version information.

**Tip** If you want to be able to refer to Help information as you work on a circuit, use the Keep Help on Top function in the Help window's Options menu.

## Chapter 3

# Schematic Capture

3.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	3-1
3.2	Introduction to Schematic Capture . . . . .	3-1
3.3	Setting up Your Circuit Window . . . . .	3-1
3.3.1	Setting up a Sheet Size . . . . .	3-2
3.3.2	Displaying or Hiding Grid, Title Block and Page Borders . . . . .	3-2
3.3.3	Selecting a Symbol Set . . . . .	3-3
3.4	Selecting Components from the Database . . . . .	3-3
3.5	Placing Components . . . . .	3-4
3.5.1	Choosing a Component Using the Component Group Toolbars and Browser Screen3-4	
3.5.2	Choosing a Component with the Place Component Command . . . . .	3-6
3.5.3	Using the “In Use” List3-8	
3.5.4	Moving a Placed Component . . . . .	3-8
3.5.5	Copying a Placed Component3-9	
3.5.6	Controlling Component Color . . . . .	3-9
3.6	Wiring Components . . . . .	3-9
3.6.1	Wiring Components Automatically . . . . .	3-10
3.6.2	Wiring Components Manually . . . . .	3-11
3.6.3	Combining Automatic and Manual Wiring . . . . .	3-12
3.6.4	Modifying Wire Path . . . . .	3-12
3.6.5	Controlling Wire Color . . . . .	3-13
3.7	Manually Adding a Junction (Connector) . . . . .	3-13
3.8	Rotating/Flipping Components . . . . .	3-13
3.9	Placed Component Properties . . . . .	3-15
3.9.1	Displaying Identifying Information about a Placed Component . . . . .	3-15
3.9.2	Viewing a Placed Component’s Value/Model . . . . .	3-17
3.9.3	Controlling How a Placed Component is Used in Analyses . . . . .	3-19

3.10	Finding Components in Your Circuit. . . . .	3-20
3.11	Labelling. . . . .	3-20
3.11.1	Modifying Component Labels. . . . .	3-20
3.11.2	Modifying Node Numbers. . . . .	3-22
3.11.3	Adding a Title Block. . . . .	3-22
3.11.4	Adding Miscellaneous Text . . . . .	3-23
3.12	Virtual Wiring . . . . .	3-23
3.13	Subcircuits and Hierarchy . . . . .	3-24
3.13.1	Subcircuits vs. Hierarchy . . . . .	3-24
3.13.2	Setting up a Circuit for Use as a Subcircuit . . . . .	3-25
3.13.3	Adding Subcircuits to a Circuit . . . . .	3-26
3.14	Printing the Circuit . . . . .	3-27
3.15	Placing a Bus . . . . .	3-28
3.16	Using the Pop-up Menu . . . . .	3-30
3.16.1	From Circuit Window, with no Component Selected . . . . .	3-30
3.16.2	From Circuit Window, with Component or Instrument Selected. . . . .	3-31
3.16.3	From Circuit Window, with Wire Selected . . . . .	3-32

# Chapter 3

## Schematic Capture

### 3.1 About this Chapter

This chapter describes all the basic functions involved in creating a circuit in the circuit window. This chapter explains the fundamental steps in circuit creation, but is not intended to describe all the potential aspects of circuit design. For example, you should look to other chapters for details on the component database, instructions on editing components, and information on adding instruments.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 3.2 Introduction to Schematic Capture

Schematic capture is the first stage in developing your circuit. In this stage you choose the components you want to use, place them on the circuit window in the desired position and orientation, wire them together, and otherwise prepare your design. Multisim also allows you to modify component properties, orient your circuit on a grid, add text and a title block, add sub-circuits and buses, and control the color of the circuit window background, components and wires.

### 3.3 Setting up Your Circuit Window

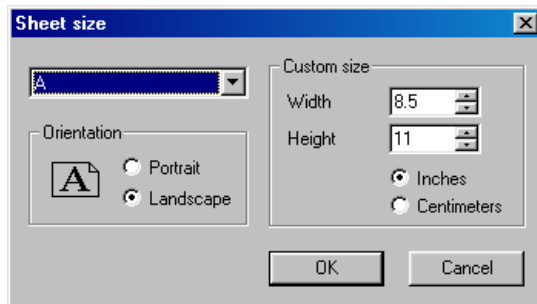
Multisim lets you set up the circuit window to match your design requirements. In particular, you can set:

- sheet size
- whether or not the grid, page bounds, page borders and title block are visible
- the symbol set (ANSI or DIN) you want to use.

When you create a component file, the current settings in your user preferences (as described on page 2-4) are used as the defaults for these options. You can override the defaults, as described in this section. Your new settings are stored with the circuit file, allowing you to have unique settings for each file you create.

### 3.3.1 Setting up a Sheet Size

- To set up the sheet size for this circuit:
  1. Choose **Edit/Set Sheet Size**. The Sheet Size screen appears.



2. Choose the desired sheet size from the drop-down list.
3. Change any of the characteristics (orientation or size) necessary.
4. To confirm the sheet size, click **OK**. To cancel it, click **Cancel**.

### 3.3.2 Displaying or Hiding Grid, Title Block and Page Borders

Multisim lets you display a background grid on the circuit window, to help you orient your components. It also lets you show or hide the component's title block (explained in more detail on page 3-21), the page bounds that show the parameters of your sheet size, and the page borders that offer a ruler marking the inches on your sheet.

As described on page 2-6, the default settings that specify which of these are displayed is set in user preferences. User preferences are used when a new circuit is created. You can also use the **View** menu to set these defaults for the current circuit only.

- To affect what is shown or hidden in the current circuit:, do one of the following:
  - enable **View/Grid Visible**, **View/Show Page Bounds** or **View/Show Title Block and Border**

- right-click on the circuit window and choose **Grid Visible**, **Page Bounds**, or **Title Block and Border** from the pop-up menu that appears.

### 3.3.3 Selecting a Symbol Set

Multisim allows you to use either ANSI or DIN symbols on your circuit window.

- To choose the desired symbol set, choose **Edit/User Preferences**, display the Preferences tab, and select the desired symbol set.

## 3.4 Selecting Components from the Database

The first step in schematic capture is placing the appropriate components on your circuit window.

**Note** Multisim components are stored in a database that contains three levels of data: “Multisim master”, “corporate”, and “user”.

You can locate a component in this database using a variety of methods:

- through component toolbars that let you browse through a specific level of the database, as explained below
- through **Edit/Place Component**, which lets you browse all the component groups in a specific level of the database, as explained on page 3-6
- by searching a specific level of the database, as explained in the “Components” chapter.

It is the first of these three choices that is used most commonly. When using this method, the families of components you need to create a circuit are grouped into logical divisions, each grouping represented by a Parts Bin button on the Component toolbar. This logical grouping is a key advantage of Multisim, saving you time and frustration. You can toggle the Component toolbar on and off by clicking the **Component** button on the Design Bar.



Each Parts Bin button on the Component toolbar corresponds to group of components with similar functionality. Placing your cursor over one of these buttons displays another toolbar, the component family toolbar, containing a button for each component family contained in that Parts Bin.

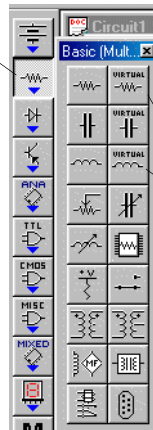
Using this first, most popular method of component toolbar with Parts Bins and Browser is explained below in section 5.1 The other two methods are explained subsequently.

**Note** For a detailed look at the make-up of the component Parts Bins, see “Classification of Components in the Database” on page 4-3.



For example:

Placing the cursor on this component toolbar Parts Bin...



...reveals this component family toolbar.

Virtual components.

Electronics Workbench provides the unique concept of virtual components in Multisim. Virtual components are not “real”, that is, cannot be purchased, and have no footprint. They are included for simulation flexibility. Virtual components appear by default in a different color from other components on the circuit window. You control the color as described on page 2-5.

## 3.5 Placing Components

### 3.5.1 Choosing a Component Using the Component Group Toolbars and Browser Screen

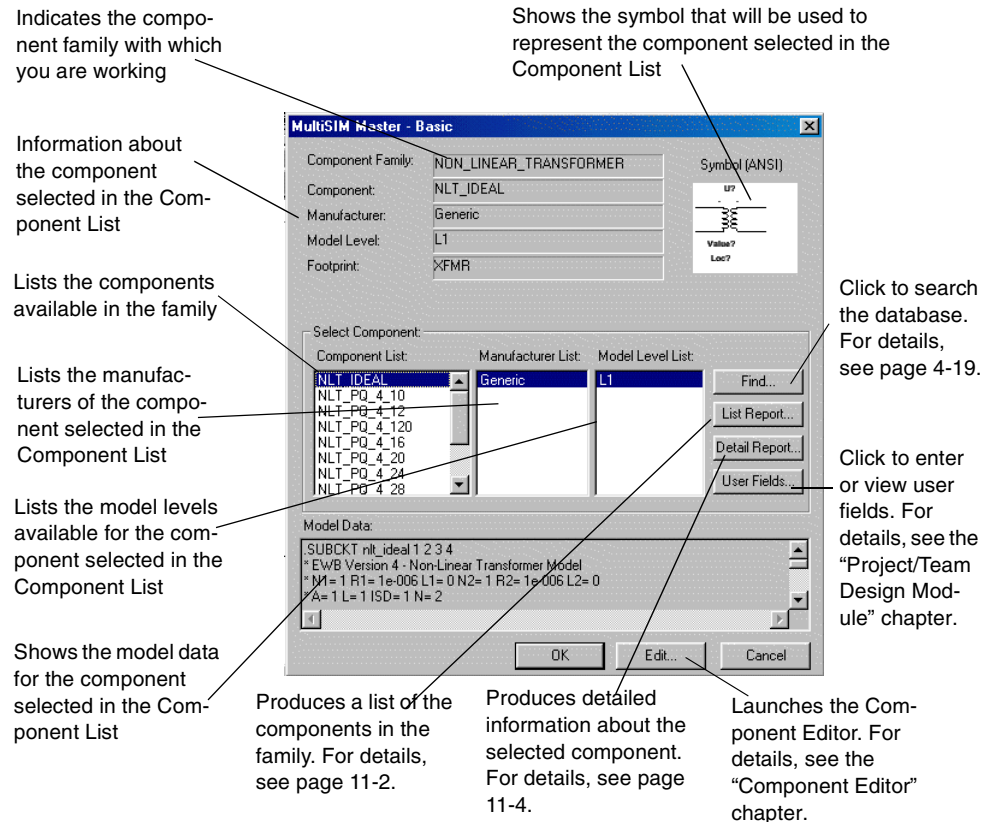


By default, the Component Design Bar button is enabled and one or more Component toolbars are visible. If no toolbar is visible, click the Component button on the Design Bar.

- To choose and place a component from a specific Parts Bin and family:
  1. On the desired Component toolbar, place the cursor on the desired Parts Bin. The associated component family toolbar appears.
  2. From the component family toolbar, click the button for the desired component family. If the selected component family has only a single component, you can simply place the component. For other components, a Browser screen for that component family appears.

- From the Browser screen, select the desired component from the **Component List**. Information about that component appears.

**Tip** To make your scroll through the Browser's **Components List** faster, simply type the first few characters of the component's name.



- To confirm that this is the component you want to place, click OK. (To cancel placing the component, click Cancel.) The Browser screen disappears and the cursor on the circuit window changes to indicate a component is ready to be placed. The cursor looks like this:

Arrow points to the upper left pin so you can easily line up your component to the desired grid point.



- Click on the circuit window at the location where you want the component placed. The component's symbol and labels appear (unless you have specified that they are not to be

displayed, as explained on page 3-19), as well as a unique reference ID made up of a character and number. The character represents the type of component and the number is a sequential number that indicates the order in which the components were originally placed. For example, the first digital component has the reference ID “U1”, the next is “U2”, the first inductor has the reference ID “L1”, and so on.

**Note** If the component you place is a virtual component (that is, it has no equivalent in the real world, and will therefore not be exported to Ultiboard), it is a different color from real components and the Browser is not required (i.e. no Step 3 above). This is because for virtual parts, you “set” their value once they are placed on the circuit window by double-clicking them. This color is set in your preferences, as explained on page 2-5.

**Note** If you are placing a component whose package includes multiple “devices” (for example, four separate gates), you are prompted to specify which of the sections you want to place. You can choose any one, and if desired, you can use all of the available devices from one chip before starting to use a second.

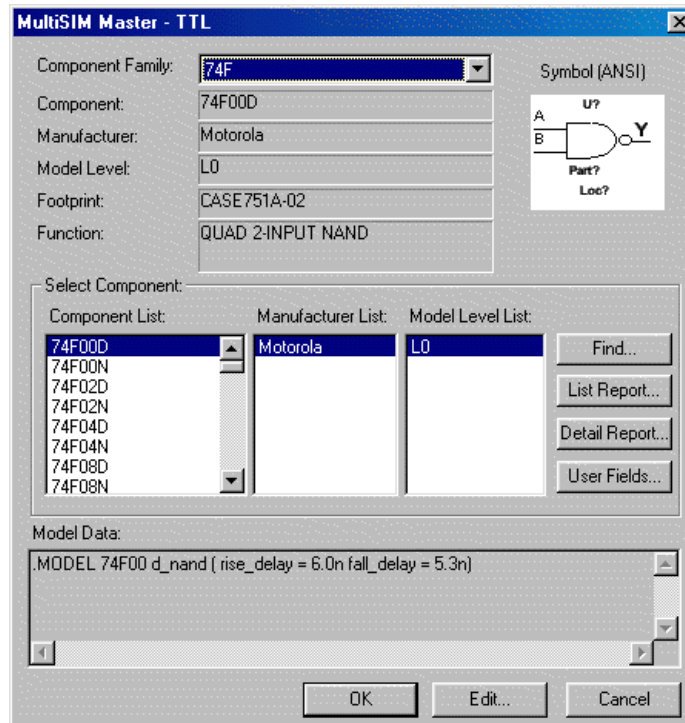
### 3.5.2 Choosing a Component with the Place Component Command

You can choose a component from any group or family by browsing through all the component groups in a specific level of the database to find an appropriate component to place.

To browse and place a component from any group or family:

1. Choose **Edit/Place Component**.
2. From the submenu that appears, choose the database level you are interested in.

3. The following Browser screen appears:



This is identical to the screen that appears when you use the component family toolbars, except that the component family is a drop-down list that alphabetically lists all available families. There is no grouping by Parts Bins. The list is not sorted into groups.

4. From the **Component Family** drop-down list, select the component family you are interested in. To help find your selection more quickly, you can enter the first letter or few letters and the list automatically jumps to that point.
5. From the **Component List** that appears, select the desired component. Information about that component appears.
6. To confirm that this is the component you want to place, click OK. (To cancel placing the component, click Cancel.) The Browser screen disappears and the cursor on the circuit window changes to indicate a component is ready to be placed. The cursor looks like this:

Arrow points to the upper left pin so you can easily line up your component.



- Click on the circuit window at the location where you want the component placed. The component's symbol and label appear (unless you have specified that they are not to be displayed, as explained on page 3-19), as well as a unique reference ID made up of a character and number. The character represents the type of component and the number is a sequential number that indicates the order in which the components were originally placed. For example, the first analog component has the reference ID "U1", the next analog component is "U2", the first inductor has the reference ID "L1", and so on.

If the component you place is a virtual component (that is, it has no equivalent in the real world, and will not be exported to Ultiboard), it is a different color from real-world components. This color is set in your preferences, as explained on page 2-5.

### 3.5.3 Using the "In Use" List

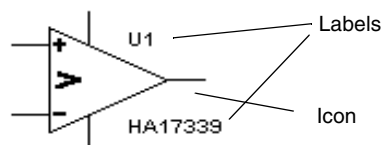
Each time you place a component, it is added to the "In Use" list (to the right of the Design Bar) for easy re-use. To place a copy of any placed component, simply select it from the list. The copied component appears at the top of your circuit window—you can move it to any location you like.

### 3.5.4 Moving a Placed Component

You can move a placed component to another location by either:

- dragging the component
- selecting it and pressing the arrow keys on your keyboard to move it up, down, or to either side

**Note** A component's icon and labels can be moved independently or together—if you plan to move the component, be sure the whole component is selected, not just its label.]



### 3.5.5 Copying a Placed Component

- To copy a placed component to another location:
    1. Select the desired component, and choose **Edit/Copy**.  
OR
    1. Right-click on the desired component, and, from the pop-up menu that appears, choose **Copy**.
    2. From the **Edit** menu, choose **Paste**.  
OR
    3. Right-click anywhere on the circuit window and, from the pop-up menu that appears, choose **Paste**.
    4. The cursor shows a “ghosted” version of the copied component. Click at the location where you want the copied component placed.
- Once you have placed the copied component, you can click and drag it to the desired location. You can also copy a component using the Windows control keys for cut (x), copy (c) and paste (v).

### 3.5.6 Controlling Component Color

The default color used for a component and the background color of the circuit window are controlled by your user preferences, as described on page 2-5.

- To change the color of the placed component from its default values, right-click on the component and choose **Color** from the pop-up menu that appears. You are presented with a color palette from which you can choose a color and click **OK** to apply it to the selected item.
- To change the color of the background, and the default color scheme used throughout the circuit, right-click on the circuit window. The window that appears allows you to set a different color scheme. For more on color schemes, see page 2-5.

## 3.6 Wiring Components

Once you have placed components on the circuit window, you will want to wire them together. All components have pins that you can use to wire them to other components or instruments. You can choose to wire components either automatically or manually. Automatic wiring, a feature unique to Multisim, means Multisim finds the path for wire placement for you and avoids wiring through other components or overlapping wires. Manual wiring means

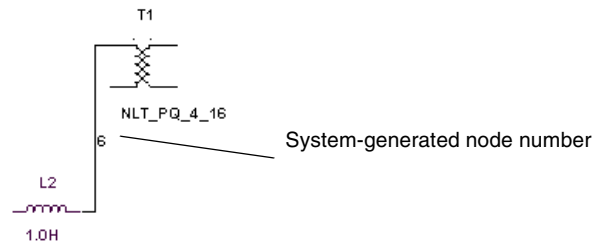


you control the flow of the wire on the circuit window. You can easily combine these methods for a single connection, for example, by starting with manual wiring and then switching to automatic.

Professional and Power Professional users can also create virtual connections for components that are a long distance apart in the circuit window, as described on page 3-22.

### 3.6.1 Wiring Components Automatically

- To wire two components together, automatically:
  1. Click on a pin from the first component to start the connection (your pointer turns into a + sign) and drag. A wire appears, attached to your cursor.
  2. Click on a pin on the second component to finish the connection. Multisim automatically places the wire, which snaps to an appropriate configuration. The wire is numbered as a node.



**Tip** If the connection was not successful, you may be trying to place the wire too close to other surrounding components. Try make the connection at a slightly different location, or use manual wiring, as described in the following section.

For information on changing the color of the wire, see page 3-12.

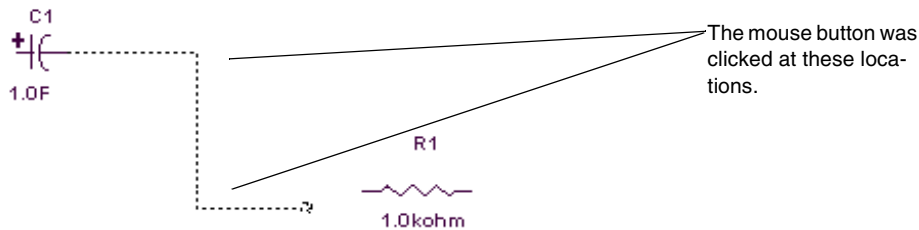
**Note** To stop the wiring process at any time, press ESC.

- To delete a wire, click on it and press DELETE or right-click on it and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu that appears.

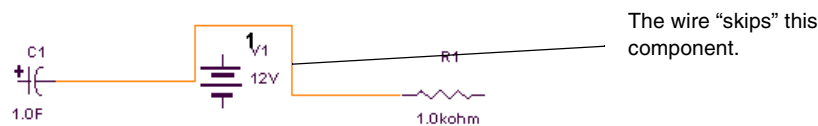
### 3.6.2 Wiring Components Manually

- To wire two components together, manually:
  1. Click on a pin from the first component to start the connection (your pointer turns into a + sign) and drag. A wire appears, attached to your cursor.

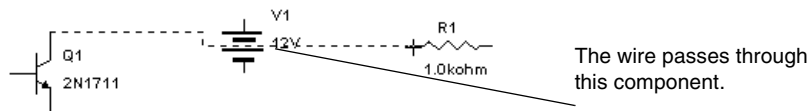
- Control the flow of the wire by clicking on points as you drag. Each click “fixes” the wire to that point. For example:



By default, Multisim avoids (“skips over”) components to which it is not connected. For example:



To pass through intermediary components instead, position the wire at the desired location beside the intermediary component and press SHIFT while dragging the wire. For example:



- Click on the desired pin of the second component to finish the connection. The wire snaps to an appropriate configuration and the connection is numbered.

**Note** To stop the wiring process at any time, press ESC.

- To delete a wire, click on it and press DELETE or right-click on it and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu that appears.

### 3.6.3 Combining Automatic and Manual Wiring

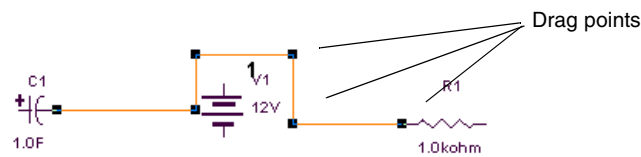
You can combine the two methods of wiring when placing a single wire. Multisim assumes you always want to perform automatic wiring until you click somewhere, which “locks” the



wire to that point (this is manual wiring). Multisim then continues with automatic wiring, until you click once more—either at a destination pin or wire to complete the connection, or at another interim point on the wire you are placing. This method allows you to use automatic wiring for most connections, and use manual wiring only for difficult paths or portions of paths.

### 3.6.4 Modifying Wire Path

- To alter the shape of the path once it is placed:
  1. Click on the wire. A number of drag points appear on the wire:



2. Click any of these and drag to modify the shape.

You can add or remove drag points to give you even more control over the wire shape.

- To add or remove drag points, press CTRL and click on the wire at the location where you want the drag point added or removed.

### 3.6.5 Controlling Wire Color

The default color used for wires is controlled by your user preferences, as described on page 2-5.

- To change the color of the placed wire from its default values, right-click on the wire and choose **Color** from the pop-up menu that appears. You are presented with a color palette from which you can choose a color and click **OK** to apply it to the selected item.
- To change the color scheme (including the default wire color) for the current circuit only, right-click on the circuit window. The window that appears allows you to set a different color scheme. For more on color schemes, see page 2-5.

## 3.7 Manually Adding a Junction (Connector)

If you want to start a wire at a position that is neither a pin nor a junction, you must add a junction. Multisim automatically inserts junctions when you connect one wire to another wire to differentiate them from wires simply crossing but not connected.

- To manually add a junction:
  1. Choose **Edit/Place Junction**. Your cursor changes to indicate that a junction is ready to be placed.
  2. Click on the location where you want the junction placed. You are prompted with the Node screen, where you set node properties. Complete this screen as necessary (you can normally leave all settings unchanged; see page 3-20 for details) and click **OK**. A node appears at the selected location.

**Note** To prevent wiring errors, Multisim prevents you wiring more than once to a single pin.

## 3.8 Rotating/Flipping Components

You can rotate or flip a component by either using the pop-up menu or selecting the component and using commands from the **Edit** menu. The instructions below describe the pop-up menu method only.

- To rotate a component:
  1. Right-click on the component.
  2. From the pop-up menu that appears, choose **90 Clockwise** to rotate the component 90 degrees clockwise.

or

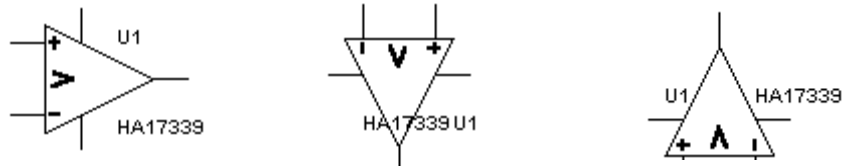
Choose **90 CounterCW** to rotate the component 90 degrees counter clockwise.

For example:

Unrotated:

Rotated clockwise:

Rotated counter-clockwise:



**Note** Text associated with the component, such as labels, values, and model information, may be repositioned, but is not rotated. Any wires attached to the component are rerouted automatically.

➤ To flip a component:

1. Right-click on the component.
2. From the pop-up menu that appears, choose **Flip Horizontal** to flip the component horizontally.

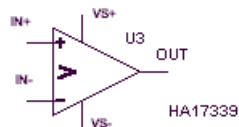
or

Choose **Flip Vertical** to flip the component vertically.

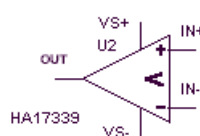
**Note** Text associated with the component, such as labels, values, and model information, may be repositioned, but is not flipped. Any wires attached to the component are rerouted automatically. Not all components can be rotated, or flipped.

For example:

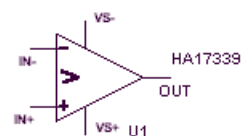
Unrotated:



Flipped Horizontally



Flipped Vertically



## 3.9 Placed Component Properties

Each component placed on the circuit window has a set of properties that control certain aspects of it beyond those stored in the Multisim database. These properties affect only the placed component, not other instances of that component in other circuits or other locations in

this circuit. Depending on the type of component, these properties determine some or all of the following:

- the identifying information and labels about the placed component to be displayed on the circuit window (for details, see “Modifying Component Labels” on page 3-19)
- the model of the placed component
- for some components, how the placed component will be used in analyses
- the faults to be used for the placed component’s nodes.

The properties also show the component’s value or model and footprint.

### 3.9.1 Displaying Identifying Information about a Placed Component

As described on page 2-5, the default settings for which of the three pieces of identifying information (label, values and reference ID) are displayed is set in user preferences. User preferences are used when a new circuit is created. You can also use **View/Show** to display a window where you can set these defaults for the current circuit only. Finally, you can override these settings for an individual placed component.

- To set the identifying information to be displayed for a placed component:
  1. Double-click on the component. A “properties” screen for the selected component appears.
  2. Click the Display tab.

When this option is enabled, the types of identifying information displayed for this individual component are controlled by this circuit’s settings.

These options determine which identifying information is displayed for this individual component.



3. Disable the **Use Schematic Option global setting** option.
4. Enable the identifying information you want displayed for this component, and disable the identifying information you do not want displayed for this component.
5. To cancel your settings, click **Cancel**. To save your settings, click **OK**.

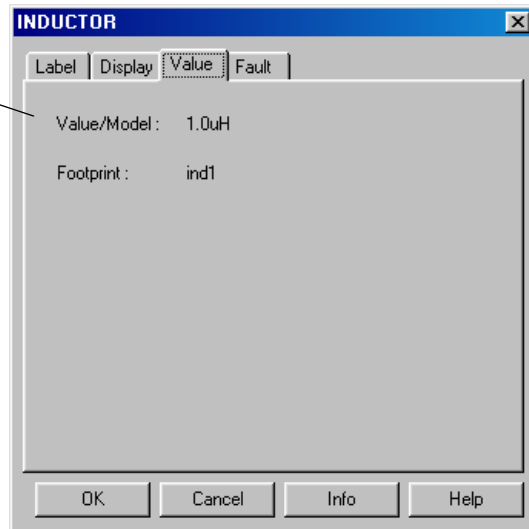
### 3.9.2 Viewing a Placed Component's Value/Model



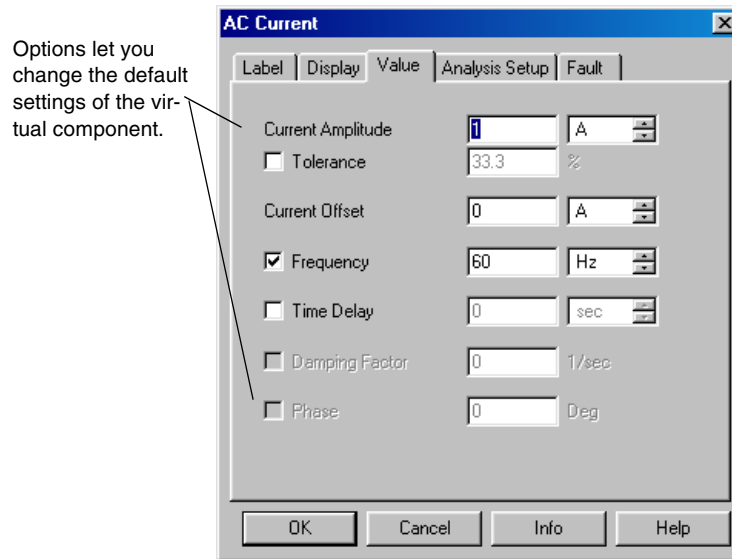
The Values tab of the “component properties” screen for a component shows the value/model being used for the placed component. Depending on the type of component, you see one of two types of tabs.

For real components, the tab looks like this:

Identifies the model currently used by the component. (From the Browser with the part selected, you can view the model by clicking Detailed Report or you can edit by clicking Edit.)



For virtual components, whose “value” can be set manually, the tab looks similar to this:



You can modify any of these fields (if a field is not editable, be sure you have enabled its corresponding option). To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To save your changes, click **OK**.

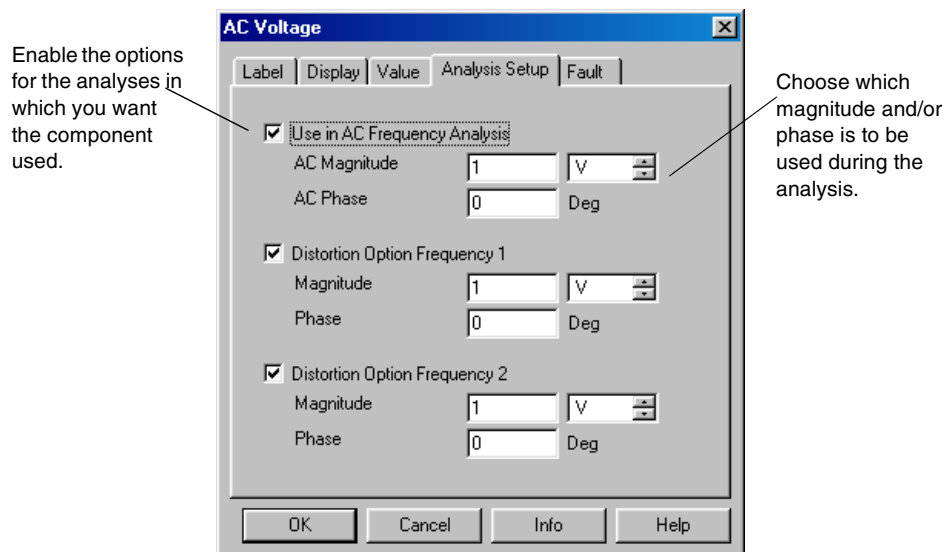
This ability to change the value of a part exists only for “virtual” components. It is important that you understand these components. Virtual components are not real, that is, you could not go to a supplier and purchase them. They are provided for your convenience. Multisim treats them slightly differently from real parts in two ways. First, by default virtual components are shown in a different color than real components on your schematic. This is to remind you that, since they are not real, these components will not be exported to PCB Layout software, should you perform this step later. You will see this difference in the next step, when you place a resistor. Second, when you place such parts you do not need to choose from the Browser (which is shown in the next step), since you can set the value of a virtual part to anything you want.

Virtual parts include all sources, virtual resistors/inductors/capacitors, and numerous other “ideal” devices intended to provide theoretical equivalents of, for example, the perfect opamp.

### 3.9.3 Controlling How a Placed Component is Used in Analyses

For some components, you can determine how they are to be used in any analyses you might perform on the circuit. These components offer an additional “properties” screen tab — Analysis Setup.

- To control how the component is used in analyses:
  1. Double-click on the component. The “properties” screen for the component appears.
  2. Click the Analysis Setup tab:



3. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To save your changes, click **OK**.

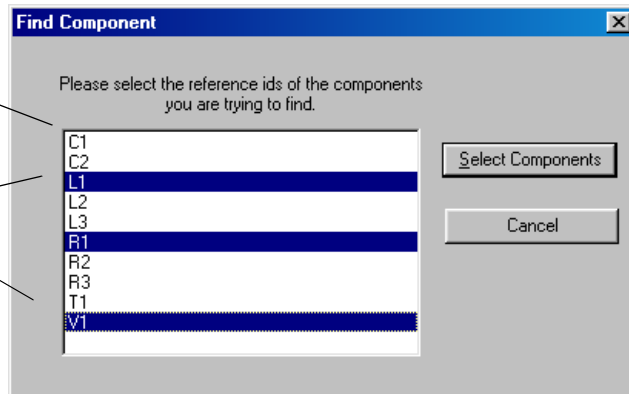
## 3.10 Finding Components in Your Circuit

➤ To quickly find a component in the circuit window:

1. Choose **View/Find**. A list of the components in your circuit appears.

This is the list of the reference IDs of all components in the circuit.

Selected components will be selected in the circuit window.



2. Select any number of components (hold down the SHIFT key while clicking to select more than one).
3. Click **Select Components**. All selected components are also selected in the circuit window.

## 3.11 Labelling

Multisim assigns a label to a placed component, node or pin. You can modify or move the component or node label. Pin labels are set in the Component Editor, as explained in the “Component Editor” chapter. You can control which elements are displayed at the circuit or component level, as described on page 3-15.

Multisim also allows you to add a title block (described on page 3-21) and additional text to your circuit (described on page 3-21).

### 3.11.1 Modifying Component Labels

Labels and, for most components, a reference ID as well are assigned by Multisim to a placed component. You can also assign this information using the Component Properties screen.

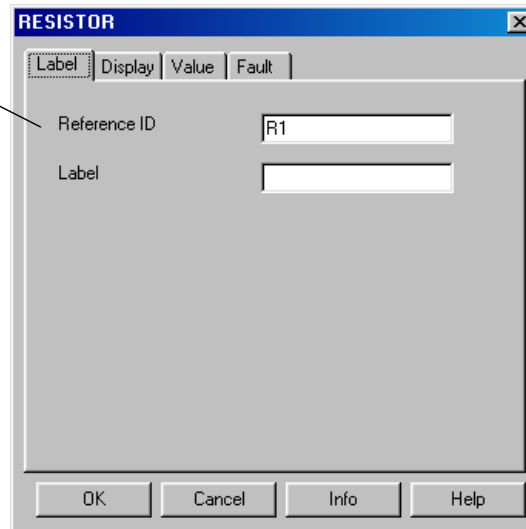
➤ To assign a label and/or reference ID to a placed component:

1. Double-click on the component. The Component Properties screen appears.



2. Click the Label tab:

Enter or modify the reference ID and/or label here.



3. Enter or modify the label and/or reference ID text (which must be composed of letters or numbers only — no special characters or spaces).

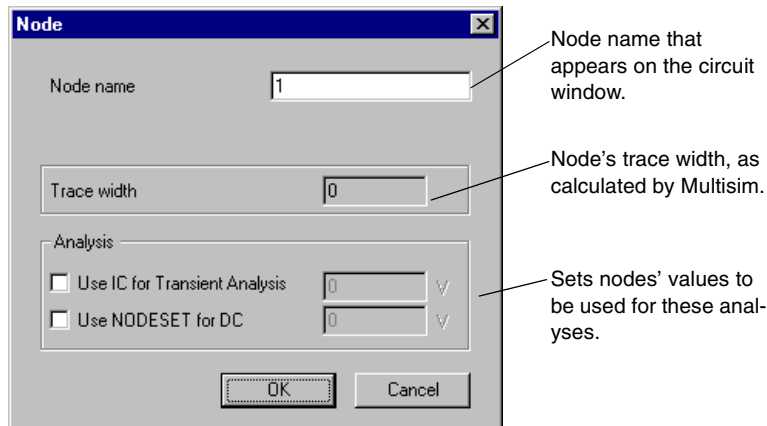
**Note** If you assign the same reference ID to more than one component, Multisim warns you that this is not normally desirable. If you proceed, and are a Professional or Power Professional user, Multisim creates a “virtual connection” between the components with the same reference ID (as described on page 3-22). If you are not a Professional or Power Professional user, you cannot proceed with assigning the same reference ID to multiple components.

4. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To save your changes, click **OK**.

### 3.11.2 Modifying Node Numbers

Multisim automatically assigns a node number to each node in the circuit. You can modify and move these labels.

- To modify a node label:
  1. Double-click on the wire. The Node properties screen appears:



2. Make the desired settings.
3. To confirm your settings, click **OK**. To cancel them, click **Cancel**.

**Note** You should exercise caution when doing this, as node names are critical to your circuit's connectivity as understood by simulation or PCB layout.

### 3.11.3 Adding a Title Block

You can enter information including title, description and size about your circuit using the Title Block screen. Whether or not the title block appears is set as described on page 3-2.

- To enter information about your circuit:
  1. Choose **Edit/Set Title Block**. The Title Block screen appears.
  2. Enter information about your circuit and click **OK**. The title block appears at the bottom right corner of the sheet. If the title block does not appear, it may be set to be hidden. See page 3-2 for details.
- To edit the contents of a title block, choose **Edit/Set Title Block** and modify the text.

### 3.11.4 Adding Miscellaneous Text

Multisim allows you to add notes to a circuit, for example to explain a particular part of a circuit.

- To add text:
  1. Choose **Edit/Place Text**.
  2. Click on the location where you want the text placed. A text box appears.
  3. Type the text.



4. Click elsewhere on the circuit window to stop adding text.
- To delete text, right-click on the text box and choose **Delete** from the pop-up menu that appears or press DELETE.
  - To change the color of text, right-click on the text box, choose **Color** from the pop-up menu that appears, and choose the desired color.

## 3.12 Virtual Wiring

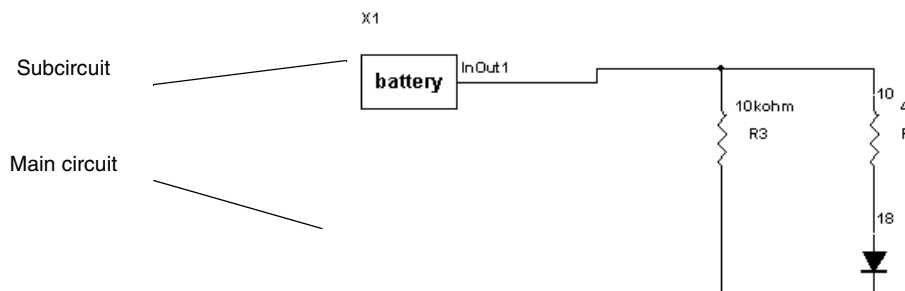


- To make a virtual connection between components (Professional and Power Professional users only), modify the components' node numbers (as explained on page 3-19) to give the components the same node numbers. Multisim prompts you to confirm that you want this duplication. Ignore the warning. Multisim creates a virtual connection between components that have the same reference ID.

## 3.13 Subcircuits and Hierarchy

### 3.13.1 Subcircuits vs. Hierarchy

Multisim allows you to use one circuit inside another. The embedded circuit, or subcircuit, appears as a single icon on the circuit window of the circuit in which it is embedded, simplifying the appearance of the circuit.



For users with the Project/Team Design module, the subcircuit capability is expanded to offer hierarchical design. In this case, the subcircuit remains a separate schematic file which can be edited. In this case, the connection between a subcircuit and the circuit in which it is placed is an active link. That is, if you place the contents of circuit A as a subcircuit of circuit B, you can open circuit A separately, make any changes necessary, and those changes are automatically reflected in circuit B and in any other circuits that use circuit A. This feature, called hierarchical design, is described in the “Project/Team Design Module” chapter.



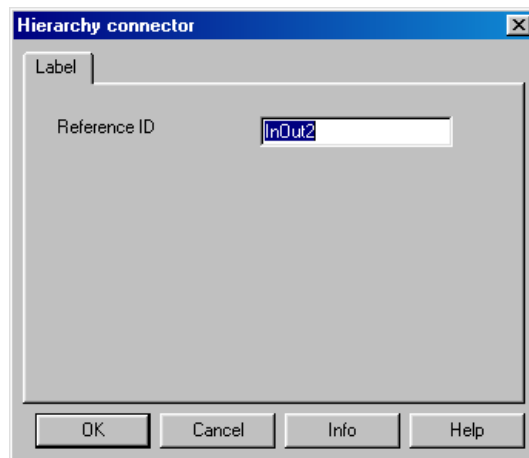
Multisim’s hierarchical functionality allows you to build a hierarchy of inter-circuits, increasing the reusability of your circuit designs and ensuring consistency among a group of designers. For example, you might build a library of commonly used circuits, stored in a central location. Those circuits could in turn be contained in other, more complex circuits, which could be used to create yet another level of circuit design. Since Multisim’s Project/Team Design module allows the interconnected circuits to be linked together, therefore updating automatically, you can ensure that refinements made to one circuit are carried out in all related circuits as well. This lets you, for example, divide a complex project into smaller, interconnected circuits for completion by individual team members. For more on this module, see the “Project/Team Design Module” chapter.

For non-hierarchy users, the subcircuit becomes part of the circuit file in which it is embedded. The subcircuit can be modified, and its changes will affect the circuit in which it is embedded, but you must open the subcircuit from within the circuit in which it is embedded. You cannot open the subcircuit directly. When you save the file, the subcircuit is saved with it.

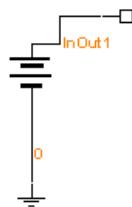
### 3.13.2 Setting up a Circuit for Use as a Subcircuit

To make it possible to wire a subcircuit into your circuit, you should add Input/Output nodes to the circuit which will be the subcircuit. These appear on the subcircuit's icon when the subcircuit is embedded in a circuit, so you can see where to add the connecting wires.

- To add an input/output node to a circuit:
  1. Choose **Edit/Place Input/Output**. The cursor changes to indicate a node is ready to be placed.
  2. Click at the location where you want the input/output node placed.
  3. You are prompted to provide a label for the new node:

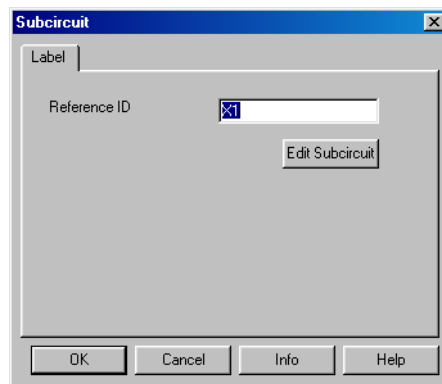


4. The connecting node is placed on your circuit window. You can wire it into your circuit as with any other components. For example, here is the battery subcircuit used as a subcircuit on the previous page:



### 3.13.3 Adding Subcircuits to a Circuit

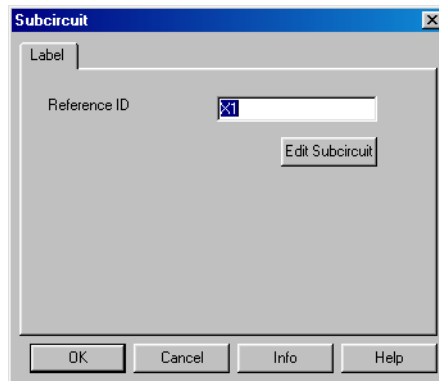
- To add a subcircuit to a circuit:
  1. Copy or cut the desired circuit file or portion of a circuit file to the clipboard.
  2. Choose **Edit/Paste as Subcircuit/Macro**. You are prompted for a new name for the subcircuit and the contents of the clipboard are pasted in a new, dependent circuit window. Although this window looks like any other circuit window, it is linked to the window of the circuit in which the subcircuit is placed.
  3. Return to the circuit window where you want to place the subcircuit (by choosing that window from the **Window** menu or closing the subcircuit's circuit window).
  4. Your cursor changes to indicate a subcircuit is ready to be placed, with the arrow on the cursor figure pointing to the upper left pin so you can easily line up your subcircuit in the appropriate place. Click on the location in the circuit where you want the subcircuit placed (you can move it later, if necessary). You are prompted to label the subcircuit:



5. The subcircuit appears in the desired location on the circuit window as a box with the original circuit file name inside it.

That box can be manipulated as with any other components. For example, you can right-click on the icon and rotate it or set its color. You can also connect wires from the original circuit to any appropriate location in the subcircuit (that is, where potential input/output connections are available), as shown earlier in this section.

- To edit a subcircuit:
  1. Double-click on the icon in the main circuit window that represents the subcircuit. The Subcircuit screen appears:



2. Click **Edit Subcircuit**.

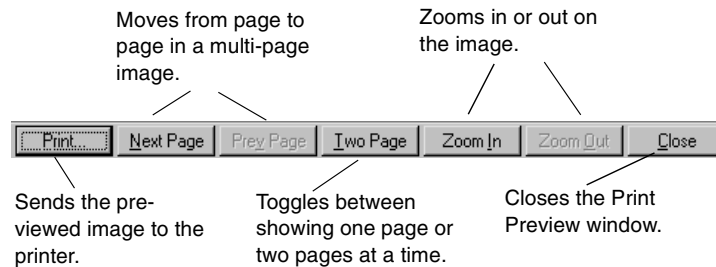
The subcircuit appears in its own window, from which you can edit the subcircuit as you would any other circuit.

## 3.14 Printing the Circuit

Multisim allows you to control specific aspects of your printing, including:

- whether to output in color or black and white
  - whether to include the background in the printed output,
  - page margins for printing
  - scaling of the circuit's image fit the printed output.
- To set the default printing environment for future circuits, use **Edit/User Preferences**, as described on page 2-8.
  - To set the default printing environment for this circuit, choose **File/Print Setup**, then click **Page Setup**. The window that appears offers three tabs which provide the same choices as in the User Preferences screen. For details, see page 2-8.
  - To print the circuit file using the specified environment, choose **File/Prints/Print Circuit**.
  - To preview your printed file, choose **File/Print Preview**. The circuit appears in a preview window where you can zoom in, move from page to page, and send the circuit to the printer.

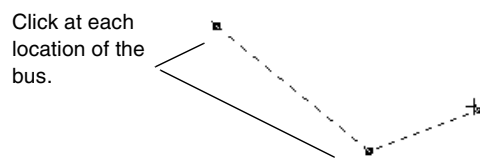
The Print Preview screen offers the following toolbar:



## 3.15 Placing a Bus

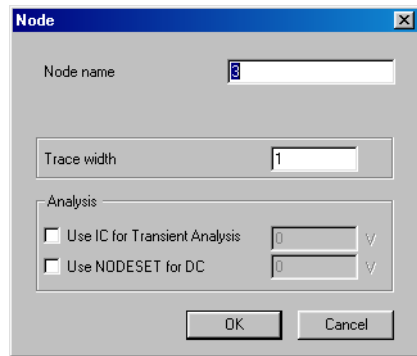
Buses are a set of parallel paths in your schematic that are used to connect one group of pins over a similar path to another group of pins. When implemented on a PCB, for example, it may in fact be a single piece of copper or series of cables carrying several binary bits in parallel representing a digital word.

- To place a bus in your circuit:
  1. Choose **Edit/Place Bus**.
  2. Click on the first point for the bus.
  3. Click on the next point for the bus.
  4. Continue to click on points until the bus is complete.
  5. Double-click to mark the ending point of the bus. The bus is drawn in the same color set for virtual components.

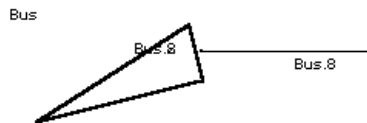




6. Wire the bus into your circuit by dragging a wire to any location on the bus. The Node screen appears:



7. If necessary, change the name shown (this name is appended to the word “Bus” to form the node name) and click **OK**. For example:



- To change the color of the bus, right-click on it and choose **Color** from the pop-up menu that appears.
- To change the reference ID of the bus (by default, Multisim gives it the reference ID “bus”), double-click the bus and change the reference ID in the properties screen that appears.

## 3.16 Using the Pop-up Menu

### 3.16.1 From Circuit Window, with no Component Selected

If you right-click on the circuit window with no component selected, a pop-up menu of appropriate commands appears. These commands are:

Command	Description
Place Component	Lets you browse the entire database (“Multisim master” level, “corporate” level and “user” level) for components to be placed. For details, see page 3-6.
Place Junction	Places a connector when you click. For details, see page 3-13.
Place Bus	Places a bus with segments created as you click. For details, see page 3-27.
Place Input/Output	Places an external circuit within the current circuit. For details, see page 13-5.
Place Hierarchical Block	Opens a file to be embedded as a subcircuit. For details, see page 3-24.
Place Text	Lets you place text on the circuit. For details, see page 3-21.
Grid Visible	Shows or hides grid in the background of the circuit window. This helps you place elements in specific locations on a grid. For details, see page 3-2.
Show Page Bounds	Shows or hides page boundaries in the circuit window. This helps you note where circuits will appear on printed output. For details, see page 3-2.
Show Title Block and Border	Shows or hides the circuit’s title block and border. For details, see page 3-2.

Command	Description
Zoom	Lets you choose a magnification of 50%, 75%, 100%, 200% or other for viewing the circuit.
Find	Displays a list of the reference IDs in the current circuit. You can select one or more of these reference IDs, which are then selected in the circuit window. For details, see page 3-19.
Color	Lets you choose or modify the color scheme for the circuit. Overrides the defaults set in <b>File/Preferences</b> . For details, see page 2-5.
Show	Lets you choose what component elements appear on the circuit window. Overrides the defaults set in <b>File/Preferences</b> . For details, see page 2-6.
Help	

### 3.16.2 From Circuit Window, with Component or Instrument Selected

If you right-click on the circuit window with a component selected, a pop-up menu of appropriate commands appears. These commands are:

- Cut — removes selected components, circuits or text.
- Copy — copies selected components, circuits or text. For details, see “Copying a Placed Component” on page 3-9.
- Paste — pastes selected components, circuits or text that have been cut or copied. For details, see “Copying a Placed Component” on page 3-9.
- Flip Horizontal — flips the selection vertically. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.
- Flip Vertical — flips the selection horizontally. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.
- 90 Clockwise — rotates the selection 90 degrees clockwise. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.
- 90 CounterCW — rotates the selection 90 degrees counter-clockwise. For details, see “Rotating/Flipping Components” on page 3-13.
- Color — changes the color of the placed component from its default values. For details, see “Controlling Component Color” on page 3-9.

### 3.16.3 From Circuit Window, with Wire Selected

- Delete — deletes the selected wire.
- Color — changes the color of the selected wire from its default values.



# Chapter 4

## Components

4.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	4-1
4.2	Structure of the Component Database . . . . .	4-1
4.2.1	Database Levels . . . . .	4-1
4.2.2	Displaying Database Level Information4-2	
4.2.3	Classification of Components in the Database . . . . .	4-3
4.2.3.1	Component Families List . . . . .	4-5
4.2.3.2	Sources Toolbar . . . . .	4-6
4.2.3.3	Basic Toolbar . . . . .	4-8
4.2.3.4	Diodes Toolbar . . . . .	4-9
4.2.3.5	Transistors Toolbar . . . . .	4-10
4.2.3.6	Analog Toolbar . . . . .	4-12
4.2.3.7	TTL Toolbar . . . . .	4-13
4.2.3.8	CMOS Toolbar . . . . .	4-14
4.2.3.9	Miscellaneous Digital Toolbar . . . . .	4-15
4.2.3.10	Mixed Chips Toolbar . . . . .	4-16
4.2.3.11	Indicators Toolbar . . . . .	4-17
4.2.3.12	Miscellaneous Toolbar . . . . .	4-18
4.2.3.13	Controls Toolbar . . . . .	4-19
4.2.3.14	RF Toolbar . . . . .	4-20
4.2.3.15	Electromechanical Toolbar . . . . .	4-21
4.3	Locating Components in the Database . . . . .	4-21
4.3.1	Browsing for Components . . . . .	4-21
4.3.2	Standard Searching for Components . . . . .	4-22
4.3.3	Advanced Searching for Components . . . . .	4-24
4.4	Types of Information Stored for Components . . . . .	4-26
4.4.1	Pre-Defined Fields . . . . .	4-27
4.4.1.1	General Information4-27	
4.4.1.2	Common Parameters4-28	
4.4.1.3	Component-Specific Data4-29	
4.4.2	User Fields . . . . .	4-29

4.5	Component Nominal Values and Tolerances . . . . .	4-29
-----	---	------

# Chapter 4

## Components

### 4.1 About this Chapter

This chapter introduces you to the underlying structure and organization of the Multisim component database. It also explains how to access the database for parts and how to search the database for information.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 4.2 Structure of the Component Database

The Multisim component database is designed to hold the information necessary to precisely describe any component. It contains all the details needed for schematic capture (symbols), simulation (models), and PCB layout (footprints), as well as other electrical information. The power of the Multisim database comes from its structure: multiple levels, well-organized component groupings, and detailed information fields.

#### 4.2.1 Database Levels

Components are stored in a database which is made up of three levels:



- the “Multisim master” level stores the components as originally designed by Electronics Workbench and shipped with Multisim, which remain the same for all users of Multisim
- the “corporate” level (available only for users with the Project/Team Design module) stores components selected and, possibly, modified or created by an individual user but remains available to any other selected users.
- the “user” level stores components modified, imported or created by you, which are available only to you.



If you modify a component, thereby creating your own version, you must store it in either the “user” or “corporate” level. You cannot modify the “Multisim master” level (this is a safety precaution to prevent corruption of the component database shipped as part of Multisim).



You choose which database levels you want displayed by selecting from the database selector, as explained on page 4-1.

The “user” and “corporate” levels of the database are empty when you first use Multisim. You can use the “user” level to store frequently used components, favorite components or components that you create or import using the Component Editor (which is described in the following chapter).



The “corporate” level of the database (available only for users with the Project/Team Design module) is primarily intended for companies or individuals who work on projects where components with specific attributes are shared within a group or project. It can be set up by your company, or, if you wish, by Electronics Workbench. Contact us for more information about this service.

### 4.2.2 Displaying Database Level Information

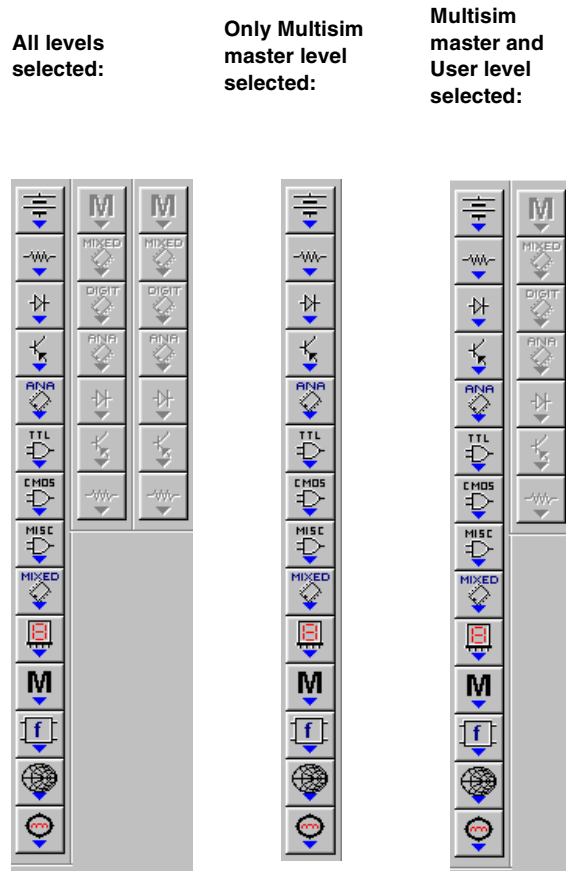
A separate Component toolbar exists for each database level, letting you build a circuit that combines components from any or all of the available levels. By default, only the “Multisim master” level Component toolbar is displayed.

- To control which Component toolbars are displayed, in the database selector, enable each level of database you want to use.



**Note** If the database selector does not appear on your screen, choose **View/Toolbars/Data-base** to show it.

The associated Component toolbars appear as follows:



### 4.2.3 Classification of Components in the Database

Multisim divides components into logical groups, each represented by a Parts Bins. Each Parts Bins contains families of related components. The Parts Bins are listed below:

- Sources
- Basic
- Diodes
- Transistors

- Analog ICs
- TTL
- CMOS
- Miscellaneous Digital ICs
- Mixed Chips
- Indicators
- Miscellaneous
- Controls
- RF (for users with RF module)
- Electromechanical



Each toolbar has two versions: ANSI (American standard) and DIN (European standard). The two standards use different icons to represent the components. Both are shown in the sections that follow.

**Note** The content of the toolbars may change as the database expands.

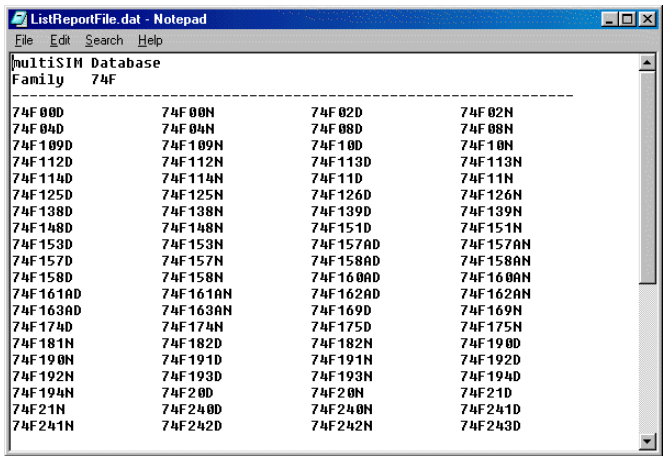
- To switch between ANSI and DIN symbol sets, choose **Edit/User Preferences**. In the Preferences tab, select the standard you wish to use.

### 4.2.3.1 Component Families List

The appendices of this manual list all the contents of each component family.

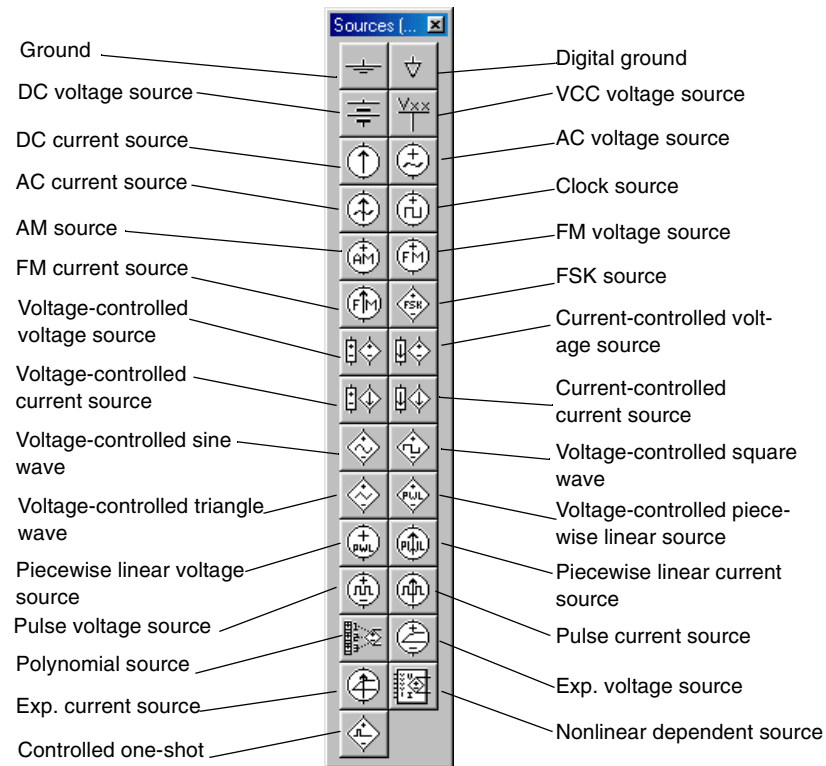
- To see the contents of any family:
  1. From the Browser screen that appears when you are placing a component, click **List Report**.

2. A Notepad window appears, listing all the components stored within the currently selected family. For example:

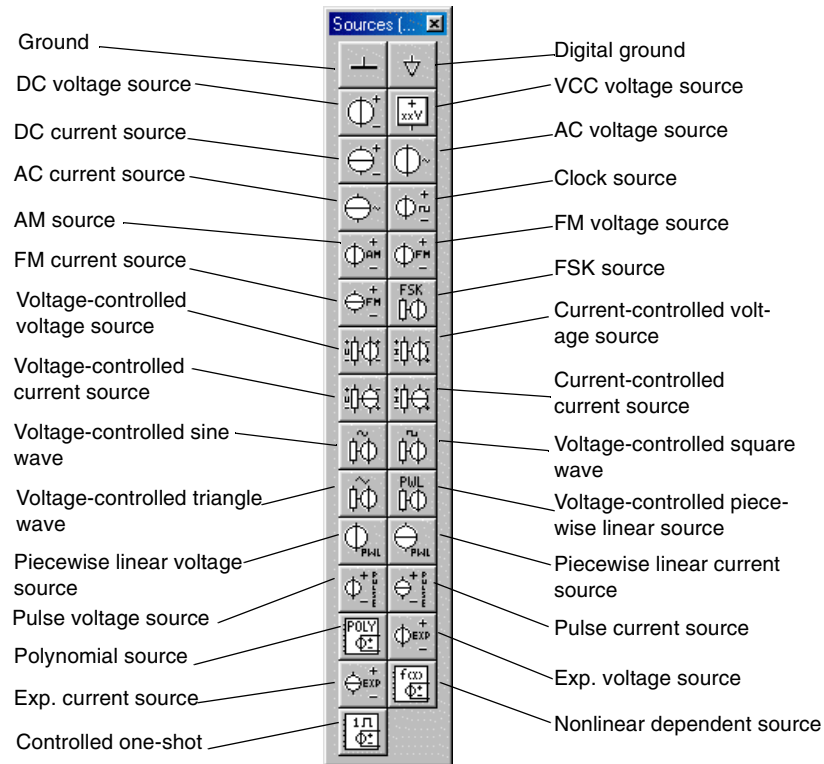


### 4.2.3.2 Sources Toolbar

ANSI:



**DIN:**

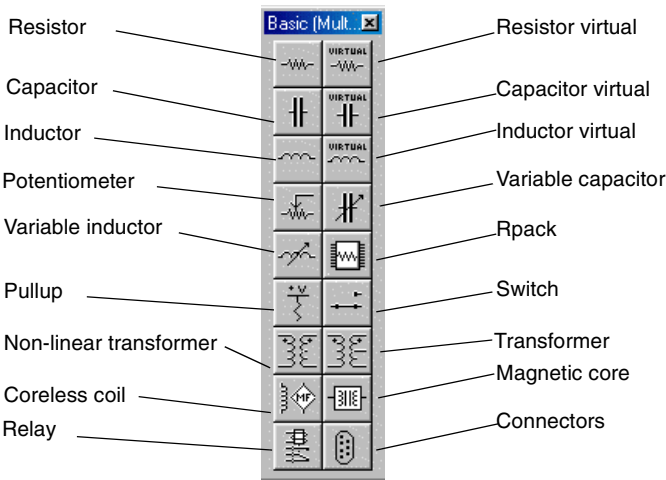


For details about these component families, see Appendix C.

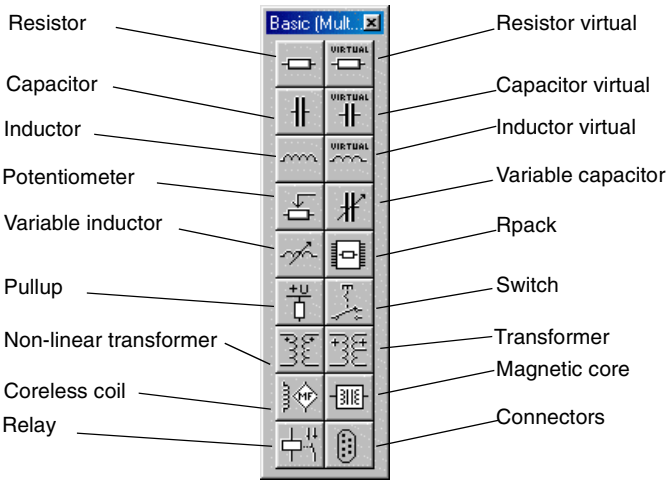
**Note** If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix B in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

4.2.3.3 Basic Toolbar

ANSI:



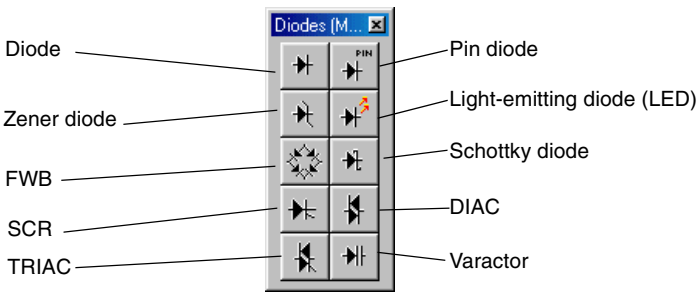
DIN:



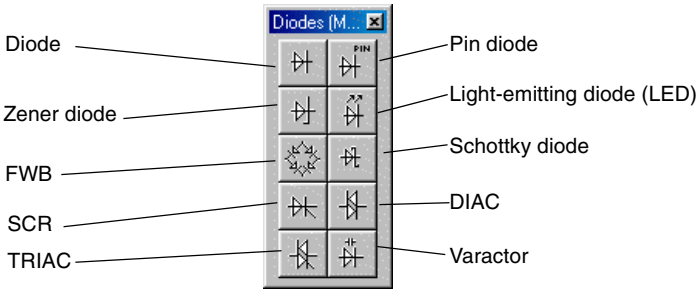
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix D. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix B in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

4.2.3.4 Diodes Toolbar

ANSI:



DIN:

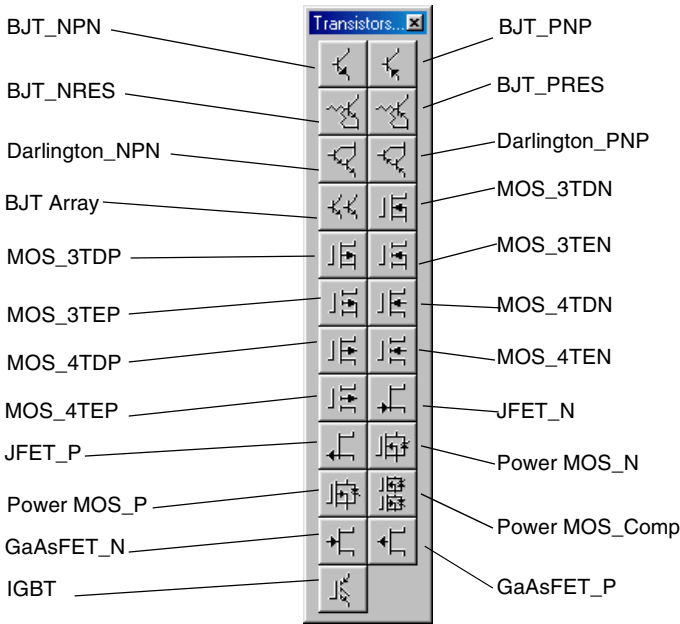


**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix E. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix C in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

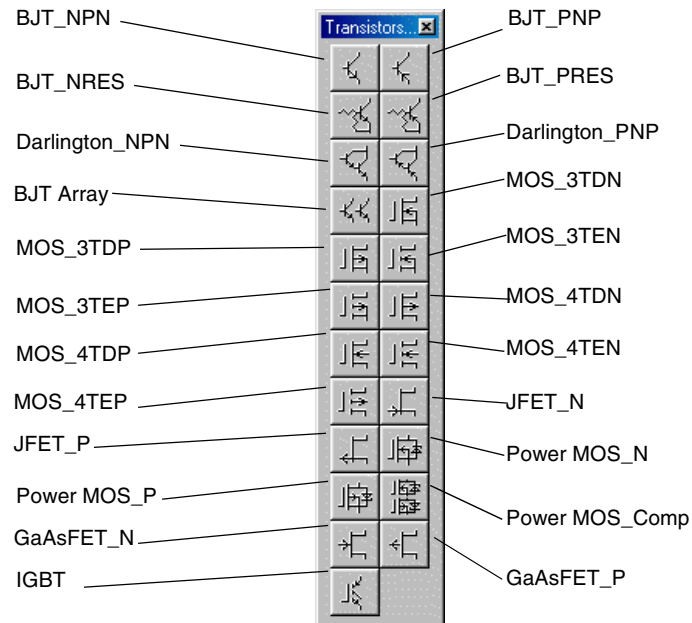


4.2.3.5 Transistors Toolbar

ANSI:



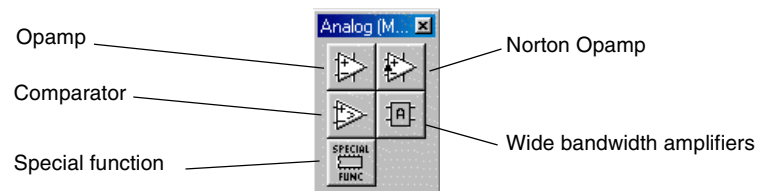
## DIN:



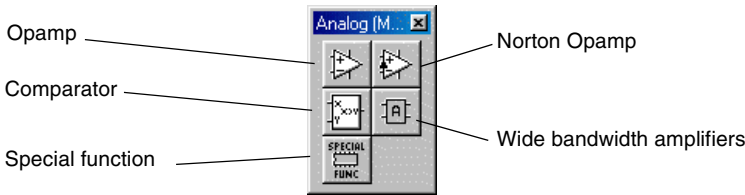
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix F. If you did not receive a printed copy of the appendices, you can find Appendix D in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

## 4.2.3.6 Analog Toolbar

### ANSI:



DIN:

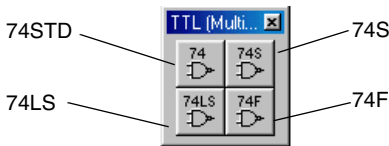


F

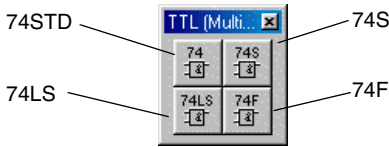
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix G. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix E in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

4.2.3.7 TTL Toolbar

ANSI:



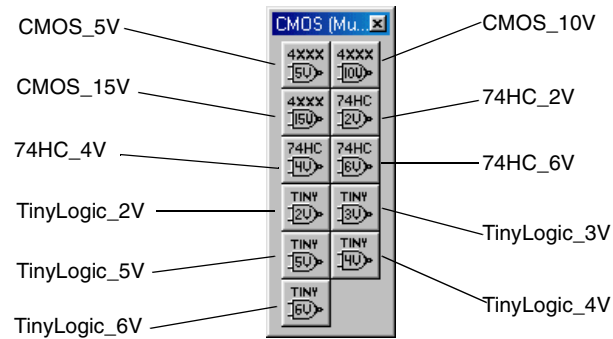
DIN:



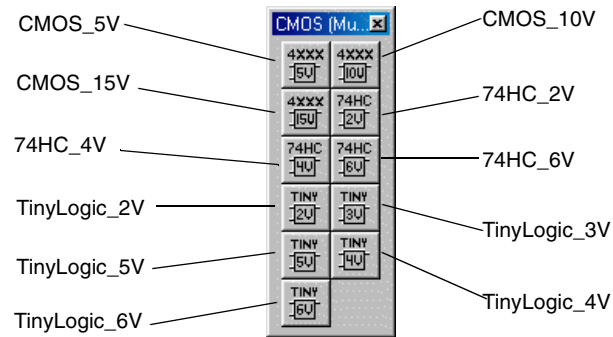
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix H. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix F in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

### 4.2.3.8 CMOS Toolbar

#### ANSI:



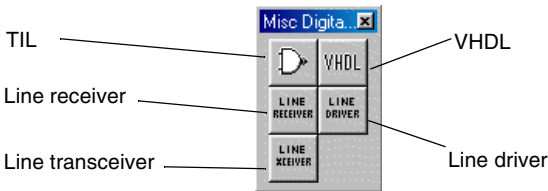
#### DIN:



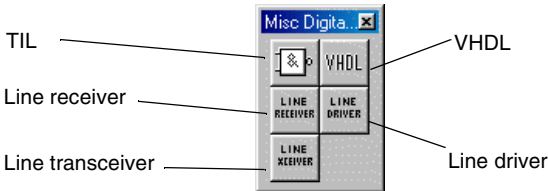
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix I. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix G in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

### 4.2.3.9 Miscellaneous Digital Toolbar

ANSI:



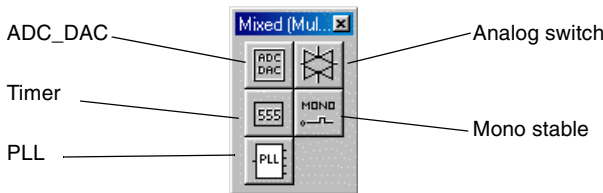
DIN:



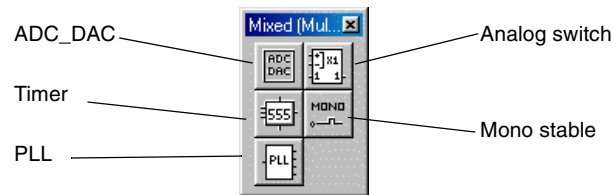
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix J. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix H in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

### 4.2.3.10 Mixed Chips Toolbar

ANSI:



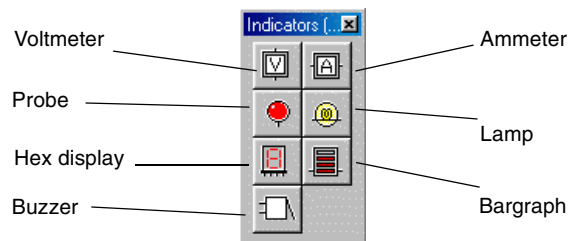
### DIN:



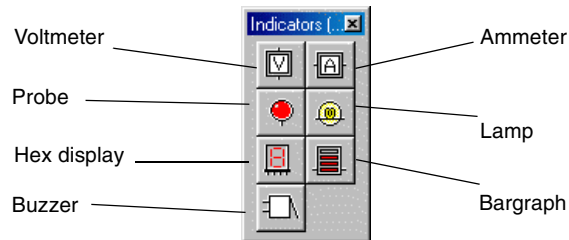
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix K. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix I in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

## 4.2.3.11 Indicators Toolbar

### ANSI:



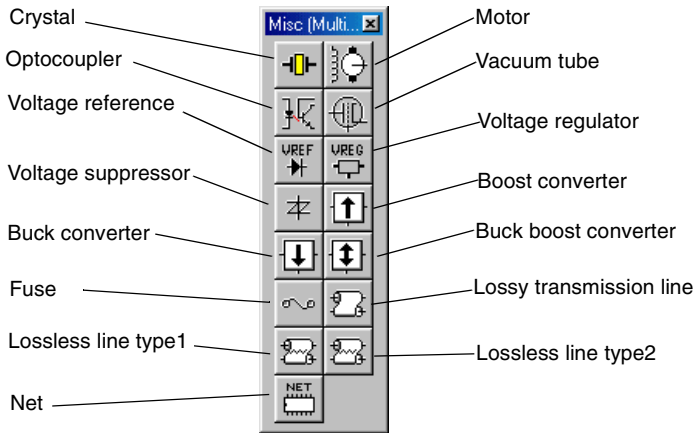
### DIN:



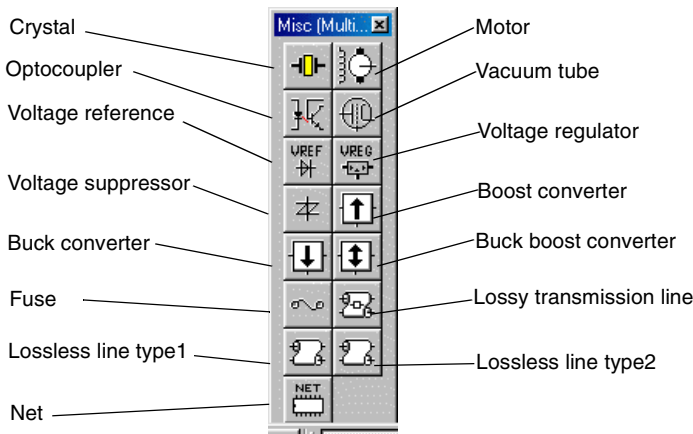
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix L. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix J in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

4.2.3.12 Miscellaneous Toolbar

ANSI:



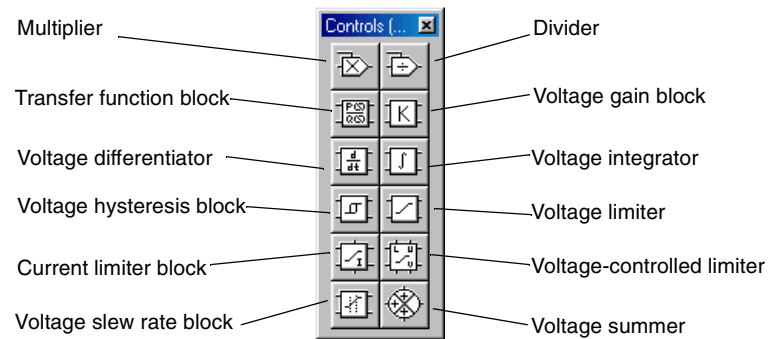
DIN:



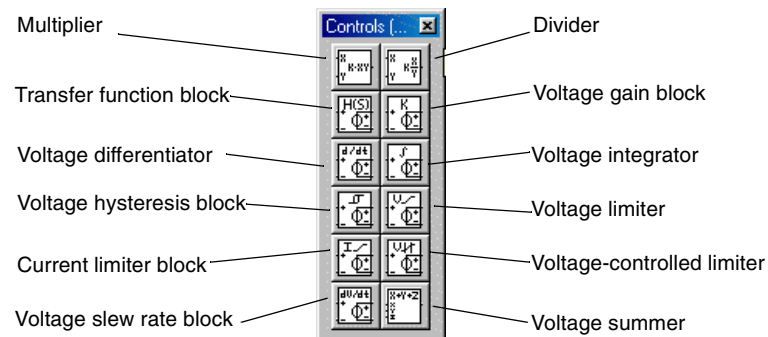
**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix M. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix K in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

### 4.2.3.13 Controls Toolbar

#### ANSI:



#### DIN:



**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix N. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix L in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

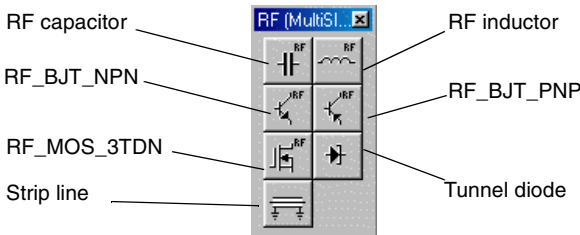


### 4.2.3.14 RF Toolbar

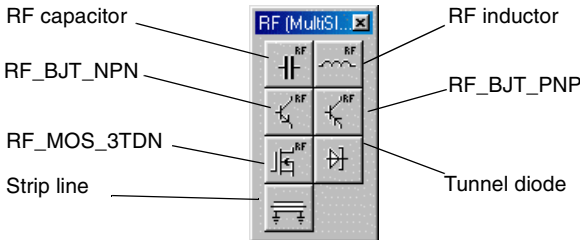
This toolbar is available for users with the RF module.



ANSI:



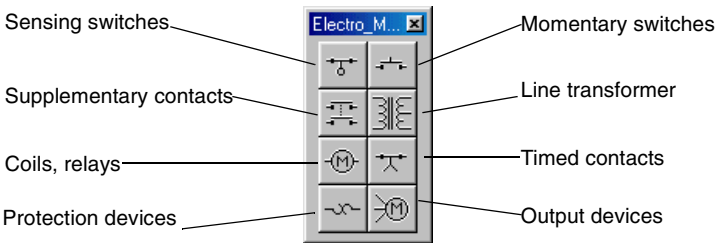
DIN:



**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix O. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix M in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

4.2.3.15 Electromechanical Toolbar

ANSI:



**DIN:**

Same as ANSI.

**Note** For details about these component families, see Appendix P. If you did not receive a printed copies of the appendices, you can find Appendix N in the PDF file shipped with Multisim.

## 4.3 Locating Components in the Database

You can locate components in a specific component family within a specific database level by either browsing through the available data, or by searching for a component that meets specific criteria, using either standard or advanced searching (available only for Power Professional users). These are described in this section.

### 4.3.1 Browsing for Components

When you are placing a component using the component toolbars and Parts Bins, the Browser screen that appears lets you browse for components within the chosen component family and database level. This is the usual way of selecting a component from the Multisim database, and is explained in detail in “Selecting Components from the Database” on page 3-3. You can also use **Edit/Place Component** to browse within an entire Multisim database level, regardless of family, as described in “Choosing a Component with the Place Component Command” on page 3-6.

### 4.3.2 Standard Searching for Components



Multisim comes with a powerful search engine to help you quickly locate components if you know some information about the type of component you need. Multisim searches its database for components that meet your criteria and presents them to you, enabling you to choose the component that most suits the needs of your application from the list of candidates. You might need to select a component with a specific package because of space limitations, with a specific power dissipation because of your design, with a specific electrostatic discharge because of its relationship to other components, or with a specific manufacturer because of company requirements.

- To perform a standard search of the database:
  1. Display the Browser screen, normally by clicking on the appropriate Parts Bins and component family in which you want to search, or by choosing **Edit/Place Component** to search the entire database.

2. Click **Find**. The Search screen appears:

These parameters are common to all components.

These are defined by you or your company, if you have the Project/Team Design module.

3. In the desired fields, enter your search criteria (you must enter at least one item). Enter text or numbers using scientific notation. Numbers must be prefixed with a symbol (for example, “=”). You can also use “>”, “<”, “>=”, and “<=” in conjunction with numbers, to set a range. For text, case is not considered, and you can use the “\*” wildcard to find partial strings.

For example, in the **Footprint** field:

- “CASE646-06” finds only the exact string “CASE646-06”
- “\*06” finds any string ending with “06”
- “CASE\*” finds any string starting with “CASE”
- “\*646\*” finds any string with “646” inside it

For more information about fields in the Search screen, see “Common Parameters” on page 4-25.

The following example shows the value you would enter to find a transistor component with a footprint of “TO-18”:

Search - BJT\_NPN

Manufacturer:

Footprint:

Search >

Cancel

Help

Common Parameters:

Thermal Resistance Junction:  AND

Thermal resistance Case:  AND

Power Dissipation:  AND

Derating Knee Point:  AND

Min. Operating Temperature:  AND

Max. Operating Temperature:  AND

ESD:  AND

4. To carry out the search, click **Search**. When the search is complete, the Search Results screen appears.

**Tip** The more specific your search criteria, the smaller the number of matching components.

- To select a component from the search results:

When the search is complete, the Search Results screen appears, displaying information about the first component that matched your criteria. The **Component** drop-down list contains a list of all the components that matched your criteria. For example, using the search example above, the results look like this:

Search Result - BJT\_NPN

Component (23 found)

Manufacturer:

Footprint:

< Back

Adv. Search >

OK

Cancel

Help

Common Parameters:

Thermal Resistance Junction:

Thermal resistance Case:

Power Dissipation:

Derating Knee Point:

Min. Operating Temperature:

Max. Operating Temperature:

ESD:

User Fields:

My Part

My Cost

This Date

Comments

Number of components that matched the search criteria

List of components that matched the search criteria

Details of the component selected from the list

From the **Component** drop-down list, select the component you are interested in. To view information about any component found by the search, simply choose it from the drop-down list and the display fields change accordingly.

5. To place the selected component, click **OK**. You return to the circuit window, where you can place the component by clicking the desired location on the screen.

To perform a more advanced search from your search results (as described below), click **Adv. Search**.

To return to the Browser screen, click **Back** or **Cancel**.

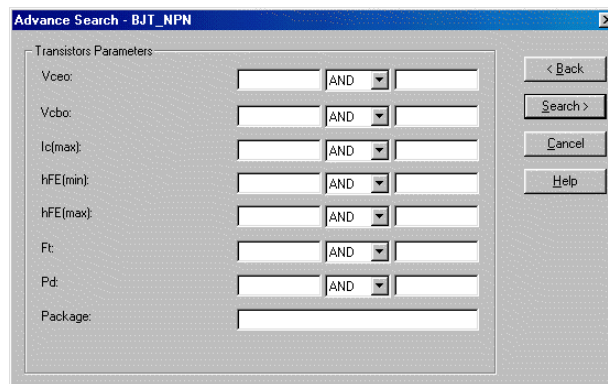
### 4.3.3 Advanced Searching for Components



Power Professional users can search using parameters unique to a particular family (in addition to using parameters that are common to all components, as in the standard search). This advanced search extends from the results of the standard search and allows you to pinpoint the component that meets the specific needs of your application. For example, you might want to search, or a specific response time to accommodate your design.

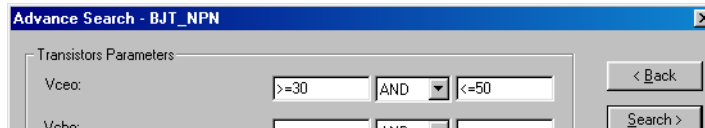
- To perform an advanced search:

1. From the standard Search Results screen, click **Adv. Search**. The Advanced Search screen appears. Because this screen is specific to a particular family, the screen differs depending on the family being searched. Here is one example of this screen:

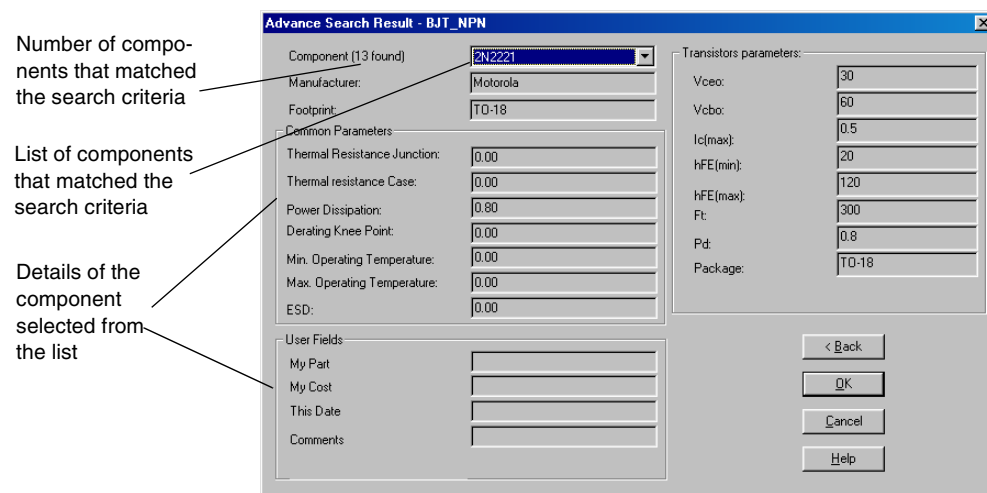


**Note** For information on these fields, see the component's description in the corresponding appendix or in the PDF included with Multisim.

2. Enter your search criteria. For example, to search within the results of the initial search for components with a  $V_{ce0}$  between 30 and 50V, you would enter the following field:



3. To carry out the search, click **Search**. The Advanced Search Results screen appears, displaying the results of the search:



4. From the **Component** drop-down list, select the component you are interested in. To view information about any component found by the search, simply choose it from the drop-down list and the display fields change accordingly.
5. To place the selected component, click **OK**. You return to the circuit window, where you can place the component by clicking the desired location on the screen.

To return to the Advanced Search screen, click **Back**.

To return to the Browser screen, click **Cancel**.

## 4.4 Types of Information Stored for Components

The Multisim database stores information about components in both pre-defined fields (that is, fields that are pre-filled in Multisim) and user fields (that is, fields you can use to capture

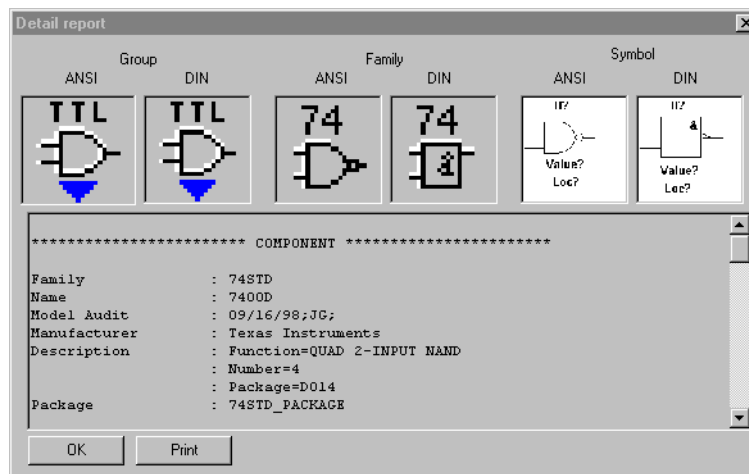
## Components

information that you want to record about a component). Both types of information appear in the Browser and Search screens. User fields only appear if you have the Project/Team Design module.

Multisim also offers a detailed report of information about components, their models, and their packages.

➤ To see this report:

From the Browser screen, click **Detail Report**. A detailed report appears for you to view or print. For example:



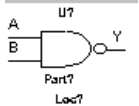
### 4.4.1 Pre-Defined Fields

For each component, the following information is stored in the “Multisim master” database:

- general information
- common parameters
- component-specific data.

### 4.4.1.1 General Information

The following fields appear on the Browser screen:

Field	Description	Example
Component Family	Name of family to which the component belongs. Determines which toolbar icon is used to place the component.	74S
Component	Name of individual component.	74S00D
Manufacturer	Name of company that manufactures the component. Recorded in the Bill of Materials.	Texas Instruments
Model	Used during simulation (could be SPICE code, VHDL, Verilog, etc.)	
Footprint	Footprint for the component (actual components only). Used in Ultiboard or other vendors' PCB layout products.	DO14
Function		QUAD 2-INPUT NAND
Symbol	Symbol used to represent the component during schematic capture.	

### 4.4.1.2 Common Parameters

This is information specifying the parameters that are common to all components. This information can be searched using the basic search, and appears on the Search screen.

Field	Description	Example
Thermal Resistance Junction	The thermal resistance within the component (watts or degrees centigrade).	0.00
Thermal Resistance Case	The thermal resistance of the whole case/package (watts or degrees centigrade).	0.00



Field	Description	Example
Power Dissipation	The power dissipation of the whole component (watts).	0.08
Derating Knee Point	The point at which the component's power starts being re-rated (degrees centigrade).	0.00
Min. Operating Temperature	Minimum operating temperature for the component (degrees centigrade).	0.00
Max. Operating Temperature	Maximum operating temperature for the component (degrees centigrade).	0.70
ESD	Electrostatic discharge that the component can tolerate (degrees centigrade).	0.00

### 4.4.1.3 Component-Specific Data

This is important electrical information that is different for each type of component. It is often needed in advanced searches. For more details, see the component's description in the corresponding appendix.

### 4.4.2 User Fields

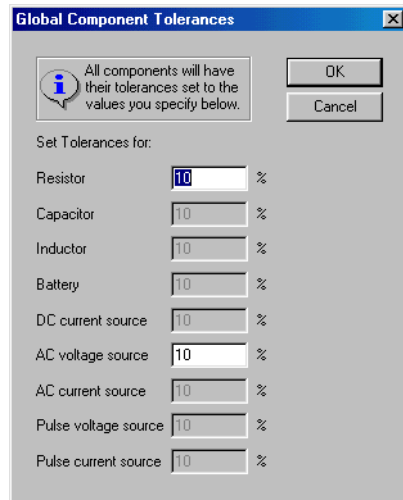
In addition to the fields of data that are pre-defined and filled with information by Electronics Workbench before Multisim is shipped, if you have the Project/Team Design module, you can also create your own fields of data to be stored about components. For details on setting up and entering data into user fields, see the "Project/Team Design Module" chapter.

## 4.5 Component Nominal Values and Tolerances

Multisim uses the nominal values for each part in simulation.

When you want to observe circuit behavior that is more typical of real world results, you can choose to use tolerances instead. The components in this case randomly introduce variances to simulate the performance of actual, physical components. Tolerance settings affect simulation results. For example, a 1 Kohm resistor with a 10% variance could vary 100 ohms either way.

- To set the tolerances to be used for components:
  1. Choose **Simulate/Global Component Tolerances**. If you have undeclared tolerances, you see a screen that allows you to set a percentage to be applied to undeclared tolerances in the circuit for each type of eligible component in the circuit. For example:



Only those components that exist in the active circuit can have values assigned to them in this screen.

2. Enter the desired variances.
3. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To save them, click **OK**. The simulation will now use random values as specified.



# Chapter 5

## Component Editor

5.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	5-1
5.2	Introduction to the Component Editor. . . . .	5-1
5.3	General Procedures for Starting the Component Editor . . . . .	5-2
5.3.1	Editing Components. . . . .	5-3
5.3.2	Adding Components. . . . .	5-5
5.3.3	Removing Components . . . . .	5-5
5.4	Specifying or Editing General Component Properties . . . . .	5-6
5.4.1	Specifying a Component's User Properties . . . . .	5-8
5.5	Editing and Creating a Component Symbol . . . . .	5-8
5.5.1	Copying a Component's Symbol . . . . .	5-10
5.5.2	Creating and Editing a Component's Symbol with the Symbol Editor . . . . .	5-11
5.5.2.1	Symbol Editor Menus . . . . .	5-12
5.5.2.2	Symbol Editor Palette . . . . .	5-12
5.5.2.3	Working with the Symbol Editor . . . . .	5-14
5.5.2.4	Labels. . . . .	5-14
5.5.2.5	Shape . . . . .	5-14
5.5.2.6	Pins . . . . .	5-15
5.6	Creating or Editing a Component Model . . . . .	5-18
5.6.1	Editing a Component's Model Information . . . . .	5-20
5.6.2	Copying a Component's Model . . . . .	5-21
5.6.3	Loading an Existing Model . . . . .	5-22
5.7	Creating and Editing Component Packages/Footprints . . . . .	5-25
5.7.1	Pin Group Naming Convention . . . . .	5-26
5.7.2	Pin Type Naming Convention . . . . .	5-26
5.8	Creating a Component Model Using the Model Makers. . . . .	5-29
5.8.1	BJT Model Maker . . . . .	5-29
5.8.2	Diode Model Maker . . . . .	5-42
5.8.3	MOSFET (Field Effect Transistor) Model Maker . . . . .	5-47

5.8.4	Operational Amplifier Model Maker . . . . .	5-57
5.8.5	Silicon Controlled Rectifier Model Maker . . . . .	5-64
5.8.6	Zener Model Maker . . . . .	5-68
5.9	Creating a Model Using Code Modeling. . . . .	5-75
5.9.1	What is Code Modeling? . . . . .	5-75
5.9.2	Creating a Code Model . . . . .	5-76
5.9.3	The Interface File (Ifspec.ifs) . . . . .	5-77
5.9.3.1	Name Table . . . . .	5-77
5.9.3.2	Port Table . . . . .	5-79
5.9.3.3	Parameter Table. . . . .	5-80
5.9.3.4	Example Interface File . . . . .	5-82
5.9.4	The Implementation File (Cfunc.mod) . . . . .	5-83
5.9.4.1	Implementation File C Macros . . . . .	5-84
5.9.4.2	Example Implementation File . . . . .	5-92
5.9.4.3	Additional Example ifspec File . . . . .	5-94

# Chapter 5

## Component Editor

### 5.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains how to use the Component Editor to modify or create a component. It also explains how to load any models that you may have developed, obtained or purchased into the Multisim database, and how to create simulation models using Multisim's Model Makers or code modelling.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 5.2 Introduction to the Component Editor

The Component Editor allows you to modify any component stored in the Multisim component database. (See the “Components” chapter for more information on this database.) For example, an existing component might now be available in a new package (originally pin-through hole, now surface mount), so you can easily copy the component information and change only the package details to create this new component. You can also create your own component and place it into the database or load a component from another source.

**Note** Multisim's database stores extensive information about components. Creating a component, depending on its use, may require entering many details. Where possible, we recommend that you use the Component Editor to modify an existing, similar component, rather than to create one.

As described in the “Components” chapter, in the component database each component is identified by four types of information:

- general information (such as name, description, manufacturer, icon, family and electrical characteristics) — see page 5-6 for details
- symbol (pictorial representation of the component for schematic capture) — see page 5-8 for details

- model (information used to represent the actual operation/behavior of the component during simulation) — necessary only for a component that will be simulated. See page 5-28 for details.
- footprint (the package that Multisim uses when exporting a schematic containing this component to a PCB Layout package such as Ultiboard) — see page 5-24 for details.

**Note** If you modify any information about a part in the “Multisim master” level, you must store it in the “user” or “corporate” levels to prevent corruption of the “Multisim master” level.

---

**Warning:** If you modify any piece of information about any component in the “corporate” or “user” levels of the Multisim database, you are prompted for a new name for the component. If you do not give a new name, Multisim saves the changes to the original location, so the original “user” level or “corporate” level component information is lost. It is recommended that you do provide a new name, even for minor variations to the original.

---

## 5.3 General Procedures for Starting the Component Editor

The Component Editor consists of a number of screens you use to:

- copy the properties of one component to another
- edit a component’s properties
- create a new component
- remove a component from the database

➤ To invoke the Component Editor:

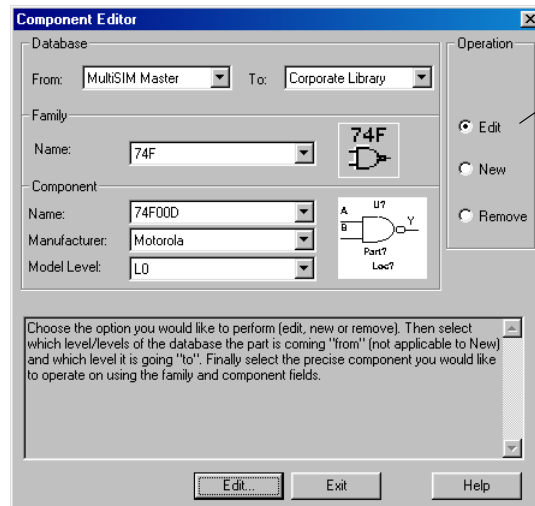


Click the Component Editor button on the Design Bar.

OR

Choose **Tools/Component Editor**.

The Component Editor screen appears.



This is the first step: select the operation you want to perform. The top fields of the screen change depending on your selection.

You have three choices: editing an existing part, creating a new part, and removing a part. These options are explained below, followed by instructions on how to use the four tabs that appear after you finish this step of the main Component Editor screen.

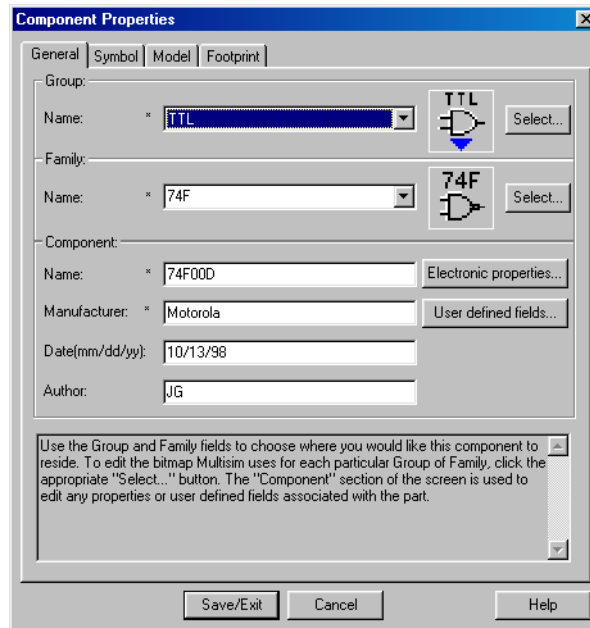
### 5.3.1 Editing Components

- To edit an existing component:
  1. Under the **Operation** options, enable **Edit**.
  2. From the **From** list, choose the database level containing the component you want to edit.
  3. From the **To** list, choose the database level in which you want the edited component stored. (“Corporate” and “user” level components may be edited and stored in the same database. If you edit a “Multisim master” level components, you must store it in either the “corporate” or “user” database.)
  4. From the **Family** list, choose the component family containing the component you want to edit.
  5. From the **Component** list, choose the component you want to edit.
  6. If necessary, choose the **Manufacturer** and **Model** of the component you want to edit (if more than one manufacturer or model exists).

The component’s symbol and icon appear on the screen.



7. To continue, click **Edit**. (To cancel, click **Quit**.)
8. The Component Properties screen appears, consisting of four tabs:



To continue editing the component please see the subsequent sections of this chapter which give detailed information on the tabs of the Component Properties screen:

- the General tab — see “Specifying or Editing General Component Properties” on page 5-6
- the Symbol tab — see “Editing and Creating a Component Symbol” on page 5-8
- the Model tab — see “Creating a Component Model Using the Model Makers” on page 5-28
- the Footprint tab — see “Creating and Editing Component Packages/Footprints” on page 5-24.

## 5.3.2 Adding Components

➤ To add a new component:

1. Under the **Operation** options, enable **New**. The top of the screen changes:

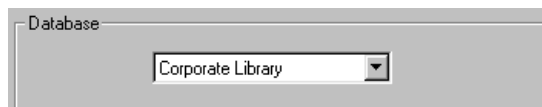


2. From the list, choose the database level to which you want to add a component (“corporate” and “user” only).
3. Click **New**.
4. To continue editing the component please see the subsequent sections of this chapter which give detailed information on the tabs of the Component Properties screen:
  - the General tab — see “Specifying or Editing General Component Properties” on page 5-6
  - the Symbol tab — see “Editing and Creating a Component Symbol” on page 5-8
  - the Model tab — see “Creating a Component Model Using the Model Makers” on page 5-28
  - the Footprint tab — see “Creating and Editing Component Packages/Footprints” on page 5-24.

**Note** If you wish to add your new component’s icon to the Component toolbar, choose **View/Refresh Component toolbars**.

## 5.3.3 Removing Components

1. From the **Operation** options on the Component Editor screen, enable **Remove**. The top of the screen changes:



2. From the list, choose the database level containing the component you want to remove (“corporate” and “user” only).
3. From the **Family** list, choose the component family containing the component you want to remove.
4. From the **Component** list, choose the component you want to remove.

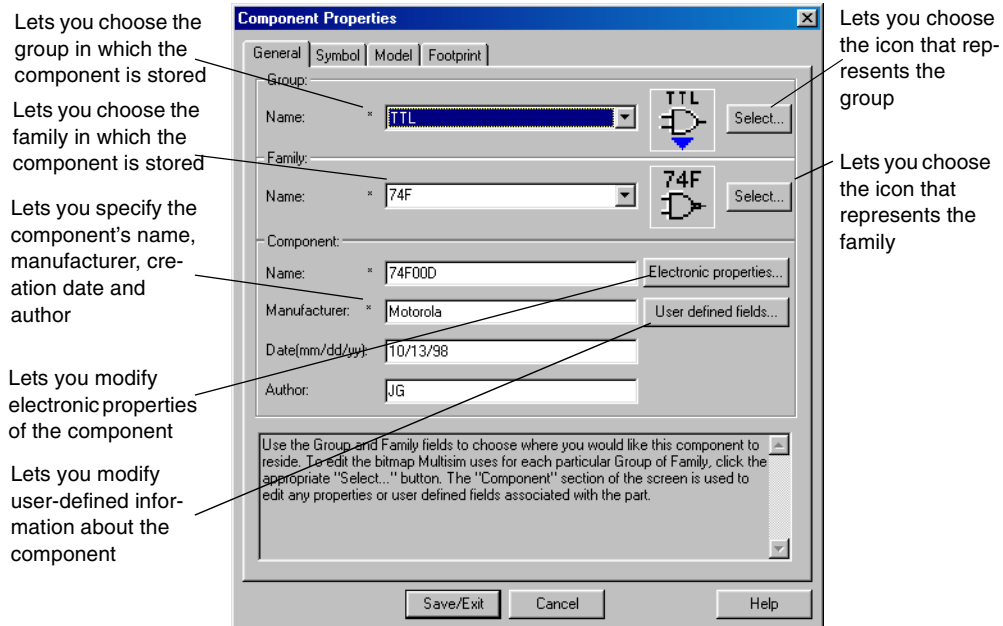
5. If necessary, choose the **Manufacturer** and **Model** of the component you want to remove (if more than one manufacturer or model exists).  
The component's symbol and icon appear on the screen.
6. To continue, click **Remove**. You are prompted to confirm the deletion. To cancel, click **Quit**.
7. To ensure that the component's icon is removed from the Component toolbar, choose **View/Refresh Component toolbars**.

## 5.4 Specifying or Editing General Component Properties

The General tab of the Component Properties screen allows you to:

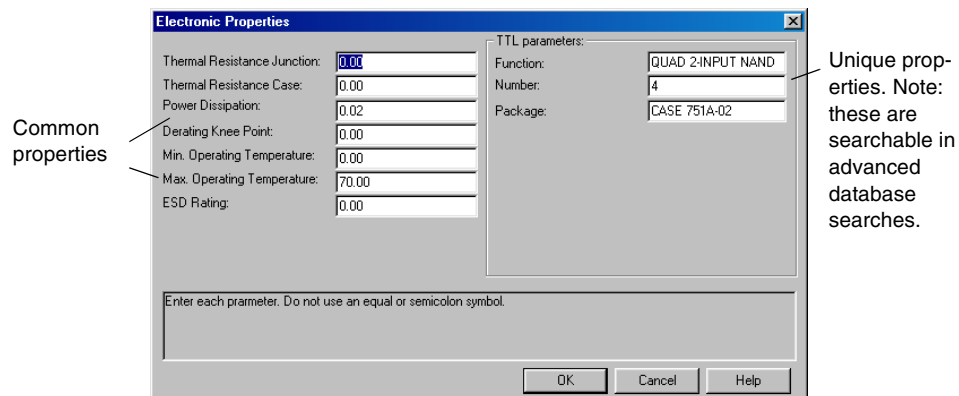
- modify descriptive information about a component
- modify the electronic properties of a component
- modify the user-defined information about a component
- modify a component's group icon
- modify a component's family icon.

**Note** A component's group and family icons are rarely changed.



- To enter or modify a component's general properties:
  1. Enter the desired information in the appropriate fields.
  2. Click **Save/Exit** to save your changes and return to the Component Editor screen. Click **Cancel** to cancel your changes.
- To change the icon used for a component's group (rarely used):
  1. Click **Select**. A file browser appears.
  2. Navigate to the location of the bitmap you want used as the icon.
  3. Select a bitmap file to use as the group or family icon, and click **Open**, or click **Cancel** to cancel.
  4. The selected bitmap is shown on the Component Properties screen.
  5. Click **Save/Exit** to save your changes and return to the Component Editor screen. Click **Cancel** to cancel your changes.
- To enter or modify a component's electronic properties:
  1. From the Component Properties screen, click **Electronic properties**.

The Electronic Properties screen appears:



The screen consists of two sets of fields. The right fields vary depending on the type of component. (The Appendices of this manual describe each component family's parameters in detail.) The left fields are common to all components. These are:

Field	Description
Thermal Resistance Junction	Enter or modify the thermal characteristics within the component (from the junction to the case), in watts or degrees centigrade.

Field	Description
Thermal Resistance Case	Enter or modify the thermal characteristics of the whole package (component) in watts or degrees centigrade.
Power Dissipation	Enter or modify the power dissipation of the component, in watts.
Derating Knee Point	Enter or modify the temperature at which the power of the component/package begins to be de-rated, in order to operate the device in its safe operating range. Use degrees centigrade.
Min. Operating Temperature	Enter or modify the lowest ambient temperature at which the component can operate reliably. Use degrees centigrade.
Max. Operating Temperature	Enter or modify the highest ambient temperature at which the component can operate reliably. Use degrees centigrade.
ESD Rating	Enter or modify the electro-static discharge for the component.

2. Enter the desired changes in the appropriate fields.
3. To save your changes and return to the General tab, click **OK**. To cancel them, click **Cancel**.

### 5.4.1 Specifying a Component's User Properties



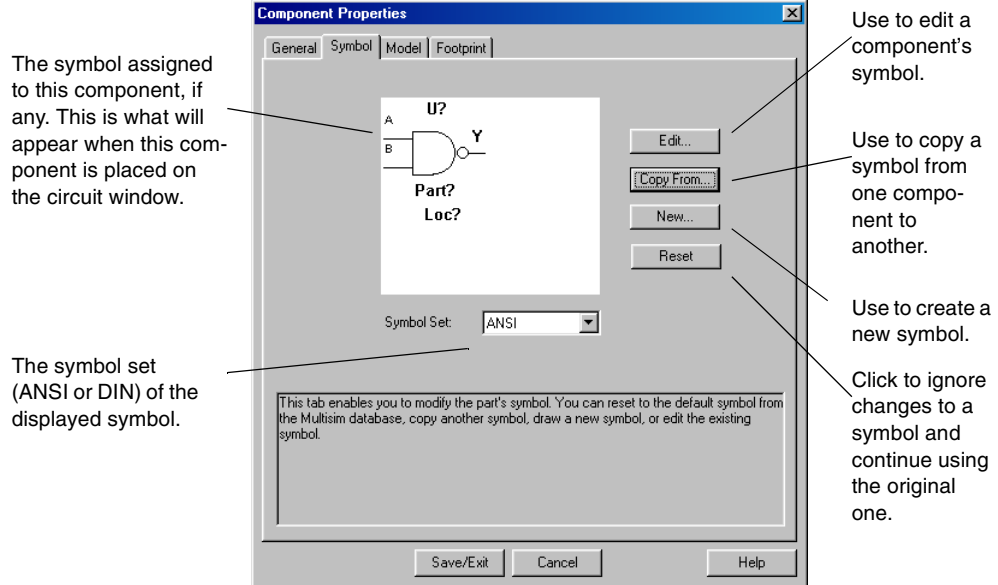
This feature is only available in some versions of Multisim. Please refer to Chapter 13 for more information on this feature.

## 5.5 Editing and Creating a Component Symbol

The Symbol tab of the Component Properties screen allows you to:

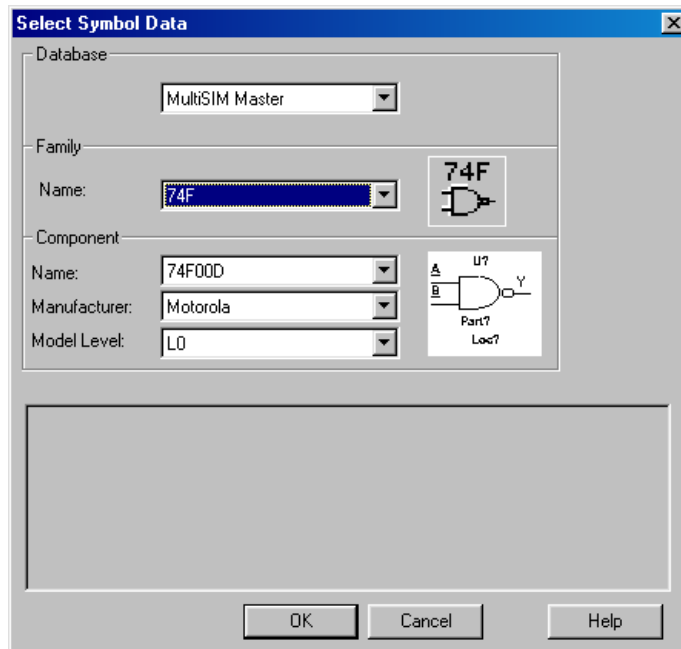
- edit a component's symbol
- give a component the same symbol as another component

- create a symbol for a component.



## 5.5.1 Copying a Component's Symbol

- To copy a symbol from another component:
  1. From the Component Properties screen, click **Copy From**. The Select Symbol Data screen appears.



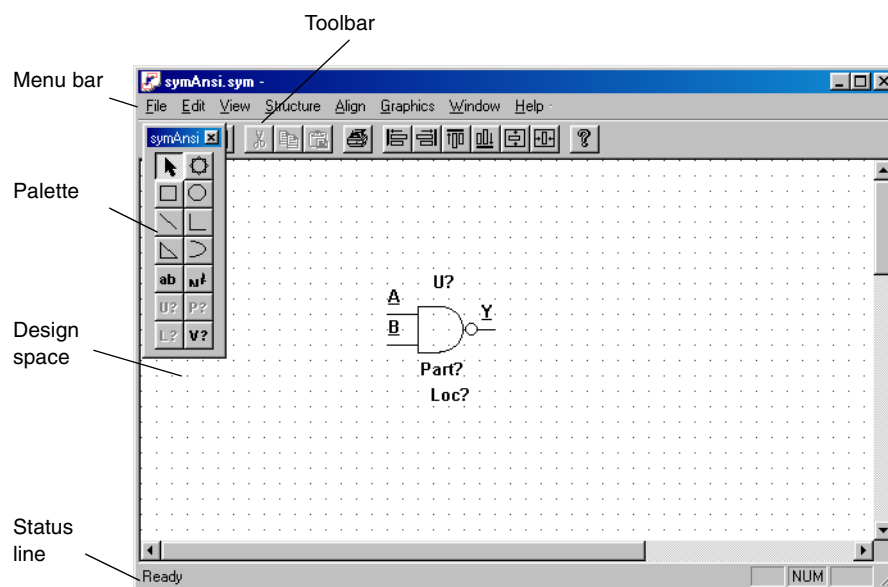
2. Use the drop-down lists to identify the component whose symbol you want to copy and click **OK**. (Click **Cancel** to cancel.) You return to the Component Properties screen, where the symbol associated with the selected component appears.
3. If you want to change the symbol set to be associated with this component, select ANSI or DIN from the **Symbol Set** drop-down list. The appropriate symbol appears in the upper part of the screen.
4. To confirm the association of this symbol with your component, click **Save/Exit**.

If desired, you can also edit the copied symbol using the Symbol Editor, as described in the following sections.

## 5.5.2 Creating and Editing a Component's Symbol with the Symbol Editor

- To edit a component symbol:
  1. Under the Symbol tab of the Component Properties screen, from the **Symbol Set** drop-down list, select the desired symbol set (ANSI or DIN) whose symbol you would like to edit. The appropriate symbol appears in the upper part of the screen.
  2. Click **Edit**. The Symbol Editor appears, displaying the selected symbol for you to edit:
- To create a new symbol for the component, under the Symbol tab of the Component Properties screen, click **New**. The Symbol Editor appears with a blank screen and the three component labels (these are described in “Labels” on page 5-14).

The Symbol Editor looks like this:



The Symbol Editor screen consists of:

- the **menu bar**, which contains the menus with their associated commands
- the **toolbar**, which gives quick access to some commonly used tools.
- the **design space**, which is where you build or modify your symbols.
- the **palette**, which provides quick access to the most common operations in the Symbol Editor.
- the **status line**, which gives information on the currently selected object or action.



The next sections describe the menus and palette in more detail.

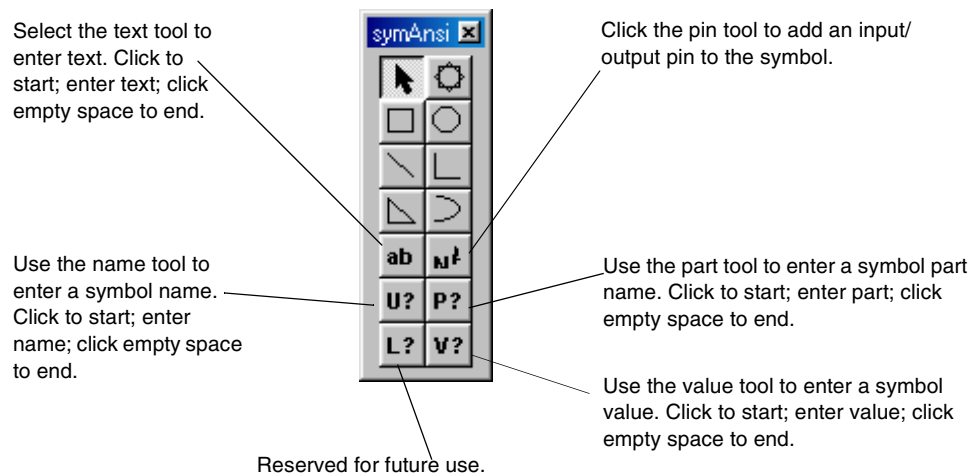
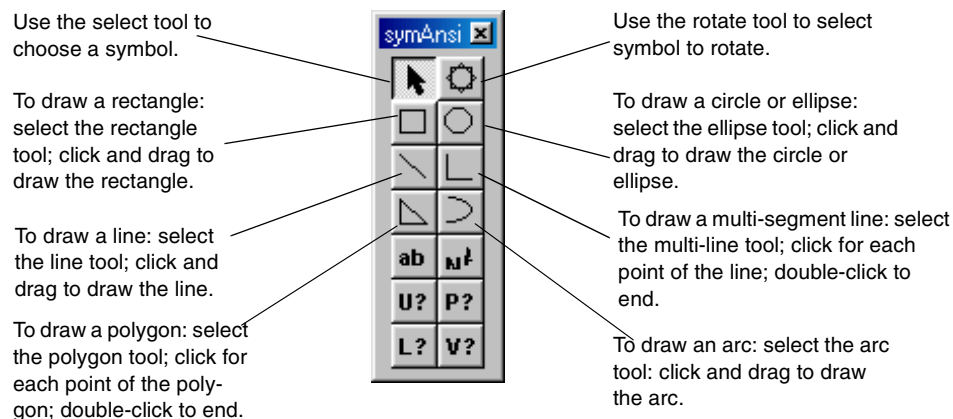
### 5.5.2.1 Symbol Editor Menus

Menu	Use
File	Use the File menu to create a symbol for a component or open an existing file containing a symbol. This menu also lets you preview, save, close or print the symbol. You also use this menu to close the Symbol Editor.
Edit	Use the Edit menu to make changes to a symbol. You can choose to cut, copy, paste, or delete selected text or graphics displayed in the Symbol Editor screen. This menu also contains commands used to flip or rotate the displayed graphic.
View	Use the View menu to show/hide the following screen elements: toolbar, status bar, palette, grid and page boundaries. It also contains commands that let you change the grid and the magnification of the symbol.
Structure	Use the Structure menu to group together selections and position them in front of or behind each other.
Align	Use the Align menu to change the position of the selections in the window in relation to each other or to the grid.
Graphics	Use the Graphics menu to change the characteristics (color, font, pattern, pen style, or arrowheads) used for graphics and their accompanying text labels. You can also use this menu to import a bitmap file into the currently opened file in the Symbol Editor.
Window	Use the Window menu to move among the different open symbol files in the Symbol Editor.

### 5.5.2.2 Symbol Editor Palette

The Symbol Editor palette gives you quick access to the most common operations in the Symbol Editor.

The following illustrations give information on the tools and their functions:



### 5.5.2.3 Working with the Symbol Editor

The Symbol Editor is essentially a graphics editor with the usual range of tasks (placing graphics, changing, their color, size and fill, and so on), along with special additions.

To use the Symbol Editor to create working symbols, however, you need to be familiar with the elements required to make up a symbol in Multisim. The three key elements needed for a symbol are:

- labels
- pins
- shape

These are described in more detail in the following sections.

### 5.5.2.4 Labels



Each symbol has three labels, variables that are replaced by values from the component's model. This allows the same symbol to be used for many different components in a family. The variables are:

- the component's reference ID (represented by the string "U?")
- the component's value or part number (represented by the string "Value?" or "Part?")
- the component's location (represented by the string "Loc?"; reserved for future use).

All symbols have these variables; if you choose to create a new symbol in the Symbol Editor, these three variables are supplied automatically (although you control where they are located with respect to the shape and how they are presented, for example, their color and font).

Information for the component's reference ID, identified as "U", and component "value" or "part" number are extracted from the components database and automatically entered by Multisim. For example, the "R1" indicates that the component is the first resistor placed on the circuit window. The "R" is extracted from the component database and the "1" is a sequential number placed on the component. Any additional resistors either placed on the circuit window using the component family toolbar or copied will increase sequentially i.e. R1, R2, R3.

### 5.5.2.5 Shape

The symbol requires a shape to allow users to recognize its general function. For example, a capacitor has a shape of  and a nor gate has a shape of . You utilize the drawing capabilities of Multisim's Symbol Editor to construct a shape that makes logical sense for the component you are creating or modifying. The simplest way to do this is to edit the shape of an existing component. Once this is done, you will need to add pins.

### 5.5.2.6 Pins







There are three main parts to a pin: the "logical pin", the "physical pin" and the shape of the pin.



The “logical pin” is the name given to an actual pin. For example, most digital parts have pins named “Vc” and “GND”. These names are the “logical pin” names used to identify the actual pin. The logical pin name can be anything you want as long as it is understood. You can use the acronym “GND” or call the pin “Ground”. It is recommended, however, that you use the logical pin names provided in the data book for a component.

The “physical pin” is the physical location of the pin on a given component. For example, if you are creating a symbol that has 16 physical pins attached to it, then you would have physical pins numbered from 1 to 16. The numbering of the physical pins is what is used by PCB layout software to ensure that connections from one component to another are made properly. While it is recommended that you use the logical pin names given in a databook for a component, for the physical pin names you *must* use the names from the databook or your component will not work properly.

**Note** The relationship of logical and physical pins must follow the syntax in the databook in order to work in Multisim.

The third part of a pin is its appearance or shape. Multisim provides eight pin shapes that you can use:

- dot  Negative Active Signal
- dot-clock  Negative Active Clock
- line  Positive Active Signal
- short  Positive Active Signal - short format
- zero length  Terminal Pin
- clock  Positive Active Clock

- input wedge  Negative Active Input Signal (DIN symbols)
- output wedge  Negative Active Output Signal (DIN symbols)

None of the pin shapes have any impact on the operation of the component. However, pin shapes do have an impact on the component user. Each of the shapes is used for specific reasons. Again, it is recommended that you follow the pin shape from the data book when creating a symbol for a component.

Pins must be connected to the symbol shape correctly in order for the symbol to function properly:

- A pin must always be facing out with no shapes, lines or text blocking its way to be connected by a wire. If a pin is blocked, you may not be able to connect it.
- A pin can only be connected at the far end of its the logical side:



The side marked "New Pin" is the logical end of the pin. Connect the pin at the far end of the logical side.

- All pins must fall on the grid. Multisim may not recognize a pin that is not placed on the grid. Therefore, it is very important that the "snap to grid" function be enabled when you place pins on a symbol.

➤ To add a pin to a symbol:

- From the **View** menu, enable **Grid Visible** and **Snap to Grid**.



- Click the **Input/Output Pin** button on the palette. A cursor appears.
- Click on the screen where you want the pin to appear. A "new pin" placeholder appears:

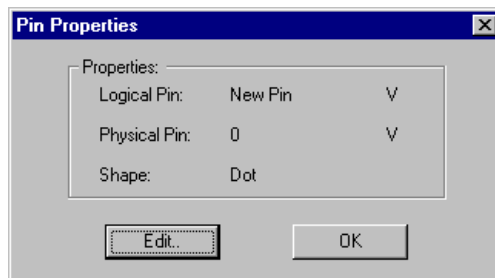


**Note** When placing a pin to a shape, always use the side containing the logical pin name. Multisim will not recognize a pin that has been connected backwards.

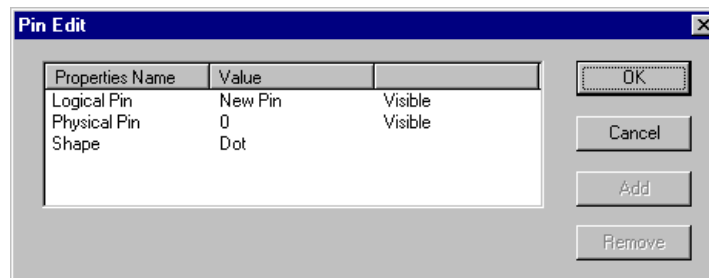
3. If the pin does not touch the shape as you want it to, disable **Snap to Grid** and draw a line from the logical pin end to the component shape. Do not move the pin while the grid is disabled.

Once you have placed the pin in its location, you can then edit its properties.

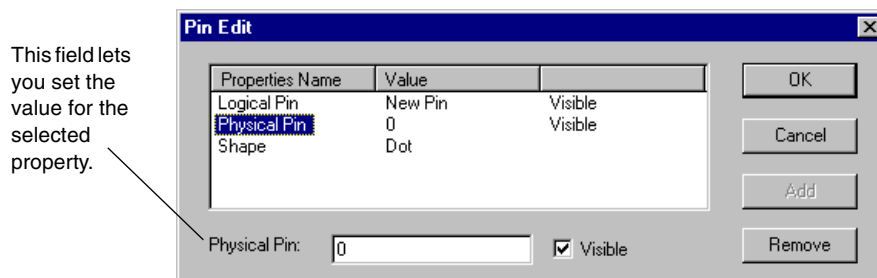
- To edit a pin's properties:
4. Double-click the pin. The Pin Properties screen appears, showing the default properties for the pin:



5. To modify the pin's properties, click **Edit**. The Pin Edit screen appears:



6. Click on the pin attribute (Logical Pin, Physical Pin or Shape) you want to edit. A field appears at the bottom of the screen, allowing you to enter the value of either the Physical pin and change its shape. For example:



7. Enable or disable **Visible** to make the value visible or hidden by default.

**Note** It is recommended that you use databook names for logical pins. It is important that you use the databook numbering for the physical pins.

8. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To confirm them, click **OK**. The Pin Properties screen appears again. Click **OK** to close the screen.
- To remove a logical or physical pin property, select it and click **Remove**. Once it is removed, the **Add** button becomes available to add a physical or logical pin property again.

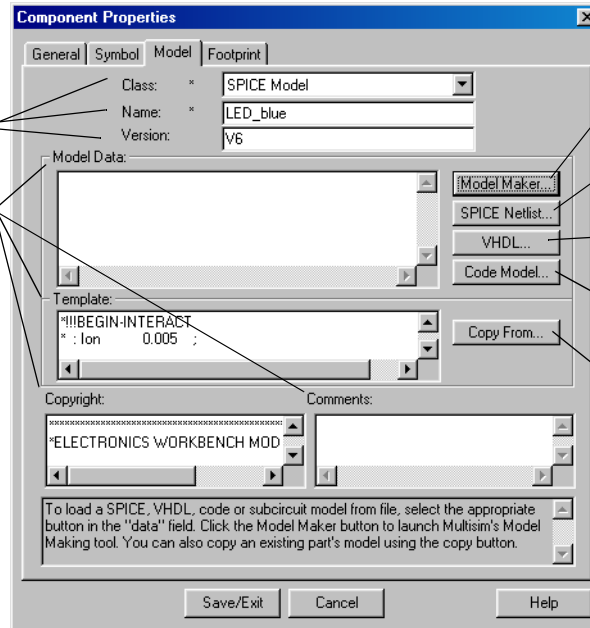
## 5.6 Creating or Editing a Component Model

A component that has an effect on the circuit *must* have a model if you wish to simulate that component. The only components in Multisim that do not have models associated with them are connectors and junctions. These components do not affect the simulation of the circuit.

The Model tab of the Component Properties screen offers you a number of options to choose from to assign a model to your component. You can:

- modify the model information of a component
- load an existing model for a component
- create a model for a component
- copy a model of one component to another

You can edit the component's class, name, version, model data, template, and copyright information, and comments by directly entering information in these fields.



Use to make a model with Multisim's Model Maker.

Use to load a SPICE netlist model.

Use to load a VHDL model.

Use to load a Code Model

Use to copy data from another model

First of all, you can directly modify the existing model data by using the fields of this screen, or you can enter information from scratch in these fields. The **Model Data** and **Template** fields contain the information that make up the model itself (and are thus the most important part for simulation purposes). The **Model Data** field contains the model's code (for example in SPICE) and the **Template** field connects pins of the symbol to their respective nodes in the model. See "Editing a Component's Model Information" on page 5-20 for more information on editing model data.

Alternatively, you can copy a model whose model template matches what you want. More information on copying models is given in "Copying a Component's Model" on page 5-21.

Finally, you can import or load an existing model by clicking one of the command buttons on the right of the screen. (Depending on your version of Multisim, not all of these commands will be available to you.) These commands give you four options:

- Model Makers
- SPICE Netlists
- VHDL
- Code Modeling

These options are described in more detail in "Loading an Existing Model" on page 5-21.



## 5.6.1 Editing a Component's Model Information

You can edit a component's model information by entering information directly into the fields under the Model tab of the Component Properties screen.

To modify model information, do any of the following:

To modify:	Do this:
The model's class	Select the model's class from the <b>Class</b> drop-down list. This information tells the user which category the model is formatted in, for example, SPICE Subcircuit, VHDL, SPICE Model. The drop-down list identifies the different formats (classes) that Multisim understands.
The model's name (may be same as component's name)	Modify the information in the <b>Name</b> field. This name is used to uniquely identify the model. The model's name is normally taken from the databook or from the model data information if loaded from a file.
The model's version number	Modify the information in the <b>Version</b> field. The model version number is used to keep track of revisions of the model. For example, a model built for Multisim Version 6 will be identified with a version number of Version 6. If that model gets revised in any way, the version number should change accordingly.
The model's data	Modify the information in the <b>Data</b> field. The model data is the specific model information of any given component. In Multisim, model data can be imported, copied, or edited. You can import model information from a SPICE netlist, VHDL file, Code Modeling file, or Verilog file. Importing model data is described in more detail in the subsequent sections of this chapter.
The model's template	Modify the information in the <b>Template</b> field, by typing directly in the field, copying from another model, or editing information copied from another model. The model's template is used to connect the elements of the component symbol to the model.
The model's copyright	Modify the information in the <b>Copyright</b> field. This field provides information about who built/designed the model. It is for information purposes only and has no impact on the functionality of the component.
Comments	Enter comments in the <b>Comments</b> field. This field can be used for any information you feel should be attached to the model that has not already been provided. This field has no impact on the functionality of the component.

**Note** If you choose to edit a model's data or template directly, be very careful when entering information. Making an typing error or removing a character by mistake could cause the model to function improperly. Unless you are experienced at creating/editing models, it is recommended that copy a model that has the same Template information you require.

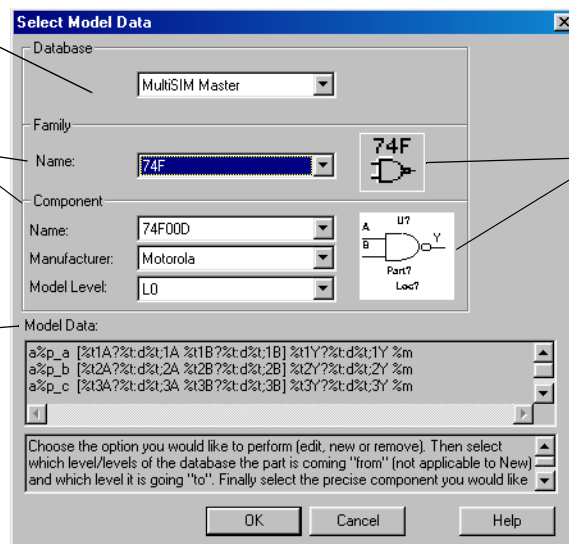
## 5.6.2 Copying a Component's Model

- To copy the model information from an existing component:
  1. Click **Copy From**. The Select Model Data screen appears.

Select the database level you want to choose a model from.

Select the component family, name, manufacturer, model level that you want from the drop-down lists.

The model's template appears here.



The component's icon and symbol appear here.

2. Select from among the available databases in the **Database** drop-down list.
3. Using the **Family** and **Component** drop-down lists, choose the component whose model template most closely matches what you want
4. Click **OK** to return to the Component Editor screen.

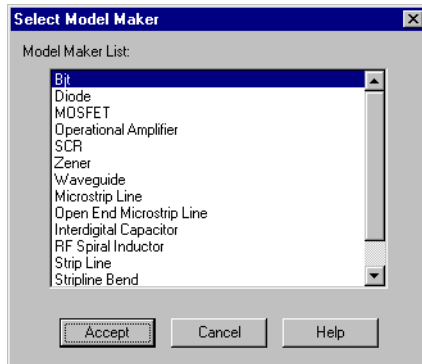
## 5.6.3 Loading an Existing Model



The models for a component can come from a variety of sources. Please note that some of these options may not be available in your version of Multisim.

- To load or import a model created by Multisim's analog or digital model maker:

1. Click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears:

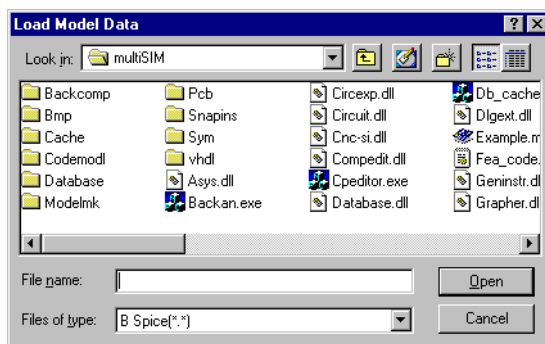


2. Select the Model Maker you wish to use to make a model.
3. Click **Accept** to continue to start the process of making a model. Click **Cancel** to return to the Model Tab of the Component Editor screen.
4. For analog model makers, refer to subsequent sections of this chapter for procedures on using specific Model Makers. For RF model makers, see the “RF” chapter.
5. When you have entered in all the required information in the Model Maker screens, click **OK**. The data for the model you have just created will appear in the Model tab fields.

Information provided with the Model data may consist of copyright information and additional comments. This information can be copied and pasted from the **Model Data** field into the **Copyright** and **Comments** fields if you wish.

- To load or import a BSpice, XSpice or PSpice model for your component:

1. Click **SPICE Netlist**. The Load Model Data file browser appears:



**Tip** Before loading a netlist, make sure you know what folder it is in. Most Bspice, Xspice and Pspice netlists end in extensions `.cir` and `.net`.

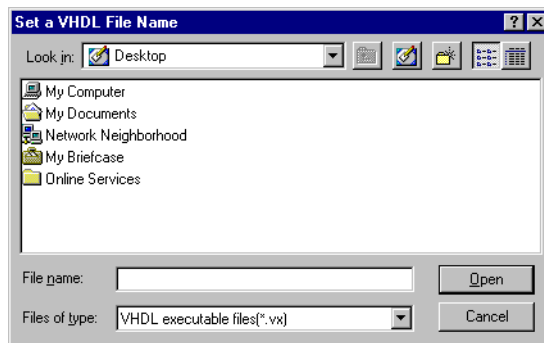
2. From the **Files of type** drop-down list, select the type of file you want to load.
3. Select the file to load and click **OK**. The model data appears in the Model tab fields.

Information provided with the Model data may consist of copyright information and additional comments. This information can be copied and pasted from the **Model Data** field into the **Copyright** and **Comments** fields if you wish.

**Note** PSpice is not an industry standard, but is proprietary to the Orcad SPICE simulation tool. Since some component vendors make models for their components available in PSpice format, Multisim has been designed to support PSpice models as extensively as possible. However, you will not be able to share models or circuits with other SPICE users or tools.

➤ To load VHDL model data for your component:

1. Click **VHDL**. The Set a VHDL File Name file browser appears:



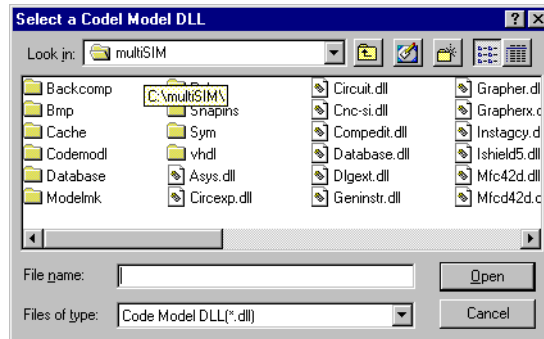
2. From the **Files of type** drop-down list, select the type of file you want to load. VHDL component files end in the extension `.vxx`.
3. Select the file to load and click **OK**. The model data appears in the Model tab fields.

Information provided with the Model data may consist of copyright information and additional comments. This information can be copied and pasted from the **Model Data** field into the **Copyright** and **Comments** fields if you wish.

**Note** The VHDL model must already exist for it to be loaded. For information on creating a VHDL model, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.

➤ To load an existing code model for your component:

1. Click **Code Model**. The Select a Code Model DLL file browser appears:



2. From the **Files of type** drop-down list, select the type of file you want to load. Code Model files have the extension `.dll`.
3. Select the file to load and click **OK**. The model data appears in the fields of the Model tab of the Component Editor screen.

Information provided with the Model data may consist of copyright information and additional comments. This information can be copied and pasted from the **Model Data** field into the **Copyright** and **Comments** fields if you wish.

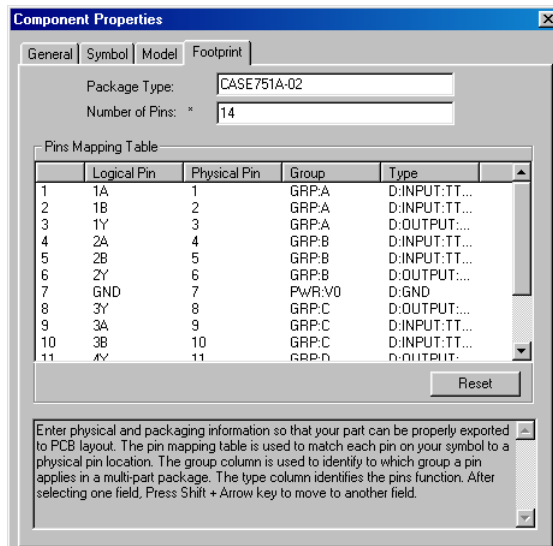
**Note** The Code Model must already exist for it to be loaded. For information on creating a Code Model, which can be complex, refer to “Creating a Model Using Code Modeling” on page 5-72.

## 5.7 Creating and Editing Component Packages/ Footprints

The Footprint tab of the Component Properties screen allows you to:

- specify package information for a component
- modify package information for a component
- map physical and logical pins of a component

The logical and physical pin mapping is needed for exporting to a layout package; the pin group and type information is needed for simulation.



- To modify or enter package information:
  1. In the **Package Type** field, modify or enter the package type (for example, DIP14).
  2. In the **Number of Pins** field, modify or enter the number of pins.
- To map logical and physical pins:
  1. Double-click on the field you want to modify, until a frame appears around the field.
  2. For each logical pin, enter its corresponding physical pin on the package.
  3. For each pin, enter the grouping of pins, using the syntax described in “Pin Group Naming Convention” on page 5-26.
  4. For each pin, enter the type, using the syntax described in “Pin Type Naming Convention” on page 5-26.
  5. To save your changes, click **OK**. To cancel them, click **Cancel**.

### 5.7.1 Pin Group Naming Convention

For logical pins, use the following formats:

For:	Use:	Where:
pins associated with one section of a component	GRP: <i>n</i>	<i>n</i> is the section
pins common to several sections, but not all sections	GRP: <i>n:m</i>	<i>n</i> and <i>m</i> are the sections
pins common to all sections	COM	
pins associated with voltages)	PWR:V0 or PWR: V <i>n</i>	V0 is ground or <i>n</i> is a voltage
unused pins (no connects)	NC	

### 5.7.2 Pin Type Naming Convention

For digital components, the pin type is used to link together the I/O models to the logical core for each device. In other families, such as analog components where the simulation models are self-contained units, pin types are for information purposes only.

Use the format:

TYPE: MODE: MODEL

where

Type	is either A (analog) or D (digital)
------	-------------------------------------

Mode	<p>is one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>input</li> <li>output</li> <li>I/O</li> <li>3-state</li> <li>Open_drain</li> <li>Open_source</li> <li>Open_sink</li> <li>I/O_open_drain</li> <li>I/O_open_source</li> <li>I/O_open_sink</li> <li>Input_ECL</li> <li>Output_ECL</li> <li>I/O_ECL</li> <li>Terminator</li> <li>Power</li> <li>NC</li> </ul>
Model	pin model name (none for analog)



This page intentionally left blank.

## 5.8 Creating a Component Model Using the Model Makers

Multisim offers several advanced Model Makers which automatically generate simulation models for you when you give them databook values as input. Using Model Makers will save you time and effort but do require practice for you to become proficient with them.

When working with databooks, note that different databooks provide parameters for a component model in different styles. While some pieces of information are given numerically in tables or lists for a specific operating point, others are given in the form of a chart or graph. Both types of information are required by Multisim's Model Makers. In the case of tables or lists, you will need to enter the operating point and the value that you want. In the case of charts or graphs, the way you select the points from the appropriate curves will have an impact on the accuracy of the parameters of the final model. We give suggestions on methods for selecting points in the procedures for each Model Maker. Also, note that the pieces of information provided by databooks are usually the same from one manufacturer to another, even though the names or labels and descriptions of parameters are different.

The following sections contain procedures for using each of the analog model makers available in Multisim, which are:

- BJT model
- Diode model
- MOSFET model
- Operational Amplifier model
- Silicon Controlled Rectifier model
- Zener model

For each Model Maker, preset values are provided for a specific model, as noted in each of the following sections. However, these are not default values, and you can select numerical values based on the component you are interested in.

For information on using Multisim's digital and RF model makers, please see the "RF" chapter.

## 5.8.1 BJT Model Maker

1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.
2. From the Model Maker list, select BJT and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The BJT Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the BJT Model Maker screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The BJT Model screen shows preset values for the MPS2222A model.

### Entering General and Table Data

1. Click the General and Table Data tab:

The screenshot shows the "BJT Model" dialog box with the "General and Table Data" tab selected. The "General" section contains the following fields:

- Type of BJT (PNP, NPN): NPN
- Component Name: MPS2222
- NOTE: Preset values are for MPS2222
- Semiconductor (Si, Ge, GaAs): Si
- Model Parameter nominal Temperature (default: 27 deg.C): 27 deg.C
- Base Temperature for Input Data: 25 deg.C

The "Maximum Ratings" section contains:

- Emitter-Base Maximum Voltage (VEBO): 5 V

The "Output Admittance" section contains:

- Check if data not available: ☐
- Output Admittance (hoe): 100 umho
- Collector Current (Ic): 10 mA
- Collector-Emitter Voltage (Vce): 10 V

The "Switching Characteristics" section contains:

- Storage Time (ts): 200 ns
- Collector Current (Ic): 150 mA
- Base Current (Ib1): 15 mA
- Base Current (Ib2): 15 mA

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Help.

2. Locate data information for the BJT model from a databook.

- To enter **General** data:
  1. Enter the appropriate BJT type (NPN or PNP) in the **Type of BJT** field. This is usually found on the first page of the data book.
  2. Enter the **Component Name**. This is usually found in the top right-hand corner of the datasheet.
  3. In the **Semiconductor** field, enter the type of semiconductor. This is usually found written next to the component type.
  4. If desired, change the default value set by Multisim for **Model parameter nominal Temperature** of 27 degrees.
  5. If desired, change the default value for **Base Temperature for Input Data**. This is typically found in the top left corner of the “Electrical Characteristics” table in the databook.
- To enter **Maximum Ratings** data:
  1. In the databook for the BJT, locate the “Maximum Ratings” table — for example:

Enter this information in the **Emitter-Base Maximum Voltage** field.

**MAXIMUM RATINGS**

Rating	Symbol	MPS2222	MPS2222A	Unit
Collector–Emitter Voltage	$V_{CEO}$	30	40	Vdc
Collector–Base Voltage	$V_{CBO}$	60	75	Vdc
Emitter–Base Voltage	$V_{EBO}$	5.0	6.0	Vdc
Collector Current — Continuous	$I_C$	600		mAdc
Total Device Dissipation @ $T_A = 25^\circ\text{C}$ Derate above $25^\circ\text{C}$	$P_D$	625 5.0		mW mW/ $^\circ\text{C}$
Total Device Dissipation @ $T_C = 25^\circ\text{C}$ Derate above $25^\circ\text{C}$	$P_D$	1.5 12		Watts mW/ $^\circ\text{C}$
Operating and Storage Junction Temperature Range	$T_J, T_{stg}$	–55 to +150		$^\circ\text{C}$

2. Find the value for Emitter-Base Voltage and enter the value in the **Emitter-Base Maximum Voltage (VEBO)** field.

➤ To enter **Output Admittance** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Small Signal Characteristics” table, and find the values for Output Admittance — for example:

Use this information to enter data in the **Output Admittance** fields.

SMALL-SIGNAL CHARACTERISTICS

Current-Gain — Bandwidth Product <sup>(2)</sup> ( $I_C = 20 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 20 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 100 \text{ MHz}$ )	MPS2222 MPS2222A	$f_T$	250 300	— —	MHz
Output Capacitance ( $V_{CB} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $I_E = 0$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ MHz}$ )		$C_{obo}$	—	8.0	pF
Input Capacitance ( $V_{EB} = 0.5 \text{ Vdc}$ , $I_C = 0$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ MHz}$ )	MPS2222 MPS2222A	$C_{ibo}$	— —	30 25	pF
Input Impedance ( $I_C = 1.0 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ ) ( $I_C = 10 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ )	MPS2222A MPS2222A	$h_{ie}$	2.0 0.25	8.0 1.25	k $\Omega$
Voltage Feedback Ratio ( $I_C = 1.0 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ ) ( $I_C = 10 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ )	MPS2222A MPS2222A	$h_{re}$	— —	8.0 4.0	$\times 10^{-4}$
Small-Signal Current Gain ( $I_C = 1.0 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ ) ( $I_C = 10 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ )	MPS2222A MPS2222A	$h_{fe}$	50 75	300 375	—
Output Admittance ( $I_C = 1.0 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ ) ( $I_C = 10 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ )	MPS2222A MPS2222A	$h_{oe}$	5.0 25	35 200	$\mu\text{mhos}$
Collector Base Time Constant ( $I_E = 20 \text{ mA}$ , $V_{CB} = 20 \text{ Vdc}$ , $f = 31.8 \text{ MHz}$ )	MPS2222A	$\tau_b/\tau_C$	—	150	ps
Noise Figure ( $I_C = 100 \mu\text{A}$ , $V_{CE} = 10 \text{ Vdc}$ , $R_S = 1.0 \text{ k}\Omega$ , $f = 1.0 \text{ kHz}$ )	MPS2222A	NF	—	4.0	dB

If data are not available, enable **Check if data not available**.

2. Based on the table data, enter:

- **Output Admittance (hoe)**
- **Collector Current (Ic)**
- **Collector-Emitter Voltage (Vce)**

**Note** Databooks provide maximum and minimum values for the Output Admittance parameter. Select a typical value of output admittance.

➤ To enter **Switching Characteristics** data:

1. In the databook, find the “Switching Characteristics” table — for example:

Use this information to enter data in the **Switching Characteristics** fields.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS MPS2222A only

Delay Time	$(V_{CC} = 30 \text{ Vdc}$ , $V_{BE(\text{off})} = -0.5 \text{ Vdc}$ , $I_C = 150 \text{ mA}$ , $I_{B1} = 15 \text{ mA}$ ) (Figure 1)	$t_d$	—	10	ns
Rise Time		$t_r$	—	25	ns
Storage Time	$(V_{CC} = 30 \text{ Vdc}$ , $I_C = 150 \text{ mA}$ , $I_{B1} = I_{B2} = 15 \text{ mA}$ ) (Figure 2)	$t_s$	—	225	ns
Fall Time		$t_f$	—	60	ns

1. Pulse Test: Pulse Width  $\leq 300 \mu\text{s}$ , Duty Cycle  $\leq 2.0\%$ .

2.  $f_T$  is defined as the frequency at which  $|h_{fe}|$  extrapolates to unity.

2. Based on the table data, enter:

- **Storage Time (ts)**
- **Collector Current (Ic)**
- **Base Current (Ib1)**

- Base Current ( $I_{b2}$ )

## Entering Capacitances Data

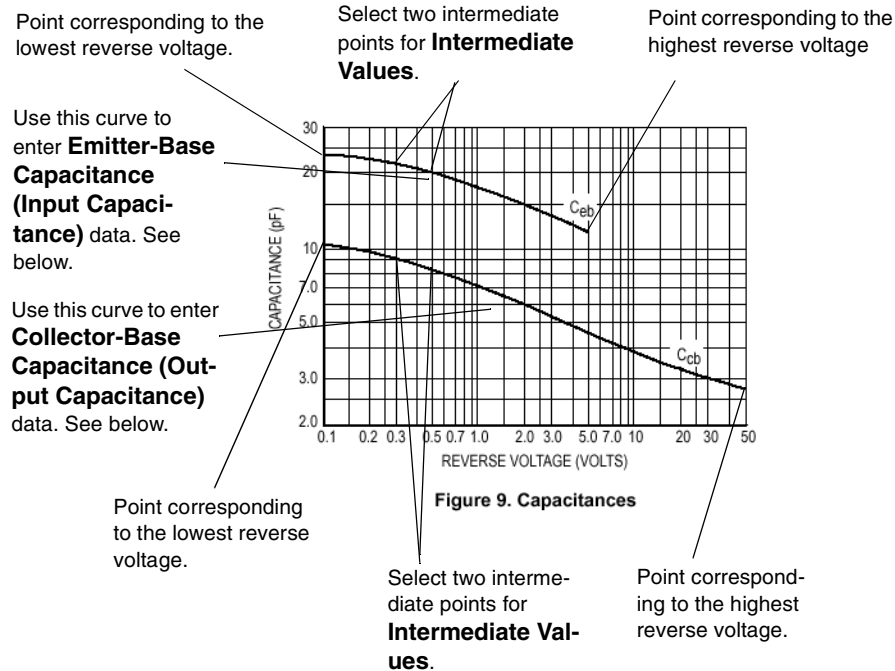
1. Click the Capacitances tab:

The screenshot shows the 'BJT Model' dialog box with the 'Capacitances' tab selected. The dialog is divided into two main panels: 'Emitter-Base Capacitance (Input Capacitance)' and 'Collector-Base Capacitance Chart (Output Capacitance)'. Each panel contains input fields for capacitance values at different reverse voltages.

Emitter-Base Capacitance (Input Capacitance)		Collector-Base Capacitance Chart (Output Capacitance)	
Capacitance (Ceb1)	24 pF	Capacitance (Ccb1)	11 pF
at:		at:	
Lowest Value of Reverse Voltage	0.1 V	Lowest Value of Reverse Voltage	0.1 V
Intermediate Values		Intermediate Values	
Capacitance (Ceb2)	22 pF	Capacitance (Ccb2)	9 pF
at:		at:	
Reverse Voltage	0.3 V	Reverse Voltage	0.3 V
Capacitance (Ceb3)	20 pF	Capacitance (Ccb3)	8 pF
at:		at:	
Reverse Voltage	0.5 V	Reverse Voltage	0.6 V
Capacitance (Ceb4)	14 pF	Capacitance (Ccb4)	2.5 pF
at:		at:	
Highest Value of Reverse Voltage	5 V	Highest Value of Reverse Voltage	50 V

At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: OK, Cancel, and Help.

1. In the databook, locate the “Ceb and Ccb vs. Reverse Voltages (RV)” graph — for example:



- To enter **Emitter-Base Capacitance (Input Capacitance)** data:
  2. On the  $C_{eb}$  curve, locate the point corresponding to the lowest voltage, or the beginning point, of the  $C_{eb}$  curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter values for:
    - **Capacitance (Ceb1)**
    - **Lowest Value of Reverse Voltage**
  3. On the same curve, locate the point corresponding to the maximum voltage, or the end point. Use the coordinates of this point to enter values for:
    - **Capacitance (Ceb4)**
    - **Highest Value of Reverse Voltage**
  4. To enter **Intermediate Values**, select two intermediate points close to the left side in the low voltage region. Ensure that they are not too close, to avoid excessive error in the model. Use the coordinates of the first and second points to enter values for:
    - **Capacitance (Ceb2) at Reverse Voltage**
    - **Capacitance (Ceb3) at Reverse Voltage**

- To enter **Collector-Base Capacitance Chart (Output Capacitance)** data:
- Using the Ccb curve from the same “Ceb and Ccb vs. Reverse Voltages (RV) graph”, repeat steps 2 through 4 above to enter values for:
    - **Capacitance (Ccb1)**
    - **Lowest Value of Reverse Voltage**
    - **Capacitance (Ccb2) at Reverse Voltage**
    - **Capacitance (Ccb3) at Reverse Voltage**
    - **Capacitance (Ccb4)**
    - **Highest Value of Reverse Voltage**

## Entering DC Current Gain Chart data

- Click the DC Current Gain Chart (hFE vs. Ic) tab:

The screenshot shows the "BJT Model" dialog box with the "DC Current Gain Chart (hFE vs. Ic)" tab selected. The dialog is divided into two main sections: "DC Current Gain (hFE) at base Temperature" and "DC Current Gain (hFE) at another Temperature".

**DC Current Gain (hFE) at base Temperature:**

- DC Current Gain (hFE1) at: Minimal Collector Current: 0.1 mA
- DC Current Gain (hFE2) at: Intermediate Collector Current (low values range): 0.2 mA
- Max Value of DC Current Gain (hFE\_Max): 215
- Collector Current (IL) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (low values range): 0.2 mA
- Collector Current (Ik) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (high values range): 270 mA

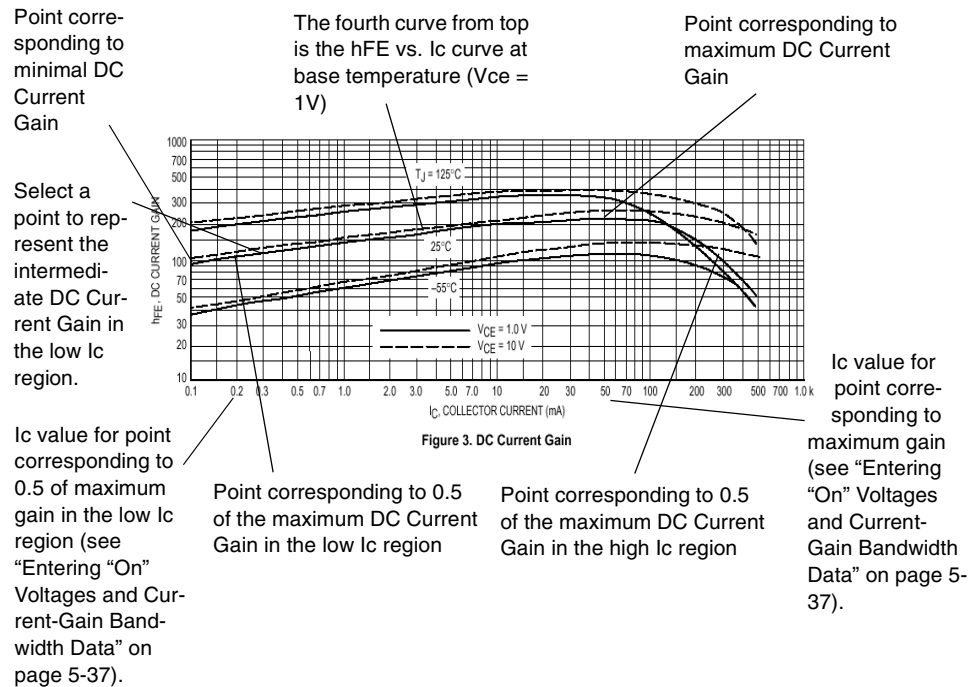
**DC Current Gain (hFE) at another Temperature:**

- Another Temperature on the Chart (t2): 125 deg.C
- DC Current Gain (hFE1\_t2) at: Minimal Collector Current: 0.1 mA
- DC Current Gain (hFE2\_t2) at: Intermediate Collector Current (low values range): 0.4 mA
- Max Value of DC Current Gain (hFE\_Max\_t2): 360
- Collector Current (IL\_t2) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (low values range): 0.3 mA

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Help.

- In the databook for the BJT, locate the hFE vs. Ic graph.

- To enter **DC Current Gain (hFE) at base Temperature** data:
3. Among the hFE vs.  $I_C$  curves at the base temperature for the BJT, select the one whose  $V_{CE}$  is most likely the operating point for the transistor. For example:



**Note** You will need to select a curve with the same voltage as the  $I_C$ - $V_{BE}$  curve you will use to enter data on the last tab of this screen. See “Entering “On” Voltages and Current-Gain Bandwidth Data” on page 5-37.

4. Find the point on the curve corresponding to the minimal collector current, or the beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this value to enter:
  - **DC Current Gain (hFE1)**
  - **Minimal Collector Current**
5. Select a point from the low  $I_C$  region of the same curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **DC Current Gain (hFE2)**
  - **Intermediate Collector Current (low values range)**
6. Find the highest point on the curve, and enter its DC Current Gain value in the **Max Value of DC Current Gain (hFE\_Max)** field.



**Note** You will need to note the  $I_c$  value of this point to plot points on the  $I_c$ - $V_{be}$  curve you will use to enter data on the last tab of this screen. See “Entering “On” Voltages and Current-Gain Bandwidth Data” on page 5-37.

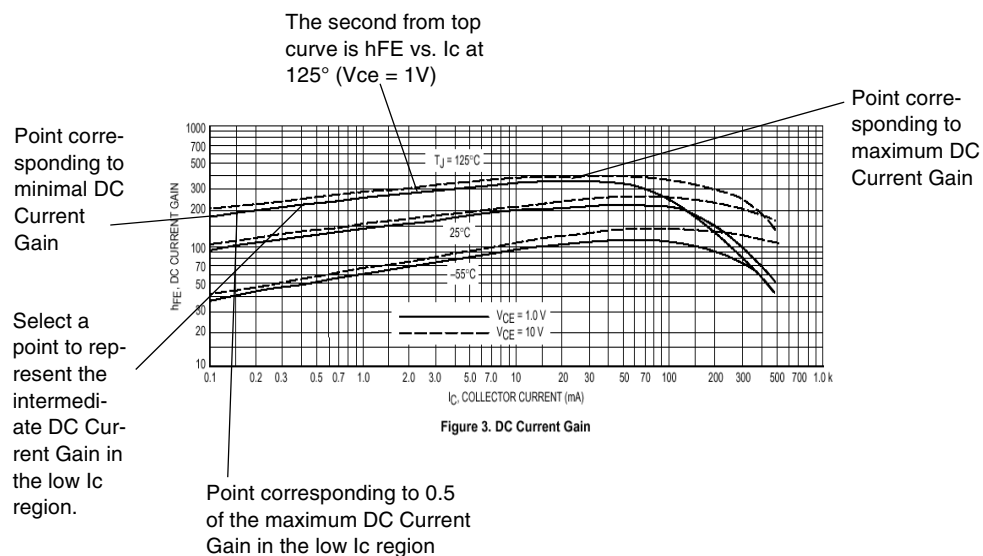
- Find the two points corresponding to 0.5 of the maximum DC current gain value, one in the low  $I_c$  region and one in the high  $I_c$  region. Use these points to enter:

- **Collector Current ( $I_L$ ) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (low values range)**
- **Collector Current ( $I_{kf}$ ) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (high values range)**

**Note** You will need to note the  $I_c$  value of the point in the low  $I_c$  region to plot points on the  $I_c$ - $V_{be}$  curve you will use to enter data on the last tab of this screen. See “Entering “On” Voltages and Current-Gain Bandwidth Data” on page 5-37.

➤ To enter **DC Current Gain (hFE) at another Temperature** data:

- Using the hFE vs.  $I_c$  graph, find a curve at a different temperature from the base temperature. (This can be any other temperature.) For example:



- Enter the temperature of the selected curve in the **Another temperature on the Chart (t2)** field.
- Find the point on the curve corresponding to the minimal collector current, or the beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this value to enter:
  - **DC Current Gain (hFE1\_t2)**
  - **Minimal Collector Current**

4. Select a point from the low  $I_c$  region of the same curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **DC Current Gain ( $hFE2\_t2$ )**
  - **Intermediate Collector Current (low values range)**
5. Find the highest point on the curve, and enter its DC Current Gain value in the **Max Value of DC Current Gain ( $hFE\_Max2$ )** field.
6. Find a point corresponding to 0.5 of the maximum DC current gain value in the low  $I_c$  region and enter its value in the **Collector Current ( $I_{L\_t2}$ ) at 0.5 Max DC Current Gain (low values range)** field.

## Entering “On” Voltages and Current-Gain Bandwidth Data

1. Click the “On” Voltages, Current-Gain Bandw. tab:

The screenshot shows the 'BJT Model' dialog box with the 'On' Voltages, Current-Gain Bandw. tab selected. The dialog is divided into several sections with input fields and units.

Section	Parameter	Value	Unit
"On" Voltages Chart	Collector-Emitter Voltage for Vbe vs. Ic (same as hFE curve)	1	V
	"On" Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe1) at the Lowest Value of Collector Current	0.57	V
	"On" Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe1_sat) at 0.5 Max Gain Collector Current (low values range)	0.58	V
	"On" Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe_hfEMax) at Max Gain	0.915	V
Vbe(sat)-Ic	Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe1_sat) @ Ic/Ib=10 and at:	0.83	V
	Collector Current in the high values range	100	mA
	Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe2_sat) at:	0.95	V
	the Highest Value of Collector Current	500	mA
Vce(sat)-Ic	Saturation Collector-Emitter Voltage (Vce1_sat) @ Ic/Ib=10 and at:	0.1	V
	Collector Current in the high values range	180	mA
	Saturation Collector-Emitter Voltage (Vce2_sat) @ Ic/Ib=10 and at:	0.21	V
	the Highest Value of Collector Current	500	mA
Current-Gain Bandwidth Product Chart (fT)	Maximum Value of Current-Gain Bandwidth Product	250	MHz
	Temperature Coefficients Chart	Lowest Value of Base-Emitter Voltage Temperature Coefficient	-2.2

2. In the databook, locate the  $I_c$  vs.  $V_{be}$  graph.

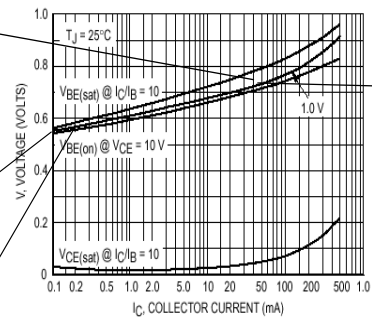
- To enter **“On” Voltages Chart** data:

3. On the graph, locate the curve with the same  $V_{CE}$  as the one used in the hFE data. Enter its  $V_{CE}$  value in the **Collector-Emitter Voltage for  $V_{BE}$  vs.  $I_C$  (same as hFE curve)** field. For example:

The second from top curve is the  $V_{BE}$  vs.  $I_C$  with same  $V_{CE}$  as  $I_C$ -hFE curve. (See “Entering DC Current Gain Chart data” on page 5-34.)

Point corresponding to minimal  $V_{BE}$

Point corresponding to 0.5 of the maximum DC Current gain. (See “Entering DC Current Gain Chart data” on page 5-34.)



Point corresponding to maximum DC Current gain. (See “Entering DC Current Gain Chart data” on page 5-34.)

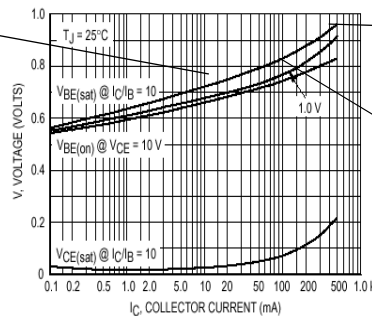
Figure 11. “On” Voltages

4. Find the point on this curve corresponding to the minimal  $I_C$  value, or the beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **“On” Base-Emitter Voltage ( $V_{BE1}$ )**
  - **Lowest Value of Collector Current**
5. Using the  $I_C$  vs. hFE graph from the previous section, locate the  $I_C$ -hFE curve at the base temperature that was used to enter data on the third tab of this screen. At the point of the maximum DC Current Gain (hFE), note the coordinate for the collector current ( $I_C$ ).
6. On the  $I_C$ - $V_{BE}$  graph, find the point corresponding to this coordinate for  $I_C$  on the curve used in steps 1 to 4. Enter the voltage for this point in the **“On” Base-Emitter Voltage ( $V_{BE\_hFE\text{Max}}$  at Max Gain)** field.
7. Using the  $I_C$  vs. hFE graph from the previous section, locate the  $I_C$ -hFE curve at the base temperature that was used to enter data on the third tab of this screen. At the point corresponding to 0.5 of the maximum DC Current Gain (hFE), note the coordinate for the collector current ( $I_C$ ).
8. On the  $I_C$ - $V_{BE}$  graph, find the point corresponding to this coordinate for  $I_C$  on the curve used in steps 1 to 4. Enter the voltage for this point in the **“On” Base-Emitter Voltage ( $V_{BE\_IL}$ ) at 0.5 Max Gain Collector Current (low values range)** field.

➤ To enter **Vbe(sat)-Ic** data:

1. Using the  $I_C$  vs.  $V_{BE}$  graph, locate the curve whose  $V_{BE}(\text{Sat})@I_C/I_B=10$ . For example:

The top curve is  $V_{BE}$ - $I_C$  when  $V_{BE}$  is saturated and  $I_C/I_B=10$ .



Point corresponding to highest value of collector current

Select a point in the high values range of the collector current.

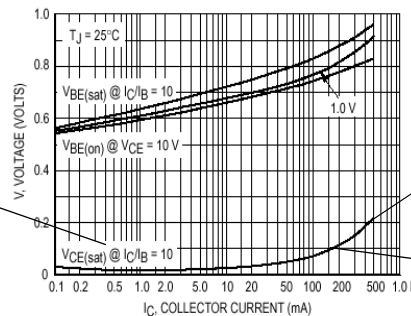
Figure 11. "On" Voltages

2. Find the highest point on the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe2\_sat)**
  - **Highest Value of Collector Current**
3. Select a point on the curve in the high values range of the collector current. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage (Vbe1\_sat)**
  - **Collector Current in the high values range**

➤ To enter **Vce(sat)-Ic** data:

1. Using the  $I_C$  vs.  $V_{BE}$  graph, locate the curve whose  $V_{BE}(\text{Sat})@I_C/I_B=10$ . For example:

The bottom curve is  $V_{BE}$ - $I_C$  when  $V_{CE}$  is saturated and  $I_C/I_B=10$ .



Point corresponding to highest value of collector current

Select a point in the high values range of the collector current.

Figure 11. "On" Voltages

2. Find the highest point on the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage (Vce2\_sat)**
  - **Highest Value of Collector Current**

3. Select a point on the curve in the high values range of the collector current. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:

- **Saturation Base-Emitter Voltage ( $V_{ce1\_sat}$ )**
- **Collector Current in the high values range**

➤ To enter **Current-Gain Bandwidth Product Chart ( $f_T$ )** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Current-Gain Bandwidth Product versus Frequency” graph — for example:

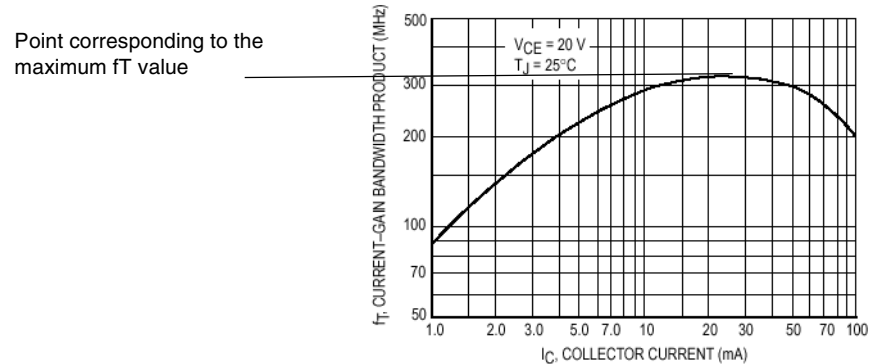


Figure 10. Current-Gain Bandwidth Product

2. Locate the maximum  $f_T$  value, or the highest point, of the curve. Enter this value in the **Maximum Value of Current-Gain Bandwidth Product** field.

➤ To enter **Temperature Coefficients Chart** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Temperature Coefficients” chart — for example:

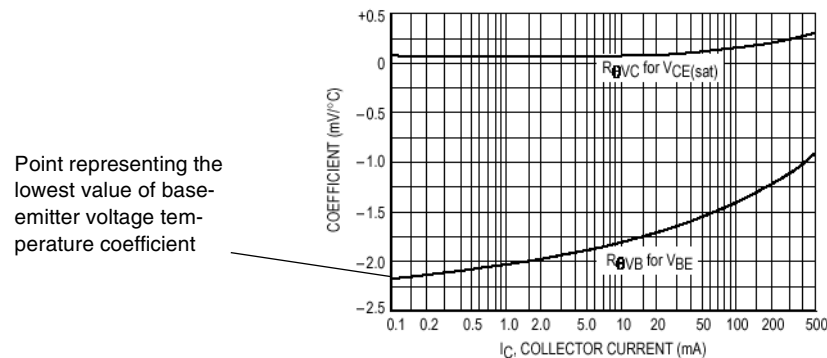


Figure 12. Temperature Coefficients

2. On the base-emitter temperature coefficient curve, find the minimum value, or the lowest point, and enter this value in the **Lowest Value of Base-Emitter Voltage Temperature Coefficient** field.

## 5.8.2 Diode Model Maker

1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.
2. From the Model Maker list, select Diode and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The Diode Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the Diode Model screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The Diode Model screen shows preset values for the IN4001 model.

### Entering General, Maximum Rates, Forward and Reverse Characteristics Data

1. Click the General, Max Rates, Forward and Reverse Characteristics tab:

2. Look up data information for the diode in a databook.

- To enter **General** characteristics, enter the **Component Name**. This is usually found at the top of the data sheet.
- To enter **Reverse Characteristics** data:
  1. In the databook, find the “Maximum Ratings and Electrical Characteristics” table — for example:

Enter this information in the **Reverse Characteristics** fields.

MAXIMUM RATINGS AND ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS									
Ratings at 25°C ambient temperature unless otherwise specified.									
	SYMBOLS	1N 4001	1N 4002	1N 4003	1N 4004	1N 4005	1N 4006	1N 4007	UNITS
Maximum repetitive peak reverse voltage	V <sub>RRM</sub>	50	100	200	400	600	800	1000	Volts
Maximum RMS voltage	V <sub>RMS</sub>	35	70	140	280	420	560	700	Volts
Maximum DC blocking voltage	V <sub>DC</sub>	50	100	200	400	600	800	1000	Volts
Maximum average forward rectified current 0.375 (9.5mm) lead length at T <sub>A</sub> =75°C	I <sub>(AV)</sub>	1.0							Amp
Peak forward surge current 8.3ms single half sine-wave superimposed on rated load (JEDEC Method) T <sub>A</sub> =75°C	I <sub>FSM</sub>	30.0							Amps
Maximum instantaneous forward voltage at 1.0A	V <sub>F</sub>	1.1							Volts
Maximum full load reverse current full cycle average 0.375 (9.5mm) lead length at T <sub>L</sub> =75°C	I <sub>R(AV)</sub>	30.0							μA
Maximum DC reverse current at rated DC blocking voltage T <sub>A</sub> =25°C T <sub>A</sub> =100°C	I <sub>R</sub>	5.0 50.0							μA
Typical reverse recovery time (NOTE 1)	t <sub>rr</sub>	30.0							μs
Typical junction capacitance (NOTE 2)	C <sub>J</sub>	15.0							pF
Typical thermal resistance (NOTE 3)	R <sub>θJA</sub> R <sub>θJL</sub>	50.0 25.0							°C/W
Maximum DC blocking voltage temperature	T <sub>A</sub>	150							°C
Operating junction and storage temperature range	T <sub>J</sub> , T <sub>STG</sub>	-50 to 175							°C

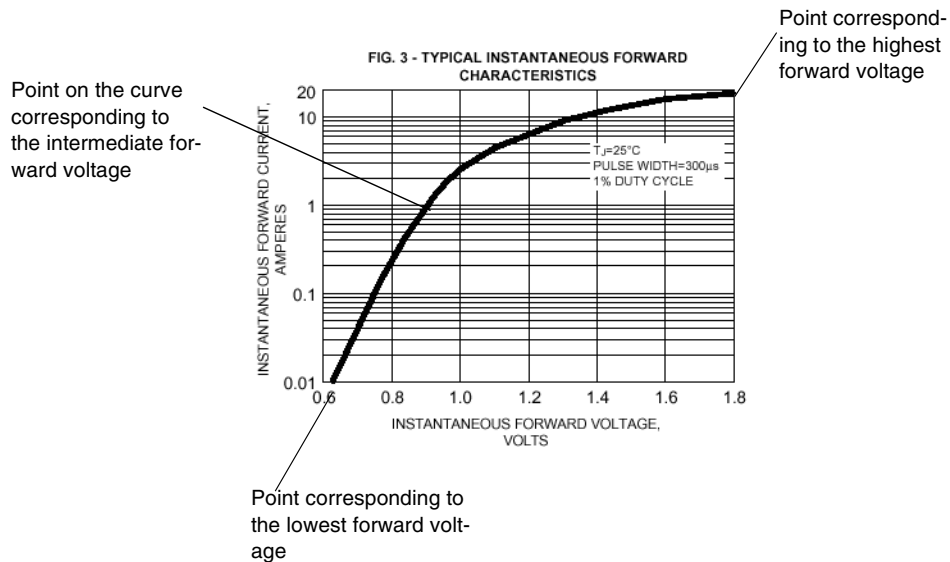
**NOTES:**  
(1) Measured on Tektronix Type S recovery plug-in. Tektronix 545 Scope or equivalent, I<sub>FM</sub>=20mA, I<sub>RM</sub>=1mA  
(2) Measured at 1.0 MHz and applied reverse voltage of 4.0 Volts  
(3) Thermal resistance from junction to ambient and from junction to lead at 0.375 (9.5mm) lead length, P.C.B. mounted  
JEDEC registered value

2. Based on information in this table, enter the following values:
  - **Maximum repetitive peak reverse voltage (VRRM)**
  - **Maximum DC reverse current at rated DC blocking voltage (IR)**
  - **Typical reverse recovery time (trr).**

- To enter **Reverse Breakdown** data:
  1. In the databook, find the “Reverse Voltage vs. Reverse Current” chart.  
If no data are available, enable **Reverse Breakdown Data NOT available**.
  2. On the chart, locate the graph that indicates the ambient temperature of 25° C.
  3. Select a point on the graph that represents the mid-point of the horizontal direction, as indicated in the chart.
  4. Use the coordinates of this point to enter values for:
    - **Reverse Breakdown Voltage (BV)**
    - **Reverse Breakdown Current (IBV)**

➤ To enter **Instantaneous Forward Characteristics** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Typical Instantaneous Forward Characteristics” graph — for example:



2. Find the point of lowest forward voltage, at beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter values for:
  - **Lowest forward current (IF1)**
  - **Lowest forward voltage (VF1)**
3. Find the point of highest forward voltage, or the end point on the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter values for:
  - **Highest forward current (IFM)**
  - **Highest forward voltage (VFM)**
4. Using your eye or a ruler, find the second or intermediate point on the curve which you think best identifies the transition point in the curve.

**Note** Guidelines for selecting the intermediate point vary from one databook to another. If the graph is provided in logarithmic format, which is usually the case, a good way to find this point is to place a ruler along the beginning of the curve in the lower voltage area, which will look like a straight line. Where the curve begins to diverge from your ruler, use this point as your intermediate point. If the graph is provided in linear format, plot the data in logarithmic fashion and follow the ruler procedure.

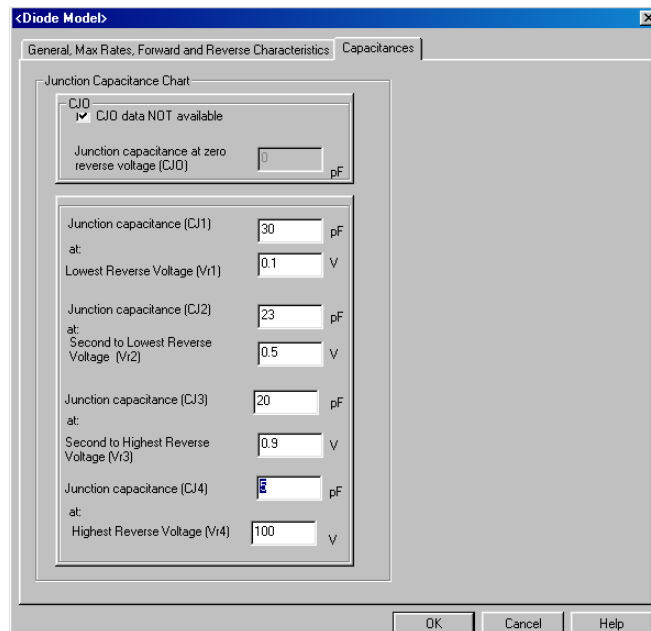
5. Use the coordinates of this point to enter the values for:
  - **Intermediate forward current (IF2)**



- Intermediate forward voltage (VF2).

## Entering Capacitances data

1. Click the Capacitances tab:



➤ To enter **Junction Capacitances** data:

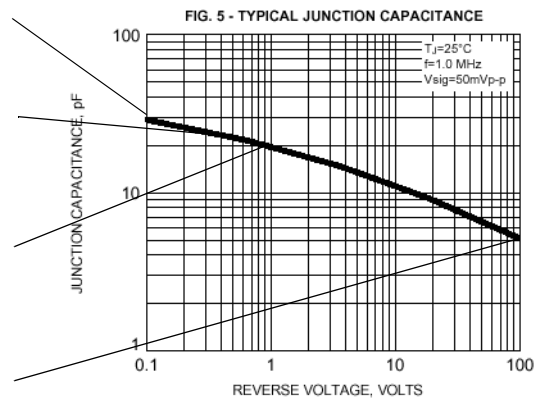
1. In the databook, find the “Typical Junction Capacitance” chart — for example:

Point corresponding to the lowest reverse voltage

Select a second point on the curve in the lower voltage area for the second to lowest reverse voltage.

Select a third point on the curve in the lower voltage area for the third to lowest/second to highest reverse voltage

Point corresponding to the highest reverse voltage



2. Find the junction capacitance at zero reverse voltage and enter it in the **Junction capacitance at zero reverse voltage (CJO)** field.  
If this information is not given in the databook, enable **CJO data NOT available**.
3. Find the point of lowest reverse voltage, or the beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter the values for:
  - **Junction capacitance (CJ1)**
  - **Lowest Reverse Voltage (Vr1)**.
4. Find the point of highest reverse voltage, or the end point on the curve) and enter the coordinate values in the **Junction capacitance (CJ4)** and **Highest Reverse Voltage (Vr4)** fields.
5. Select two additional intermediate points on the graph, greater than the lowest reverse voltage but in the lower range of the reverse voltage.
6. Use the coordinate values of the second point to enter:
  - **Junction capacitance (CJ2)**
  - **Second to Lowest Reverse Voltage (Vr2)**.
7. Use the coordinate values of the third point to enter:
  - **Junction Capacitance (CJ3)**
  - **Second to Highest Reverse Voltage (Vr3)** (Third to lowest reverse voltage)

### 5.8.3 MOSFET (Field Effect Transistor) Model Maker

1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.
2. From the Model Maker list, select MOSFET and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The MOSFET Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the MOSFET Model screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The MOSFET Model screen shows preset values for the BSS83 model.

#### Entering General and Output Characteristics Data

1. Click the General, Output Characteristics tab:

2. Look up data information for the MOSFET in a databook.

➤ To enter **General** data:

1. Enter the **Component Name**. This can usually be found in the top right corner of the datasheet.
2. Enter the **Channel Type of MOSFET**. This is the title of the datasheet and is found at the top of the datasheet.

3. Find the “Ratings” table for the MOSFET — for example:

Enter this information in the <b>Max Drain current</b> field.	<b>RATINGS</b>		
	Limiting values in accordance with the Absolute Maximum System (IEC 134)		
	Drain-source voltage	$V_{DS}$	max. 10 V
	Source-drain voltage	$V_{SD}$	max. 10 V
	Drain-substrate voltage	$V_{DB}$	max. 15 V
	Source-substrate voltage	$V_{SB}$	max. 15 V
	Drain current (DC)	$I_D$	max. 50 mA
	Total power dissipation up to $T_{amb} = 25\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}^{(1)}$	$P_{tot}$	max. 230 mW
<b>THERMAL RESISTANCE</b>			
From junction to ambient in free air <sup>(1)</sup>		$R_{th\ j-a}$	= 430 K/W

4. From the data given in the table, enter the **Max drain current**

➤ To enter **Output Characteristics in Ohmic Region** data:

1. From the MOSFET data information, find the  $I_D$  vs.  $V_{DS}$  graph — for example:

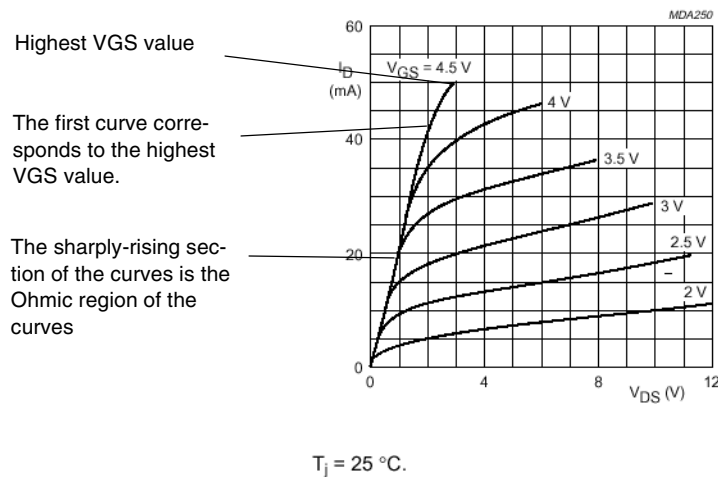


Fig.3  $V_{SB} = 0$ ; typical values.

2. Locate the curve with the highest VGS. Enter this VGS value in the **VGS for the curve (Vgs\_ohmic)**.

3. Locate a point in the ohmic region of the same curve.
  4. Enter the  $I_D$  value of this point in the **Drain Current ( $I_{Ds\_Ohmic}$ )** field.
  5. Enter the  $V_{ds}$  value of this point in the  **$V_{ds}$  when drain current is  $I_{Ds\_Ohmic}$  ( $V_{ds\_Ohmic}$ )** field.
- To enter **Output Characteristics for Saturation Region** data:
1. Using the same graph as above, locate the saturation region of the curves. The saturation region is the steady state situation of the curves where points along the curve fit on a straight line. (The curve corresponding to the highest  $V_{GS}$  does not have a saturation region.) For example:

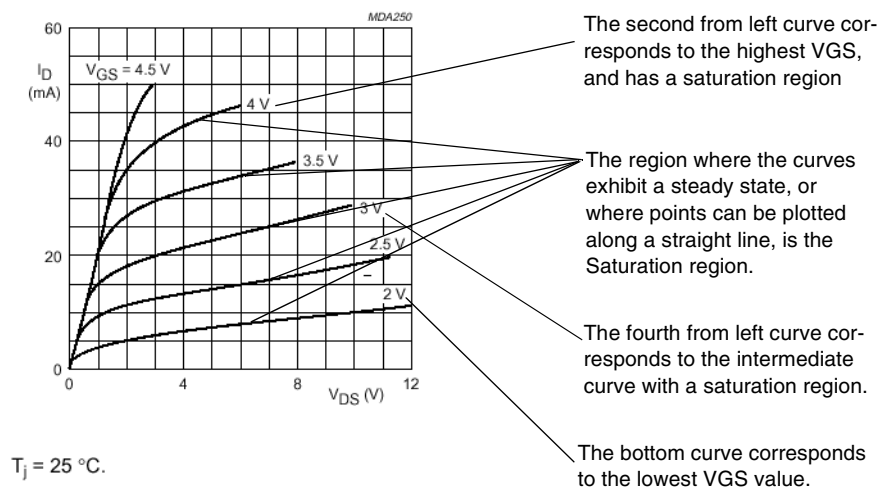


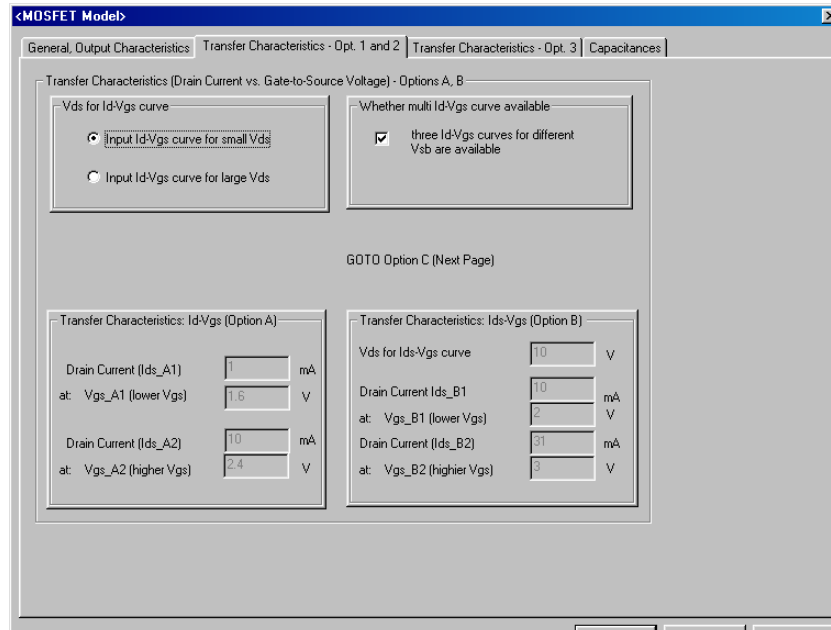
Fig.3  $V_{SB} = 0$ ; typical values.

2. To enter data for the  **$I_{Ds\_Vds}$  curve 1 (for lowest  $V_{gs}$ )** fields, find the curve with the lowest  $V_{gs}$  value.
3. Enter the  $V_{gs}$  value of this curve in the  **$V_{gs}$  for this curve ( $V_{gs\_f0}$ )** field.
4. Using your eye or a ruler, locate the beginning and end points of the saturation region, or the area where the points fit along a straight line, for this curve.
5. Use the coordinates of the beginning point to enter:
  - **Drain Current ( $I_{ds\_f00}$ )**
  - **$V_{ds\_f00}$  (lower  $V_{ds}$ ).**
6. Use the coordinates of the end point to enter:
  - **Drain Current ( $I_{ds\_f01}$ )**

- **Vds\_f01 (higher Vds).**
7. To enter data for the **Ids\_Vds curve 3 (for highest Vgs)** fields, find the curve with the highest Vgs value, but which still has a saturation region. (This description excludes the topmost curve of the Id-Vds graph.)
  8. Repeat steps 4 through 7 to enter values for:
    - **Vgs for this curve (Vgs\_f2)**
    - **Drain Current**
    - **Vds\_f20 (lower Vds).**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_f21)**
    - **Vds\_f21 (higher Vds).**
  9. To enter data for the **Ids\_Vds curve 2 (for intermediate Vgs)** fields, find the curve in the middle point between the curves corresponding to the lowest Vgs and the highest VGS with a saturation region.
  10. Repeat steps 4 through 7 to enter values for:
    - **Vgs for this curve (Vgs\_f1)**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_f10)**
    - **Vds\_f01 (lower Vds).**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_f11)**
    - **Vds\_f11 (higher Vds).**

## Entering Transfer Characteristics data

1. Click the Transfer Characteristics - Opt. 1 and 2 tab:



- To select Transfer Characteristics options:

1. In the databook, locate the Id vs. Vgs graph. Depending on the available data, under **Vds for Id-Vgs curve** and **Whether multi Id-Vgs curve available**, enable the appropriate options.

**Note** If the graph contains more than one Vsb curve, it implies that source and bulk (substrate) are not connected together.

If the latter option is not enabled, you will be prompted to enter data in the **Option A** or **Option B** fields on the same screen.

If the latter option is enabled (as it is in our example), the screen will prompt you to **Go to Option C (Next Page)**.

2. To go to Option C, click the Transfer Characteristics - Opt. 3 tab:

The screenshot shows the 'MOSFET Model' dialog box with the 'Transfer Characteristics - Opt. 3' tab selected. The dialog is titled 'Transfer Characteristics (Drain Current vs. Gate-to-Source Voltage) - Option C'. It contains three sections for defining Ids-Vgs curves at different Vsb levels.

Section	Vsb for this curve (Vsb_C1)	Drain Current (Ids_C11) at Vgs_C11 (lower Vgs)	Drain Current (Ids_C12) at Vgs_C12 (higher Vgs)
Ids-Vgs Curve for lowest Vsb	0 V	1 mA at 1.6 V	10 mA at 2.4 V
Ids-Vgs Curve for intermediate Vsb	4 V	1 mA at 2 V	10 mA at 2.75 V
Ids-Vgs for highest Vsb	12 V	1 mA at 2.25 V	10 mA at 3 V



- To enter **Transfer Characteristics (Drain Current vs. Gate-to-Source Voltage)** data for all three options:

1. Look at the data in the  $I_{ds}$  vs.  $V_{gs}$  graph — for example:

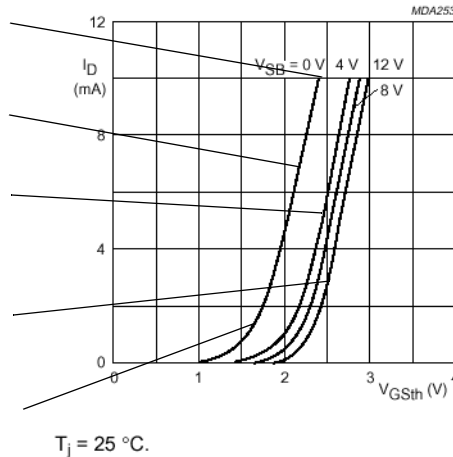
The highest point on the curves corresponds to the maximum  $I_d$  value.

The leftmost curve corresponds to the lowest  $V_{sb}$  value.

The second from left curve corresponds to the intermediate  $V_{sb}$  value.

The rightmost curve corresponds to the highest  $V_{sb}$  value.

Point corresponding to 10% of maximum  $I_d$  value



Multiple  $V_{sb}$  curves imply that source-bulk (substrate) are not connected together.

Fig.6  $V_{DS} = V_{GS} = V_{GS(th)}$ .

2. If you are using Option A, proceed to step 4.  
If you are using Option B, proceed to step 3.  
If you are using Option C, to enter data in the **Ids-Vgs Curve for lowest Vsb** fields, locate the curve with the lowest  $V_{sb}$ .
3. If you are using Option B, enter the  $V_{ds}$  value in the **Vds for Ids-Vgs curve** field.  
If you are using Option C, enter the  $V_{sb}$  value in the **Vsb for this curve (Vsb\_C1)** field.
4. Find the maximum  $I_d$ , or the highest point of the curve. Use the coordinates for this point to enter:  
for Option A:
  - **Drain Current (Ids\_A1)**
  - **Vgs\_A1 (lower Vgs)**
 for Option B:
  - **Drain Current Ids\_B1**
  - **Vgs\_B1 (lower Vgs)**
 for Option C:
  - **Drain Current (Ids\_C11)**

- **Vgs-C11 (lower Vgs)**
5. Find the point on the curve which corresponds to 10% of the maximum  $I_d$  on the same curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
 

for Option A:

    - **Drain Current (Ids\_A2)**
    - **Vgs\_A2 (higher Vgs)**

for Option B:

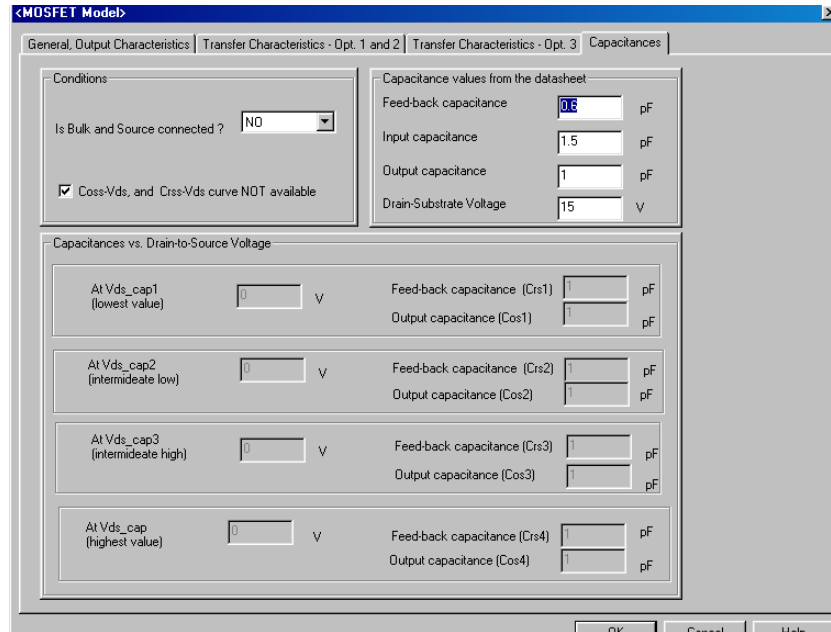
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_B2)**
    - **Vgs\_B2 (higher Vgs)**

for Option C:

    - **Drain Current (Ids\_C12)**
    - **Vgs\_C12 (higher Vgs)**
  6. To complete the Option 3 screen, to enter data in the **Ids-Vgs Curve for highest Vsb**, find the curve with the highest  $V_{sb}$  value, and repeat steps 3 through 5 above to enter data for:
    - **Vbs for this curve (Vsb\_C3)**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_C31)**
    - **Vgs\_C21 (lower Vgs)**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_C32)**
    - **Vgs\_C22 (highest Vgs)**
  7. To enter data in the **Ids-Vgs Curve for Intermediate Vsb** fields, select the curve corresponding to a  $V_{sb}$  value in between the highest and lowest  $V_{sb}$ . Repeat steps 3 through 5 above to enter data for:
    - **Vsb for this curve (Vsb\_C2)**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_C21)**
    - **Vgs\_C21 (lower Vgs)**
    - **Drain Current (Ids\_C22)**
    - **Vgs\_C22 (highest Vgs)**

## Entering Capacitances Data

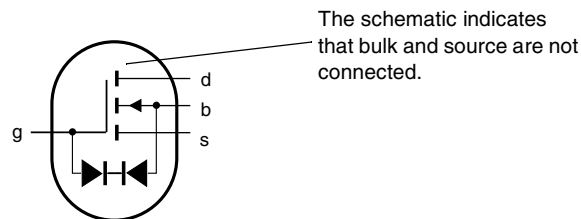
1. Click the Capacitances tab:



- To enter **Conditions**:

1. Determine whether the bulk and source of the model are connected, and select the appropriate answer from the **Is Bulk and Source connected?** drop-down list.

**Note** The substrate condition can be determined by two means. The first is to check the schematic of the device where the internal connections of the MOS transistor are shown — for example:



The second is to check the  $I_d$ - $V_{gs}$  graph. If the graph contains more than one  $V_{sb}$  curve, it suggests that source-bulk (substrate) are not connected together.

2. In the databook, locate the “Capacitances vs. Drain-to-Source Voltage” chart. If it is available, you may enter data in the **Capacitances vs. Drain-to-Source Voltage** fields. If it is

not available, enable **Coss-Vds** and **Crss-Vds** curve **NOT available**, and use the datasheet to enter capacitances.

➤ To enter **Capacitance values from the datasheet**:

1. In the databook, find the “Characteristics” table — for example:

**CHARACTERISTICS**  
 $T_{amb} = 25\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$  unless otherwise specified

Drain-source breakdown voltage  
 $V_{GS} = V_{BS} = -5\text{ V}; I_D = 10\text{ nA}$

Source-drain breakdown voltage  
 $V_{GD} = V_{BD} = -5\text{ V}; I_D = 10\text{ nA}$

Drain-substrate breakdown voltage  
 $V_{GB} = 0; I_D = 10\text{ nA};$  open source

Source-substrate breakdown voltage  
 $V_{GB} = 0; I_D = 10\text{ nA};$  open drain

Drain-source leakage current  
 $V_{GS} = V_{BS} = -2\text{ V}; V_{DS} = 6,6\text{ V}$

Source-drain leakage current  
 $V_{GD} = V_{BD} = -2\text{ V}; V_{SD} = 6,6\text{ V}$

Forward transconductance at  $f = 1\text{ kHz}$   
 $V_{DS} = 10\text{ V}; V_{SB} = 0; I_D = 20\text{ mA}$

Gate-source threshold voltage  
 $V_{DS} = V_{GS}; V_{SB} = 0; I_D = 1\text{ }\mu\text{A}$

Drain-source ON-resistance  
 $I_D = 0,1\text{ mA};$   
 $V_{GS} = 5\text{ V}; V_{SB} = 0$   
 $V_{GS} = 10\text{ V}; V_{SB} = 0$   
 $V_{GS} = 3,2\text{ V}; V_{SB} = 6,8\text{ V}$  (see Fig.4)

Gate-substrate zener voltages  
 $V_{DB} = V_{SB} = 0; -I_G = 10\text{ }\mu\text{A}$   
 $V_{DB} = V_{SB} = 0; +I_G = 10\text{ }\mu\text{A}$

Capacitances at  $f = 1\text{ MHz}$   
 $V_{GS} = V_{BS} = -15\text{ V}; V_{DS} = 10\text{ V}$

Feed-back capacitance

Input capacitance

Output capacitance

Switching times (see Fig.2)  
 $V_{DD} = 10\text{ V}; V_I = 5\text{ V}$

$V_{(BR)DSX}$	>	10 V
$V_{(BR)SDX}$	>	10 V
$V_{(BR)DSO}$	>	15 V
$V_{(BR)SDO}$	>	15 V
$I_{Doff}$	<	10 nA
$I_{SDoff}$	<	10 nA
$g_{fs}$	>	10 mS
	typ.	15 mS
$V_{GS(th)}$	>	0,1 V
	<	2,0 V
$R_{DSon}$	<	70 $\Omega$
$R_{SDon}$	<	45 $\Omega$
$R_{DSon}$	typ.	80 $\Omega$
$R_{SDon}$	<	120 $\Omega$
$V_{Z(1)}$	>	12,5 V
$V_{Z(2)}$	>	12,5 V
$C_{riss}$	typ.	0,6 pF
$C_{iss}$	typ.	1,5 pF
$C_{oss}$	typ.	1,0 pF
$t_{on}$	typ.	1,0 ns
$t_{off}$	typ.	5,0 ns

Use this information to enter data in the **Capacitance values from the datasheet** fields.

2. From the table, enter data for:

- **Feedback capacitance**
- **Input capacitance**
- **Output capacitance**
- **Source-Gate Voltage**

## 5.8.4 Operational Amplifier Model Maker

1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.

2. From the Model Maker list, select Operational Amplifier and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The Operational Amplifier Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the Operational Amplifier Model screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The Operational Amplifier Model screen shows preset values for the  $\mu A741$  model.

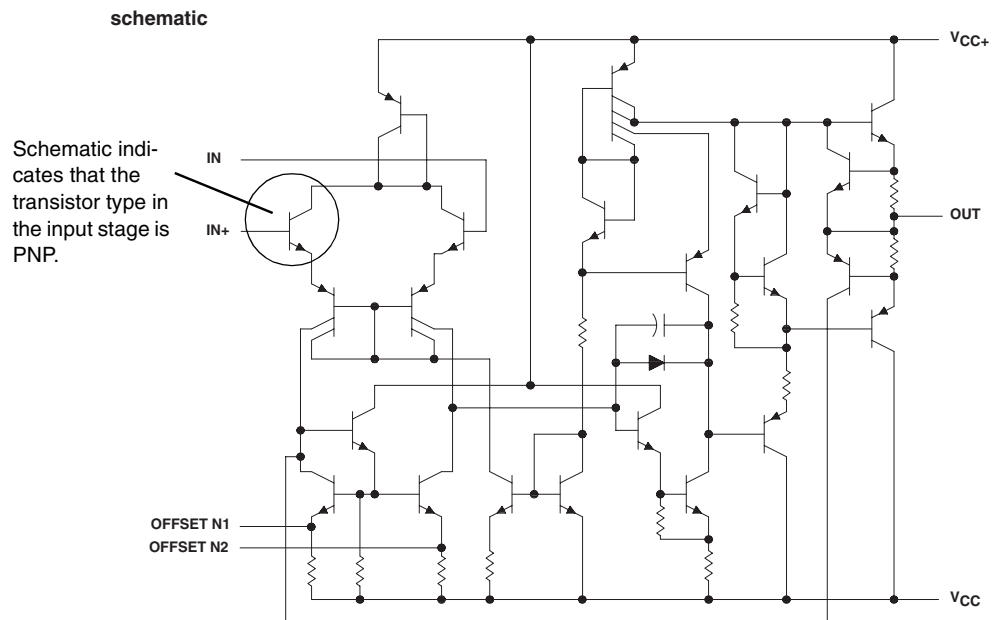
### Entering General and Input data

1. Click the General Input tab:

The screenshot shows the 'Operational Amplifier Model' dialog box with the 'General Input' tab selected. The 'General' section contains 'Component Name' (set to  $\mu A741$ ) and 'Transistor Type in input stage' (set to NPN). A note states: 'NOTE: Preset values are for  $\mu A741$ '. The 'Input' section contains several parameters with their values: Input Capacitance (Ci) is 1.4 pF, Input Offset Current (Iio) is 20 nA, Input Bias Current (Iib) is 80 nA, Input Offset Voltage (Vio) is 1 mV, Common-mode Input Resistance (Rcm) is 2 GOhm, Differential-mode Input Resistance (Ri) is 2 MOhm, and Common-mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR) is 90 dB. The 'Voltage Gain Avd' section has radio buttons for 'in dB' (selected) and 'in V/mV', with a value of 106 dB entered. At the bottom are 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

2. Look up data information for the operational amplifier in a databook.
- To enter **General** data:
1. In the **Component Name** field, enter the appropriate name of the component. This is usually found in the top right corner of the datasheet.

2. In the **Transistor Type in input stage** field, select the type of transistor used in the input stage. This can be determined by looking at the schematic of the internal structure of the opamp.



**Note** This information is optional, as the opamp model can be based on any type of input transistor. If the type of the input transistor is not important, select the “Don’t Care” option.

➤ To enter **Input** data:

1. In the databook, find the two tables labelled “Electrical Characteristics at specified free-air temperature” — for example:

electrical characteristics at specified free-air temperature,  $V_{CC} \pm 15$  V (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	$T_A$	$\mu A741C$			$\mu A741I, \mu A741M$			UNIT
			MIN	TYP	MAX	MIN	TYP	MAX	
$V_{IO}$ Input offset voltage	$V_O = 0$	25°C		1	6		1	5	mV
		Full range			7.5			6	
$\Delta V_{IO(adj)}$ Offset voltage adjust range	$V_O = 0$	25°C		$\pm 15$			$\pm 15$		mV
$I_{IO}$ Input offset current	$V_O = 0$	25°C		20	200		20	200	nA
		Full range			300			500	
$I_{IB}$ Input bias current	$V_O = 0$	25°C		80	500		80	500	nA
		Full range			800			1500	
$V_{ICR}$ Common-mode input voltage range		25°C	$\pm 12$	$\pm 13$		$\pm 12$	$\pm 13$		V
		Full range	$\pm 12$			$\pm 12$			
$V_{OM}$ Maximum peak output voltage swing	$R_L = 10\text{ k}\Omega$	25°C	$\pm 12$	$\pm 14$		$\pm 12$	$\pm 14$		V
	$R_L \geq 10\text{ k}\Omega$	Full range	$\pm 12$			$\pm 12$			
	$R_L = 2\text{ k}\Omega$	25°C	$\pm 10$	$\pm 13$		$\pm 10$	$\pm 13$		
	$R_L \geq 2\text{ k}\Omega$	Full range	$\pm 10$			$\pm 10$			
$A_{VD}$ Large-signal differential voltage amplification	$R_L \geq 2\text{ k}\Omega$	25°C	20	200		50	200		V/mV
	$V_O = \pm 10\text{ V}$	Full range	15			25			
$r_i$ Input resistance		25°C	0.3	2		0.3	2		M $\Omega$
$r_o$ Output resistance	$V_O = 0$ , See Note 5	25°C		75			75		$\Omega$
$C_i$ Input capacitance		25°C		1.4			1.4		pF
CMRR Common-mode rejection ratio	$V_{IC} = V_{ICRmin}$	25°C	70	90		70	90		dB
		Full range		70			70		
$k_{SVS}$ Supply voltage sensitivity ( $\Delta V_{IO}/\Delta V_{CC}$ )	$V_{CC} = \pm 9\text{ V to } \pm 15\text{ V}$	25°C		30	150		30	150	$\mu V/V$
		Full range			150			150	
$I_{OS}$ Short-circuit output current		25°C	$\pm 25$	$\pm 40$		$\pm 25$	$\pm 40$		mA
		25°C		1.7	2.8		1.7	2.8	
$I_{CC}$ Supply current	$V_O = 0$ , No load	Full range		3.3			3.3		mA
$P_D$ Total power dissipation	$V_O = 0$ , No load	25°C		50	85		50	85	mW
		Full range			100			100	

All characteristics are measured under open-loop conditions with zero common-mode input voltage unless otherwise specified. Full range for the  $\mu A741C$  is 0°C to 70°C; the  $\mu A741I$  is 40 °C to 85°C, and the  $\mu A741M$  is 55 °C to 125°C.

NOTE 5: This typical value applies only at frequencies above a few hundred hertz because of the effects of drift and thermal feedback.

Use this information to enter data in the **Input** fields.

Use this information to enter data under the **Output** tab. See “Entering Output Data” on page 5-62.

electrical characteristics at specified free-air temperature,  $V_{CC} \pm 15$  V,  $T_A$  25 °C (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	$\mu A741Y$			UNIT
		MIN	TYP	MAX	
$V_{IO}$ Input offset voltage	$V_O = 0$		1	6	mV
$\Delta V_{IO(adj)}$ Offset voltage adjust range	$V_O = 0$		$\pm 15$		mV
$I_{IO}$ Input offset current	$V_O = 0$		20	200	nA
$I_{IB}$ Input bias current	$V_O = 0$		80	500	nA
$V_{ICR}$ Common-mode input voltage range		$\pm 12$	$\pm 13$		V
$V_{OM}$ Maximum peak output voltage swing	$R_L = 10\text{ k}\Omega$	$\pm 12$	$\pm 14$		V
	$R_L = 2\text{ k}\Omega$	$\pm 10$	$\pm 13$		
$A_{VD}$ Large-signal differential voltage amplification	$R_L \geq 2\text{ k}\Omega$	20	200		V/mV
$r_i$ Input resistance		0.3	2		M $\Omega$
$r_o$ Output resistance	$V_O = 0$ , See Note 5		75		$\Omega$
$C_i$ Input capacitance			1.4		pF
CMRR Common-mode rejection ratio	$V_{IC} = V_{ICRmin}$	70	90		dB
$k_{SVS}$ Supply voltage sensitivity ( $\Delta V_{IO}/\Delta V_{CC}$ )	$V_{CC} = \pm 9\text{ V to } \pm 15\text{ V}$		30	150	$\mu V/V$
$I_{OS}$ Short-circuit output current		$\pm 25$	$\pm 40$		mA
$I_{CC}$ Supply current	$V_O = 0$ , No load		1.7	2.8	mA
$P_D$ Total power dissipation	$V_O = 0$ , No load		50	85	mW

All characteristics are measured under open-loop conditions with zero common-mode voltage unless otherwise specified.

NOTE 5: This typical value applies only at frequencies above a few hundred hertz because of the effects of drift and thermal feedback.

Use this information to enter data in the **Input** fields.

Use this information to enter data under the **Output** tab. See “Entering Output Data” on page 5-62.

2. Use the data from these tables to enter:

- **Input Capacitance (I)**
- **Input Offset Current (I1o)**
- **Input Bias Current (I1b)**
- **Input Offset Voltage (V1o)**
- **Common-mode Input Resistance (Rcm)**
- **Differential-mode Input Resistance (R1)**
- **Common-mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR)**
- **Voltage Gain Avd**

**Note** The Common-Mode input resistance is usually very high. If its value is not available, choose 2 Gohm as the default.

**Note** While the typical value for the Common-Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR) is provided in the “Electrical Characteristics” table, its variations with frequency are also provided in a chart called “Common-Mode Rejection Rate Vs. Frequency”. If you use this chart, use the CMRR value for the lowest frequency possible.

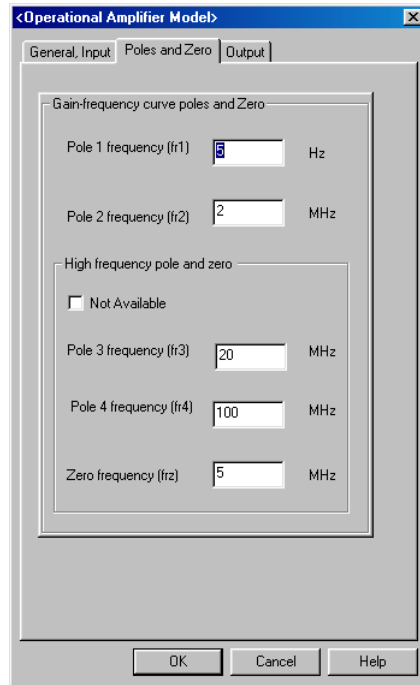
**Note** While the typical value for Large Signal Differential Voltage Amplification (Avd) is provided in the “Electrical Characteristics” table, you can also find it in a chart called “Open-Loop Large Signal Differential Voltage”. If you use this chart, use the Avd value at the lowest frequency.

**Note** Databooks provide Avd gain in either dB or V/mV. If the value is provided in V/mV, you can still enter the data in dB. However, you should convert the numerical values:  
 $value\ in\ dB = 20 * \log[1000 * (value\ in\ V/mv)]$

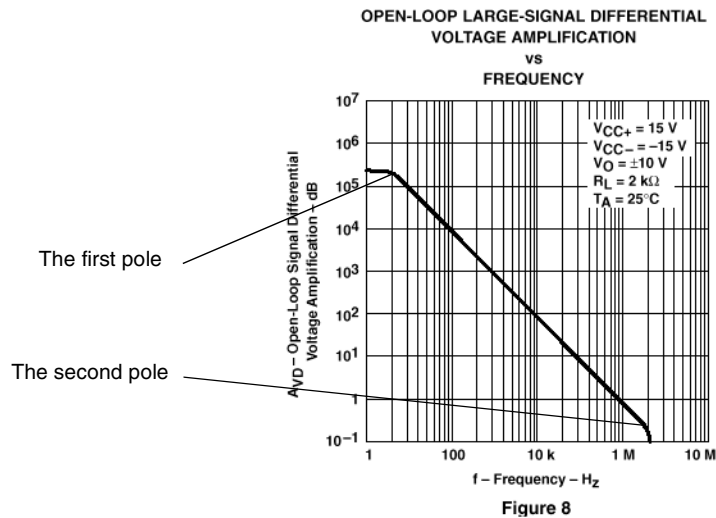


## Entering Poles and Zero Data

1. Click the Poles and Zero tab:



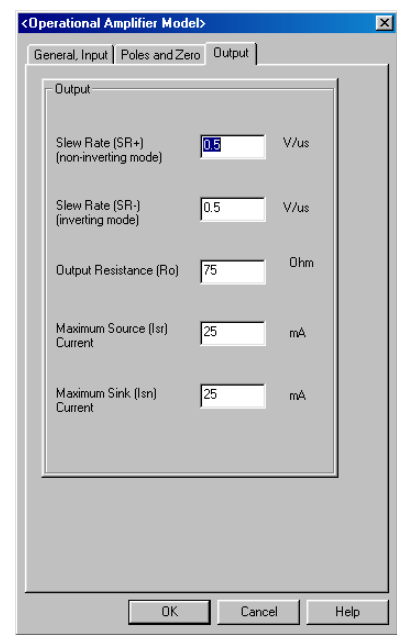
- To enter **Gain-frequency curve poles and Zero** data:
  1. In the databook, locate the “Avd-Open-Loop Single Differential Voltage Amplification vs. Frequency” chart — for example:



2. Find the first pole on the curve, or the point on the curve where the first horizontal line transitions into a slope. Enter the frequency value for this point in the **Pole 1 frequency (fr1)** field.
  3. Find the second pole on the curve, or the point where the slope transitions into a sharper slope. Enter the frequency value for this point in the **Pole 2 frequency (fr2)** field.
- To enter **High frequency pole and zero** data, find higher frequency poles using the curve mentioned above, web sites or books. If these pieces of information are not available, enable **Not Available**.

Entering Output Data

1. Click the Output tab:



2. In the databook, locate the “Operating Characteristics” table — for example:

Use this information to enter data in the **Output** fields.

operating characteristics, $V_{CC} \pm 15\text{ V}$ , $T_A\ 25\ ^\circ\text{C}$				
PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	$\mu\text{A741Y}$		
		MIN	TYP	MAX
$t_r$ Rise time	$V_i = 20\text{ mV}$ , $R_L = 2\text{ k}\Omega$ , $C_L = 100\text{ pF}$ , See Figure 1		0.3	$\mu\text{s}$
Overshoot factor			5%	
SR Slew rate at unity gain	$V_i = 10\text{ V}$ , $R_L = 2\text{ k}\Omega$ , $C_L = 100\text{ pF}$ , See Figure 1		0.5	$\text{V}/\mu\text{s}$

3. Use the data from this table to enter:
- **Slew Rate (SR+) (non-inverting mode)**
  - **Slew Rate (SR-) (inverting mode)**

**Note** Databooks may provide only one value for both inverted and non-inverted slew rates.

4. Refer to the “Electrical Characteristics” tables mentioned in the previous section. Use the data from these tables to enter:
- **Output Resistance (Ro)**
  - **Maximum Source (Isr) Current**
  - **Maximum Sink (Isn) Current**

**Note** Databooks normally provide the short circuit output current. This is the maximum value of the output current which the output node can provide if it is connected to the negative power supply, or can accept if it is shorted to the positive power supply. You should enter its value regardless of its sign.

## 5.8.5 Silicon Controlled Rectifier Model Maker

1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.
2. From the Model Maker list, select SCR and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The SCR Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the SCR Model screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The SCR Model screen shows preset values for the 2N6504 SCR

### Entering Electrical and Maximum Forward Voltage Data

1. Click the Electrical Data, Max Forward Voltage tab:

**<SCR Model>**

Electrical Data, Max Forward Voltage | Time Data, Max Ratings

Name of Model Builder (optional):

Device Type No. (Preset values are for 2N6504):

**Electrical Characteristics**

Holding Current	<input type="text" value="35"/>	mA
Gate Trigger Current	<input type="text" value="40"/>	mA
Gate Trigger Voltage	<input type="text" value="1.5"/>	V
Peak Forward Blocking Current	<input type="text" value="10"/>	uA
Peak Forward Blocking Voltage	<input type="text" value="50"/>	V
1.05 Peak Reverse Blocking Voltage	<input type="text" value="52.5"/>	V
Critical Rate of Rise of Off-State Voltage	<input type="text" value="50"/>	V/us

**Maximum Forward Voltage Chart**

Instantaneous Forward Current at:	<input type="text" value="0.1"/>	A
Minimum Value of Instantaneous Voltage	<input type="text" value="0.85"/>	V
Instantaneous Forward Current at:	<input type="text" value="3"/>	A
Intermediate Value of Instantaneous Voltage	<input type="text" value="1"/>	V
Instantaneous Forward Current at:	<input type="text" value="100"/>	A
Maximum Value of Instantaneous Voltage	<input type="text" value="2.55"/>	V

OK Cancel Help

2. Look up data information for the SCR in a databook.

- 3. Enter the name of the model builder (optional).
  - 4. Enter the device type number. This is usually found in the top right corner of the datasheet.
- To enter **Electrical Characteristics** data:
- 1. Locate the “Electrical Characteristics” table — for example:

Use this information to enter data in the **Electrical Characteristics** fields under the Electrical Data, Max Forward Voltage tab.

Use this information to enter data in the **Electrical Characteristics** fields of under the Time Data, Max Ratings tab. See “Entering Time Data and Maximum Ratings Data” on page 5-67.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (T <sub>C</sub> = 25°C unless otherwise noted.)					
Characteristic	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
*Peak Forward or Reverse Blocking Current (V <sub>AK</sub> = Rated V <sub>DRM</sub> or V <sub>RRM</sub> , Gate Open) T <sub>J</sub> = 25°C T <sub>J</sub> = 125°C	I <sub>DRM</sub> , I <sub>RRM</sub>	—	—	10 2	μA mA
*Forward “On” Voltage <sup>(1)</sup> (I <sub>TM</sub> = 50 A)	V <sub>TM</sub>	—	—	1.8	Volts
*Gate Trigger Current (Continuous dc) (Anode Voltage = 12 Vdc, R <sub>L</sub> = 100 Ohms) T <sub>C</sub> = 25°C T <sub>C</sub> = -40°C	I <sub>GT</sub>	—	— 25	40 75	mA
*Gate Trigger Voltage (Continuous dc) (Anode Voltage = 12 Vdc, R <sub>L</sub> = 100 Ohms, T <sub>C</sub> = -40°C)	V <sub>GT</sub>	—	1	1.5	Volts
Gate Non-Trigger Voltage (Anode Voltage = Rated V <sub>DRM</sub> , R <sub>L</sub> = 100 Ohms, T <sub>J</sub> = 125°C)	V <sub>GD</sub>	0.2	—	—	Volts
*Holding Current (Anode Voltage = 12 Vdc, T <sub>C</sub> = -40°C)	I <sub>H</sub>	—	35	40	mA
*Turn-On Time (I <sub>TM</sub> = 25 A, I <sub>GT</sub> = 50 mAdc)	t <sub>gt</sub>	—	1.5	2	μs
Turn-Off Time (V <sub>DRM</sub> = rated voltage) (I <sub>TM</sub> = 25 A, I <sub>R</sub> = 25 A) (I <sub>TM</sub> = 25 A, I <sub>R</sub> = 25 A, T <sub>J</sub> = 125°C)	t <sub>q</sub>	—	15 35	— —	μs
Critical Rate of Rise of Off-State Voltage (Gate Open, Rated V <sub>DRM</sub> , Exponential Waveform)	dv/dt	—	50	—	V/μs

\*Indicates JEDEC Registered Data.  
1. Pulse Test: Pulse Width ≤ 300 μs, Duty Cycle ≤ 2%.

- 2. Based on the data provided this table, enter:
  - **Holding Current**
  - **Gate Trigger Current**
  - **Gate Trigger Voltage**
  - **Peak Forward Blocking Current**
  - **Critical Rate of Rise of Off-State Voltage**

3. In the databook, locate the “Maximum Ratings” table — for example:

Enter this value  
in the **Peak  
Forward  
Blocking Volt-  
age** field of the  
Electrical Data,  
Max Forward  
Voltage tab.

Enter this value in  
the **Forward  
Current** field of  
the Time Data,  
Max Ratings tab.  
See “Entering  
Time Data and  
Maximum Rat-  
ings Data” on  
page 5-67

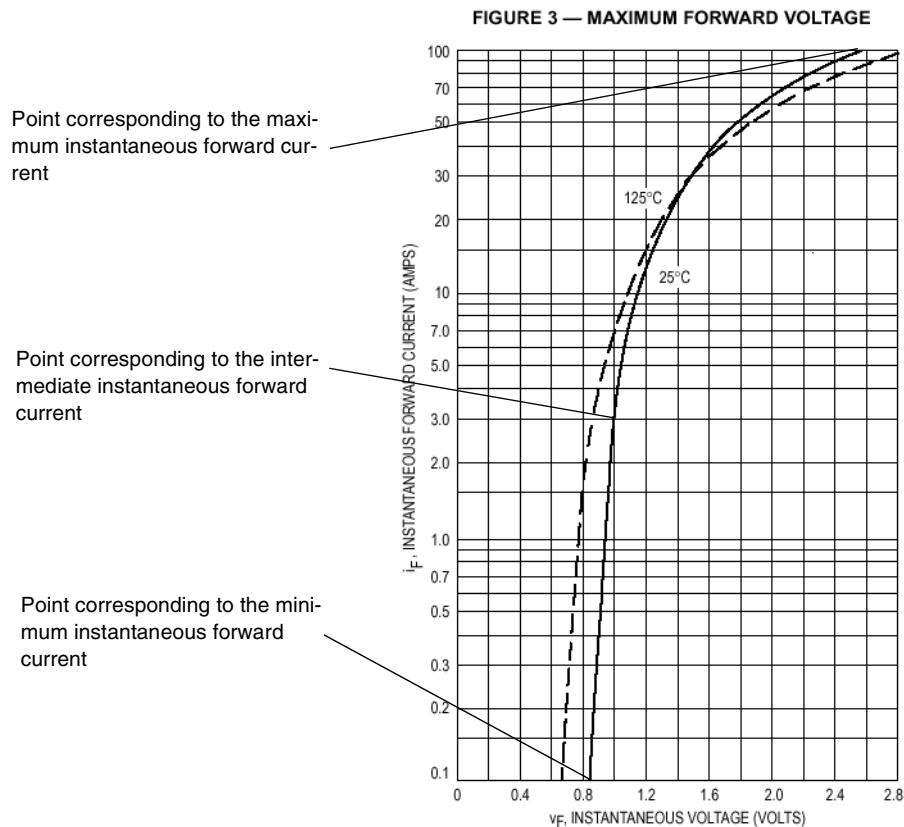
MAXIMUM RATINGS ( $T_J = 25^\circ\text{C}$  unless otherwise noted.)

Rating	Symbol	Value	Unit
*Peak Forward and Reverse Blocking Voltage(1) (Gate Open, $T_J = 25$ to $125^\circ\text{C}$ ) 2N6504 2N6505 2N6507 2N6508 2N6509	$V_{DRM}, V_{RRM}$	50 100 400 600 800	Volts
Forward Current ( $T_C = 85^\circ\text{C}$ ) (180° Conduction Angle)	$I_{T(RMS)}$ $I_{T(AV)}$	25 16	Amps
Peak Non-repetitive Surge Current — 8.3 ms (1/2 Cycle, Sine Wave) 1.5 ms	$I_{TSM}$	300 350	Amps
Forward Peak Gate Power	$P_{GM}$	20	Watts
Forward Average Gate Power	$P_{G(AV)}$	0.5	Watt
Forward Peak Gate Current	$I_{GM}$	2	Amps
Operating Junction Temperature Range	$T_J$	-40 to +125	$^\circ\text{C}$
Storage Temperature Range	$T_{stg}$	-40 to +150	$^\circ\text{C}$

4. Based on the data in the table, enter the value of the **Peak Forward Blocking Voltage** field.
5. Multiply this value by 1.05 and enter the value in the **1.05 Peak Reverse Blocking Voltage** field.

➤ To enter **Maximum Forward Voltage Chart** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Instantaneous Forward Current vs. Instantaneous Voltage” graph, and find the  $I_f$ - $V_f$  curve at 25°. For example:



2. On the curve, find the point at the minimum  $I_f$ , or the beginning point of the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Instantaneous Forward Current.**
  - **Minimum Value of Instantaneous Voltage.**
3. Find the point at the maximum  $I_f$ , or the end point of the curve. use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Instantaneous Forward Current**
  - **Maximum Value of Instantaneous Voltage.**
4. Locate an intermediate point on the curve corresponding to the transition point. Since the graph is provided in logarithmic format, you can do this by using a ruler to draw a line starting at the beginning point and following the straight line of the curve in the lower

voltage area. Where the curve begins to diverge from your ruler, use this point as your intermediate point. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:

- **Instantaneous Forward Current**
- **Intermediate Value of Instantaneous Voltage**

## Entering Time Data and Maximum Ratings Data

1. Click the Time Data, Max Ratings tab:
- To enter **Electrical Characteristics** data, refer to the “Electrical Characteristics” table mentioned in the previous section, and enter data in the **Turn-On Time** and **Turn-Off Time** fields.
  - To enter **Maximum Ratings Chart** data:
    1. Refer to the “Maximum Ratings” table mentioned in the previous section.
    2. Find the Forward Current and enter this value in the **Forward Current** field.
    3. For the **Reverse Current** field, find the reverse current (IRC) when the device is in off-state and enter this value, or, if this value is not provided, enter 0.
    4. For the **Reverse Voltage** field, find the reverse voltage (VRC) when the device is in off-state or, if this value is not provided, enter 0.
    5. For the **Identifier** field, enter 1 if Reverse Current and Reverse Voltage values are available, or 0 if they are unavailable.
    6. For the first **Parameter related to “off-state”** field, enter 0 if the Reverse Current and Reverse Voltage values are available, or, if they are not provided, enter the Forward Current value.
    7. For the second **Parameter related to “off-state”** field, enter 0 if the Reverse Current and Reverse Voltage values are available, or, if they are not provided, enter the Peak Reverse Blocking Voltage value.

## 5.8.6 Zener Model Maker

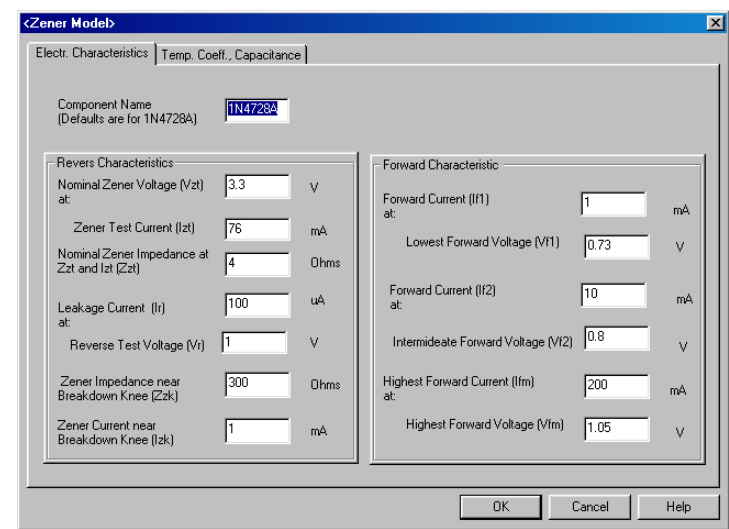
1. From the Model tab of the Component Editor, click **Model Maker**. The Select Model Maker screen appears.
2. From the Model Maker list, select Zener and, to continue, click **Accept**. (Click **Cancel** to return to the Model tab.) The Zener Model screen appears.
3. Enter values on the Zener Model screen as described in the following sections.
4. When all values are entered, click **OK** to complete the model, or click **Cancel** to cancel.

**Note** The Zener Model screen shows preset values for the IN4728A model.



Entering Electrical Characteristics Data

1. Click the Electrical Characteristics tab:



2. Look up data information for the Zener diode in a databook.
3. From the databook, locate the “Electrical Characteristics” table — for example:

Use the information from this table to enter data in the **Reverse Characteristics** fields.

\*ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (T<sub>A</sub> = 25°C unless otherwise noted) V<sub>F</sub> = 1.2 V Max, I<sub>F</sub> = 200 mA for all types.

JEDEC Type No. (Note 1)	Nominal Zener Voltage V <sub>Z</sub> @ I <sub>ZT</sub> Volts (Notes 2 and 3)	Test Current I <sub>ZT</sub> mA	Maximum Zener Impedance (Note 4)			Leakage Current		Surge Current @ T <sub>A</sub> = 25°C I <sub>S</sub> – mA (Note 5)
			Z <sub>KT</sub> @ I <sub>ZT</sub> Ohms	Z <sub>ZK</sub> @ I <sub>ZK</sub> Ohms	I <sub>ZK</sub> mA	I <sub>R</sub> μA Max	V <sub>R</sub> Volts	
1N4728A	3.3	76	10	400	1	100	1	1380
1N4729A	3.6	69	10	400	1	100	1	1260
1N4730A	3.9	64	9	400	1	50	1	1190
1N4731A	4.3	58	9	400	1	10	1	1070
1N4732A	4.7	53	8	500	1	10	1	970
1N4733A	5.1	49	7	550	1	10	1	890
1N4734A	5.6	45	5	600	1	10	2	810
1N4735A	6.2	41	2	700	1	10	3	730
1N4736A	6.8	37	3.5	700	1	10	4	660
1N4737A	7.5	34	4	700	0.5	10	5	605
1N4738A	8.2	31	4.5	700	0.5	10	6	550

4. Enter the name of the component in the **Component Name** field.
- To enter **Reverse Characteristics** data, use the information from the table for the following fields:
- **Nominal Zener Voltage (Vzt)**
  - **Zener Test Current (Izt)**

- **Nominal Zener Impedance at  $Z_{zt}$  and  $I_{zt}$  ( $Z_{zt}$ )**
- **Leakage Current ( $I_r$ )**
- **Reverse Test Voltage ( $V_r$ )**
- **Zener Impedance near Breakdown Knee ( $Z_{zk}$ )**
- **Zener Current near Breakdown Knee ( $I_{zk}$ )**

**Note** In the example, the databook only provides the maximum Zener impedance. To find a typical value for  $Z_{zk}$ , use 0.75 times the maximum value of  $Z_{zk}$ . To find the typical value of  $Z_{zt}$ , you can use the  $Z_z$ - $I_z$  graph. Find or estimate a curve at the nominal zener voltage given in the table, and choose the point which corresponds to the test current given in the table. Use the  $Z_z$  coordinate of this point to enter as the typical value.

➤ To enter **Forward Characteristics** data:

1. In the databook, locate the  $I_f$ - $V_f$  graph, and find the maximum curve at 25° — for example:

The sixth from left curve is the maximum curve at 25°.

Point corresponding to maximum forward voltage

Point corresponding to intermediate forward voltage

Point corresponding to minimum forward voltage

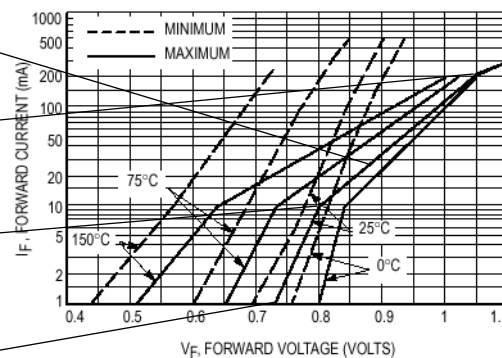


Figure 10. Typical Forward Characteristics

2. Find the point on the curve with the lowest forward voltage, or the beginning point. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Forward Current ( $I_{f1}$ )**
  - **Lowest Forward Voltage ( $V_{f1}$ )**
3. Find the knee point on the curve, or the point where the slope changes drastically. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Forward Current ( $I_{f2}$ )**
  - **Intermediate Forward Voltage ( $V_{f2}$ )**
4. Find the point of maximum forward voltage, or the highest point on the curve. Use the coordinates of this point to enter:
  - **Highest Forward Current ( $I_{fm}$ )**
  - **Highest Forward Voltage ( $V_{fm}$ )**

## Entering Temperature Coefficient and Capacitance Data

1. Click the Temp. Coeff., Capacitance tab:

- To enter **Temperature Coefficient** data:

1. From the databook, find the Temperature Coefficient versus Zener Voltage graph — for example:

Point corresponding to the temperature coefficient at the Nominal Zener voltage

Locate the  $V_Z$  and find the corresponding point on the curve to determine the temperature coefficient.

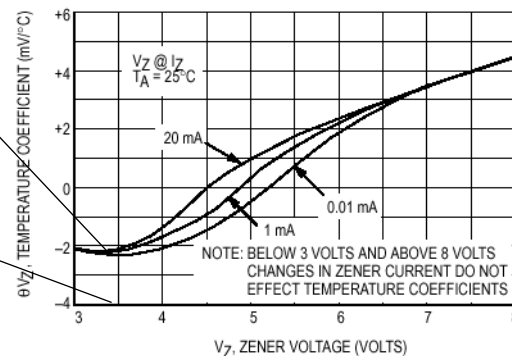


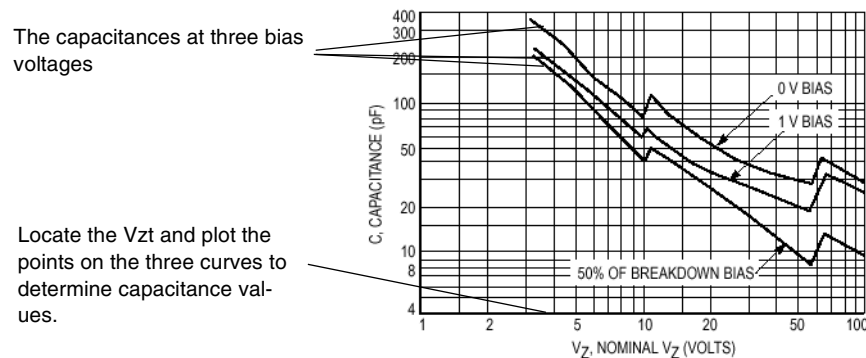
Figure 4. Effect of Zener Current

2. Locate the curve corresponding to the model's test current as given in the "Electrical Characteristics" table. (If it is not on the graph, estimate its placement.)

3. Find the point corresponding to the model's  $V_Z$ , as provided in the “Electrical Characteristics” table. Enter the Temperature Coefficient for this point in the **Temperature Coefficient at Zener Nominal Voltage (THETA\_vz)** field.

➤ To enter **Capacitance vs. Bias Voltage** data:

1. In the databook, locate the “Capacitance versus Nominal  $V_Z$ ” graph — for example:



2. On each of the three curves in the graph, locate the point corresponding to the  $V_{Zt}$  provided in the “Electrical Characteristics” table.
3. For the curve at zero bias voltage, use this point to enter the capacitance value in the **Capacitance at 0 Bias Voltage (CJ1)** field.
4. For the intermediate curve, enter its bias voltage in the **Intermediate Bias Voltage** field and enter the capacitance value for the point you have marked in the **Capacitance (CJ2)** field.
5. For the curve with the highest voltage, enter its bias voltage in the **Highest Voltage** field. (In our example, this value is 50% of the nominal Zener voltage ( $V_{Zt}$ ) of the model, as provided in the “Electrical Characteristics” table.) Enter the capacitance value for the point you have marked in the **Capacitance (CJM)** field.



## 5.9

# Creating a Model Using Code Modeling

This page intentionally left blank.

This section explains how to model a component using a high-level, industry-standard programming language: C. The component can then be added to the Multisim database using the Component Editor as described in this chapter. To use code modeling you must have a C compiler such as Microsoft Visual C++, Version 4.1 or greater, and be familiar with programming

and compiling C code. This section is not designed for Multisim users without programming exposure.

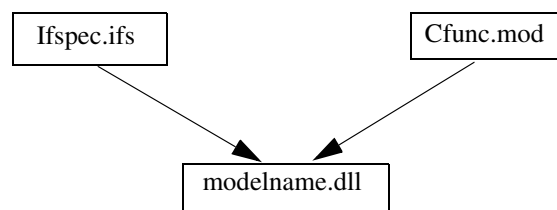
Multisim has built-in models for most types of devices, but it is impossible to provide models for every possible device. The behavior of some devices may be extremely difficult to model as groups of SPICE components, but may be easier to describe in terms of high-level, behavioral equations. As a result, the behavior of these devices can be modeled using code modeling.

### 5.9.1 What is Code Modeling?

Code modeling is the behavioral modeling of devices whose governing equations are known.

**Note** This section serves as a basic guide to code modeling and includes helpful examples. However, code modeling is a complex process, so be aware that you need time and practice to gain proficiency.

A code model consists of a set of interface definitions and a C function implementation describing the device's behavior. The naming and location of these files is important. The model is created by combining two files (`Ifspec.ifs` and `Cfunc.mod`). The resulting file, which is given the same name as the folder containing its source files, is placed in the `codemod1` folder.



### 5.9.2 Creating a Code Model

- To create a code model:
  1. Set up your environment variables for Microsoft Visual C++ by running `VcVars32.bat` (installed, by default, in the `c:\Program Files\DevStudio\VC\Bin` folder). This step should be repeated each time you restart your computer and want to create a code model.

2. Create a folder under the codemodl folder (within the folder where you installed Multi-sim). Give the folder the same name as the model you are creating. For example, from the codemodl subdirectory, create the folder  
`C:/Program Files/EWB/codemodl/testmodl`
3. Create an interface file called `Ifspec.ifs` in the folder you just created. The interface file describes the number and types of connections and parameters of the device. For example, create the file `C:/Program Files/EWB/codemodl/testmodl/Ifspec.ifs`
4. Create an implementation file called `Cfunc.mod` in the subdirectory. The implementation file gives the equations that govern the behavior of the device. For example, create the file `C:/Program Files/EWB/codemodl/testmodl/Cfunc.mod`
5. To compile the files into a dynamically-linked library (DLL), go to the codemodl folder and execute the command `MakeDev "folder"`, where "folder" is the name of the folder containing the .ifs and .mod files. For example, execute  
`C:/Program Files/EWB/codemodl`  
`cd`  
`MakeDev "testing"`  
Errors and warnings may appear.
6. Place the resulting .dll file, which has the same name as the folder containing its source files, in the codemodl folder (that is, above the folder with the model's name). For example, the file created is called `C:/Program Files/EWB/codemodl/testing.dll`

**Note** All of the code modeling files follow the C code syntax. For an overview of the general rules for the C code syntax, see any C code reference manual.

## 5.9.3 The Interface File (Ifspec.ifs)

The interface file sets out, in tables, the names used by the model, the electrical connections to the devices (ports), and the user-defined variables (parameters) that provide finer control over the behavior of the model. These tables are explained in this section, and examples given for each table. An example of an interface file is shown on page 5-79. The interface file, along with the implementation file, needs to be compiled into a DLL to complete the code model.

### 5.9.3.1 Name Table

The model name, description text, and C implementation function name are defined in the name table. The model name must be the same as the subdirectory containing the code model files. It is recommended that the model name be eight characters.

The name table has the following syntax:

NAME\_TABLE:

```
C_Function_Name:function_name
Spice_ModelName:model_name
Description:      "text"
```

where:

**function\_name** is a valid C identifier which is the name of the main entry point (function) for the code model. It may or may not be the same as the SPICE model name. To reduce the chance of name conflicts, we recommend you use the prefix "UCM\_" for user code model, or use a prefix based on your own initials. The following prefixes are used by the XSPICE simulator core and should not be used for user code models:

A2VERI	D_NOR	EW_RES	N1
A2VHDL	D_OPEN_C	EW_SCR	NCO
ADC_BRDG	D_OPEN_E	EW_SWITCH	ONESHOT
ASRC	D_OR	EW_VLT	POLY
ASWITCH	D_OSC	FTE	POT
BJT	D_PULLDN	GAIN	PPT
BSIM	D_PULLUP	HLP	PWL
CAP	D_RAM	HYST	R_2_V
CCCS	D_SOURCE	ICM	RDELAY
CCVS	D_SRFF	IDN	RES
CKT	D_SRLATC	ILIMIT	RGAIN
CLIMIT	D_STATE	IND	S_XFER
CM	D_TFF	INDUCTOR	SINE
CMETER	D_TRISTA	INP	SLEW
CORE	D_VERI	INT	SMP
CP	D_VHDL	IPC	SQUARE
CSW	D_WGEN	ISRC	SUMMER
D_2_R	D_XNOR	JFET	SW
D_AND	D_XOR	LCOUPLE	TRA
D_BUFFER	DAC_BRDG	LIMIT	TRIANGLE
D_CHIP	DAC_HIZ	LMETER	URC
D_DFF	DEV	MES	VCCS
D_DLATCH	DIO	MFB	VCVS
D_DT	DIVIDE	MIF	VERIZA
D_FDIV	ENH	MOS1	VHDL2A
D_INV	EVT	MOS2	VSRC
D_JKFF	EW_CAP	MOS3	XCAP
D_NAND	EW_IND	MULT	ZENER

**model\_name** is a valid SPICE identifier which will be used on SPICE deck .model records to refer to this code model. It may or may not be the same as the C function name.

**text** is a string describing the purpose and function of the code model.

For example:



```
NAME_TABLE:

Spice_Model_Name: capacitor
C_Function_Name: cm_capacitor
Description: "Capacitor with voltage initial condition"
```

5.9.3.2 Port Table

The device ports are defined in the port tables. The port table has the following syntax:

```
PORT_TABLE:

Port_Name:      name
Description:    text
Default_Type:   default
Allowed_Type:   [type type type]
Vector:        vector
Vector_Bounds: size
Direction:     dataflow
Null_Allowed:  null
```

where:

- name is a valid SPICE identifier giving the name of the port.
- text is a string describing the purpose and function of the port.
- default specifies the type used for the port when no type is explicitly specified. Must be one of the items listed in "type".
- type lists the allowed types to which the port can be connected, with names separated by commas or spaces (for example, [d, g, h]).

Type Name	Valid Directions	Description
d	in, out	digital
g	in, out	conductance (voltage input, current output)
gd	in, out	differential conductance (voltage input, current output)
h	in, out	resistance (current input, voltage output)
hd	in, out	differential resistance (current input, voltage output)
i	in, out	current
id	in, out	differential current
v	in, out	voltage

	vd	in, out	differential voltage
	vnam	in	current through named voltage source
vector	specifies whether or not port is a vector and can be considered a bus. Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• yes - this port is a vector</li> <li>• no - this port is not a vector</li> </ul>		
size	for port that are vectors only, specifies upper and lower bounds on vector size. Lower bound specifies minimum number of elements, upper bound specifies maximum number of elements. For unconstrained range, or ports that are not a vector, use a hyphen ("-").		
data-flow	specifies the dataflow direction through the port. Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in</li> <li>• out</li> <li>• inout</li> </ul>		
null	specifies whether or not it is an error to leave the port unconnected. Choose from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• yes - this port may be left unconnected</li> <li>• no - this port must be connected</li> </ul>		

For example:

PORT\_TABLE:

```
Port_Name:      cap
Description:    "capacitor terminals"
Direction:      inout
Default_Type:   hd
Allowed_Types:  [hd]
Vector:         no
Vector_Bounds:  -
Null_Allowed:   no
```

### 5.9.3.3 Parameter Table

The device parameters are defined in the parameter tables. The parameter table has the following syntax:

PARAMETER\_TABLE:

```
Parameter_Name:name
Description:        text
Data_Type:          type
Vector:             vector
Vector_Bounds:      size
Default_Value:      default
Limits:             range
```

Null\_Allowed:                      null

where:

- name      is a valid SPICE identifier which will be used on SPICE deck .model cards to refer to this parameter.
- text      is a string describing the purpose and function of the parameter.
- type      is the parameter data type. Corresponds to the underlying C data type (e.g. "double"), not the conceptual type of the parameter (e.g. "voltage"). Choose from:
  - boolean (if C data type is "Boolean\_t" with valid values MIF\_TRUE and MIF\_FALSE)
  - complex (if C data type is "Complex\_t" with double members real and imag)
  - int (if C data type is "int")
  - real (if C data type is "double")
  - string (if C data type is "char\*")
  - pointer (if C data type is "void\*")
- vector:   specifies whether parameter is vector or scalar. Choose from:
  - yes - parameter is vector
  - no - parameter is scalar
- size:      for parameters that are vectors only, specifies upper and lower bounds on vector size. Lower bound specifies minimum number of elements, upper bound specifies maximum number of elements. For unconstrained range, or parameters that are not a vector, use a hyphen ("-"). Alternatively, specifies the name of the port whose vector size is to be used for this parameter.
- default   if Null\_Allowed is "yes", a default value to be used if the SPICE deck .model line does not supply a value for the parameter. Value must correspond to Data\_Type (numeric, boolean, complex or string literal).
- range      is a limited range of values (for "int" and "real" type parameters only).
- null      specify whether or not parameter is allowed to be null. Choose from:
  - yes - the corresponding SPICE deck .model card may omit a value for this parameter, and the default value will be used or, if no default value, an undefined value will be passed to the code model
  - no - this parameter must have a value. XSPICE will flag an error if the corresponding SPICE deck .model card omits a value for this parameter.

For example:

PARAMETER\_TABLE:

Parameter_Name:	c	ic
Description:	"capacitance"	"voltage initial condition"
Data_Type:	real	real
Default_Value:	-	0.0
Limits:	-	-
Vector:	no	no

```
Vector_Bounds:      -          -
Null_Allowed:      no         no
```

### 5.9.3.4 Example Interface File

Here is an example interface file:

```
/* =====
FILE    ifspec.ifs
MEMBER OF process XSPICE
Copyright 1991
Georgia Tech Research Corporation
Atlanta, Georgia 30332
All Rights Reserved

PROJECT A-8503

AUTHORS
    9/12/91  Bill Kuhn

MODIFICATIONS
    <date> <person name> <nature of modifications>

SUMMARY
This file contains the definition of a capacitor code model with volt-
age type initial conditions.

INTERFACES
None.

REFERENCED FILES
None.

NON-STANDARD FEATURES
None.
===== */

NAME_TABLE:

Spice_Model_Name:    capacitor
C_Function_Name:    cm_capacitor
Description:         "Capacitor with voltage initial condition"

PORT_TABLE:
```

```
Port_Name:          cap
Description:        "capacitor terminals"
Direction:         inout
Default_Type:      hd
Allowed_Types:     [hd]
Vector:            no
Vector_Bounds:     -
Null_Allowed:      no
```

PARAMETER\_TABLE:

Parameter_Name:	c	ic
Description:	"capacitance"	"voltage initial condition"
Data_Type:	real	real
Default_Value:	-	0.0
Limits:	-	-
Vector:	no	no
Vector_Bounds:	-	-
Null_Allowed:	no	no

### 5.9.4 The Implementation File (Cfunc.mod)

At each simulation iteration for a circuit using the code model, Multisim's XSpice simulation engine calls the implementation file. An example of an implementation file is shown on page 5-88. The implementation file, along with the interface file, needs to be coupled into a DLL to complete the code model.

The code model function then generates the code-modeled device's output. This output is based on the following:

- The input that XSpice presents to the code model function.
- The state of the model, which is stored and returned by XSpice.

The implementation file includes one or more of the macros, shown below, that provide the API (Application Programming Interface) between XSpice and the code model.

This section lists the macros from which you can select. The example file shown on page 5-88 gives an example of how to implement a macro. The implementation file, along with the interface file, needs to be compiled into a DLL to complete the code model.

### 5.9.4.1 Implementation File C Macros

#### AC\_GAIN(outputname, inputname)

<b>Type</b>	Complex_t
<b>Args</b>	y[i], x[i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Analog code models only (event-driven or digital code models should do nothing during AC analysis).
<b>Description</b>	Assigns a value to this macro to specify the gain from outputname to inputname at the current frequency. The code model function is called once for each frequency point simulated.

#### ANALYSIS

<b>Type</b>	enum
<b>Args</b>	none
<b>Applies to</b>	All code models, since their behavior typically changes depending on the type of analysis being performed, and this macro can be used to specify appropriate output macros.
<b>Description</b>	Returns the type of analysis being performed: MIF_AC for AC MIF_DC for DC operating point MID_TRAN for transient

#### ARGS

<b>Type</b>	Mif_Private_t
<b>Args</b>	none
<b>Applies to</b>	All code models.
<b>Description</b>	The code model function's parameter list. Must be present and should not be modified.

#### CALL\_TYPE

<b>Type</b>	enum
<b>Args</b>	none

<b>Applies to</b>	Only code models that are mixed-mode (analog and event-driven or digital).
<b>Description</b>	If the analog portion of the simulator requested the code model call, set to MIF_ANALOG. If the digital portion of the simulator requested the code model call, set to MIF_EVENT. Needed if a code model's computation effort can be reduced based on the type of call made.

**INIT**

<b>Type</b>	Boolean_t
<b>Args</b>	none
<b>Applies to</b>	All code models.
<b>Description</b>	If this is the first call to the code model function during the current analysis or batch of analyses, set to MIF_TRUE. Otherwise, set to MIF_FALSE. Needed to let the code model perform startup activities (for example, allocated memory) at the start of simulation only.

**INPUT(inputname)**

<b>Type</b>	double or void *
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Analog/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only analog inputs are allowed (for event-driven, use INPUT_STATE and INPUT_STRENGTH). Returns the value on the node or branch connected to inputname. Type/units of input value is specified when input type is specified in the Ifspec.ifs file.

**INPUT\_STATE(inputname)**

<b>Type</b>	enum
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital inputs are allowed (for analog, use INPUT). Returns the digital value (ZERO, ONE or UNKNOWN) at node at inputname. When a single output is connected to that node, this will equal the value of the last output event. When multiple outputs are connected, conflict resolution is performed.

### INPUT\_STRENGTH(inputname)

<b>Type</b>	enum
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital inputs are allowed (for analog, use INPUT). Returns the digital strength (STRONG, RESISTIVE, HI_IMPEDANCE or UNDETERMINED) of node at inputname. When a single output is connected to that node, this will equal the strength of the last output event. When multiple outputs are connected, conflict resolution is performed.

### INPUT\_TYPE(inputname)

<b>Type</b>	char *
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	All code models.
<b>Description</b>	Any inputs allowed. Returns the type string (i.e.: "v" for voltage, "i" for digital, "hd" for differential conductance, etc.) which describes the current usage of inputname. Needed to distinguish between "simulation time" usage of an input or output with more than one allowed type. For example, used for an input which has allowed types [v, i] and behaves differently when the input is voltage vs. current.

### LOAD(inputname)

<b>Type</b>	double
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital inputs are allowed. Assign a value to LOAD to set the input load due to inputname on the connected node. The load is given as a capacitance (normalized to 1ohm resistance) which is summed with all the other loads on the event-driven node to yield the total delay of the node.

### MESSAGE(outputname)

<b>Type</b>	char *
-------------	--------



<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital outputs are allowed. A message string to be placed on an event-driven node can be assigned to MESSAGE. Allows a code model to issue a message associated with a node.

**OUTPUT(outputname)**

<b>Type</b>	double or void *
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Analog/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only analog outputs are allowed (for event-driven, use OUTPUT_STATE and OUTPUT_STRENGTH and OUTPUT_DELAY). Assigns a value to the node or branch connected to outputname. Type/units of output value specified when output type is specified in the lfspec.lfs file.

**OUTPUT\_CHANGED(outputname)**

<b>Type</b>	Boolean_t
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital inputs are allowed. Set to MIF_TRUE by default. Assign MIF_FALSE to indicate no change on that output. Allows the code model to specify that the event-driven output did not change and thereby speed up simulation.

**OUTPUT\_DELAY(outputname)**

<b>Type</b>	none
<b>Args</b>	double
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital inputs are allowed (for analog, use OUTPUT). Sets the delay after which the transition event specified by OUTPUT_STATE occurs.

### OUTPUT\_STATE(outputname)

<b>Type</b>	none
<b>Args</b>	Digital_State_t
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital outputs are allowed (for analog, use OUTPUT). Assigns the digital value (ZERO, ONE or UNKNOWN) to node at outputname by creating an event which is a transition to that value. When a single output is connected to that node, this will equal the value of the last output event. When multiple outputs are connected, conflict resolution is performed.

### OUTPUT\_STRENGTH(outputname)

<b>Type</b>	none
<b>Args</b>	Digital_State_t
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Only event-driven/digital outputs are allowed (for analog, use OUTPUT). Assigns the digital strength (STRONG, RESISTIVE, HI_IMPEDANCE or UNDETERMINED) at node at outputname. When a single output is connected to that node, this will equal the strength of the last output event. When multiple outputs are connected, conflict resolution is performed.

### OUTPUT\_TYPE(inputname)

<b>Type</b>	char *
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Digital/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Any output allowed. Returns the type string (i.e.: "v" for voltage, "i" for digital, "hd" for differential conductance, etc.) which describes the current usage of outputname. Needed to distinguish between "simulation time" usage of an input or output with more than one allowed type. For example, used for an input which has allowed types [v, i] and behaves differently when the input is voltage vs. current.

### PARAM(paramname)

<b>Type</b>	CD
-------------	----

<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Any code model.
<b>Description</b>	Applies to all parameters. Returns the value paramname. Needed to access model parameters specified in the netlist.

**PARAM\_NULL(paramname)**

<b>Type</b>	Boolean_t
<b>Args</b>	name [i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Only parameters allowed to be unspecified (Null allowed in the param table of the lfspec.lfs file is yes).
<b>Description</b>	Returns MIF_TRUE if paramname was not specified in the netlist and MIF_FALSE if it was specified. Allows the code model to tell if a parameter value equals its default because the default value was actually specified.

**PARAM\_SIZE(paramname)**

<b>Type</b>	int
<b>Args</b>	name
<b>Applies to</b>	Vector type parameters only.
<b>Description</b>	Returns the number of elements in a vector type parameter. Needed to iterate over the vector parameter if the number of vector elements is not fixed.

**PARTIAL**

<b>Type</b>	double
<b>Args</b>	y[i], x[i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Analog/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Partial derivative of output y with respect to input x.

**PORT\_NULL**

<b>Type</b>	Boolean_t
-------------	-----------

<b>Args</b>	name[i]
<b>Applies to</b>	Any code model.
<b>Description</b>	Has this port been specified as unconnected?

#### PORT\_SIZE

<b>Type</b>	int
<b>Args</b>	name
<b>Applies to</b>	Any code model.
<b>Description</b>	Size of port vector.

#### RAD\_FREQ

<b>Type</b>	double
<b>Args</b>	<none>
<b>Applies to</b>	Analog/mixed-mode code models.
<b>Description</b>	Current analysis frequency in radians per second.

#### T (<n>)

<b>Type</b>	double
<b>Args</b>	<none>
<b>Applies to</b>	All code models.
<b>Description</b>	History of the previous nth analysis time (TIME = T[0]). Maximum of 8.

#### TEMPERATURE

<b>Type</b>	double
<b>Args</b>	<none>

Applies to	All code models.
Description	Current analysis temperature.
TIME	
Type	double
Args	<none>
Applies to	All code models.
Description	Current analysis time (same as T[0]).

5.9.4.2 Example Implementation File

Here is an example implementation file:

```
/* =====  
FILE      cfunc.mod  
  
MEMBER OF process XSPICE  
  
Copyright 1991  
Georgia Tech Research Corporation  
Atlanta, Georgia 30332  
All Rights Reserved  
  
PROJECT A-8503  
  
AUTHORS  
    9/12/91  Bill Kuhn  
  
MODIFICATIONS  
    <date> <person name> <nature of modifications>  
  
SUMMARY  
    This file contains the definition of a capacitor code model  
    with voltage type initial conditions.  
  
INTERFACES  
    cm_capacitor()
```

```

REFERENCED FILES
    None.

NON-STANDARD FEATURES
    None.

===== */

#define VC 0

void cm_capacitor (ARGS)
{
    Complex_t    ac_gain;
    double       partial;
    double       ramp_factor;
    double       *vc;

    /* Get the ramp factor from the .option ramptime */
    ramp_factor = cm_analog_ramp_factor(MIF_INSTANCE);

    /* Initialize/access instance specific storage for capacitor voltage */
    if (INIT) {
        cm_analog_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE, VC, sizeof(double));
        vc = cm_analog_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE, VC, 0);
        *vc = PARAM(ic) * cm_analog_ramp_factor(MIF_INSTANCE);
    }
    else {
        vc = cm_analog_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE, VC, 0);
    }

    /* Compute the output */
    if (ANALYSIS == DC) {
        OUTPUT(cap) = PARAM(ic) * ramp_factor;
        PARTIAL(cap, cap) = 0.0;
    }
    else if (ANALYSIS == AC) {
        ac_gain.real = 0.0;
        ac_gain.imag = -1.0 / RAD_FREQ / PARAM(c);
        AC_GAIN(cap, cap) = ac_gain;
    }
    else if (ANALYSIS == TRANSIENT) {
        if (ramp_factor < 1.0) {
            *vc = PARAM(ic) * ramp_factor;
        }
    }
}

```

```

        OUTPUT(cap) = *vc;
        PARTIAL(cap, cap) = 0.0;
    }
    else {
        cm_analog_integrate(MIF_INSTANCE, INPUT(cap) / PARAM(c),
        vc, &partial);
        partial /= PARAM(c);
        OUTPUT(cap) = *vc;
        PARTIAL(cap, cap) = partial;
    }
}
}

```

### 5.9.4.3 Additional Example ifspec File

```

/* =====
FILE    ifspec.ifs

MEMBER OF process XSPICE

Copyright 1991
Georgia Tech Research Corporation
Atlanta, Georgia 30332
All Rights Reserved

PROJECT A-8503

AUTHORS
9/12/91  Bill Kuhn

MODIFICATIONS
<date> <person name> <nature of modifications>

SUMMARY
This file contains the definition of a capacitor code model with volt-
age type initial conditions.

INTERFACES
None.

REFERENCED FILES
None.

NON-STANDARD FEATURES

```

```

None.

===== */

NAME_TABLE:

Spice_Model_Name:      capacitor
C_Function_Name:       cm_capacitor
Description:            "Capacitor with voltage initial condition"

PORT_TABLE:

Port_Name:             cap
Description:            "capacitor terminals"
Direction:             inout
Default_Type:          hd
Allowed_Types:          [hd]
Vector:                no
Vector_Bounds:         -
Null_Allowed:          no

PARAMETER_TABLE:

Parameter_Name:        c          ic
Description:            "capacitance"  "voltage initial condition"
Data_Type:              real        real
Default_Value:         -          0.0
Limits:                -          -
Vector:                no         no
Vector_Bounds:         -          -
Null_Allowed:          no         no

/* $Id: cfunc.tpl,v 1.1 91/03/18 19:01:04 bill Exp $ */
/
*.....1.....2.....3.....4.....5.....6.....7
*.....8
=====
Additional Example cfunc File
FILE d_jkff/cfunc.mod

Copyright 1991
Georgia Tech Research Corporation, Atlanta, Ga. 30332
All Rights Reserved

```



## Component Editor

---

PROJECT A-8503-405

### AUTHORS

21 Jun 1991        Jeffrey P. Murray

### MODIFICATIONS

12 Aug 1991        Jeffrey P. Murray  
30 Sep 1991        Jeffrey P. Murray  
29 Jan 1992        Jeffrey P. Murray

### SUMMARY

This file contains the functional description of the d\_jkff code model.

### INTERFACES

FILE	ROUTINE CALLED
CMutil.c	void cm_toggle_bit();

CMevt.c	void *cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE)
	void *cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE)

### REFERENCED FILES

Inputs from and outputs to ARGS structure.

### NON-STANDARD FEATURES

NONE

```
=====*/  
  
/*== INCLUDE FILES ==*/  
  
/*== CONSTANTS ==*/  
  
/*== MACROS ==*/  
  
/*== LOCAL VARIABLES & TYPEDEFS ==*/  
  
/*== FUNCTION PROTOTYPE DEFINITIONS ==*/
```

```

/*=====

FUNCTION cm_toggle_bit()

AUTHORS
27 Sept 1991      Jeffrey P. Murray

MODIFICATIONS
NONE

SUMMARY
Alters the state of a passed digital variable to its
complement. Thus, a ONE changes to a ZERO. A ZERO changes
to a ONE, and an UNKNOWN remains unchanged.

INTERFACES
FILE              ROUTINE CALLED

        N/A              N/A

RETURNED VALUE
No returned value. Passed pointer to variable is used
to redefine the variable value.

GLOBAL VARIABLES
NONE

NON-STANDARD FEATURES
NONE

=====*/

/*=== CM_TOGGLE_BIT ROUTINE ===*/

static void cm_toggle_bit(Digital_State_t *bit)
{
    /* Toggle bit from ONE to ZERO or vice versa, unless the
       bit value is UNKNOWN. In the latter case, return
       without changing the bit value. */

    if ( UNKNOWN != *bit ) {
        if ( ONE == *bit ) {
            *bit = ZERO;
        }
    }
}

```

```

        }
        else {
            *bit = ONE;
        }
    }

}

/*=====

FUNCTION cm_eval_jk_result

AUTHORS
30 Sept 1991      Jeffrey P. Murray

MODIFICATIONS
NONE

SUMMARY
Evaluates the J and K input states, plus the last state of
the flip flop, and returns the expected output value.

INTERFACES
FILE              ROUTINE CALLED
CMutil.c          void cm_toggle_bit();

RETURNED VALUE

    A Digital_State_t.

GLOBAL VARIABLES
NONE

NON-STANDARD FEATURES
NONE

=====*/

/*=== CM_EVAL_JK_RESULT ROUTINE ===*/

static Digital_State_t cm_eval_jk_result(Digital_State_t j_input,
    Digital_State_t k_input,
    Digital_State_t old_output)
{
    Digital_State_t    output; /* returned output value */

```

```

switch (j_input) {

case ZERO:
    switch (k_input) {
    case ZERO:
        output = old_output;
        break;
    case ONE:
        output = ZERO;
        break;
    case UNKNOWN:
        output = UNKNOWN;
        break;
    }
    break;

case ONE:
    switch (k_input) {
    case ZERO:
        output = ONE;
        break;
    case ONE:
        output = old_output;
        cm_toggle_bit(&output);
        break;
    case UNKNOWN:
        output = UNKNOWN;
        break;
    }
    break;

case UNKNOWN:
    output = UNKNOWN;
    break;
}

return output;
}

/*=====
FUNCTION cm_d_jkff()

```

## Component Editor

---

### AUTHORS

21 Jun 1991       Jeffrey P. Murray

### MODIFICATIONS

12 Aug 1991       Jeffrey P. Murray  
30 Sep 1991       Jeffrey P. Murray  
29 Jan 1992       Jeffrey P. Murray

### SUMMARY

This function implements the d\_jkff code model.

### INTERFACES

FILE	ROUTINE CALLED
CMutil.c	void cm_toggle_bit();
CMevt.c	void *cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE) void *cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE)

### RETURNED VALUE

Returns inputs and outputs via ARGS structure.

### GLOBAL VARIABLES

NONE

### NON-STANDARD FEATURES

NONE

=====\*/

/\*=== CM\_D\_JKFF ROUTINE ===\*/

```
/*=====
*      The following is the model for the      *
*      digital jk-type flip flop for the        *
*      ATE SSE Version 2.0 system.              *
*                                              *
*      Created 6/21/91                          J.P.Murray     *
*=====*/
```

```
void cm_d_jkff(ARGS)
```

```

{

    /* generic loop counter index */
    int i;
    /* current clk value */
    Digital_State_t*clk,
    /* previous clk value */
    *clk_old,
    /* current set value for dff */
    *set,
    /* previous set value for dff */
    *set_old,
    /* current reset value for dff */
    *reset,
    /* previous reset value for dff */
    *reset_old,
    /* current output for dff */
    *out,
    /* previous output for dff */
    *out_old,
    /* current j input value */
    j_input,
    /* current k input value */
    k_input,
    /* temp storage for state values */
    temp;

    /** Setup required state variables ***/

    if(INIT) { /* initial pass */

        /* allocate storage */
        cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE,0,sizeof(Digital_State_t));
        cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE,1,sizeof(Digital_State_t));
        cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE,2,sizeof(Digital_State_t));
        cm_event_alloc(MIF_INSTANCE,3,sizeof(Digital_State_t));

        clk = clk_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,0,0);
        set = set_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,1,0);
        reset = reset_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,2,0);
    }
}

```

```

        out = out_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,3,0);

        /* declare load values */
        LOAD(j) = PARAM(jk_load);
        LOAD(k) = PARAM(jk_load);
        LOAD(clk) = PARAM(clk_load);
        if ( !PORT_NULL(set) ) {
            LOAD(set) = PARAM(set_load);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(reset) ) {
            LOAD(reset) = PARAM(reset_load);
        }

    }
    else { /* Retrieve previous values */

        /* retrieve storage for the outputs */
        clk = (Digital_State_t *) cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,0,0);
        clk_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,0,1);
        set = (Digital_State_t *) cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,1,0);
        set_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,1,1);
        reset = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,2,0);
        reset_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,2,1);
        out = (Digital_State_t *) cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,3,0);
        out_old = (Digital_State_t *)
cm_event_get_ptr(MIF_INSTANCE,3,1);
    }

    /****** load current input values if set or reset
are not connected, set to zero... *****/
    *clk = INPUT_STATE(clk);
    if ( PORT_NULL(set) ) {
        *set = *set_old = ZERO;
    }
    else {
        *set = INPUT_STATE(set);
    }
    if ( PORT_NULL(reset) ) {
        *reset = *reset_old = ZERO;
    }
    else {

```

```

        *reset = INPUT_STATE(reset);
    }

    /***** Determine analysis type and output appropriate values
    *****/

    /***** DC analysis...output w/o delays *****/
    if (0.0 == TIME) {
        temp = PARAM(ic);

        /** Modify output if set or reset lines are active **/
        if ( (*set==ONE) && (*reset==ZERO) ) temp = ONE;
        if ( (*set==ZERO) && (*reset==ONE) ) temp = ZERO;
        if ( (*set==ONE) && (*reset==ONE) ) temp = UNKNOWN;

        *out = *out_old = temp;

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = temp;
        }

        cm_toggle_bit(&temp);

        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = temp;
        }
    }

    else {          /***** Transient Analysis *****/

        /***** Find input that has changed... *****/

        /**** Test set value for change ****/

        /* either set or set release */
        if ( *set != *set_old ) { switch ( *set ) {

            case ONE:
                if ( ONE != *reset) {

                    /*set will change output */
                    if (*out_old != ONE) {

```



```
/* output goes to ONE */
    *out = ONE;

    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
        OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ONE;
        OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(set_delay);
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
        OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ZERO;
        OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(set_delay);
    }
}
else {

/* output already set */
*out = *out_old;
    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
        OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
        OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
}
else {
    if (*out_old != UNKNOWN) { /* set will change out-
put */

        /* output goes to UNKNOWN */
        *out = UNKNOWN;

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = UNKNOWN;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(set_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = UNKNOWN;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(set_delay);
        }
    }
    else {
        *out = *out_old; /* output already unknown

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
```

```

        OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
}
break;

case ZERO:
    if ( ONE != *reset) {
        /* output remains at current value */
        *out = *out_old;
        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
        }
    }
    else {
        if (*out_old != ZERO) { /* set will change output
*/
/* output returns to reset condition */
        *out = ZERO;

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ZERO;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(set_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ONE;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(set_delay);
        }
    }
    else {
        *out = *out_old; /* output already reset */
        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
        }
    }
}
break;

case UNKNOWN:

```

```

        if ( ONE == *reset ) {
            /* output goes to ZERO */
            *out = ZERO;

            if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
                OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ZERO;
                OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(set_delay);
            }
            if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
                OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ONE;
                OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(set_delay);
            }
        }
        else {
            *out = *out_old; /* output already unknown */
            if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
                OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
            }
            if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
                OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
            }
        }
        break;
    }
}
else {

    /***** Test reset value for change *****/
    if ( *reset != *reset_old ) { /* either reset or reset
release */

        switch ( *reset ) {

            case ONE:
                if ( ONE != *set ) {
                    if ( *out_old != ZERO ) { /* reset will change
output */

                        /* output goes to ZERO */
                        *out = ZERO;

                        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
                            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ZERO;
                            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(reset_delay);
                        }
                        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
                            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ONE;
                            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(reset_delay);

```

```

    }
  }
  else {
    *out = *out_old;      /* output already reset
*/
    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
  }
}
else {
  if (*out_old != UNKNOWN) { /* reset will change
output */
    /* output goes to UNKNOWN */
    *out = UNKNOWN;

    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
      OUTPUT_STATE(out) = UNKNOWN;
      OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(reset_delay);
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
      OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = UNKNOWN;
      OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(reset_delay);
    }
  }
  else {
    *out = *out_old;      /* output already
unknown */

    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
  }
}
break;

case ZERO:
  if ( ONE != *set) {
    /* output remains at current value */
    *out = *out_old;
    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {

```

```

        OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
        OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
}
else {
    if (*out_old != ONE) { /* reset will change
output */
        /* output returns to set condition */
        *out = ONE;

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ONE;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(reset_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ZERO;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(reset_delay);
        }
    }
    else {
        *out = *out_old; /* output already reset
*/

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
        }
    }
}
break;

case UNKNOWN:
    if ( ONE == *set ) {
        /* output goes to ONE */
        *out = ONE;

        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = ONE;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(reset_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = ZERO;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(reset_delay);

```

```

    }
  }
  else {
    *out = *out_old;      /* output already unknown
*/
    if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(out) = FALSE;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
      OUTPUT_CHANGED(Nout) = FALSE;
    }
  }
  break;
}
}
else {
  /***** Test clk value for change *****/
  if ( (*clk != *clk_old) && (*reset != ONE) &&
    (*set != ONE) ) { /* clock or clock release */
    switch ( *clk ) {

      case ONE:
        /* active edge...calculate new data output */
        j_input = INPUT_STATE(j);
        k_input = INPUT_STATE(k);
        temp =
cm_eval_jk_result(j_input,k_input,*out_old);

        if (*out_old != temp) { /* clk will change
output */

          *out = temp;

          if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(out) = temp;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) = PARAM(clk_delay);
          }
          cm_toggle_bit(&temp);

          if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_STATE(Nout) = temp;
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) = PARAM(clk_delay);
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
  else {

```



```

    /** fall to zero value */
    case 0:
        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) += PARAM(fall_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) += PARAM(rise_delay);
        }
        break;

    /** rise to one value */
    case 1:
        if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
            OUTPUT_DELAY(out) += PARAM(rise_delay);
        }
        if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
            OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) += PARAM(fall_delay);
        }
        break;

    /** unknown output */
    default:
        /* based on old value, add rise or fall delay */
        if (0 == *out_old) { /* add rising delay */
            if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
                OUTPUT_DELAY(out) += PARAM(rise_delay);
            }
            if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
                OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) += PARAM(fall_delay);
            }
        }
        else { /* add falling delay */
            if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {
                OUTPUT_DELAY(out) += PARAM(fall_delay);
            }
            if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
                OUTPUT_DELAY(Nout) += PARAM(rise_delay);
            }
        }
        break;
    }
}

/** output strength values */
if ( !PORT_NULL(out) ) {

```



## Component Editor

---

```
        OUTPUT_STRENGTH(out) = STRONG;
    }
    if ( !PORT_NULL(Nout) ) {
        OUTPUT_STRENGTH(Nout) = STRONG;
    }
}
```

## Chapter 6

# Instruments

6.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	6-1
6.2	Introduction to the Multisim Instruments. . . . .	6-1
6.3	Working with Multiple Instruments . . . . .	6-4
6.4	Default Instrument Analysis Settings . . . . .	6-4
6.5	Bode Plotter . . . . .	6-6
6.5.1	Magnitude or Phase . . . . .	6-7
6.5.2	Vertical and Horizontal Axes Settings . . . . .	6-7
6.5.2.1	Base Settings . . . . .	6-7
6.5.2.2	Horizontal Axis Scale (.1 mHz — 999.9 GHz) . . . . .	6-8
6.5.2.3	Vertical Axis Scale . . . . .	6-8
6.5.3	Readouts . . . . .	6-8
6.6	Distortion Analyzer . . . . .	6-9
6.6.1	Harmonic Distortion . . . . .	6-10
6.6.2	SINAD . . . . .	6-10
6.7	Function Generator . . . . .	6-10
6.7.1	Waveform Selection . . . . .	6-11
6.7.2	Signal Options . . . . .	6-11
6.7.2.1	Frequency (1Hz — 999 MEGHz) . . . . .	6-11
6.7.2.2	Duty Cycle (1% — 99%) . . . . .	6-11
6.7.2.3	Amplitude (Ø — 999 kV) . . . . .	6-12
6.7.2.4	Offset (-999 kV and 999 kV) . . . . .	6-12
6.7.3	Rise Time . . . . .	6-12
6.8	Logic Converter . . . . .	6-12
6.8.1	Deriving a Truth Table from a Circuit . . . . .	6-13
6.8.2	Entering and Converting a Truth Table . . . . .	6-14
6.8.3	Entering and Converting a Boolean Expression . . . . .	6-14
6.9	Logic Analyzer . . . . .	6-15

6.9.1	Start, Stop & Reset . . . . .	6-17
6.9.2	Clock . . . . .	6-17
6.9.3	Triggering . . . . .	6-18
6.10	Multimeter . . . . .	6-19
6.10.1	Measurement Options . . . . .	6-20
6.10.1.1	Ammeter . . . . .	6-20
6.10.1.2	Voltmeter . . . . .	6-21
6.10.1.3	Ohmmeter . . . . .	6-21
6.10.1.4	Decibels . . . . .	6-22
6.10.2	Signal Mode (AC or DC) . . . . .	6-22
6.10.3	Internal Settings . . . . .	6-23
6.11	Network Analyzer . . . . .	6-23
6.12	Oscilloscope . . . . .	6-24
6.12.1	Time Base (0.1 ns/Div — 1s/Div) . . . . .	6-26
6.12.1.1	X Position (-5.00 — 5.00) . . . . .	6-26
6.12.1.2	Axes (Y/T, A/B, and B/A) . . . . .	6-26
6.12.2	Grounding . . . . .	6-27
6.12.3	Channel A and Channel B Settings . . . . .	6-27
6.12.3.1	Volts per Division (0.10m V/Div — 5 kV/Div) . . . . .	6-27
6.12.3.2	Y Position (-3.00 — 3.00) . . . . .	6-27
6.12.3.3	Input Coupling (AC, 0, and DC) . . . . .	6-28
6.12.4	Trigger . . . . .	6-28
6.12.4.1	Trigger Edge . . . . .	6-28
6.12.4.2	Trigger Level (-.001mV — 999 kV) . . . . .	6-28
6.12.4.3	Trigger Signal . . . . .	6-29
6.12.5	Using Cursors and Readouts . . . . .	6-29
6.13	Spectrum Analyzer . . . . .	6-29
6.14	Wattmeter . . . . .	6-30
6.15	Word Generator . . . . .	6-31
6.15.1	Entering Words . . . . .	6-32
6.15.2	Controls . . . . .	6-32
6.15.3	Creating, Saving and Reusing Word Patterns . . . . .	6-33
6.15.4	Addressing . . . . .	6-33
6.15.5	Triggering . . . . .	6-34
6.15.6	Frequency and Data Ready . . . . .	6-34
6.16	Ammeter and Voltmeter . . . . .	6-34

# Chapter 6

## Instruments

### 6.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains how to use the various virtual instruments provided as part of Multisim. It explains both the general procedures for attaching and configuring the instruments, and the specific steps in using each instrument.

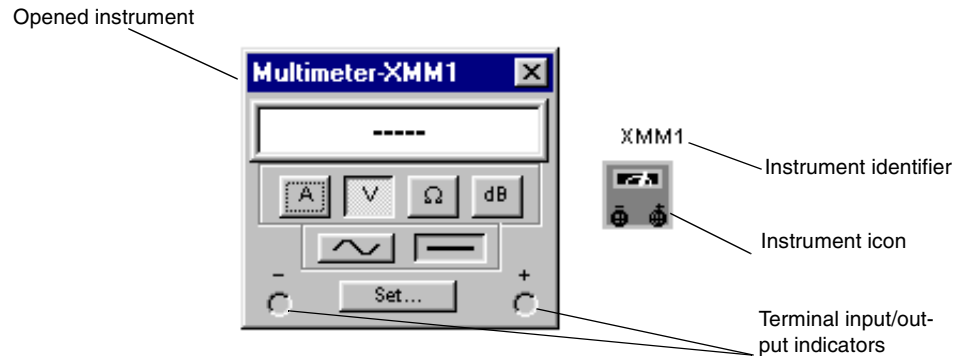


Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 6.2 Introduction to the Multisim Instruments

Multisim provides a number of virtual instruments. You use these instruments to measure the behavior of your circuits. These instruments are set, used and read just like their real-world equivalents. They look and feel just like the instruments you've seen and used in a lab. Using virtual instruments is one of the best and easiest ways of examining your circuit's behavior and showing the results of a simulation. These instruments can be placed in any level of circuit or subcircuit (for information on different circuit levels, see page 13-5; for information on subcircuits, see page 3-23) but they are active only for the currently active circuit or subcircuit.

Virtual instruments have two views: the Instrument icon you attach to your circuit, and the opened instrument, where you set the instrument's controls and display screen.

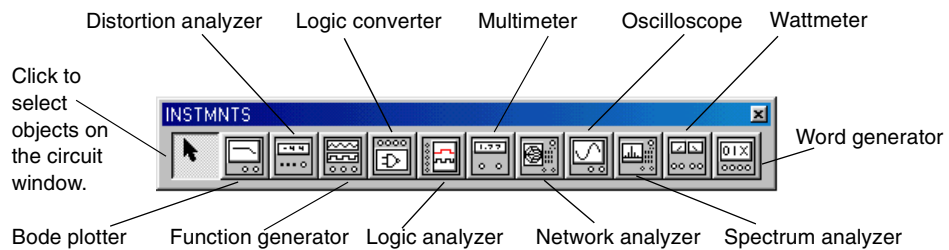


The instrument's icon indicates how the instrument is connected into the circuit. A black dot inside the terminal input/output indicators shows that the instrument is connected to a node.

➤ To add an instrument to a circuit:



1. Click the Instruments button on the Design Bar. The Instruments toolbar appears, including one button for each instrument.



2. From the Instruments toolbar, click the button of the instrument you want to use.
3. Move the cursor (which is a small icon with an arrow indicating the left-most connection point) to the location on the circuit window where you want to place the instrument and click.

The instrument icon and the instrument identifier appear. The instrument identifier identifies the type of instrument and its instance. For example, the first multimeter you place on a circuit is called "XMM1", the second is "XMM2", and so on. This numbering is unique within each circuit. That is, if you create a second circuit, the first multimeter placed in it is "XMM1", and so on.



**Note** Not all Multisim versions support multiple instances of an instrument.

4. To wire the instrument into the circuit, click on a terminal on the instrument's icon and drag the wire to the desired location in the circuit (a pin, wire, or junction). All the rules for component wiring, described in the "Schematic Capture" chapter, apply to instruments as well.

**Note** To change the color of the Instrument icon, right-click on it and choose **Color** from the pop-up menu that appears. Choose the desired color and click **OK**.

➤ To use the instrument:

1. To view and modify an instrument's controls, double-click its icon. The instrument controls appear. Make any necessary changes to the control settings, just as you would on their real-world equivalents. The control settings are different for each instrument, so if you are unfamiliar with them or need instruction, refer to the section on that particular instrument in this chapter.

It is **critical** that the control settings be appropriate for your circuit. If the settings are incorrect, this may cause the simulation results to appear incorrect or difficult to read.

**Note** Not all areas of the open instrument are modifiable. A hand appears when your cursor is on a control that can be modified.



2. To "activate" the circuit, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Run/Stop** from the pop-up menu that appears. Multisim begins to simulate the circuit's behavior and the signals, as measured at the points to which you have connected the instrument, are displayed.

The simulation results depend on the circuit's construction. During simulation, messages about the simulation results and any problems with the simulation are written to the simulation error log/audit trail. The error log/audit trail appears automatically when you stop the simulation. If you want to keep an eye on the progress of the simulation, you can display the error log/audit trail during simulation. To display it, from the **View** menu choose **Show/Hide Simulation Error Log/Audit Trail**. For more detailed information about simulation, see the "Simulation" chapter.

In most cases, you can make changes to the circuit (for example, moving components or adjusting instrument settings) while it is activated., unless the changes invalidate the simulation (for example, if you add a component).

- To pause or resume the simulation, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Pause/Resume** from the pop-up menu that appears. The simulation is paused.
- To stop the simulation, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Run/Stop** from the pop-up menu that appears. The simulation ends, with the final results shown on the instrument face and in the audit trail.

You can also run, stop, pause, or resume using commands from the **Simulate** menu.

## 6.3 Working with Multiple Instruments

A single circuit can have multiple instruments attached to it, including (for some versions) multiple instances of the same instrument. In addition, each circuit window can have its own set of instruments. Setting up many different instruments or multiple instances of one instrument is done in exactly the same way as setting up one instrument.

Instruments that sample for an amount of time cause a transient analysis to be run. If you use multiples of such instruments, only one transient analysis is run. The settings of this analysis are derived from considering all the concurrent instruments and choosing settings that will satisfy each. For example, if you have two oscilloscopes with two different time-bases (resolutions), Multisim uses the time-base of the oscilloscope with the smallest time-base (highest resolution). As a result, both instruments will sample at a higher resolution than they would individually.

The results from each instrument are recorded separately in the error log/audit trail.

## 6.4 Default Instrument Analysis Settings

Multisim lets you set default settings for instruments that are based on a transient analysis (such as the oscilloscope, spectrum analyzer and logic analyzer).

- To set the default instrument settings:

1. Choose **Simulate/Default Instrument Settings**. The following screen appears:

Set initial conditions: Zero, User-Defined, Calculate DC Operating Point, or Automatically Determine Initial Conditions.

Start time of transient analysis must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than End time.

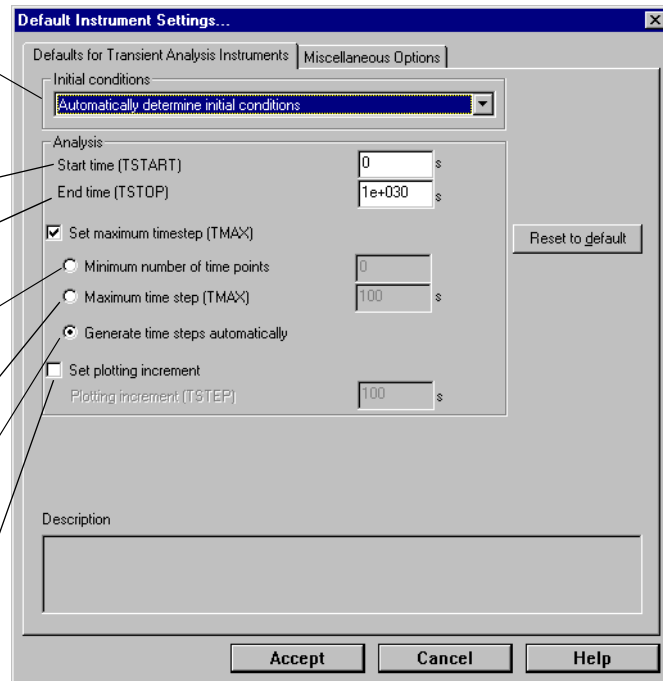
End time of transient analysis must be greater than Start time.

Enable to enter minimum number of time points (number of points between start and stop times).

Enable to enter the maximum time step the simulation can handle.

Enable to generate time steps automatically.

Enable to set a time interval for simulation output and graphing.

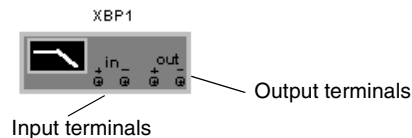


2. Enter settings as desired and click **Accept**, or click **Cancel** to cancel. These settings will be in effect the next time you run a simulation.

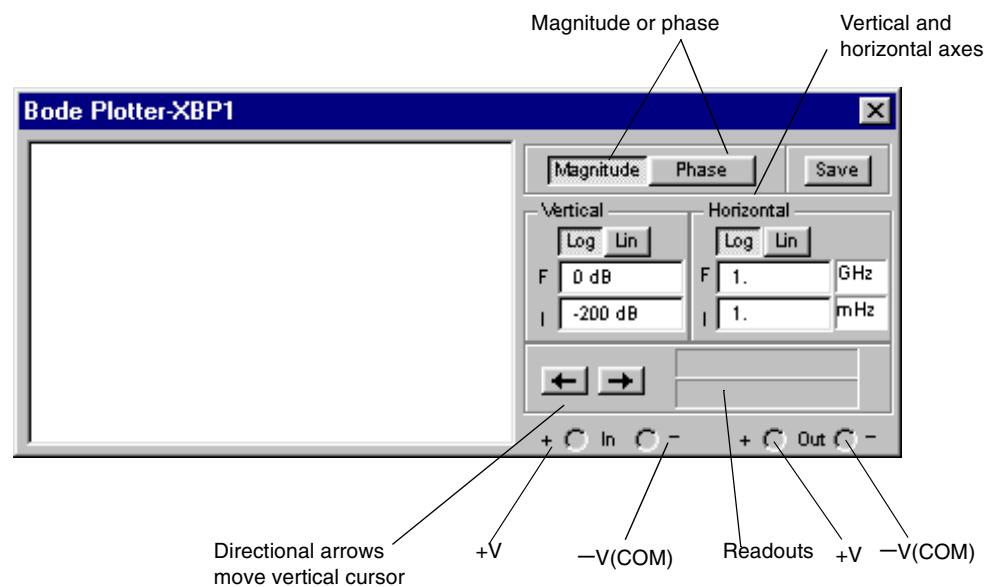
You can control many aspects of the simulation, such as resetting error tolerances, selecting simulation techniques, and viewing the results. The options you choose will determine the efficiency of the simulation. See “Analysis Options” on page 8-70 for details on the analysis options and their default values. You set these options through the Miscellaneous Options tab, by clicking **Analysis Options**.



## 6.5 Bode Plotter



The Bode plotter produces a graph of a circuit's frequency response and is most useful for analyzing filter circuits. The Bode plotter is used to measure a signal's voltage gain or phase shift. When the Bode plotter is attached to a circuit, a spectrum analysis is performed.



The Bode plotter generates a range of frequencies over a specified spectrum. The frequency of any AC sources in the circuit does not affect the Bode plotter. However, an AC source must be included somewhere in the circuit.

The initial and final values of the vertical and horizontal scales are preset to their maximum value. These values can be changed to see the plot on a different scale. If the scale is expanded or the base changed after simulation is complete, you may need to activate the circuit again to get more detail in the plot. Unlike most test instruments, if the Bode plotter's probes are moved to different nodes, it is best to re-activate the circuit to ensure accurate results.

## 6.5.1 Magnitude or Phase

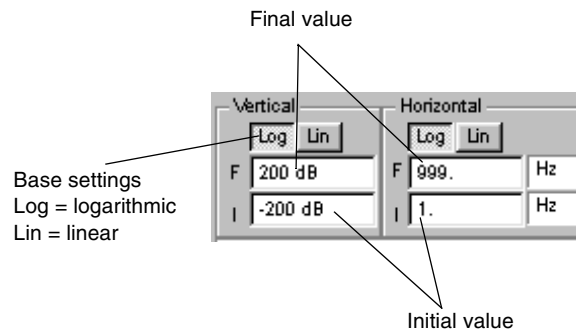
Magnitude measures the ratio of magnitudes (voltage gain, in decibels) between two nodes, V+ and V-.

Phase measures the phase shift (in degrees) between two nodes.

Both gain and phase shift will be plotted against frequency (in hertz).

- If V+ and V- are single points in a circuit:
  1. Attach the positive IN terminal and the positive OUT terminal to connectors at V+ and V-.
  2. Attach the negative IN and OUT terminals to a ground component.
- If V+ (or V-) is the magnitude or phase across a component, attach both IN terminals (or both OUT terminals) on either side of the component.

## 6.5.2 Vertical and Horizontal Axes Settings



### 6.5.2.1 Base Settings

A logarithmic base is used when the values being compared have a large range, as is generally the case when analyzing frequency response. For example, if measuring a signal's voltage gain, the decibel value is calculated as follows:

$$dB = 20 * \log_{10} \left( \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} \right)$$

The base scale can be changed from logarithmic (Log) to linear (Lin) without the circuit being activated again. (Only when using a logarithmic scale is the resulting graph referred to as a Bode plot.)

6.5.2.2 Horizontal Axis Scale (.1 mHz — 999.9 GHz)

The horizontal or x-axis always shows frequency. Its scale is determined by the initial (I) and final (F) settings for the horizontal axis. Since a frequency response analysis requires a large frequency range, a logarithmic scale is often used.

**Note** When setting the horizontal axis scale, the initial (I) frequency must be larger than the final (F) frequency. Multisim will not let you set I smaller than F.

6.5.2.3 Vertical Axis Scale

The units and scale for the vertical axis depend on what is being measured and the base being used, as shown in the table below.

When Measuring...	Using the Base...	Minimum Initial Value is...	Maximum Final Value is...
Magnitude (gain)	Logarithmic	-200 dB	200 dB
Magnitude (gain)	Linear	0	10e+09
Phase	Linear	-720°	720°

When measuring voltage gain, the vertical axis shows the ratio of the circuit’s output voltage to its voltage. For a logarithmic base, the units are decibels. For a linear base, the vertical axis shows the ratio of output voltage to input voltage. When measuring phase, the vertical axis always shows the phase angle in degrees. Regardless of the units, you can set initial (I) and final (F) values for the axis using the Bode plotter’s controls.

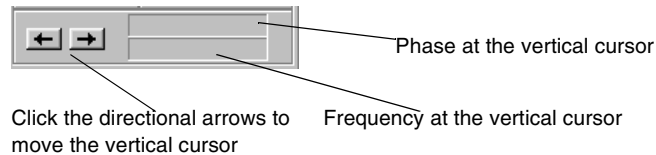
6.5.3 Readouts

Move the Bode plotter’s vertical cursor to get a readout of the frequency and magnitude or phase at any point on the plot. The vertical cursor is stored at the left edge of the Bode plotter display.

- To move the vertical cursor:
  - click the arrows near the bottom of the Bode plotteror

- drag the vertical cursor from the left edge of the Bode plotter display to the point on the plot you want to measure.

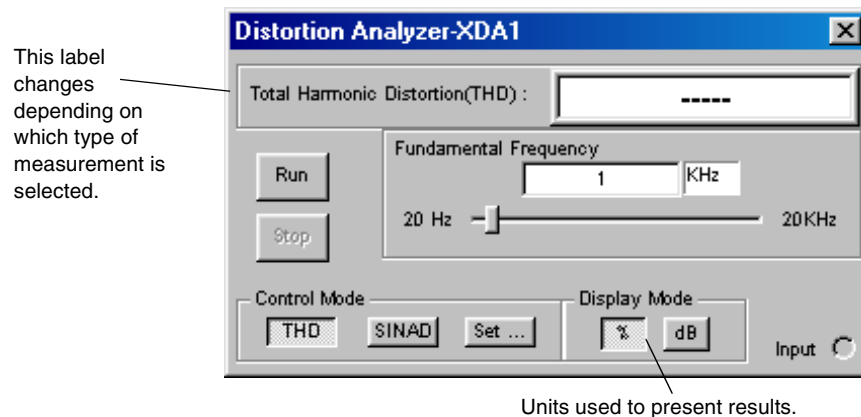
The magnitude (or phase) and frequency at the intersection of the vertical cursor and the trace are shown in the boxes beside the arrows.



## 6.6 Distortion Analyzer



A typical distortion analyzer provides distortion measurements for signals in the range of 20 Hz to 100 KHz, including audio signals.



The types of measurements performed are either Total Harmonic Distortion (THD) or Signal Plus Noise and Distortion (SINAD). To set the way results are to be displayed for either type of measurement, click **Settings**.

### 6.6.1 Harmonic Distortion

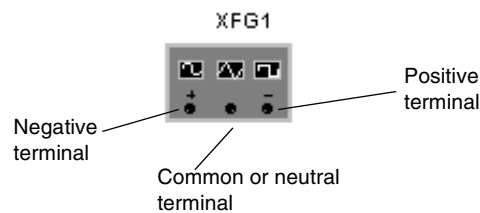
Harmonic distortion produces signals at harmonics of the test frequency. For example, for a 1 KHz signal, the harmonics may be at 2 KHz, 3 KHz, 4 KHz, etc.

A very sharp tunable notch is required to measure harmonic distortion. The filter is tuned to the test frequency such as 1 KHz, which will remove the 1KHz signal, leaving only the harmonics or the distortion. The distortion harmonics are measured and the resulting value is compared to the amplitude of the test signal.

### 6.6.2 SINAD

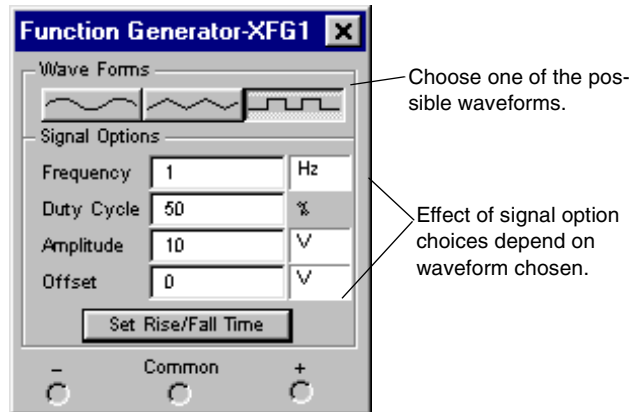
This type of measurement measures the ratio of (signal plus noise and distortion)/(noise and distortion).

## 6.7 Function Generator



The function generator is a voltage source that supplies sine, triangular or square waves. It provides a convenient and realistic way to supply stimulus signals to a circuit. The waveform can be changed and its frequency, amplitude, duty cycle and DC offset can be controlled. The function generator's frequency range is great enough to produce conventional AC as well as audio- and radio-frequency signals.

The function generator has three terminals through which waveforms can be applied to a circuit.



The common terminal provides a reference level for the signal.

- To reference a signal from ground, connect the common terminal to the ground component. The positive terminal (+) provides a waveform in the positive direction from the neutral common terminal. The negative terminal (-) provides a waveform in the negative direction.

## 6.7.1 Waveform Selection

You can select three different types of waveforms as the output.

- To select the waveform, click the Sine-, Triangular- or Square-wave button.

## 6.7.2 Signal Options

### 6.7.2.1 Frequency (1Hz — 999 MEGHz)

This setting determines the number of cycles per second the function generator generates.

### 6.7.2.2 Duty Cycle (1% — 99%)

This setting determines the ratio of on-period to off-period. It affects the shape of triangular and square waves as shown below. A sine wave is not affected by the duty cycle setting.

### 6.7.2.3 Amplitude (Ø — 999 kV)

This setting controls the signal's voltage, measured from its DC level to its peak. If the leads are connected to the common and either the positive or the negative terminal, the wave's peak-to-peak measurement is twice its amplitude. If the output comes from the positive and negative terminals, the wave's peak-to-peak measurement is four times its amplitude.

### 6.7.2.4 Offset (-999 kV and 999 kV)

This option controls the DC level about which the alternating signal varies. An offset of 0 positions the waveform along the oscilloscope's x-axis (provided its Y POS setting is 0). A positive value shifts the DC level upward, while a negative value shifts it downward. Offset uses the units set for Amplitude.

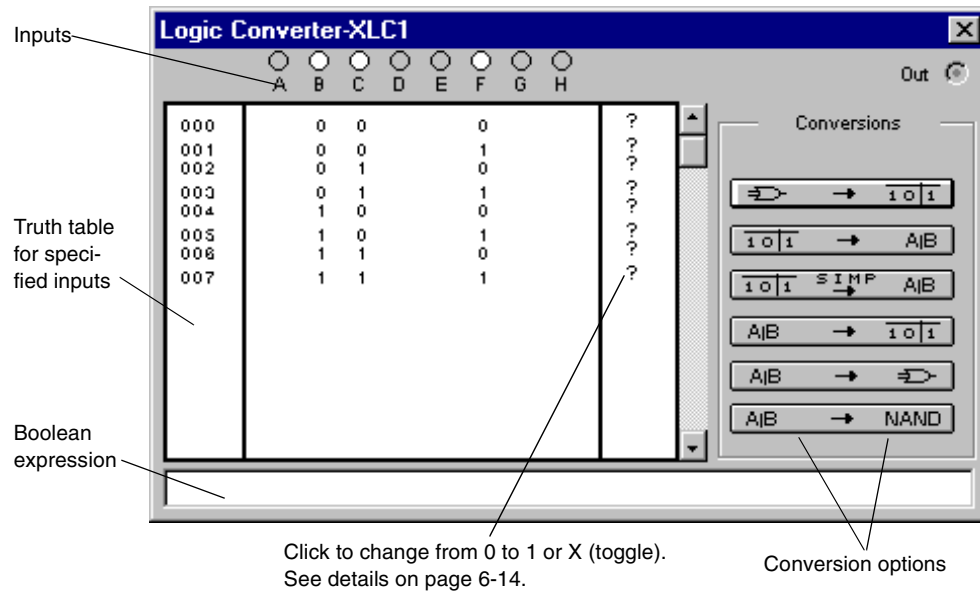
## 6.7.3 Rise Time

This option sets the time over which the square waveform is built (and, therefore, the angle of the waveform). Only available for square waveforms.

## 6.8 Logic Converter

The logic converter is able to perform several transformations of a circuit representation or digital signal. This is a useful tool for digital circuit analysis, but has no real-world counterpart. It can be attached to a circuit to derive the truth table or Boolean expression the circuit embodies, or to produce a circuit from a truth table or Boolean expression.





Click circles or the label below them to display the inputs for that terminal.

## 6.8.1 Deriving a Truth Table from a Circuit


- To derive a truth table from a circuit schematic:
  1. Attach the input terminals of the logic converter to up to eight nodes in the circuit.
  2. Connect the single output of the circuit to the output terminal on the **Logic Converter** icon.

3. Click the **Circuit to Truth Table** button.

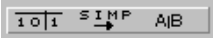
The truth table for the circuit appears in the logic converter's display.



## 6.8.2 Entering and Converting a Truth Table

- To construct a truth table:
  1. Click the number of input channels you want, from A to H, across the top of the logic converter. The display area below the terminals fills up with the necessary combinations of ones and zeros to fulfill the input conditions. The values in the output column on the right are initially set to 0.
  2. Edit the output column to specify the desired output for each input condition.
- To change an output value, click on it to move among the three possible settings: “0”, “1” and “x” (an “x” indicates that either 1 or 0 is acceptable).
- To convert a truth table to a Boolean expression, click the **Truth Table to Boolean Expression**  button.

The Boolean expression will be displayed at the bottom of the logic converter.

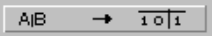
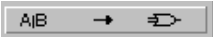
- To convert a truth table to a simplified Boolean expression, or to simplify an existing Boolean expression, click the **Simplify**  button.

The simplification is performed by the Quine-McCluskey method, rather than the more familiar Karnaugh mapping technique. Karnaugh mapping works for only small numbers of variables and requires human intuition, while Quine-McCluskey has proved to be exhaustive for any number of variables but is too cumbersome for manual solutions.


**Note** Simplifying a Boolean expression requires substantial memory. If not enough memory is available, Multisim may not be able to complete this operation.

## 6.8.3 Entering and Converting a Boolean Expression

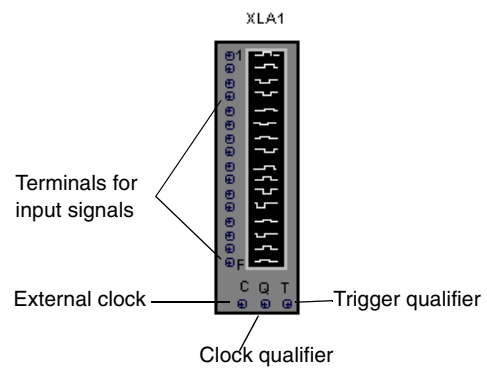
A Boolean expression can be entered in the box at the bottom of the logic converter using either sum-of-products or product-of-sums notation.

- To convert a Boolean expression to a truth table, click the **Boolean Expression to Truth Table**  button.
- To convert a Boolean expression to a circuit, click the **Boolean Expression to Circuit**  button.

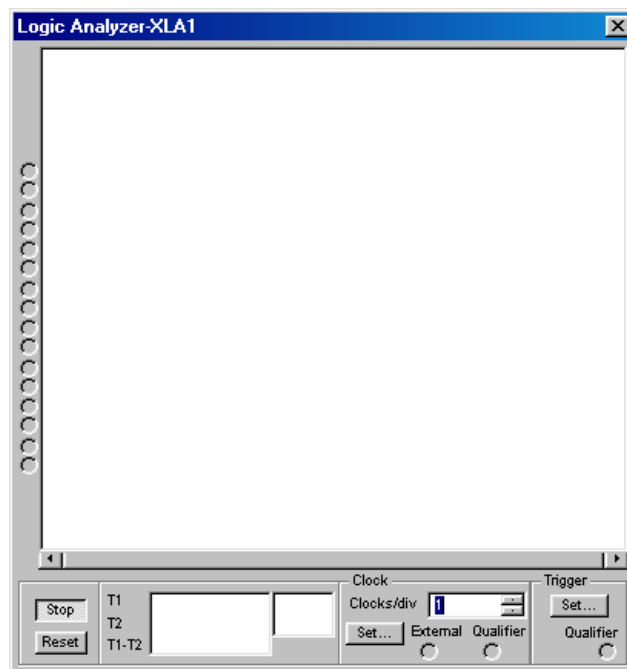
The logic gates that fulfill the Boolean expression appear on the circuit window. The components are selected so you can move them to a different location on the circuit window or put them in a subcircuit. Deselect the components by clicking on an empty spot on the circuit.

- To see a circuit that fulfills the conditions of the Boolean expression using only NAND gates, click the **Boolean Expression to NAND**  button.

## 6.9 Logic Analyzer



The logic analyzer displays the levels of up to 16 digital signals in a circuit. It is used for fast data acquisition of logic states and advanced timing analysis to help design large systems and carry out troubleshooting.



The 16 circles on the left side of the icon correspond to the terminals and horizontal rows across the instrument face. When the terminal is connected with a node, its circle is displayed with a black dot and the node's name and color are displayed. Otherwise the terminal circle is displayed without a black dot.

When a circuit is activated, the logic analyzer records the input values on its terminals. When the triggering signal is seen, the logic analyzer displays the pre- and post-trigger data. Data is displayed as square waves over time. The top row displays values for channel 0 (generally the first bit in a digital word), the next row displays values for channel 1, and so on. The binary value of each bit in the current word is displayed in the terminals on the left side of the instrument face. The time axis is displayed as the top axis of the signal display screen. The screen also displays the internal clock signal, external clock signal, external clock qualify signal and trigger qualify signal.

- To specify the number of samples stored before and after triggering, click **Set** in the **Clock** box or use the default instrument settings, as explained on page 6-4.

The logic analyzer stores data until it reaches the pre-trigger number of samples. Then, it begins discarding samples as new samples appear until it sees the trigger signal. After the trigger signal, samples are stored up to the value of the post-trigger samples.

The time position automatically displays the time position values of the two crosshair cursors, T1 and T2, when sampling stopped. It also automatically moves the first crosshair cursor T1 to the position of time zero, when sampling stopped.

- To change the threshold voltage, use the default instrument settings, as explained on page 6-4.

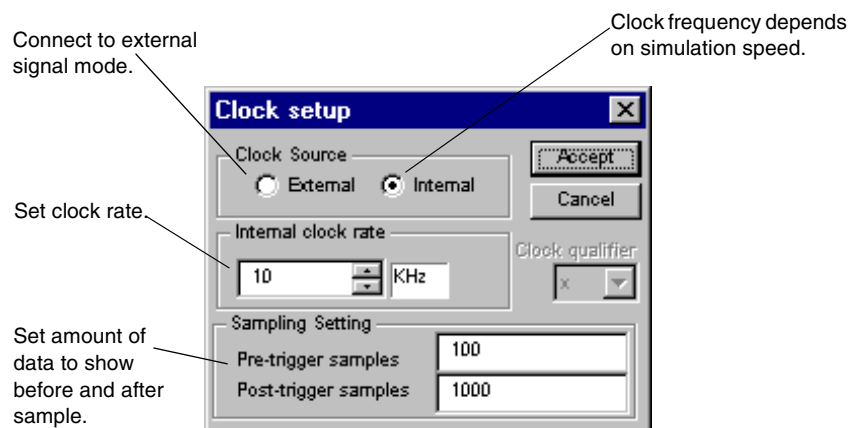
## 6.9.1 Start, Stop & Reset

- To restart a new signal analysis, click **Start**. (The button toggles between Stop and Start.)
- To dump stored data when the logic analyzer is not triggered, click **Stop**. If the logic analyzer is already triggered and displaying data, **Stop** has no effect.
- To clear the logic analyzer's display, click **Reset**.

## 6.9.2 Clock

The clock informs the logic analyzer when to read an input sample. The clock can be internal or external.

- To adjust the clock settings:
  1. Click **Set** in the **Clock** area of the logic analyzer. The Clock Setup screen appears.

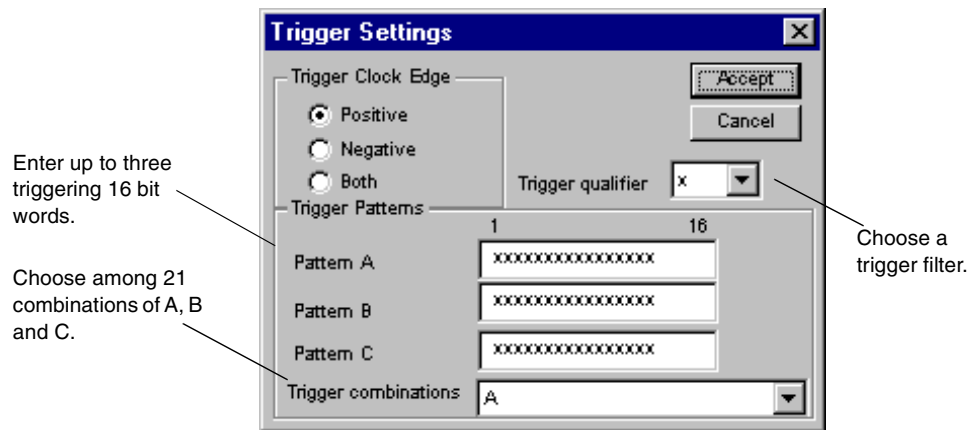


2. Select external or internal clock mode.

3. Set the internal clock rate. Clock qualifier is an input signal that filters the clock signal. If it is set to “x”, then the qualifier is disabled and the clock signal determines when samples are read. If it is set to “1” or “0”, the samples are read only when the clock signal matches the selected qualifier signal.
4. Set how much data to show before (**Pre-trigger samples**) and after (**Post-trigger samples**) the sample.
5. Click **Accept**.

### 6.9.3 Triggering

The logic analyzer can be made to trigger upon reading a specified word or combination of words or when meeting the increase edge or decrease edge of the clock signal.



- To specify up to three trigger words or word combinations:
  1. Click **Set** in the **Trigger** box of the logic analyzer.
  2. Select **Positive**, **Negative** or **Both** positive and negative clock edge.
  3. Click in the box labeled **Pattern A**, **Pattern B**, or **Pattern C** and enter a binary word. An “x” means either 1 or 0.
  4. From the **Trigger combinations** drop-down list, select the desired combination. (See below for a list of combinations.)
  5. From the **Trigger qualifier** drop-down list, select the desired trigger qualifier. Trigger qualifier is an input signal that filters the triggering signal. If it is set to “x”, then the qualifier is disabled and the trigger signal determines when the logic analyzer is triggered. If it is set to “1” or “0”, the logic analyzer is triggered only when the triggering signal matches the selected trigger qualifier.

6. Click **Accept**.

The possible trigger combinations are:

A	B	C
A or B	A or C	B or C
A OR B OR C	A AND B	A AND C
B AND C	A AND B AND C	NO B
A NO C	B NO C	A THEN B
A THEN C	B THEN C	(A OR B) THEN C
A THEN (B OR C)	A THEN B THEN C	A THEN (B WITHOUT C)

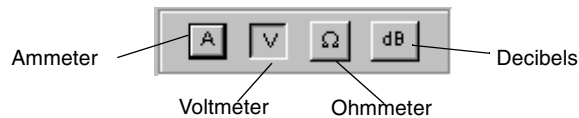
## 6.10 Multimeter



Use the multimeter to measure AC or DC voltage or current, and resistance or decibel loss between two nodes in a circuit. The multimeter is auto-ranging, so a measurement range does not need to be specified. Its internal resistance and current are preset to near-ideal values, which can be changed (see page 6-23).



## 6.10.1 Measurement Options

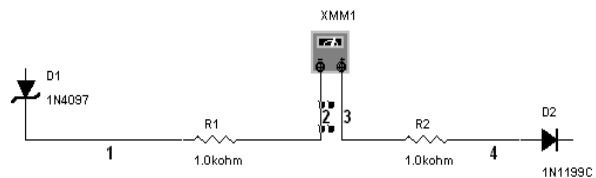


### 6.10.1.1 Ammeter

This option measures current flowing through the circuit in a branch between two nodes.

Insert the multimeter in series with the load to measure current flow, just like a real ammeter (as shown in diagram below).

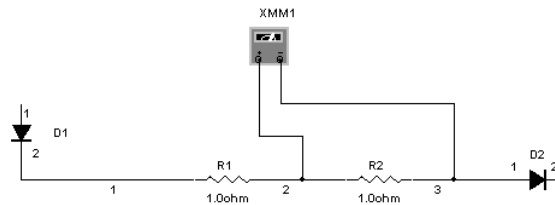
- To measure current at another node in the circuit, connect another multimeter in series at that load and activate the circuit again. When used as an ammeter, the multimeter's internal resistance is very low (1n Ohm).
- To change the resistance, click **Set**. See page 6-23 for details.





### 6.10.1.2 Voltmeter

This option measures voltage between two nodes. Select **V** and attach the voltmeter's probes in parallel with the load (as shown in diagram below). After the circuit has been activated, you

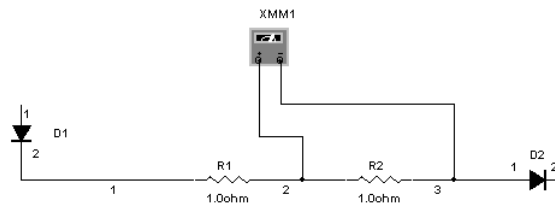


may move the probes around to measure voltage between other nodes. When used as a voltmeter, the multimeter has a high internal resistance of 1 mohm, which can be changed by clicking **Set**. See page 6-23 for details.



### 6.10.1.3 Ohmmeter

This option measures resistance between two nodes. The nodes and everything that lies between them are referred to as the “component network”. To measure the resistance, select this option and attach the multimeter's probes in parallel with the component network (as shown in the diagram below).



To get an accurate measurement, make sure that:

- there is no source in the component network
- the component or component network is grounded
- the multimeter is set to DC (for more details, see “Signal Mode (AC or DC)” on page 6-22)
- there is nothing else in parallel with the component or component network.

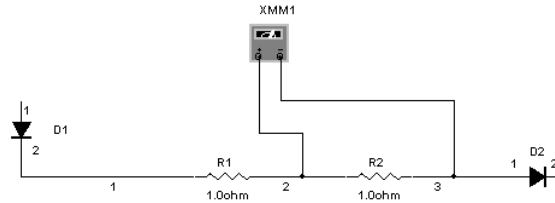
The ohmmeter generates a 1-mA current, which can be changed by clicking **Set**. See page 6-23 for details. If the ohmmeter has been attached to different nodes, re-activate the circuit to get a reading.





### 6.10.1.4 Decibels

This option measures decibel voltage loss between two nodes in a circuit. To measure the decibels, select this option and attach the multimeter's probes in parallel with the load (as shown in diagram below). The Decibel standard for calculating dB is preset to 1 V, but can be



changed by clicking **Set**. See page 6-23 for details. Decibel loss is calculated as follows:

$$dB = 20 * \log_{10} \left( \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}} \right)$$

## 6.10.2 Signal Mode (AC or DC)



The **Sine-wave** button measures the root-mean-square (RMS) voltage or current of an AC signal. Any DC component of the signal will be eliminated, so only the AC component of the signal is measured.



The **Straight-wave** button measures the current or voltage value of a DC signal.

**Note** To measure the RMS voltage of a circuit with both AC and DC components, connect an AC voltmeter as well as a “DC” voltmeter across the appropriate nodes and measure the AC and DC voltage.

The following formula can be used to calculate RMS voltage when both AC and DC components are in the circuit. Be advised that this is not a universal formula and should be used in conjunction with Multisim only.

$$\text{RMS voltage} = \sqrt{(V_{dc}^2 + V_{ac}^2)}$$

### 6.10.3 Internal Settings

Ideal meters have no effect on the circuit being measured. An ideal voltmeter would have infinite resistance, so no current could flow through it while it is attached to a circuit. An ideal ammeter would present no resistance to a circuit. Real meters do not achieve this ideal, so their readings will very closely match theoretical, calculated values for a circuit, but never with absolute precision.

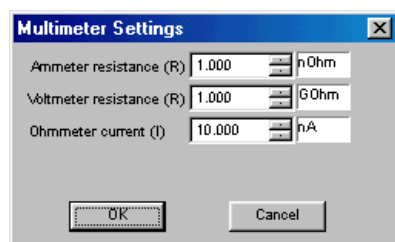
The multimeter in Multisim, like a real multimeter, is nearly ideal. It uses very small and very large numbers that approximate zero and infinity to calculate near-ideal values for the circuit. For special cases, however, the meter's behavior can be changed by changing these values used to model its effect on the circuit. (The values must be higher than 0.)

For example, if testing the voltage of a circuit with very high resistance, increase the voltmeter's resistance. If measuring the current of a circuit with very low resistance, decrease the ammeter's resistance even further.

**Note** Very low ammeter resistance in a high-resistance circuit may result in a mathematical roundoff error.

➤ To display the default internal settings:

1. Click **Set**. The Multimeter Settings screen appears.



2. Change the desired options.
3. To save your changes, click **OK**. To cancel them, click **Cancel**.

## 6.11 Network Analyzer



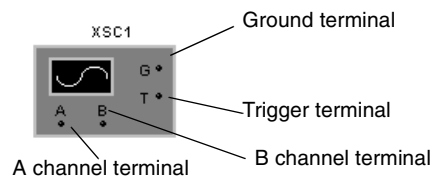
The network analyzer is used to measure the scattering parameters (or S-parameters) of a circuit, commonly used to characterize a circuit intended to operate at higher frequencies. These S-parameters are used to derive matching cells using other Multisim analyses. The network analyzer also calculates H, Y, Z parameters.

The circuit is idealized as a two-port network. To properly use the network analyzer, the circuit must be left open at its input and output ports. During simulation the network analyzer

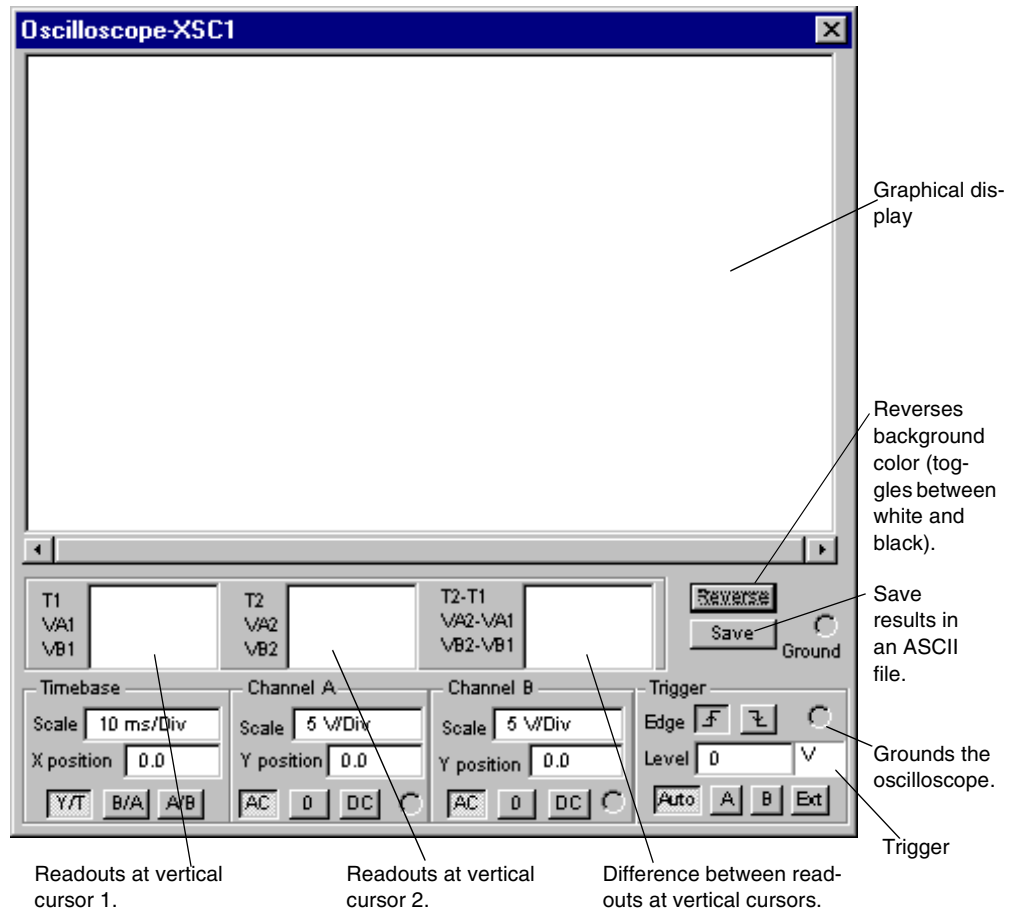
completes the circuit being analyzed by inserting its sub-circuits. You need to remove these sub-circuits from the circuit before performing other analysis and simulation.

The network analyzer is part of the RF Design Module. For more details, see the “RF” chapter.

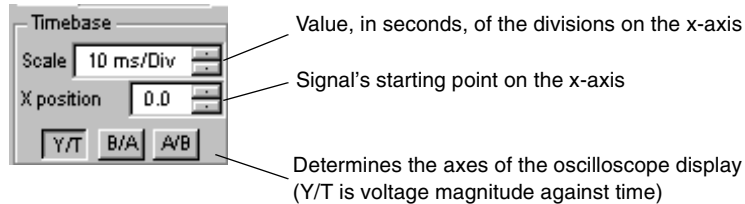
## 6.12 Oscilloscope



The dual-channel oscilloscope displays the magnitude and frequency variations of electronic signals. It can provide a graph of the strength of one or two signals over time, or allow comparison of one waveform to another.



## 6.12.1 Time Base (0.1 ns/Div — 1s/Div)



The time base setting controls the scale of the oscilloscope's horizontal or x-axis when comparing magnitude against time (Y/T).

- To get a readable display, adjust the time base in inverse proportion to the frequency setting on the function generator or AC source—the higher the frequency, the lower (or more magnified) the time base.

For example, if you want to see one cycle of a 1 kHz signal, the time base should be around 1 millisecond.

### 6.12.1.1 X Position (-5.00 — 5.00)

This setting controls the signal's starting point on the x-axis. When **X Position** is 0, the signal starts at the left edge of the display. A positive value (for example, 2.00) shifts the starting point to the right. A negative value (for example, -3.00) shifts the starting point to the left.

### 6.12.1.2 Axes (Y/T, A/B, and B/A)

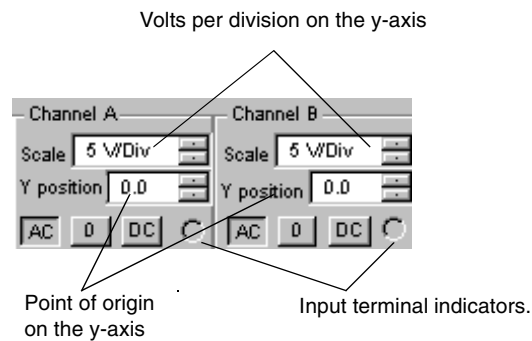
The axes of the oscilloscope display can be switched from showing waveform magnitude against time (Y/T) to showing one input channel against the other (A/B or B/A). The latter settings display frequency and phase shifts, known as Lissajous patterns, or they can display a hysteresis loop. When comparing channel A's input against channel B's (A/B), the scale of the x-axis is determined by the volts-per-division setting for channel B (and vice versa).

**Tip** To analyze waveforms in detail, click “Pause after each screen” in the Instruments tab of the Circuit/Analysis Options dialog box or use the Design Bar button to stop and start. In either case, continue the simulation when ready.

## 6.12.2 Grounding

It is not necessary to ground the oscilloscope, as long as the circuit to which it is attached is grounded.

### 6.12.3 Channel A and Channel B Settings



#### 6.12.3.1 Volts per Division (010 $\mu$ V/Div — 5 kV/Div)

This setting determines the scale of the y-axis. It also controls the x-axis scale when A/B or B/A is selected.

To get a readable display, adjust the scale in relation to the channel's expected voltage. For example, an input AC signal of 3 volts fills the oscilloscope's display vertically when the y-axis is set to 1 V/Div. If the volts-per-division is increased, the waveform will become smaller. If the volts-per-division is decreased, the waveform's top will be cut off.

#### 6.12.3.2 Y Position (-3.00 — 3.00)

This setting controls the point of origin for the y-axis. When **Y position** is set to 0.00, the point of origin is the intersection with the x-axis. Increasing **Y position** to 1.00, for example, moves 0 (the point of origin) up to the first division above the x-axis. Decreasing **Y position** to -1.00 moves 0 down to the first division below the x-axis.

Changing the **Y position** setting for channels A and B may help distinguish their waveforms for comparison. For the oscilloscope display illustrated below, the waveforms for channels A and B were almost superimposed. Because the **Y position** value was increased for channel A and decreased for channel B, the waveforms can now be clearly distinguished.

#### 6.12.3.3 Input Coupling (AC, 0, and DC)

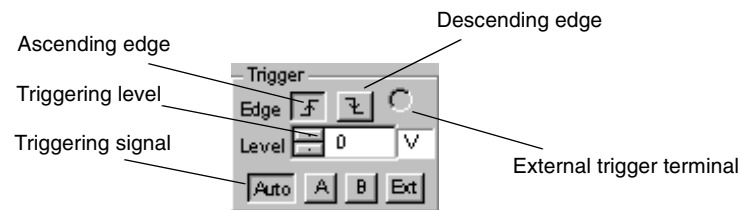
With AC coupling, only the AC component of a signal is displayed. AC coupling has the effect of placing a capacitor in series with the oscilloscope's probe. As on a real oscilloscope

using AC coupling, the first cycle displayed is inaccurate. Once the signal's DC component has been calculated and eliminated during the first cycle, the waveforms will be accurate.

With DC coupling, the sum of the AC and DC components of the signal is displayed. Selecting 0 displays a reference flat line at the point of origin set by **Y position**.

**Note** Do not place a coupling capacitor in series with an oscilloscope probe. The oscilloscope will not provide a path for current, and the analysis will consider the capacitor improperly connected. Instead, choose AC coupling.

## 6.12.4 Trigger



These settings determine the conditions under which a waveform is first displayed on the oscilloscope.

### 6.12.4.1 Trigger Edge

- To start displaying the waveform on its positive slope or rising signal, click the “ascending edge” button.
- To start with the negative slope or falling signal, select the “descending edge” button.

### 6.12.4.2 Trigger Level (-0.001μV — 999 kV)

The trigger level is the point on the oscilloscope's y-axis that must be crossed by the waveform before it is displayed. The level can have any value between 3.00 (the top of the display) and -3.00 (the bottom of the display).

**Tip** A flat waveform will not cross the trigger level. To see a flat signal, make sure the triggering signal is set to **Auto**.

### 6.12.4.3 Trigger Signal

Triggering can be internal, with reference to the input signal for channel A or B, or external, with reference to a signal through the external trigger terminal situated below the ground ter-

minal on the **Oscilloscope** icon. If a flat signal is expected, or if signals are to be displayed as soon as possible, select **Auto**.

### 6.12.5 Using Cursors and Readouts

- To display the exact values of the wave, drag the vertical cursor until the desired portion appears.

The boxes below the display show the time and the voltage at the probe connections, where the vertical cursor intersects the sine wave, and the difference between the two positions.

Once a circuit has been activated and its behavior simulated, you may move the oscilloscope's probes to other nodes without re-activating the circuit. Moving the probes automatically redraws the waveforms for the new nodes. If you fine-tune the oscilloscope's settings either during or after simulation, the display redraws automatically.

**Note** If the oscilloscope settings or analysis options are changed to provide more detail, the waveforms may appear choppy or uneven. If so, activate the circuit again to get more detail. You can also increase the precision of a waveform by increasing the simulation time step using the default instrument settings, as explained on page 6-4.

## 6.13 Spectrum Analyzer

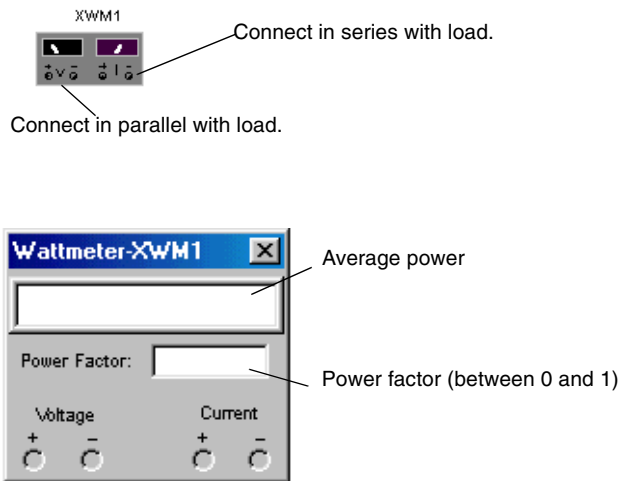


The spectrum analyzer is used to measure amplitude versus frequency. It performs a similar function in the frequency domain as an oscilloscope performs in the time domain. It operates by sweeping through a range of frequencies. The amplitude of the signal at the input of the receiver is plotted against the frequency of the signal. This instrument is capable of measuring a signal's power at various frequencies, and helps determine the existence of the frequency components' signal.

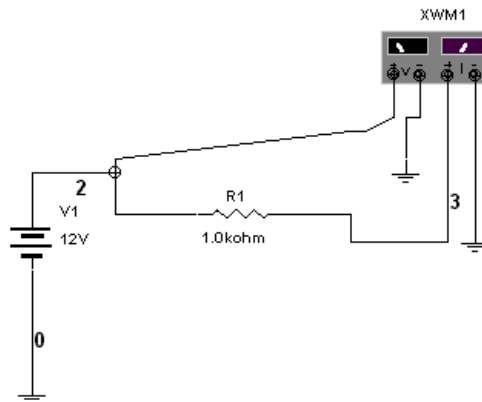
The spectrum analyzer is part of the RF Design Module. For more details, see the "RF" chapter.



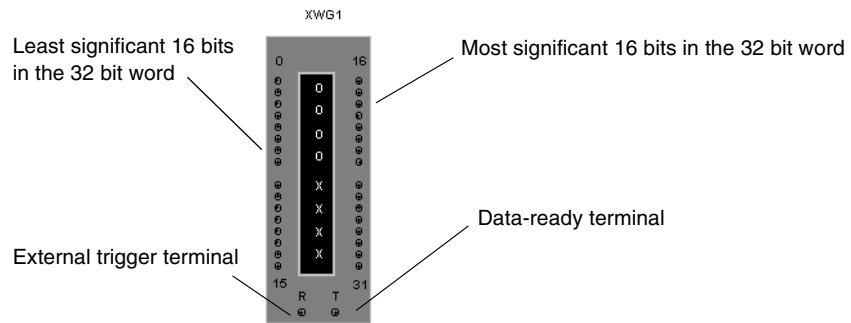
## 6.14 Wattmeter



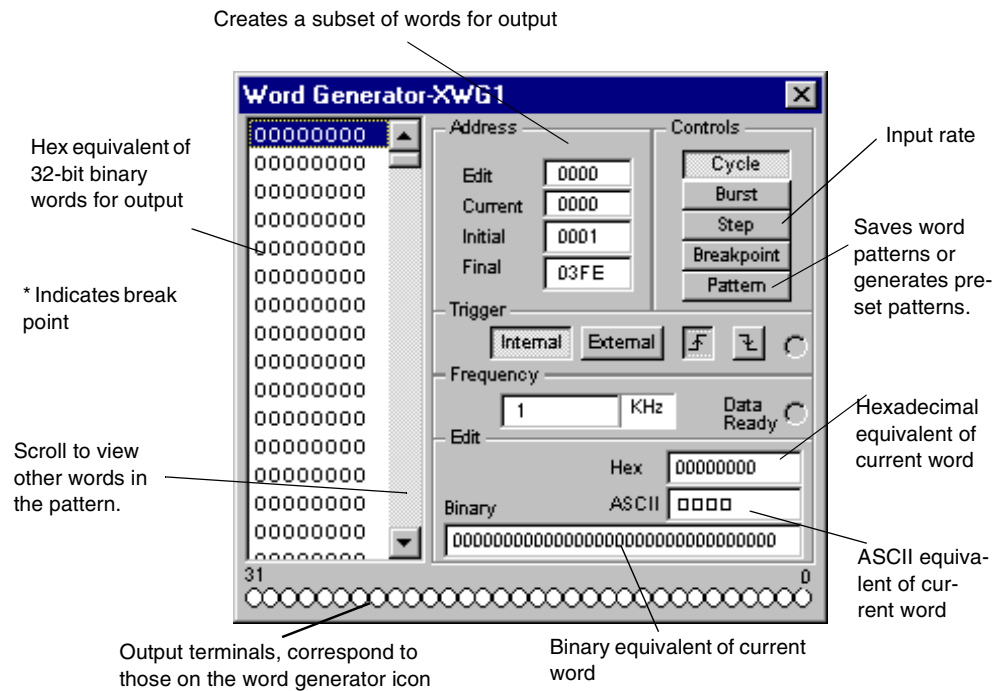
The wattmeter measures power. It is used to measure the magnitude of the active power, that is, the product of the voltage difference and the current flowing through the current terminals in a circuit. The results are shown in watts. The wattmeter also displays the power factor, calculated by measuring the difference between the voltages and the current, and multiplying them together. The power factor is the cosine of the phase angle between the voltage and current.



## 6.15 Word Generator



Use the word generator to send digital words or patterns of bits into circuits to provide stimulus to digital circuits:



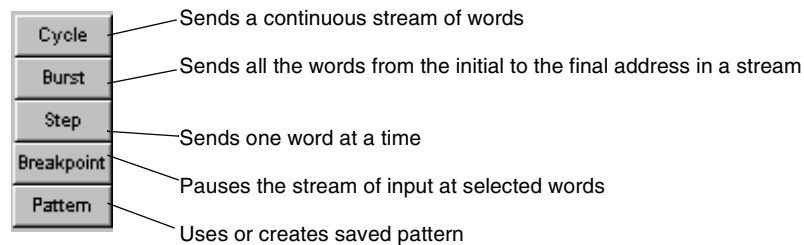
## 6.15.1 Entering Words

The left side of the word generator instrument face displays rows of 8-digit hexadecimal numbers, ranging from 00000000 to FFFFFFFF (0 to 4,294,967,265, in decimal). Each horizontal row represents a binary 32-bit word. When the word generator is activated, a row of bits is sent in parallel to the corresponding terminals at the bottom of the instrument.

- To change a bit value in the word generator, select the number you want to modify and type the new value in the **Hex**, **ASCII** or **Binary** fields, using the appropriate number format.

As the words are transmitted by the word generator, the value of each bit appears in the circles representing the output terminals at the bottom of the instrument.

## 6.15.2 Controls

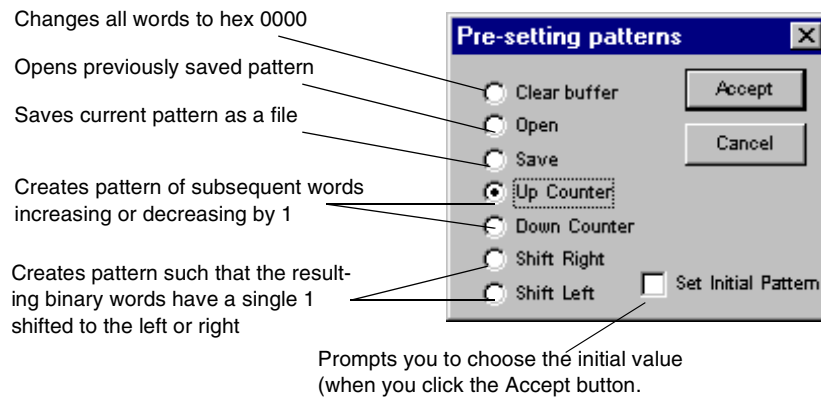


- To inject the 32-bit words into a circuit, click **Step**, **Burst** or **Cycle**. The current word appears in the box labeled **Current**.
- To transmit one word at a time into the circuit, click **Step**.
- To send all words in sequence, click **Burst**. Clicking **Cycle** sends a continuous stream of words that can be stopped by clicking **Cycle** again, or by pressing CTRL+T.  
Use **Breakpoint** when you want to pause and restart the stream of words at a specified word.
- To insert a breakpoint, select the word in the scroll list where you want the input to stop, then click **Breakpoint**. An asterisk marks a breakpoint in the scroll list.
- To remove a breakpoint, click on an existing breakpoint (\*) in the scroll list, then click **Breakpoint**.

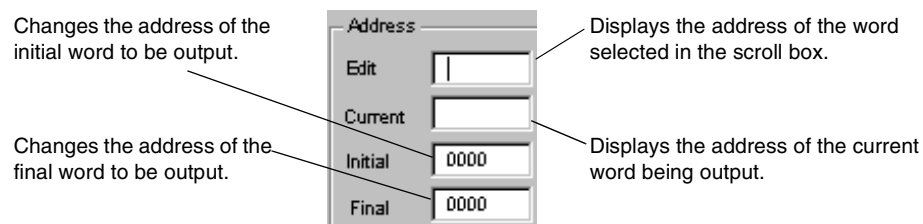
More than one breakpoint can be used. Breakpoints affect both **Cycle** and **Burst**.

### 6.15.3 Creating, Saving and Reusing Word Patterns

Click **Pattern** to display a set of options that allow you to save word patterns entered in the word generator to a file and load previously saved word patterns. This function can also be used to generate useful patterns or to clear the display.



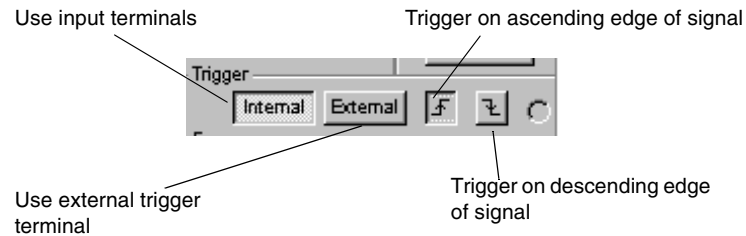
### 6.15.4 Addressing



Each word in the word generator's scroll window has an address, expressed as a 4-character hexadecimal number. When a word in the scroll box is changed, its address appears in the **Edit** box. As the word generator outputs words, each word's address appears in the **Current** box.

- To create a subset of the words to be output, enter first and last addresses in the **Initial** and **Final** fields.

## 6.15.5 Triggering



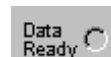
To use the word generator clock to trigger input from the word generator's input field to the circuit, click **Internal**. To use input through the external terminal instead, with each input cycle causing one word to be transmitted, click **External**.

Use the “ascending/descending edge” buttons to control whether the input signal triggers the word generator on its ascending or descending edge.

## 6.15.6 Frequency and Data Ready



Set the clock frequency of the word generator in Hz, kHz or MHz. Each word is placed on the output terminals for the duration of one clock cycle.



Enabling this option lets the circuit know that data from the word generator is ready.

## 6.16 Ammeter and Voltmeter

These instruments are accessed through the Indicators toolbar. For details, see the “Indicators Components” appendix.

## Chapter 7

# Simulation

7.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	7-1
7.2	Introduction to Simulation . . . . .	7-1
7.2.1	What Type of Simulation Should I Use? . . . . .	7-1
7.2.2	What Kind of Simulation Does Multisim Support? . . . . .	7-2
7.3	Using Multisim Simulation . . . . .	7-3
7.3.1	Start/Stop/Pause Simulation . . . . .	7-3
7.3.2	Interactive Simulation . . . . .	7-4
7.3.3	Circuit Consistency Check . . . . .	7-4
7.3.4	Miscellaneous SPICE Simulation Capabilities . . . . .	7-4
7.3.4.1	Component Tolerances . . . . .	7-4
7.3.4.2	Menu-Driven Simulation from Netlist Without Schematic . . . . .	7-5
7.4	Multisim SPICE Simulation: Technical Detail . . . . .	7-5
7.4.1	BSpice/XSpice Support . . . . .	7-5
7.4.2	Circuit Simulation Mechanism . . . . .	7-6
7.4.3	Four Stages of Circuit Simulation . . . . .	7-6
7.4.4	Equation Formulation . . . . .	7-7
7.4.5	Equation Solution . . . . .	7-7
7.4.6	Numerical Integration . . . . .	7-8
7.4.7	User Setting: Maximum Integration Order . . . . .	7-9
7.4.8	Convergence Assistance Algorithms . . . . .	7-9
7.4.8.1	Gmin Stepping . . . . .	7-9
7.4.8.2	Source Stepping . . . . .	7-10
7.5	RF Simulation . . . . .	7-10
7.6	VHDL Simulation . . . . .	7-10
7.7	Verilog Simulation . . . . .	7-11



# Chapter 7

## Simulation

### 7.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains the various types of simulation available in Multisim, the application for which each type is appropriate, how the types of simulation are used separately and together, and finally some of the underlying logic of Multisim simulation.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 7.2 Introduction to Simulation

Simulation is a mathematical way of emulating the behavior of a circuit. With simulation, you can determine a circuit's performance without physically constructing the circuit or using actual test instruments. Although Multisim makes simulation intuitively easy-to-use, you should be aware that the technology underlying the speed and accuracy of the simulation, as well as its ease of use, is extremely complex. For that reason, explaining how Multisim performs its simulation is beyond the scope of this manual.

#### 7.2.1 What Type of Simulation Should I Use?

The type of simulation that is appropriate for a circuit depends on the type of circuit and how you plan to physically implement it. For example, analog, digital and mixed analog/digital circuits to be built as a PCB are, in general, best simulated with a SPICE simulation. Digital circuits to be implemented in Programmable Logic Devices are usually simulated at the behavioral language level, most commonly with VHDL or Verilog. (See "HDLs and Programmable Logic" for details.) (See the "HDLs and Programmable Logic" chapter for details.)



For very complex digital devices (LSI or VLSI chips) such as microprocessors or memory, SPICE models are not usually practical, and in these cases, VHDL or Verilog is the preferred solution.

## 7.2.2 What Kind of Simulation Does Multisim Support?

Multisim offers multiple simulators, optimized to meet the needs of various types of circuit designs and implementation. These simulators include:

- SPICE (including specialized RF simulation)
- VHDL
- Verilog
- Co-simulation of all three together

When designing with programmable logic devices such as Field Programmable Gate Arrays (FPGAs) or Complex Programmable Logic Devices (CPLDs), VHDL or Verilog simulators have traditionally been used separately from each other and from SPICE. With Multisim, these simulators can be also used in combination. For example, to simulate a PCB designed using Multisim's schematic capture front end, Multisim uses SPICE for most of the simulation (that is, components will use SPICE models) and VHDL or Verilog for modeling the most complex digital parts (including programmable devices), all brought together in the co-simulation mode. Multisim's simulation engine checks which type of model (SPICE, VHDL, Verilog, etc.) is used, as indicated in the component database, and calls the appropriate simulator. It then controls the passing of information between these various simulators, all without requiring your intervention.

To simulate a system- or board-level design, these simulators are used together in a co-simulation environment. This means that, for example, a chip that is modeled using VHDL or Verilog (whether a CPLD/FPGA or a complex digital chip such as a microcontroller) can be a component in a PCB design. Multisim will simulate most of the board using SPICE, but automatically simulate the VHDL- or Verilog-modeled chip with VHDL or Verilog simulation. This co-simulation environment is described in this chapter. Communications between the multiple simulation engines in co-simulation mode are extremely complex, yet remain very easy for you to use. All the results are combined together, so they can be displayed on a common set of instruments and analyses, as if all the devices were modeled using the same technology.

## 7.3 Using Multisim Simulation

This chapter explains the simulation of PCB-level circuits. This, by default, is primarily the function of the Multisim SPICE simulator. In cases where the PCB circuit makes use of a

complex digital chip modeled with VHDL or Verilog (including a programmable logic device), Multisim automatically simulates that device with the correct VHDL or Verilog simulator. This process is invoked automatically during simulation of the PCB-level circuit, is performed simultaneously with the SPICE simulation, and is transparent to you.

To view the results of your simulation, you will need to use either a virtual instrument or be running an analysis (explained in the next chapter) in order to display the simulation output. This output will include the combined results of all Multisim simulation engines (SPICE, VHDL, Verilog), all brought together conveniently in common displays (instruments or Grapher).

**Note** For design entry, simulation and source code debugging of individual VHDL or Verilog modelled chips (on their own, not as part of a PCB circuit), likely as part of the programmable logic design flow, see “VHDL Simulation” and “Verilog Simulation” in this chapter for an introduction. For details, see “HDLs and Programmable Logic”, which explains designing with VHDL and Verilog.

### 7.3.1 Start/Stop/Pause Simulation



- To simulate a circuit, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Run/Stop** from the pop-up menu that appears. Multisim begins to simulate the circuit's behavior.

During simulation, messages about the simulation results and any problems with the simulation are written to the simulation error log/audit trail. The error log/audit trail appears automatically when you stop the simulation. If you want to keep an eye on the progress of the simulation, you can display the error log/audit trail during simulation. To display it, from the **View** menu choose **Show/Hide Error Log/Audit Trail**.



- To pause the simulation while it is running, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Pause/Resume** from the pop-up menu that appears. To resume the simulation from the same point as when you paused, click the Simulate button and choose **Pause/Resume** again.
- To stop a simulation, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Run/Stop** from the pop-up menu that appears. If you restart the simulation after stopping it, it will restart from the beginning (unlike **Pause/Resume**, which allows you to restart from the point you paused).
- Alternatively, you can run simulations by choosing **Run/Stop** and **Pause/Resume** from the **Simulation** menu using the same instructions as above.
- A final option available to you for starting and stopping simulations is to use the simulation switch. From the **View** menu, choose **Show Simulation Switch** to display a switch for “activating” your circuit. The switch can be used to start, stop, and pause the simulation.



## 7.3.2 Interactive Simulation

In a capacity unique to Multisim, simulation is interactive. You can simply change the values of “interactive” components (those whose behavior can be controlled through the keyboard) and see the simulation results instantly. Interactive components include such devices as the potentiometer, variable capacitor, variable inductor, and multiple switcher. For example, changing a 100 kohm resistor to the next smaller resistor may alter the results more than desired, but with Multisim, you could use a variable resistor, reducing its value gradually, all the time seeing the simulation result change, until you reach the correct result.

## 7.3.3 Circuit Consistency Check

When you simulate your circuit or perform an analysis, a circuit consistency check is performed to determine if the circuit is “legal” — for example, if a ground is present. Errors are written to the error log. This function speeds your simulation process, since it alerts you to items that may cause simulation errors and allows you to correct them before simulating. Keep in mind that the types of problems found by the circuit consistency check are those that will cause simulation errors. The circuit consistency check does not necessarily indicate a circuit’s viability.

## 7.3.4 Miscellaneous SPICE Simulation Capabilities

Multisim offers the following SPICE-specific simulation capabilities.

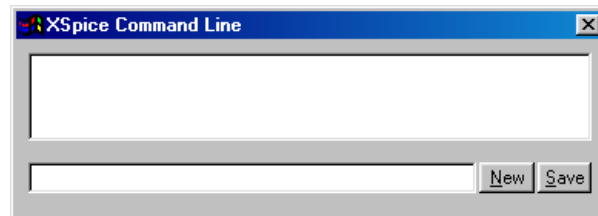
### 7.3.4.1 Component Tolerances

As explained on page 4-26, Multisim allows you to use “real world components” that introduce variances to simulate the performance of actual, physical components. Real world component settings are based on component tolerances, and therefore vary from their nominal values. This affects simulation results. For example, a 1 Kohm resistor with a 10% variance could vary 100 ohms either way.

### 7.3.4.2 Menu-Driven Simulation from Netlist Without Schematic

You can also run simulations from a command line.

- To open the command line interface, choose **View/Show Command Line**. The following window appears:



You can enter commands directly in this window. The most important commands are: SOURCE, PLOT, OP, SAVE, WRITE, TAN, SET and ANAC.

## 7.4 Multisim SPICE Simulation: Technical Detail

This section explains the basic technical methodology of circuit simulation in a SPICE-based simulator, including an outline of the stages of circuit simulation and an explanation of the methods of formulation and solution used in the circuit simulation. It is not necessary to comprehend this information to make use of Multisim's simulation, but you may find it interesting. In addition, if you would like some advanced technical hints for user controllable simulation settings, see page 7-9.

To fully understand the information in this section, you should be acquainted with the theory of electronic circuit simulation and the mathematics involved.

### 7.4.1 BSpice/XSpice Support

Multisim incorporates SPICE3F5 and XSpice at the core of its simulation engine, with customized enhancements designed by Electronic Workbench specifically for optimizing simulation performance with digital and mixed-mode simulation. Both SPICE3F5 and XSpice are industry-accepted, public-domain standards, unlike non-standard, proprietary formats such as PSPICE. SPICE3F5 is the most recent version of the SPICE (Simulation Program with Integrated Circuit Emphasis) core designed by the University of California at Berkeley. SPICE3F5 has evolved from the original program developed and released in 1972. It is commonly called BSpice. XSpice is a set of unique enhancements made to SPICE, under contract to the US Air Force, which included specialized modeling subsystems.

### 7.4.2 Circuit Simulation Mechanism

## Simulation

---

After you create a circuit schematic and begin simulation, the solution of the circuit and generation of the data you see on instruments such as the oscilloscope is the role of the simulator. More specifically, the simulator is the part of Multisim that calculates a numerical solution to a mathematical representation of the circuit you created.

For this calculation to occur, each component in a circuit is represented by a mathematical model. Mathematical models link the schematic in the circuit window with the mathematical representation for simulation. The accuracy of the component models is one of the key items that determines the degree to which simulation results match real-world circuit performance.

The mathematical representation of a circuit is a set of simultaneous, nonlinear differential equations. The main task of the simulator is to solve these equations numerically. A SPICE-based simulator transforms the nonlinear differential equations into a set of nonlinear algebraic equations. These equations are further linearized using the modified Newton-Raphson method. The resulting set of linear algebraic equations is efficiently solved using the sparse matrix processing LU factorization method.

### 7.4.3 Four Stages of Circuit Simulation

The simulator in Multisim, like other general-purpose simulators, has four main stages: input, setup, analysis and output (described below).

Stage	Description
Input stage	Simulator reads information about your circuit (after you have built a schematic, assigned values and chosen an analysis).
Setup stage	Simulator constructs and checks a set of data structures that contain a complete description of your circuit.
Analysis stage	The circuit analysis specified in the input stage is performed. This stage occupies most of the CPU execution time and is actually the core of circuit simulation. The analysis stage formulates and solves circuit equations for the specified analyses and provides all the data for direct output or post-processing.
Output stage	You view the simulation results. You can view results on instruments such as the oscilloscope, on graphs that appear when you run an analysis, or in the log file/audit trail.

### 7.4.4 Equation Formulation

In a circuit, each common point created by wires and connectors is called a node. The simulator calculates the voltage at each node. Each branch joining two nodes will have a separate current flowing through it.

To calculate a circuit solution, a circuit is represented internally as a system of equations, in the form:

$$A * X = B$$

where:

- A = modified nodal admittance matrix with dimension  $n \times n$
- X = vector of unknowns with dimension  $n$
- B = vector of constants, also with dimension  $n$
- n = number of unknowns.

The system of equations is formulated using a general circuit analysis method called the Modified Nodal Approach (MNA).

The unknowns ( $n$ ) include each node voltage (excluding ground), as well as the voltage source currents. B contains the voltage and current source constants, and the entries in the admittance matrix (A) are determined by Ohm's law and Kirchhoff's current and voltage laws.

The modified nodal admittance matrix is deemed sparse because it contains more zeros than non-zeros. Making use of a linked list, the solution of circuit equations can be performed by employing non-zero terms only. This method is called Sparse Matrix Technique. Generally, a sparse matrix approach requires less memory consumption and achieves faster simulation.

## 7.4.5 Equation Solution

Multisim solves circuit equations for linear and nonlinear circuits using a unified algorithm. The solution of a linear DC circuit is treated as a special case of general nonlinear DC circuits.

LU factorization is used to solve the system of sparse modified nodal matrix equations described previously (a set of simultaneous linear equations). This involves decomposing the matrix A into two triangular matrices (a lower triangular matrix, L, and an upper triangular matrix, U) and solving the two matrix equations using a forward substitution and a backward substitution.

Several efficient algorithms are used to avoid numerical difficulties due to the modified nodal formulation, to improve numerical calculation accuracy and to maximize the solution efficiency. These include:

- A partial pivot algorithm that reduces the round-off error incurred by the LU factorization

method.

- A reordering algorithm that improves the matrix condition.
- A reordering algorithm that minimizes nonzero terms for the equation solution.

A nonlinear circuit is solved by transforming it into a linearized equivalent circuit at each iteration and iteratively solving the linear circuit using the above-described method. Nonlinear circuits are transformed into linear ones by linearizing all nonlinear components in the circuit using the modified Newton-Raphson method.

A general nonlinear dynamic circuit is solved by transforming the circuit into a discretized equivalent nonlinear circuit at each time point and solving it using the method for a nonlinear DC circuit described above. A dynamic circuit is transformed into a DC circuit by discretizing all dynamic components in the circuit using an appropriate numerical integration rule.

## 7.4.6 Numerical Integration

To approximate the value of the integral of the differential equations used in the time-domain solution, Multisim optionally uses two numerical integration methods:

- the Trapezoidal (default) method
- the Gear (order from 1 to 6) method.

When the trapezoidal method is applied, the following approximation is used to discretize the differential equations:

$$V_{n+1} = V_n + \frac{h}{2} \left( \frac{dV_{n+1}}{dt} + \frac{dV_n}{dt} \right)$$

where

$V_{n+1}$	=	present unknown voltage value
$V_n$	=	previous time-point solution
$h$	=	time step length
$n$	=	time interval.

The first-order Gear integration is the popular Backward Euler method. The second-order variable step size Gear integration formula is:

$$\frac{dV_{n+1}}{dt} = \frac{2h_n + h_{n-1}}{h_n(h_n + h_{n-1})} V_{n+1} + \frac{h_n + h_{n-1}}{h_n - h_{n-1}} V_n + \frac{h_n}{h_{n-1}(h_n + h_{n-1})} V_{n-1}$$

where

$V_{n+1}$	=	present unknown solution
$V_n$	=	previous first time-point solution
$V_{n-1}$	=	previous second time-point solution
$h_n$	=	present time step
$h_{n-1}$	=	previous time step

## 7.4.7 User Setting: Maximum Integration Order

You can change the maximum order for integration method using the MAXORD analysis option (see “Analysis Options” on page 8-70). Using a higher order (3 through 6) Gear method theoretically leads to more accurate results, but slows down the simulation. Be aware that the maximum order for integration method is the maximum order that could be used, but that the simulator selects the most appropriate order based on the circuit.

Due to the nature of the nonlinear components, each time point may involve solving the admittance matrix several times before converging to a solution. The point solution is reached when the difference between consecutive voltage values is less than the tolerance calculated internally in terms of the absolute and relative tolerances specified in the analysis options.

## 7.4.8 Convergence Assistance Algorithms

Multisim uses two modified Newton-Raphson continuation algorithms, Gmin stepping and Source stepping, to help find the solution during a DC Operating Point analysis of general nonlinear circuits.

### 7.4.8.1 Gmin Stepping

Gmin stepping is a multi-step iterative algorithm. This algorithm simply adds a conductance, Gmin, to the diagonal elements of the modified nodal admittance matrix so that a solution will converge more quickly. The basic concept is to keep the matrix well-conditioned.

Initially, a large Gmin value is applied and an approximate solution is found quickly. The initial value is set by the Gmin value times  $10^{GminSteps}$  Gmin. The Gmin value is taken from the GMIN (Gmin Minimum Conductance) analysis option and the number of steps from GMIN-STEPPS (both options are described in more detail on page 8-70). The conductance is then reduced by a factor of ten and the circuit is solved again by setting the previous solution as the initial guess of the next iteration. When Gmin is reduced to zero, a final solution of the circuit is performed and the correct answer is obtained. This actually divides one single-step solution



of the simple nonlinear iteration into a multi-step solution, which uses the same algorithm but has many smaller steps.

### 7.4.8.2 Source Stepping

Source stepping is a convergence assistance algorithm. This algorithm solves a nonlinear circuit problem by setting a fraction of the source vector as a parameter variable to aid the convergence of the DC solution. Similar to the Gmin stepping method, Source stepping converts a single nonlinear circuit problem into a multi-step nonlinear circuit problem. Starting from a zero source vector, the source vector is slowly ramped up to its full DC value. At each source step, a simple nonlinear iteration solution is performed. The ramp rate is controlled by the SRCSTEPS (“Steps in source stepping algorithm”) analysis option (see “Analysis Options” on page 8-70).

## 7.5 RF Simulation



RF simulation is included with Multisim Power Professional and is available as part of the Professional Edition in an optional RF Design module. This section is simply a brief introduction to the simulation portion of the RF Design module.

You simulate an RF circuit the same way you simulate a board/system-level circuit in Multisim, as described on page 7-2. This is because Multisim’s RF Design module simulates RF circuits using an optimized SPICE engine (as opposed to VHDL, Verilog, etc.). There is no need to tell Multisim that your circuit is an RF circuit. RF simulation uses the SPICE simulation engine, but has been optimized to accurately simulate circuits designed to operate at higher frequencies, or at faster clock speeds (which generate RF characteristics). This optimization uses parts specifically designed and modeled to simulate accurately at these higher frequencies.

For detailed information on RF simulation and the RF Design module, see the “RF” chapter.

## 7.6 VHDL Simulation



Multisim employs a specialized VHDL simulator which simulates, not at the SPICE level using schematic design entry, but at the behavioral language level. VHDL is one of the two most widely used behavioral languages, commonly used for designing and modeling:

- programmable logic devices such as CPLDs and FPGAs
- complex digital chips, such as memory, CPUs, microcontrollers, and other devices which could not be reasonably modeled using SPICE.

Even if you are not using such devices today, you will likely find it increasingly necessary to do so in the future. Multisim offers the perfect environment for experienced and novice VHDL users alike.

- The Multisim VHDL simulator can be used in two ways:
1. As part of the board/system design process, when components are modeled in VHDL instead of SPICE. Multisim automatically invokes the VHDL simulator as needed (this is called co-simulation). In this method, you do not need extensive VHDL knowledge, but can simply take advantage of the broader library of simulatable models for complex digital chips.

If you have VHDL simulation, it is invoked automatically by Multisim when you begin simulation (as described on page 7-2) and a component that is part of your system- or board-level circuit is modeled in VHDL.

You need not do anything different to simulate in this co-simulation mode than you do to simulate a circuit with only SPICE-modeled parts. Just begin simulation as normal and Multisim takes care of the rest, recognizing when VHDL models exist and reacting accordingly.

2. As part of the programmable logic design process, in which you write, simulate and debug VHDL source code. This is a much more involved process and does require knowledge of the VHDL language on your part. Simulation of VHDL source code as part of the programmable logic design process is not explained in this chapter.

For details on this type of VHDL simulation, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.

## 7.7 Verilog Simulation



Multisim employs a specialized Verilog simulator which simulates, not at the SPICE level using schematic design entry, but at the behavioral language level. Verilog is, along with VHDL, one of the most widely used behavioral languages, commonly used for designing and modeling:

- programmable logic devices such as CPLDs and FPGAs
- complex digital chips, such as memory, CPUs, microcontrollers, and other devices which could not be reasonably modeled using SPICE.

Even if you are not using such devices today, you will likely find it increasingly necessary to do so in the future. Multisim offers the perfect environment for experienced and novice Verilog users alike.

The Multisim Verilog simulator can be used in two ways:

1. As part of the board/system design process, when components are modeled in Verilog instead of SPICE. Multisim automatically invokes the Verilog simulator as needed (this is

## Simulation

---

called co-simulation). In this method, you do not need extensive Verilog knowledge, but can simply take advantage of the broader library of simulatable models for complex digital chips.

If you have Verilog simulation, it is invoked automatically by Multisim when you begin simulation (as described on page 7-2) and a component that is part of your system- or board-level circuit is modeled in Verilog.

For details on Verilog simulation, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter. You need not do anything different to simulate in this co-simulation mode than you do to simulate a circuit with only SPICE-modeled parts. Just begin simulation as normal and Multisim takes care of the rest, recognizing when Verilog models exist and reacting accordingly.

2. As part of the programmable logic design process, in which you write, simulate and debug Verilog source code.

For details on this type of Verilog simulation, see the “HDLs and Programmable Logic” chapter.

## Chapter 8

# Analyses

8.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	8-1
8.2	Introduction to Multisim Analyses . . . . .	8-1
8.3	Working with Analyses . . . . .	8-2
8.3.1	General Instructions . . . . .	8-2
8.3.2	The Analysis Parameters Tab . . . . .	8-3
8.3.3	The Output Variables Tab . . . . .	8-3
8.3.3.1	Choosing How Output Variables are to be Handled . . . . .	8-4
8.3.3.2	Filtering the Variable Lists . . . . .	8-4
8.3.3.3	Adding Parameters to the Variable List . . . . .	8-5
8.3.4	The Miscellaneous Options Tab . . . . .	8-6
8.3.5	The Summary Tab . . . . .	8-8
8.3.6	Incomplete Analyses . . . . .	8-9
8.4	DC Operating Point Analysis . . . . .	8-9
8.4.1	About the DC Operating Point Analysis . . . . .	8-9
8.4.2	Setting DC Operating Point Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-10
8.4.3	Troubleshooting DC Operating Point Analysis Failures . . . . .	8-10
8.5	AC Analysis . . . . .	8-11
8.5.1	About the AC Analysis . . . . .	8-11
8.5.2	Setting AC Analysis Frequency Parameters . . . . .	8-11
8.6	Transient Analysis . . . . .	8-13
8.6.1	About the Transient Analysis . . . . .	8-13
8.6.2	Setting Transient Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-14
8.6.3	Troubleshooting Transient Analysis Failures . . . . .	8-15
8.7	Noise Analysis . . . . .	8-16
8.7.1	About the Noise Analysis . . . . .	8-16
8.7.2	Noise Analysis Example . . . . .	8-17
8.7.3	Setting Noise Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-18
8.8	Distortion Analysis . . . . .	8-20

8.8.1	About the Distortion Analysis . . . . .	8-20
8.8.2	Setting Distortion Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-21
8.9	DC Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-23
8.9.1	About the DC Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-23
8.9.2	Setting DC Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-23
8.10	DC and AC Sensitivity Analyses . . . . .	8-25
8.10.1	About the Sensitivity Analyses . . . . .	8-25
8.10.2	Sensitivity Analyses Example . . . . .	8-25
8.10.3	Setting Sensitivity Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-27
8.11	Parameter Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-28
8.11.1	About the Parameter Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-28
8.11.2	Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-29
8.12	Temperature Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-31
8.12.1	About the Temperature Sweep Analysis . . . . .	8-31
8.12.2	Setting Temperature Sweep Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-32
8.13	Transfer Function Analysis . . . . .	8-33
8.13.1	About the Transfer Function Analysis . . . . .	8-33
8.13.2	Setting Transfer Function Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-35
8.14	Worst Case Analysis . . . . .	8-36
8.14.1	About the Worst Case Analysis . . . . .	8-36
8.14.2	Setting Worst Case Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-39
8.15	Pole Zero Analysis . . . . .	8-40
8.15.1	About the Pole Zero Analysis . . . . .	8-40
8.15.1.1	About Circuit Stability . . . . .	8-41
8.15.1.2	About the Bode Phase Plot . . . . .	8-42
8.15.2	Setting Pole Zero Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-43
8.16	Monte Carlo Analysis . . . . .	8-44
8.16.1	About the Monte Carlo Analysis . . . . .	8-44
8.16.2	Setting Monte Carlo Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-47
8.17	Fourier Analysis . . . . .	8-47
8.17.1	About the Fourier Analysis . . . . .	8-47
8.17.2	Setting Fourier Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-49
8.18	Trace Width Analysis . . . . .	8-51
8.18.1	About Trace Width Analysis . . . . .	8-51
8.18.2	Setting Trace Width Analysis Parameters . . . . .	8-54
8.19	RF Analyses . . . . .	8-55

8.20	Nested Sweep Analyses . . . . .	8-55
8.21	Batched Analyses. . . . .	8-57
8.22	User-Defined Analyses. . . . .	8-59
8.23	Noise Figure Analysis. . . . .	8-60
8.24	Viewing the Analysis Results: Error Log/Audit Trail . . . . .	8-60
8.25	Viewing the Analysis Results—Grapher. . . . .	8-61
8.26	Working with Pages . . . . .	8-63
8.27	Working with Graphs . . . . .	8-64
	8.27.1 Grids and Legends. . . . .	8-64
	8.27.2 Cursors. . . . .	8-65
	8.27.3 Zoom and Restore . . . . .	8-66
	8.27.4 Title . . . . .	8-68
	8.27.5 Axes . . . . .	8-68
	8.27.6 Traces . . . . .	8-69
8.28	Viewing Charts . . . . .	8-70
8.29	Cut, Copy and Paste . . . . .	8-71
8.30	Print and Print Preview. . . . .	8-72
8.31	Analysis Options. . . . .	8-73



# Chapter 8

## Analyses

### 8.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains how to use the various analyses included in Multisim. It explains how to work with analyses in general, the specific settings and options for each individual analysis, and how to view and manipulate analyses results.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 8.2 Introduction to Multisim Analyses

Multisim offers you many analyses, all of which utilize simulation to generate the data for the analysis you want to perform. These analyses can range from quite basic to extremely sophisticated, and can often require one analysis to be performed (automatically) as part of another.

For each analysis, you will need to decide upon some settings that will tell Multisim what you want the analysis to do.

In addition to the analyses provided by Multisim, you can also create user-defined analyses based on SPICE commands you enter.

When you activate an analysis, the results are displayed on a plot in Multisim's Grapher (unless you specify otherwise) and saved for use in the Postprocessor. Some results are also written to an audit trail, which you can view.

### 8.3 Working with Analyses

You need to know how to work with analyses in general as well as the specific options for each individual analysis. For each analysis, you can set:



- the analysis parameters (all have default values)
- how output variables are to be handled (required)
- a title for the analysis (optional)
- custom values for analysis options (optional).

The next section describes the general procedures for performing analyses, and the following sections describe the details of each particular analysis.

**Note** Guidelines for each analysis, including Standard and Advanced use, are included in the on-line help. Click the **Help** button or press F1 on your keyboard.

### 8.3.1 General Instructions

- To perform an analysis:



1. Click the Analyses button on the Design Bar, or choose **Simulate/Analyses**. A menu appears with the list of analyses available.
2. Select the desired analyses. Depending on the analysis selected, the screen that appears will include some or all of the following tabs:
  - the Analysis Parameters tab, where you set the parameters for this analysis
  - the Output Variables tab, where you specify what is to be done with specific analysis output (not present in all analyses)
  - the Miscellaneous Options tab, where you choose a title for the plot produced by the analysis, and set any custom values for analysis options
  - the Summary tab, where you see a consolidated view of all the settings for the analysis.

The options and settings available under these tabs are described in the following sections of this chapter.

- To save the settings as the defaults for future use, click **Accept** on the analysis screen.
- To run the simulation with the current settings, click **Simulate** on the analysis screen.
- To run several analyses in batch, see “Batched Analyses” on page 8-55.

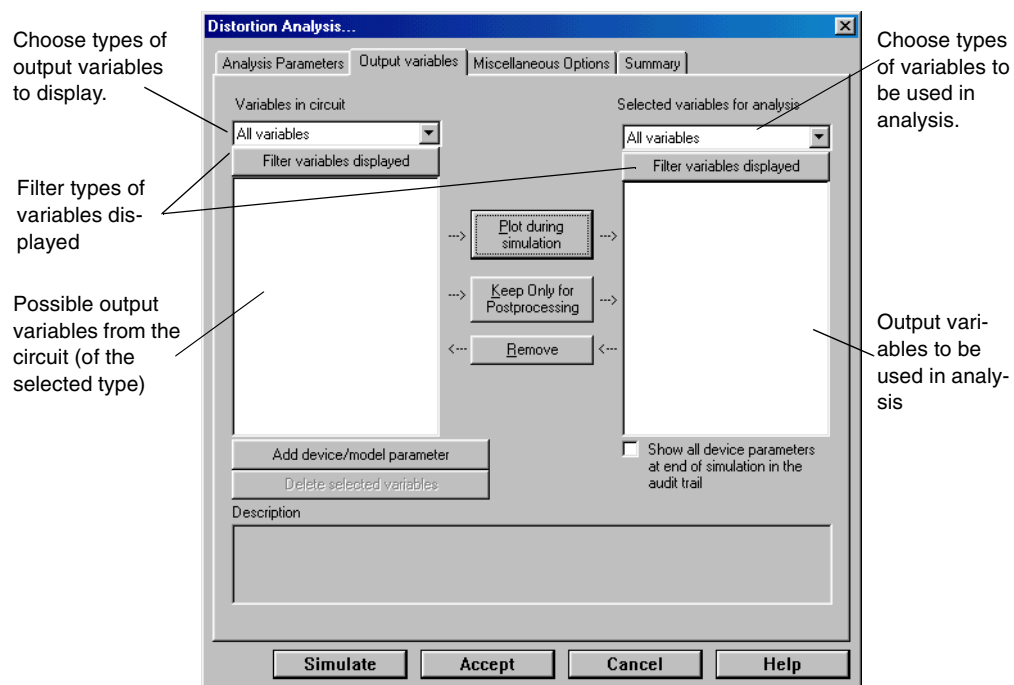
**Tip** To stop an analysis, press ESC.

### 8.3.2 The Analysis Parameters Tab

The options available on the analysis parameters tab are different for each analysis, and so are described in different subsections of this chapter, one per analysis. Each analysis description includes guidelines for both normal and advanced use of the analysis.

Some lists of items are accompanied by a **Filter variables displayed** function. This lets you filter the items shown in that list, choosing whether or not to include internal nodes, submodules, open pins and device parameters.

### 8.3.3 The Output Variables Tab



This tab displays, on the left, all the possible output variables for the current circuit. You choose the variables you want to use in the analysis.

You can choose to display only certain types of output variables (voltage only, current only, and so on) or whether or not to display internal nodes, submodules, open pins and device parameters.

You can also add parameters from a specific device or model to the list of variables

### 8.3.3.1 Choosing How Output Variables are to be Handled

- To determine how the output variables are to be handled for a particular analysis, select a variable from the list on the left and:
  - to include the output variable in the plot, click **Plot During Simulation**
  - to save the output variable for post processing only, click **Keep Only for Postprocessing**.
- To remove an item from the right hand list, select it and click **Remove**.

Using the Output Variables tab, you can also filter the variables list, filter the variables displayed, as well as add a wide range of device or model parameters.

By default, all variables are initially included in the **Variables in Circuit** list.

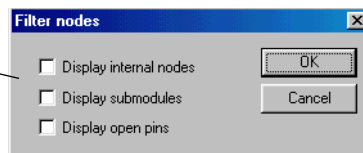
### 8.3.3.2 Filtering the Variable Lists

- To filter the variables list according to general variable type:
  1. Click the **Variables in Circuit** drop-down list.
  2. Click the general variable type (such as voltages, currents, device/model parameters) to include in the list.

You can filter the variables displayed to include internal nodes (such as nodes inside a BJT model or inside a SPICE subcircuits), open pins, as well as output variables from any sub-modules contained in the circuit.

- To filter the variables displayed:
  1. Click the **Filter Variables Displayed** button. The Filter Nodes screen appears:

Enable the desired settings.



2. Enable one or more settings.
3. Click **OK**.

### 8.3.3.3 Adding Parameters to the Variable List

- To add a parameter from a specific device or model to the list of variables:

1. Click **Add Device/Model Parameter**. The Add Device/Model parameter screen appears, allowing you to specify which parameter is to be added. For example:

Choose whether to add either a device or model parameter.

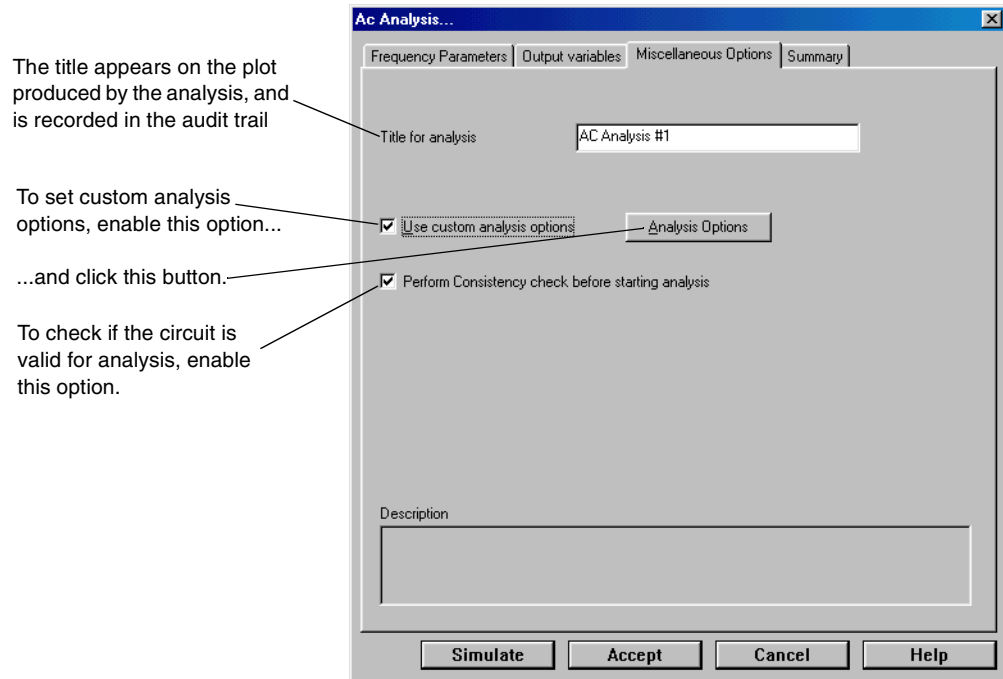
2. From the **Parameter Type** list, select whether you want to add a device parameter or model parameter. These let you set how various internal parameters of a component or model change during the analysis. You will find a complete list of model and component (instance) parameters in the *SPICE User's Manual* (Appendix B). Parameters are labelled either input-output or output only.
3. From the **Device Type** drop-down list, select a device type from the devices in the circuit.
4. From the **Name** drop-down list, select a specific instance of the device type.
5. From the **Parameter** drop-down list, select a parameter from all available device/model parameters. A brief description of the selected parameter appears in the **Description** list.
6. Click **OK** to add the selected parameter to the **Variables in Circuit** list. This variable can now be included in the analysis.
7. To save the addition, click **Save**. To cancel the addition, click **Cancel**. To save it, click **Save**.

The parameter appears in the left-hand list under the Output Variables tab on the analysis screen, which is automatically set to show only device/model parameters.

- To delete a parameter added in this way, select it and click **Delete selected variables**.
- To show the values of all the components and models in the circuit at the end of the simulation, enable **Show all output parameters at end of simulation**.

### 8.3.4 The Miscellaneous Options Tab

The options on this tab provide you with additional flexibility, but do not require that you set them. Use this tab to set a title for the analysis results, to check if the circuit is valid for analysis and to set custom analysis options.



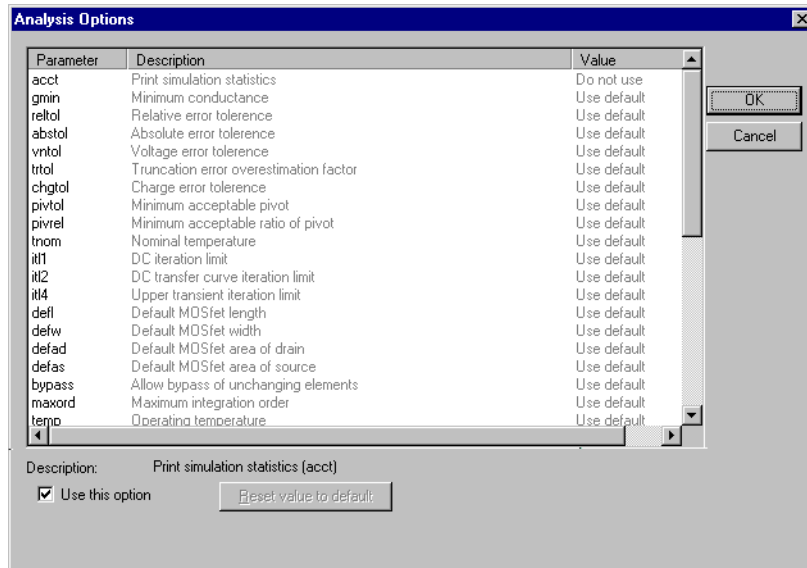
- To change the analysis title from its default, enter text in the **Title for analysis** field.
- To check if the circuit is a valid circuit for analysis, enable **Perform consistency check before starting analysis**. This option automatically identifies inconsistencies such as open capacitors, empty circuit files and ungrounded circuits.

Normally analyses run without further intervention. If an analysis does not perform as necessary, you may need to set custom analysis options.

- To set custom analysis options:
  1. Enable **Use custom analysis options**.

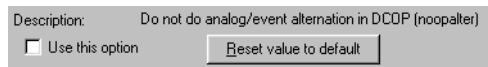
**Note** You should have a general knowledge of the SPICE simulation engine before altering the default settings under this option.

2. Click **Analysis Options**. A list of the possible analysis options appears.



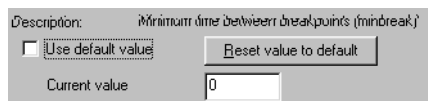
3. Select the analysis options whose value you want to change. The bottom of the screen changes to reflect the choices available to you.

For those analysis options that you simply turn on or off, the bottom of the screen looks like this:



To control whether or not the option takes effect, enable or disable the **Use this option** option. To reset the default value for the option, click **Reset value to default**.

For those analysis options for which you set values, the bottom of the screen looks like this:



To use the default value, enable **Use default value**. To set a specific value, disable **Use default value** and type a value in the **Value** field. To re-set the value to its default setting, click **Reset value to default**.

4. To save your changes, click **OK**. To close without saving, click **Cancel**.

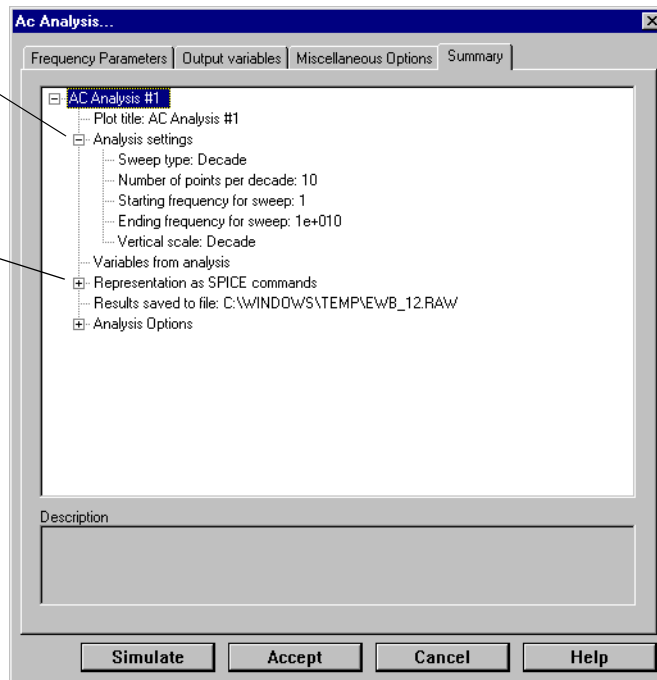
For a complete list of the available analysis options, see “Analysis Options” on page 8-70.

### 8.3.5 The Summary Tab

This tab offers a quick overview of all the various settings for your analysis. It does not require you to set any options, but you can use it to view summary information about your analysis.

Click here to “roll up”  
and conceal underlying  
information

Click here to reveal  
underlying information



You navigate through this display as you do with Windows Explorer. The “+” beside an item indicates that it has information underneath it, which can be revealed by clicking the “+”. The “-” beside an item indicates that all its information is being revealed. That information can be hidden by clicking the “-”.

This window also shows you the SPICE representation of your analysis options, as well as the name of the file to which the analysis results are being saved ( . raw file). This file is used for postprocessing.

### 8.3.6 Incomplete Analyses

For a variety of reasons, the simulator in Multisim is occasionally unable to complete a simulation or an analysis.

Multisim uses the modified Newton-Raphson method to solve nonlinear circuits. When a circuit includes nonlinear components, multiple iterations of a set of linear equations are used to account for the non-linearities. The simulator makes an initial guess at the node voltages, then calculates the branch currents based on the conductances in the circuit. The branch currents are then used to recalculate the node voltages and the cycle is repeated. This cycle continues until all of the node voltages and branch currents fall within user-defined tolerances, that is, convergence occurs. You can specify tolerances and iteration limits for the analysis through the analysis options described on page 8-70.

If the voltages or currents do not converge within a specified number of iterations, an error message is produced and the simulation is aborted (typical messages include “Singular matrix,” “Gmin stepping failed,” “Source stepping failed” and “Iteration limit reached”).

## 8.4 DC Operating Point Analysis

### 8.4.1 About the DC Operating Point Analysis

The DC operating point analysis determines the DC operating point of a circuit. For DC analysis, AC sources are zeroed out and steady state is assumed, that is, capacitors are open circuits and inductors are short circuits. The results of DC analysis are usually intermediate values for further analysis. For example, the DC operating point obtained from DC analysis determines approximate linearized, small-signal models for any nonlinear components such as diodes and transistors for the AC frequency analysis.

**Assumptions** Digital components are treated as large resistances to ground. Results include node DC voltages and branch currents.

**Note** You can specify whether or not specific node trace widths are to be used for this type of analysis. For details, see page 3-20.

### 8.4.2 Setting DC Operating Point Analysis Parameters

There are no analysis parameters to be set for this analysis.



### 8.4.3 Troubleshooting DC Operating Point Analysis Failures

DC operating point analysis may fail to converge for various reasons. The initial guesses for the node voltages may be too far off, the circuit may be unstable or bi-stable (there may be more than one solution to the equations), there may be discontinuities in the models or the circuit may contain unrealistic impedances.

**Note** All error messages generated during an analysis appear in the error log/audit trail.

Use the following techniques to solve many convergence problems and analysis failures. Before you proceed, identify which analysis is causing the problem (keep in mind that DC operating point analysis is often performed as the first step of other analyses). In each of the following solutions, begin with step 1, then continue performing the subsequent steps, in order, until the problem is solved.

1. Check the circuit topology and connectivity. Make sure that:
  - The circuit is correctly wired, and includes no dangling nodes or stray parts.
  - You haven't confused zeros with the letter O.
  - Your circuit has a ground node and every node in the circuit has a DC path to ground. Make sure no sections of your circuit are completely isolated from ground by transformers, capacitors, etc.
  - Capacitors and voltage sources are not in parallel.
  - Inductors and current sources are not in series.
  - All devices and sources are set to their proper values.
  - All dependent source gains are correct.
  - Your models/subcircuits have been correctly entered.
2. Increase operating point analysis iteration limit to 200-300. This allows the analysis to go through more iterations before giving up.
3. Reduce the RSHUNT value by a factor of 100.
4. Increase the Gmin minimum conductance by a factor of 10.
5. Enable the option **Use zero initial conditions**.

## 8.5 AC Analysis

### 8.5.1 About the AC Analysis

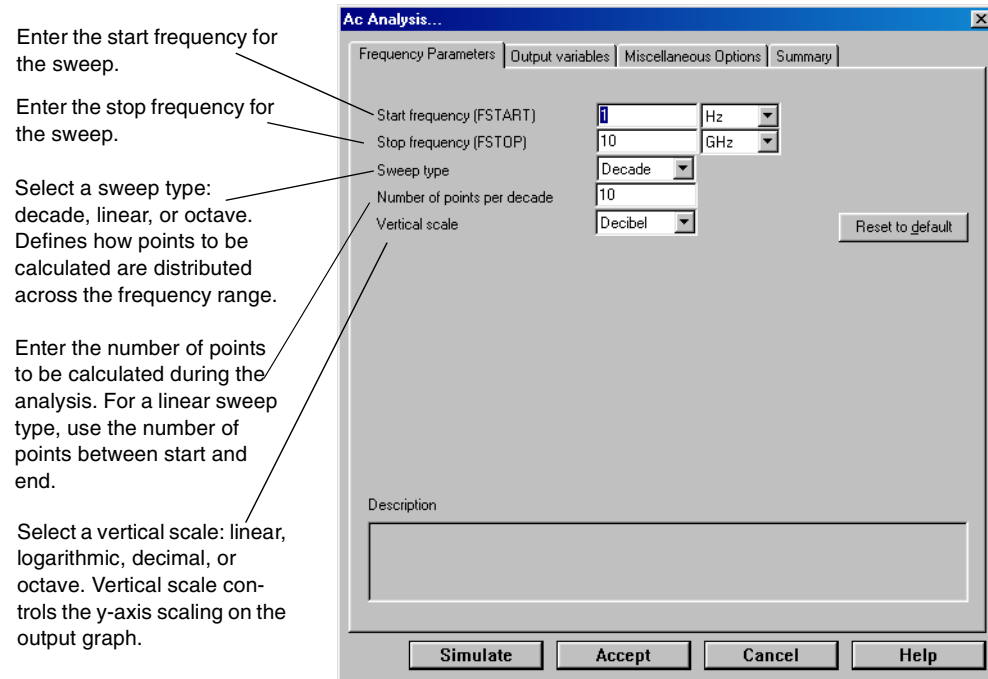
In AC analysis, the DC operating point is first calculated to obtain linear, small-signal models for all nonlinear components. Then a complex matrix (containing both real and imaginary components) is created. To construct a matrix, DC sources are given zero values. AC sources, capacitors, and inductors are represented by their AC models. Nonlinear components are represented by linear AC small-signal models, derived from the DC operating point solution. All input sources are considered to be sinusoidal. The frequency of the sources is ignored. If the function generator is set to a square or triangular waveform, it will automatically switch internally to a sinusoidal waveform for analysis. AC analysis then calculates the AC circuit response as a function of frequency.

**Assumptions** Analog circuit, small-signal. Digital components are treated as large resistances to ground.

### 8.5.2 Setting AC Analysis Frequency Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on the nodes for analysis. You can specify magnitude and phase of a source for AC frequency analysis through the placed component's parameters, as described on "Controlling How a Placed Component is Used in Analyses" on page 3-18.

AC Analysis Frequency parameters are set in the following screen:



**Note** To reset all parameters to their default values, click **Reset to default**.

The result of the AC frequency analysis is displayed in two parts: gain versus frequency and phase versus frequency.

If you have the Bode plotter connected to your circuit and activate the circuit, a similar analysis is performed.

## Setting AC Analysis Frequency Parameters for Normal Use

In most cases, you only need to:

- set a **Start Frequency**
- set a **Stop Frequency**

## Setting AC Analysis Frequency Parameters for Advanced Use

In addition to the frequency range, you can also:

- choose a desired sweep type (decade, linear, or octave) from the **Sweep type** drop-down list

- enter the number of points to be calculated in the **Number of points per decade** field
- choose the vertical scale (linear, logarithmic, decimal or octave) from the **Vertical scale** drop-down list.

**Note** The greater the number of points calculated, the more accurate the results will be; however, the simulation speed will be adversely affected.

## 8.6 Transient Analysis

### 8.6.1 About the Transient Analysis

In transient analysis, also called time-domain transient analysis, Multisim computes the circuit's response as a function of time. Each input cycle is divided into intervals, and a DC analysis is performed for each time point in the cycle. The solution for the voltage waveform at a node is determined by the value of that voltage at each time point over one complete cycle.

DC sources have constant values; AC sources have time-dependent values. Capacitors and inductors are represented by energy storage models. Numerical integration is used to calculate the quantity of energy transfer over an interval of time.

if initial conditions are set to be...	then the result is...
automatically determined	Multisim tries to start the simulation using the DC operating point as the initial condition. If the simulation fails, it uses user-defined initial conditions.
based on the DC operating point	Multisim first calculates the DC operating point of the circuit, then uses that result as the initial conditions of the transient analysis
zero	the transient analysis starts from zero initial conditions
user-defined	the analysis starts from initial conditions as set in the transient analysis screen.

**Assumptions** None.

### 8.6.2 Setting Transient Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on the nodes for analysis.

Transient Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:

Set initial conditions: Zero, User-Defined, Calculate DC Operating Point, or Automatically Determine Initial Conditions.

Start time of transient analysis must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than End time.

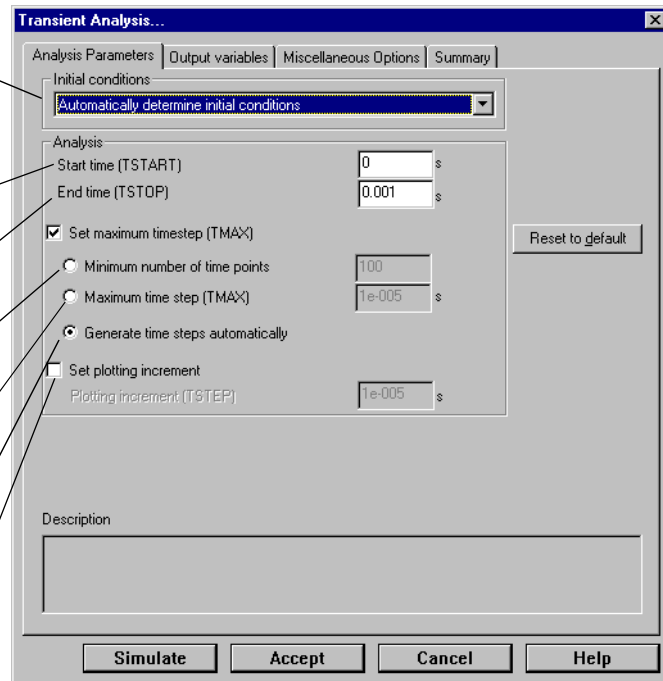
End time of transient analysis must be greater than Start time.

Click to enter minimum number of time points (number of points between start and stop times).

Click to enter the maximum time step the simulation can handle.

Click to generate time steps automatically.

Click to set a time interval for simulation output and graphing.



The result of the transient analysis is a calculation of voltage versus time.

If you have the oscilloscope connected to your circuit and activate the circuit, a similar analysis is performed.

## Setting Transient Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

The default settings are appropriate for normal use, providing the transient response of the selected output variables starting at time 0 seconds and stopping after 1 ms. You can, if you wish:

- change the start time by entering a value greater than or equal to 0 and less than the End time in the **Start time** field
- change the end time by entering a value greater than the Start time in the **End time** field.

## Setting Transient Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

For advanced use, you can:

- define the initial conditions at time 0 seconds by choosing an initial condition (Zero, User-Defined, Calculate DC Operating Point, or Automatically Determine Initial Conditions)

from the **Initial conditions** list

You can have the initial conditions set to zero, or you can use the steady state values of the circuit under analysis. During and/or after circuit construction, you can specify node voltages. These forced values can also be used as initial conditions for the analysis.

**Note** If you select Automatically determine initial conditions, Multisim will attempt to use steady state conditions to run the analysis. If this is unsuccessful, Multisim will set initial conditions to zero. If simulation is still not possible, Multisim will use the specified user-defined conditions.

- specify the number of points to be calculated
- define the maximum time step to be taken by the simulation engine by enabling **Maximum timestep (TMAX)** and entering the desired time step or by enabling **Minimum number of time points** and entering the desired number of points to be calculated

**Note** The value of TMAX is determined by dividing the interval between the specified analysis start and end times by the minimum number of time points specified.

- specify the plotting increment to be used by enabling **Set plotting increment** and entering a value less than the specified maximum time step value in the **Plotting increment (TSTEP)** field. If possible, the size of the time steps taken during the simulation will begin with the plotting increment and will continue to increase to the value specified by the maximum time step.

### 8.6.3 Troubleshooting Transient Analysis Failures

If transient analysis is being performed (time is being stepped) and the simulator cannot converge on a solution using the initial time step, the time step is automatically reduced, and the cycle is repeated. If the time step is reduced too far, an error message (“Timestep too small”) is generated and the simulation is aborted. If this occurs, try one or more of the following:

1. Check the circuit topology and connectivity. See step 1 of “Troubleshooting DC Operating Point Analysis Failures” on page 8-10.
2. Set relative error tolerance to 0.01. By increasing the tolerance from 0.001 (0.1% accuracy), fewer iterations are required to converge on a solution and the simulation finishes much more quickly.
3. Increase transient time point iterations to 100. This allows the transient analysis to go through more iterations for each time step before giving up.
4. Reduce the absolute current tolerance, if current levels allow. Your particular circuit may not require resolutions down to 1  $\mu\text{V}$  or 1 pA. You should allow at least an order of magnitude below the lowest expected voltage or current levels of your circuit.

5. Realistically model your circuit. Add realistic parasitics, especially junction capacitances. Use RC snubbers around diodes. Replace device models with subcircuits, especially for RF and power devices.
6. If you have a controlled one-shot source in your circuit, increase its rise and fall times.
7. Change the integration method to Gear. Gear integration requires longer simulation time, but is generally more stable than the trapezoid method.

## 8.7 Noise Analysis

### 8.7.1 About the Noise Analysis

Noise is any undesired voltage or current appearing in the output. One common result of noise is “snowy” television reception caused by fluctuations across all frequencies of the television signal.

Multisim can model three different kinds of noise:

1. **Thermal noise** (also known as *Johnson*, or *white* noise) is temperature dependent and caused by the thermal interaction between free electrons and vibrating ions in a conductor. Its frequency content is spread equally throughout the spectrum.

The power of this generated noise is given by Johnson’s formula:

$$P = k \times T \times BW$$

where

k = Boltzmann’s constant ( $1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K}$ )

T = resistor temperature in Kelvin ( $T = 273 + \text{temperature in Celsius}$ )

BW = frequency bandwidth of the system being considered

The thermal voltage could be represented by a mean-square voltage source in series with the resistor

$$e^2 = 4kTR \times BW$$

or the resistor mean-square current generator

$$i^2 = 4kTBW/R.$$

2. **Shot noise** is caused by the discrete-particle nature of the current carriers in all forms of semiconductors. It is the major cause of transistor noise. The equation for shot noise in a diode is:

$$i = (2q \times I_{dc} \times BW)^{1/2}$$

where

- $i$  = shot noise (RMS amperes)
- $q$  = electron charge ( $1.6 \times 10^{-19}$  Coulomb)
- $I_{dc}$  = DC current (A)
- $BW$  = bandwidth (Hz)

For all other devices, such as transistors, no valid formula is available. See the manufacturer's data sheet. Shot noise and thermal noise are additive.

3. **Flicker noise** (also known as *excess* noise, *pink* noise, or *1/f* noise) is present in BJTs and FETs and occurs at frequencies below 1kHz. It is inversely proportional to frequency and directly proportional to temperature and DC current levels.

**Assumptions** Analog small-signal circuit. Non-conforming parts are ignored. Noise models for SPICE components are used.

## 8.7.2 Noise Analysis Example

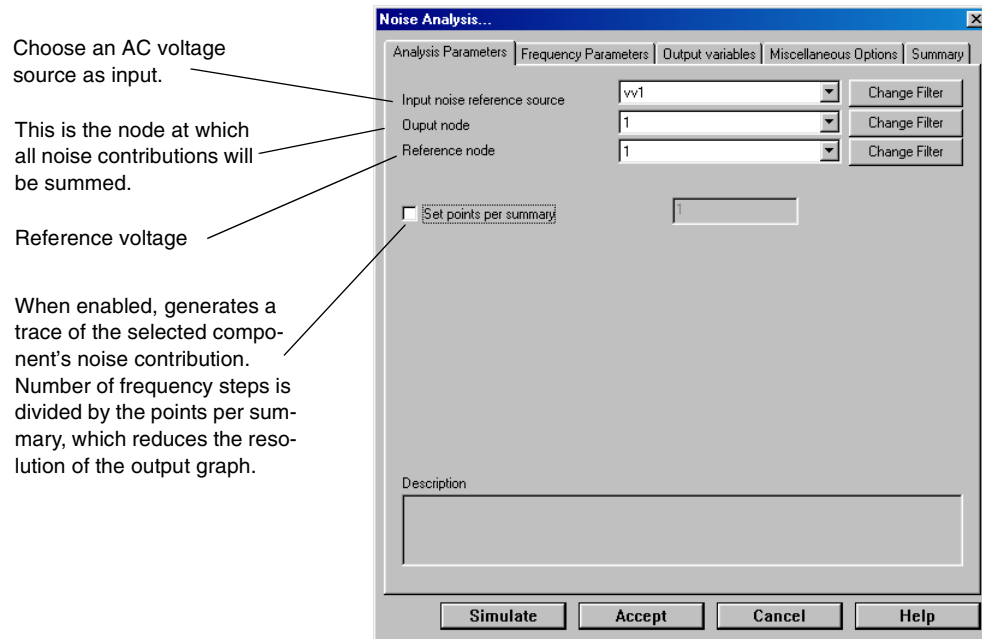
Noise analysis is used frequently when diagnosing problems in communications systems. It calculates the noise contribution from each resistor and semiconductor at the specified output node. Each noise source is assumed not to be statistically correlated with the other noise sources in the circuit and their values are calculated independently. The *total output noise* at the output node is the Root Mean Square (RMS) sum of the individual noise contributions. The result is then divided by the gain between the input source (V0 in the sample circuit below) and the output source (node 13) to give the *equivalent input noise*. Equivalent input noise is the amount of noise that you would need to inject at the input source of a noiseless circuit to give an output noise level matching the noisy circuit. The total output noise voltage can be referenced to ground or to another node on the circuit. In this case, the total output noise is taken across these two nodes.

## 8.7.3 Setting Noise Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on an input noise reference source, output node and reference node.



Noise Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:



## Setting Noise Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

Noise analysis performs an AC analysis to determine the noise. To copy the settings from the current AC analysis to this analysis, click **Reset to main AC values**.

Noise analysis produces an output noise spectrum, an input noise spectrum and, optionally, a component contribution spectrum. When the analysis is finished, its results are displayed as a graph of voltage squared,  $V^2$ , versus frequency.

The thick trace identifies the total output noise at node 13, while the thin trace identifies the equivalent input noise at the AC source (V0). For this example, the output noise power is constant for all frequencies within the frequency sweep specified in the window.

On the analysis parameters tab, specify:

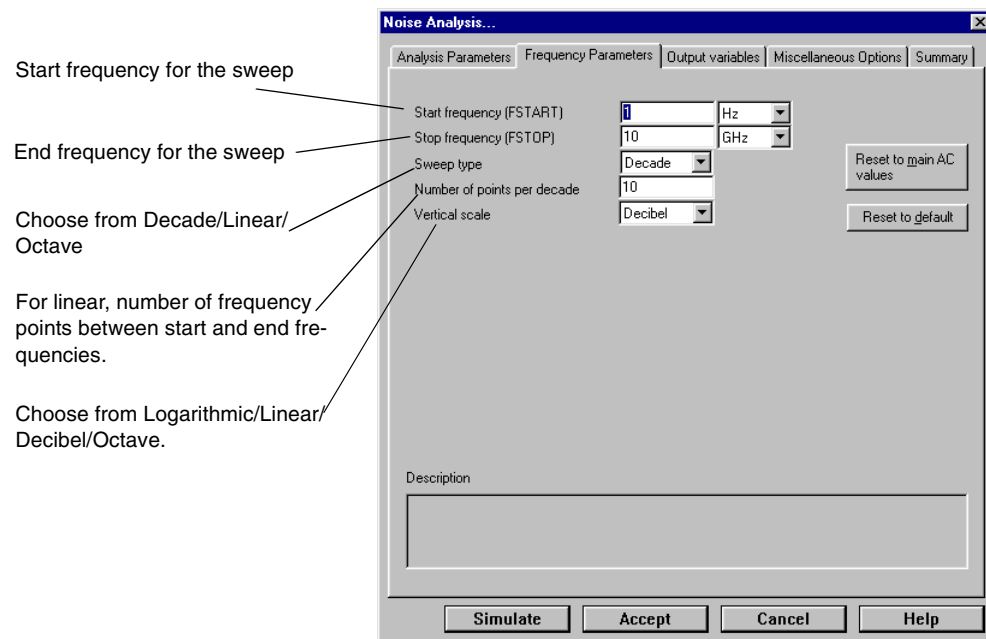
- input noise reference source
- output node
- reference node.

## Setting Noise Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

On the analysis parameters tab you can specify how often the noise contributions of each noise generating device are produced by enabling **Set points per summary** and entering a value.

## Setting Noise Analysis Frequency Parameters

Noise Analysis Frequency Parameters are set in the following screen:



## Setting Noise Analysis Frequency Parameters for Normal Use

The default settings on the Frequency Parameters tab are appropriate for most cases. You just need to define a frequency range by typing a value in the **Start Frequency** field and in the **Stop Frequency** field.

Once the required variables are selected and the frequency range has been defined, you can then run the analysis.

## Setting Noise Analysis Frequency Parameters for Advanced Use

On the Frequency Parameters tab you can also set:

- sweep type, by choosing the desired sweep type (decade, linear, or octave) from the **Sweep type** drop-down list. The sweep type defines how the points to be calculated are

distributed across the frequency range.

- the number of points to be calculated during the analysis, by entering a value in the **Number of points per decade** field.

**Note** The greater the number of points calculated, the more accurate the results will be, however, the simulation speed will be adversely affected.

- the format of the analysis results by choosing the desired scale (linear, logarithmic, decimal, or octave) from the **Vertical scale** drop-down list.

**Note** Click **Reset to Default** to reset all parameters on the Frequency Parameters tab to their default values.

## 8.8 Distortion Analysis

### 8.8.1 About the Distortion Analysis

Signal distortions are usually the result of gain nonlinearity or phase nonuniformity in a circuit. Nonlinear gain causes *harmonic distortion*, while nonuniform phase causes *intermodulation distortion*.

Distortion analysis is useful for investigating small amounts of distortion that are normally unresolvable in transient analysis. Multisim simulates harmonic distortion and intermodulation distortion products for analog small-signal circuits. If the circuit has one AC frequency, the analysis determines the complex values of the second and third harmonics at every point in the circuit. If the circuit has two AC frequencies, the analysis finds the complex values of the circuit variables at three different frequencies: at the sum of the frequencies, at the difference of the frequencies, and at the difference between the lowest and highest frequencies of the second harmonic.

The analysis carries out a small-signal distortion analysis of the circuit. A multi-dimensional Volterra analysis is carried out using a multi-dimensional Taylor series to represent the nonlinearities at the operating point. The series expansion uses terms of up to the third order.

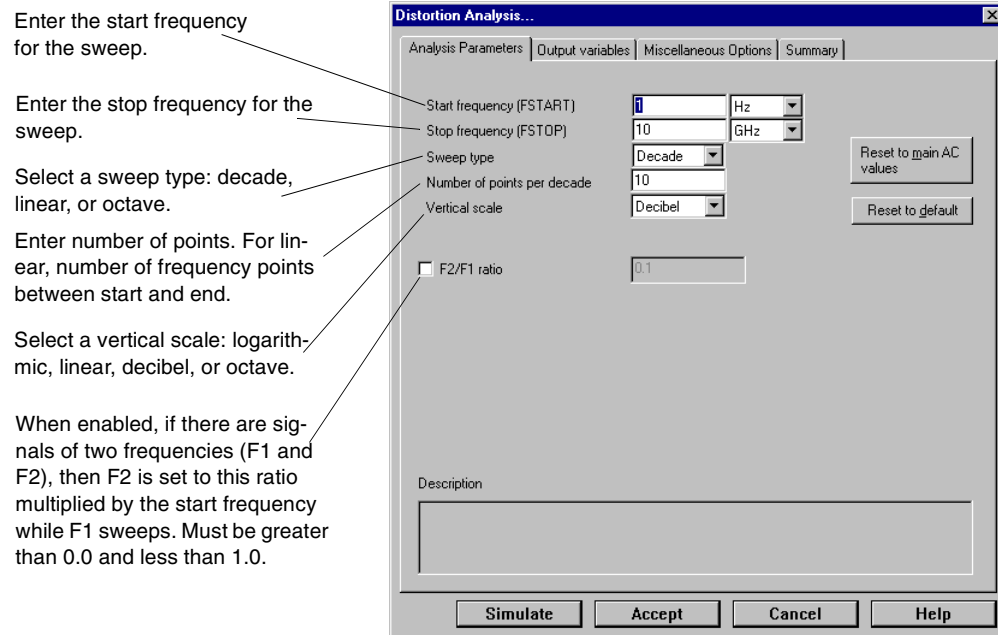
**Assumptions** Analog circuit, small-signal. Non-conforming parts are ignored. Distortion models for SPICE components are used.

### 8.8.2 Setting Distortion Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on one or two sources and one or more nodes for analysis. You can also change the magnitude and phase of sources for

distortion analysis through the placed component's parameters, as described on "Controlling How a Placed Component is Used in Analyses" on page 3-18.

Distortion Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:



If the F2/F1 ratio is disabled, the analysis calculates harmonic distortion of one frequency which is swept according to the screen entries. If F2/F1 ratio is enabled, a spectral analysis is performed. Each independent source in the circuit may potentially have two (superimposed) sinusoidal inputs for distortion at frequencies F1 and F2.

If the F2/F1 ratio is disabled, the analysis produces a graph of the second and third harmonics, displaying them on a Distortion tab in the Grapher window. If the F2/F1 ratio is enabled, the analysis produces a graph of the selected voltage or branch current at the intermodulation frequencies,  $F1 + F2$ ,  $F1 - F2$ ,  $2 * F1 - F2$ , versus the swept frequency, F1. These graphs appear in the IM Distortion tab of the Grapher window.

### Setting Distortion Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

The default settings on the Analysis Parameters tab are appropriate for most cases. You need only define the frequency range by typing a value in the **Start Frequency** field and in the **Stop Frequency** field.

**Note** Click **Reset to main AC values** to set the Analysis Parameters to the values defined for the AC frequency analysis.

## Setting Distortion Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

Using the Analysis Parameters tab, you can set:

- the sweep type, by choosing the desired sweep type (decade, linear, or octave) from the **Sweep type** drop-down list. The sweep type defines how the points to be calculated are distributed across the frequency range.
- the number of points to be calculated during the analysis, by entering a value in the **Number of points per decade** field.

**Note** The greater the number of points calculated, the more accurate the results will be; however, the simulation speed will be adversely affected.

- the type of vertical scale, by choosing the desired scale (linear, logarithmic, decimal, or octave) from the **Vertical scale** drop-down list.

When you enable **F2/F1 ratio**, circuit variables are calculated at  $(F_1+F_2)$ ,  $F_1-F_2$ , and  $(2F_1)-F_2$ .

➤ To set the F2/F1 ratio for multiple AC source circuits:

1. Enable **F2/F1 ratio**.
2. Enter a value in the appropriate box. The value must be greater than zero and less than one.

**Note** F1 is swept according to the values specified as the start and stop frequencies for the analysis. F2 is kept at a single frequency as F1 sweeps. The value of F2 is determined by multiplying the F2/F1 ratio by the start frequency (FSTART) specified.

**Note** Click **Reset to Default** to reset all parameters on the Analysis Parameters tab to their default values.

## 8.9 DC Sweep Analysis

### 8.9.1 About the DC Sweep Analysis

The DC sweep analysis computes the DC operating point of a node in the circuit for various values of one or two DC sources in the circuit.

Using a DC sweep analysis, you can quickly verify the DC operating point of your circuit by simulating it across a range of values for one or two DC voltage or current sources. The effect is the same as simulating the circuit several times, once for each different value or pair of values. You control the source values by choosing start, stop and increment values in the Analysis Parameters tab of the DC Sweep screen.

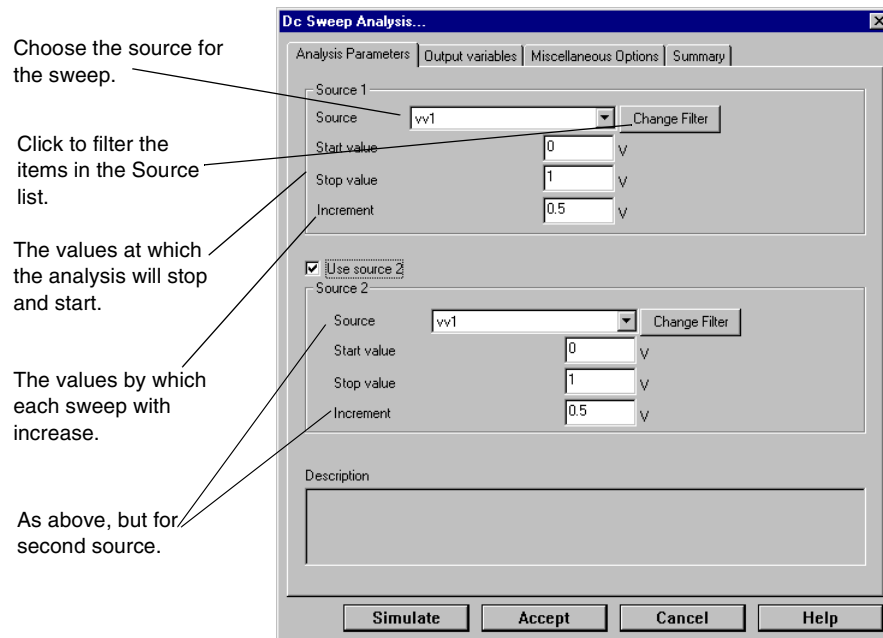
**Assumptions** Digital components are treated as large resistances to ground.

## 8.9.2 Setting DC Sweep Analysis Parameters

Before setting Analysis Parameters, review your circuit and decide on one or two DC sources to sweep, and a node for analysis.

DC sweep analysis plots the appropriate curves sequentially. If only one source is being swept, a curve of the output node value versus source value is traced. If two sources are swept, the number of curves equals the number of points for the second source. Each curve represents the output node value versus the first source value while the second source value is held at each of its sweep values.

DC Sweep Analysis parameters are set on the following screen:



### Setting DC Sweep Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you only need to set:

- the source for the sweep, by choosing from the **Source** drop-down box in the Source 1 section of the window
- a starting value for the sweep, by entering it in the **Start Value** field
- a stop value for the sweep, by entering it in the **Stop Value** field.
- an increment value for the sweep, by entering it in the **Increment** field.

The analysis will calculate the circuit's bias point values beginning with the specified start value. The **Increment** value will then be added to the start value and the circuit variables will be recalculated. The **Increment** value is added again and the process continues until the stop value is reached.

### Setting DC Sweep Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

You can filter the variables displayed to include internal nodes (such as nodes inside a BJT model or inside a SPICE subcircuits), open pins, as well as output variables from any sub-modules contained in the circuit.

- To filter the variables displayed:
  1. Click **Change Filter**. The Filter Nodes screen appears.
  2. Enable one or more settings.
  3. Click **OK**.

## 8.10 DC and AC Sensitivity Analyses

### 8.10.1 About the Sensitivity Analyses

Sensitivity analysis helps to identify the components which affect a circuit's DC bias point the most. This will focus efforts on reducing the sensitivity of the circuit to component variations and/or drift, or it may provide evidence that a design is too conservative and that less expensive components, with more variation and/or drift, may be used.

Sensitivity analyses calculate the sensitivity of an output node voltage or current with respect to the parameters of all components (DC sensitivity) or one component (AC sensitivity) in your circuit.

Both analyses calculate the change produced in an output voltage or current by perturbing each parameter independently. The results of DC sensitivity are sent to a table, whereas AC sensitivity plots the AC graphs for each parameter of the component.

For DC sensitivity analysis, a DC analysis is first performed to determine the DC operating point of the circuit. Then the sensitivity of each output for all of the device values (as well as model parameters) is calculated.

**Assumptions** Analog circuit, small-signal. Models are linearized.

## 8.10.2 Sensitivity Analyses Example

Consider the following example.

**Note** If the flat line overlapping X-axis gets displayed, this means that the output voltage/current is not affected by the chosen component value.

The DC sensitivity analysis generated a report of the output voltage at node 12 sensitivity with respect to all components and their parameters. (Alternatively, you can choose to run DC sensitivity of the current source.)

What does the DC report mean? In the first line of the report, the change (increase) of one unit of flicker noise (AF) of the Zener diode (D10) will cause the decrease of the output voltage by  $1.583\text{e-}012$  V. Note that the sensitivity number is negative  $-1.582\text{e-}012$ . This indicates that the increase of one unit of a device parameter will cause the decrease of voltage. Each line is to be similarly interpreted.

Component	Sensitivity (V/unit)
D10:af	-1.582e-012
D10:bv	0.00046414
D10:eg	-1.4252e-012
D10:fc	-3.1639e-012
D10:ibv	-0.0002668
D10:is	-38.487
D10:m	-4.7507e-012
D10:n	-1.582e-012
D10:rs	2.3913e-006
D10:tnom	-6.5352e-014
D10:vj	-2.1093e-012
D10:xti	-5.2732e-013
D10_area	-2.2575e-005
D10_temp	-8.6695e-008
D11:af	-3.9034e-013
D11:bv	1.4958



Component	Sensitivity (V/unit)
D11:eg	-3.5165e-013
D11:fc	-7.8067e-013
D11:ibv	-1.5478
D11:is	954.04
D11:m	-1.1722e-012.....

The AC small signal sensitivity is calculated if AC analysis is selected. For AC sensitivity only, the analysis measures the sensitivity of the voltage or current with respect to the parameters of the chosen component.

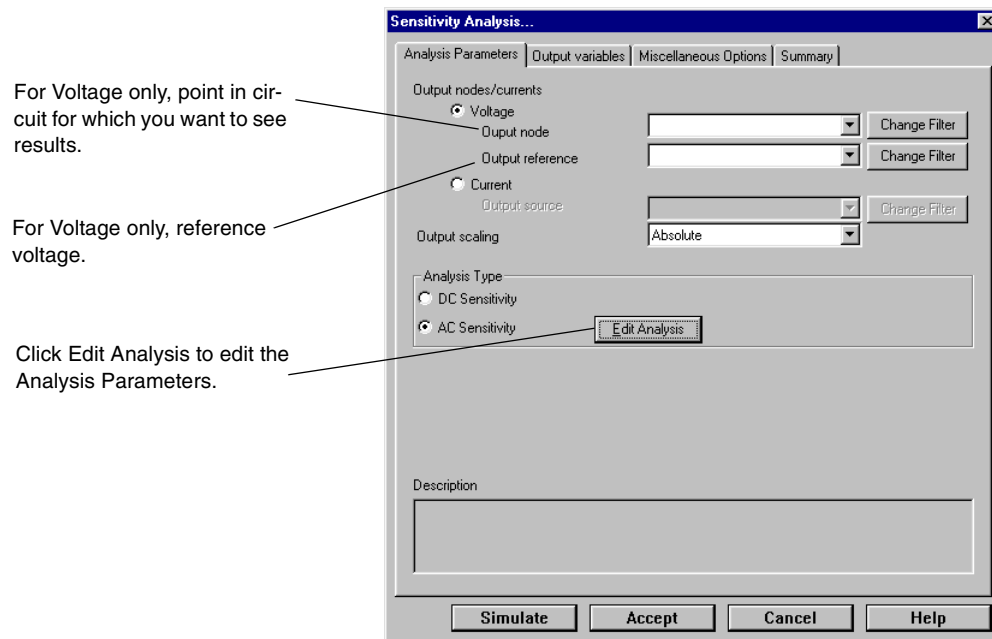
In the example, the chosen component is BJT transistor Q18. The analysis calculates the AC sensitivity of the output voltage at node 12 with respect to all parameters of Q18 transistor.

**Note** The AC sensitivity analysis does not generate any data (fails) if resistors are chosen as components. The transistors seem to be very unpredictable as well.

### 8.10.3 Setting Sensitivity Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on an output voltage or current. For an output voltage, choose nodes on either side of the circuit output. For an output current, choose a source.

Sensitivity Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:



Sensitivity analyses produce the relevant parameters with their original values and their sensitivities. Sensitivity is expressed as the change in output per unit change of input both in values and percentages.

### Setting Sensitivity Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you only need to specify:

- the output node or source current to use during the analysis, by enabling **Voltage** and choose an output node from the **Output node** drop-down list or by enabling **Current** and choosing a source current from the **Output reference** drop-down list.
- the type of sensitivity analysis to run by enabling either **DC Sensitivity** or **AC Sensitivity**.

### Setting Sensitivity Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

From the **Output scaling** drop-down list, you can select the type of output scaling: absolute or relative. You can also click **Change filter** to access the Filter Node screen. Using this screen, you can include internal nodes, open pins, as well as output variables from any submodules in the circuit.

When performing an AC sensitivity analysis, you can also edit the AC frequency Analysis Parameters by clicking **Edit Analysis**. The Frequency Parameters tab appears. You can then set the sweep type, the number of points, and the vertical scale.

## 8.11 Parameter Sweep Analysis

### 8.11.1 About the Parameter Sweep Analysis



Using parameter sweep analysis, you can quickly verify the operation of your circuit by simulating it across a range of values for a component parameter. The effect is the same as simulating the circuit several times, once for each different value. You control the parameter values by choosing a start value, an end, the sweep type, and an increment value.

You may perform three types of sweeps: DC Operating Point, Transient Analysis, and AC Frequency Analysis.

**Assumptions** See selected analysis (DC operating point analysis described on page 8-9, transient analysis described on page 8-13, or AC frequency analysis described on page 8-9).

You will find that some components have more parameters that can be varied than other components. The number of varied parameters depends on the model of the component. That is, active components such as op-amps, transistors, diodes and others have more parameters available to perform a sweep than passive components such as resistors, inductors and capacitors. For example, an inductor has only inductance available as a parameter for analysis, whereas a diode model contains a set of approximately 25 parameters such as Saturation current, Ohmic resistance, Junction potential, Break Down voltage and others available for analysis.

### 8.11.2 Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters

As shown above, you can see how the behavior of a circuit is affected when certain parameters in specific components change.

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on a component and parameter to sweep, and a node for analysis.

Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:

Choose sweep parameter: Device Parameter, Model Parameter, Temperature.

Dictates how Multi-sim calculates the interval between the stop and start values. Choose from Decade, Octave, Linear, or List.

For List sweep only. A list of values to sweep over. Items in the list must be separated by spaces, commas or semicolons.

Choose the type of device to sweep: BJT, Capacitor or Inductor.\*

Enter the reference id of the component to sweep.\*

Choose the device parameter of the component to be swept.\*

Click to edit parameters of the chosen analysis. For Nested Sweep analysis, see page 8-54.

If not enabled, each trace appears on a separate plot.

Choose DC Operating Point, AC Analysis, Transient Analysis, Nested Sweep.

The screenshot shows the 'Parameter Sweep...' dialog box with four tabs: 'Analysis Parameters', 'Output variables', 'Miscellaneous Options', and 'Summary'. The 'Analysis Parameters' tab is active. It contains several sections: 'Sweep Parameters' with dropdowns for 'Sweep Parameter' (set to 'Device Parameter'), 'Device Type' (set to 'BJT'), 'Name' (set to 'q.xq2'), and 'Parameter' (set to 'off'); 'Points to sweep' with a 'Sweep Variation Type' dropdown (set to 'List') and a 'Values' text box containing '0'; 'Analysis to sweep' with a dropdown (set to 'Transient analysis') and an 'Edit Analysis' button; and a 'Description' text area. At the bottom are 'Simulate', 'Accept', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons. Annotations with arrows point to various elements: 'Choose sweep parameter: Device Parameter, Model Parameter, Temperature.' points to the 'Sweep Parameter' dropdown; 'Dictates how Multi-sim calculates the interval between the stop and start values. Choose from Decade, Octave, Linear, or List.' points to the 'Sweep Variation Type' dropdown; 'For List sweep only. A list of values to sweep over. Items in the list must be separated by spaces, commas or semicolons.' points to the 'Values' text box; 'Choose the type of device to sweep: BJT, Capacitor or Inductor.\*' points to the 'Device Type' dropdown; 'Enter the reference id of the component to sweep.\*' points to the 'Name' dropdown; 'Choose the device parameter of the component to be swept.\*' points to the 'Parameter' dropdown; 'Click to edit parameters of the chosen analysis. For Nested Sweep analysis, see page 8-54.' points to the 'Edit Analysis' button; 'If not enabled, each trace appears on a separate plot.' points to the 'Group all traces on one plot' checkbox; and 'Choose DC Operating Point, AC Analysis, Transient Analysis, Nested Sweep.' points to the 'Analysis to sweep' dropdown.

\*Not applicable to Temperature sweeps

Parameter sweep analysis plots the appropriate curves sequentially. The number of curves is dependent on the type of sweep as shown below:

Type of Sweep	Curves
Linear	The number of curves is equal to the difference between the start and end values divided by the increment step size.
Decade	The number of curves is equal to the number of times the start value can be multiplied by ten before reaching the end value.
Octave	The number of curves is equal to the number of times the start value can be doubled before reaching the end value.

## Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you only need to:

- select a sweep parameter by choosing a parameter type (Device or Model) from the **Sweep Parameter** drop-down list, then entering information in the **Device Type**, **Name**, and **Parameter** fields

**Note** A brief description of the parameter appears in the **Description** field and the present value of the parameter is displayed in the **Present Value** field.

- set the sweep variation type by choosing a type of distribution (linear, decade, or octave) from the **Sweep Variation Type**
- select the analysis to sweep by choosing from the **Analysis to sweep** drop-down list.

Optionally, you can set the analysis parameters by clicking **Edit Analysis**. Under the Analysis Parameters screen that appears:

- enter a start and stop value in the **Start** and **End** fields
- enter the number of points in the **Number of time points** field. The increment value will be calculated and automatically set.

**Note** If the analysis is unedited, the last values set for the analysis will be used. If the analysis has not been run previously, the default values will apply.

- if want to sweep other than the list, type the desired parameter values, separated by a space, in the **Values** field

## Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

You can use the Analysis Parameters screen to select different sweep variation types while setting Analysis Parameters. You can also perform nested sweeps, combining various levels of device/model parameter sweeps (see “Nested Sweep Analyses” on page 8-54.)

- To set the sweep variation type and specify the range and number of points to sweep:
  1. Choose the type of distribution (linear, decade, or octave) from the **Sweep Variation Type** drop-down list.
  2. Click **Edit Analysis**. A new Analysis Parameters screen appears.
  3. Enter a start value for the sweep in the **Start Time** field.
  4. Enter a stop value for the sweep in the **Stop Time** field.
  5. Enter the number of points in the **Time points** field. The increment value will be calculated and automatically set.

## 8.12 Temperature Sweep Analysis

### 8.12.1 About the Temperature Sweep Analysis



Using temperature sweep analysis, you can quickly verify the operation of your circuit by simulating it at different temperatures. The effect is the same as simulating the circuit several times, once for each different temperature. You control the temperature values by choosing start, stop and increment values.

You may perform three types of sweeps: DC Operating Point, Transient Analysis, and AC Frequency Analysis.

Temperature sweep analysis affects only components whose model includes temperature dependency, such as:

- Virtual Resistor
- 3 - Terminal Depletion N-MOSFET
- 3 - Terminal Depletion P- MOSFET
- 3 - Terminal Enhancement N- MOSFET
- 3 - Terminal Enhancement P- MOSFET
- 4 - Terminal Depletion N- MOSFET
- 4 - Terminal Depletion P- MOSFET
- 4 - Terminal Enhancement N- MOSFET
- 4 - Terminal Enhancement P- MOSFET
- Diode
- LED
- N-Channel JFET
- NPN Transistor
- P-Channel JFET
- PNP Transistor

**Assumptions** See selected analysis (DC operating point analysis described on page 8-9, transient analysis described on page 8-13, or AC frequency analysis described on page 8-9).

### 8.12.2 Setting Temperature Sweep Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on a node for analysis. The Analysis Parameters are the same as for the parameter sweep. For details, see “Setting Parameter Sweep Analysis Parameters” on page 8-28.

Temperature sweep analysis plots the appropriate curves sequentially. The number of curves is dependent on the type of sweep, as shown below. See the parameter sweep analysis on page 8-28 for an explanation of the number of curves.

Type of Sweep	Curves
Linear	The number of curves is equal to the difference between the start and end values divided by the increment step size.
Decade	The number of curves is equal to the number of times the start value can be multiplied by ten before reaching the end value.
Octave	The number of curves is equal to the number of times the start value can be doubled before reaching the end value.

### Setting Temperature Sweep Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

You can use the Analysis Parameters tab to define the temperature values to be swept, and the type of analysis to be run at the various swept temperatures. You can also edit the analysis.

The **Sweep Parameter** field is set to **Temperature** by default and the default setting for the **Sweep Variation Type** is **List**. You need only enter the desired list of temperatures to sweep, and the type of analysis to be performed.

- To specify the list of temperatures and the analysis:
  1. Enter the list of temperatures (separated by a space) in the **Values** field.
  2. Choose the analysis to be performed by choosing from the **Analysis to sweep** drop-down list.
  3. Click **Edit Analysis** to specify the Analysis Parameters.

**Note** If the analysis is unedited, the last values set for the analysis will be used. If the analysis has not been run previously, the default values will apply.

### Setting Temperature Sweep Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

You can select different sweep variation types while setting Analysis Parameters. You can also perform nested sweeps, combining a device/model parameter sweep with a temperature sweep. This allows you to sweep a device parameter, such as capacitance, at a range of temperature values. See “Nested Sweep Analyses” on page 8-54 for more information.

- To select a sweep parameter:
  1. Choose a parameter type (Device or Model) from the **Sweep Parameter** drop-down list.
  2. Enter values in the **Device Type**, **Name**, and **Parameter** fields.

**Note** A brief description of the parameter appears in the **Description** field and the present value of the parameter is displayed in the **Present Value** field.

- To set the sweep variation type and specify the range and number of points to sweep:
  1. Choose the type of distribution (linear, decade, or octave) from the **Sweep Variation Type** drop-down list.
  2. Click **Edit Analysis**. A new Analysis Parameters screen appears.
  3. Enter a start value for the sweep in the **Start** field.
  4. Enter a stop value for the sweep in the **End** field.
  5. Enter the number of points in the **Number of points** field. The increment value will be calculated and automatically set.
- Choose the analysis to sweep from the **Analysis to sweep** drop-down list.

## 8.13 Transfer Function Analysis

### 8.13.1 About the Transfer Function Analysis



Transfer function analysis calculates the DC small-signal transfer function between an input source and two output nodes (for voltage) or an output variable (for current) in a circuit. It also calculates input and output resistances. Any nonlinear models are first linearized based on the DC operating point and then small-signal analysis is performed. The output variable can be any node voltage, while the input must be an independent source defined somewhere in the circuit.

**Assumptions** Analog circuit, linear models. Models are linearized.

The DC small signal gain is the derivative of the output with respect to the input at the DC bias-point (and zero frequency). For example:

$$\frac{dV_{OUT}}{dV_{IN}}$$

The input and output resistance of a circuit refers to the “dynamic” or small-signal resistance at the input or output. Mathematically, small-signal DC resistance is the derivative or the



input voltage with respect to the input current at the DC bias-point (and zero frequency). The following is an expression for input resistance:

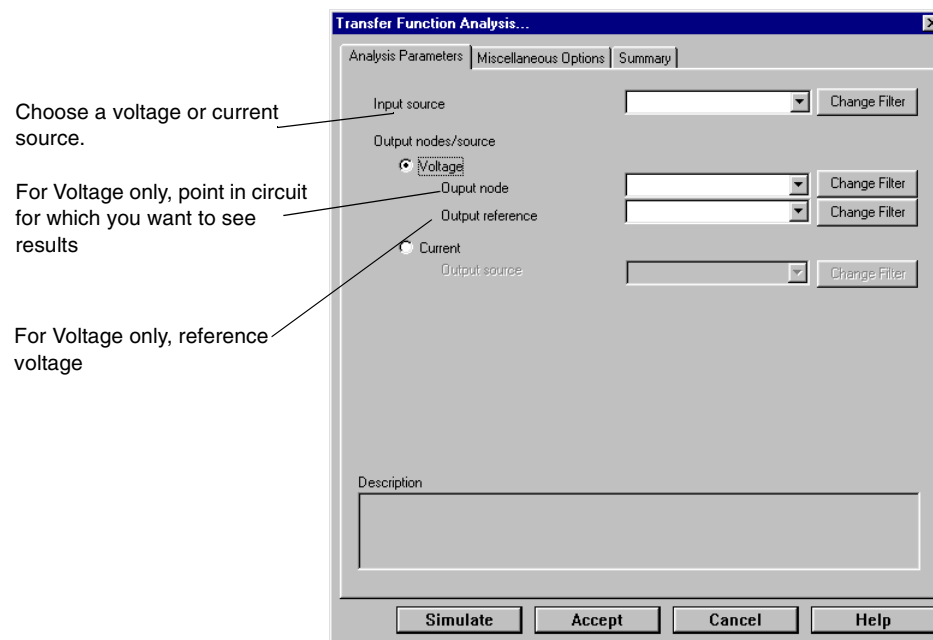
$$\frac{dV_{IN}}{dI_{IN}}$$

In Multisim, the results of the Transfer function analysis produce a chart showing the ratio of the output to the input signal, the input resistance at the input source node and the output resistance across the output voltage nodes.

### 8.13.2 Setting Transfer Function Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on an output node, a reference node and an input source.

Transfer Function Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:



Transfer function analysis produces a chart showing the transfer function (output/input), input resistance at the input source and output resistance across the output voltage nodes or at the output variable.

## Setting Transfer Function Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you only need to:

- choose an input source from the **Input source** drop-down list
- enable the **Voltage** button and select an output node from the **Output node** drop-down list and an output reference node (usually ground or node 0) from the **Output reference** drop-down list
- enable **Current** and select a source current from the **Output source** drop-down list

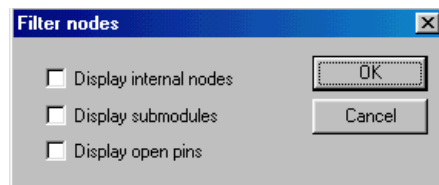
For more advanced use, a source current as well as output node voltage can be used for this analysis.

## Setting Transfer Function Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

You can filter the variables displayed to include internal nodes (such as nodes inside a BJT model or inside a SPICE subcircuits), open pins, as well as output variables from any sub-modules contained in the circuit. Filtering the variables shortens the list of results.

➤ To filter the variables displayed:

1. Click the **Change Filter** button. The Filter Nodes screen appears.



2. Enable one or more settings.
3. Click **OK**.

## 8.14 Worst Case Analysis

### 8.14.1 About the Worst Case Analysis



Worst case analysis is a statistical analysis that lets you explore the worst possible effects of variations in component parameters on the performance of a circuit.

The first simulation is performed with nominal values. Then, a sensitivity run (AC or DC) is performed. This allows the simulator to calculate the sensitivity of the output waveform (voltage or current) with respect to each parameter. Expressing a specific component's sensitivity as a *negative* number yields the component's minimum value for the worst case analysis. For

example, if the sensitivity of resistor R1 is -1.23V/Ohm, then the minimum sensitivity value of this component is calculated with the following formula:

$$R1_{min} = (1 - Tol) \times R1_{nom}$$

where

- $R1_{min}$  = minimum value of the R1 resistor
- Tol = tolerance specified in the dialog box divided by 100%
- $R1_{nom}$  = nominal value of the resistor R1

Expressing a specific component’s sensitivity as a *positive* number yields the component’s maximum value for the worst case analysis. The maximum value is calculated with the following formula:

$$R2_{max} = (1 + Tol) \times R2_{nom}.$$

Once all the sensitivities have been obtained, a final run provides the worst case analysis result.

Data from the worst case simulation is gathered by collating functions. A collating function acts as a highly selective filter by allowing only one datum to be collected per run.

The six collating functions are:

This collating function...	Captures...
Maximum voltage	the values of the Y-axis maxima.
Minimum voltage	the values of the Y-axis minima.
Frequency at maximum	the X value where the Y-axis maxima occurred.
Frequency at minimum	the X value where the Y-axis minima occurred.
Rising edge frequency	the X value the first time the Y value rises above the user-specified threshold.
Falling edge frequency	the X value the first time the Y value falls below the user-specified threshold.

**Assumptions** Analog circuit, DC and small-signal. Models are linearized.

Setting Worst Case Analysis Tolerance Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on an output node.

In the Model tolerance list tab, choose which tolerance parameters are to be used. You can do this using any of the following methods:

- To load the tolerance parameters from your circuit, click **Load tolerance parameters from circuit**.
- To edit a tolerance in the list, select it and click **Edit select tolerance**. The tolerance's current variable settings appear. Modify the variables as desired and click **OK** to save.
- To delete a tolerance from the list, select it and click **Delete tolerance entry**.
- To manually add a tolerance, click **Add tolerance**.

The Tolerance screen appears:

Choose type of sweep to be performed: Model Parameter or Device Parameter.

When selected, the current value and a description of the parameter appear.

Choose the type of distribution: Gaussian or Uniform.

Choose Unique (each random number generation is distinct), or a numbered lot (the same random number generation for various parameters).

Choose Absolute to enter a value, or Percent to vary the parameter by the specified percentage of its stated value.

Enter a percentage value, or a set value depending on the tolerance type selected.

Enter the desired variables in the appropriate fields.

## 8.14.2 Setting Worst Case Analysis Parameters

Worst Case Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:

Choose DC Operating Point or AC Analysis. For details on either parameter, see page 8-9.

Click to edit selected parameter.

Choose an output variable.

Click to change the filter that affects the list of possible output variables.

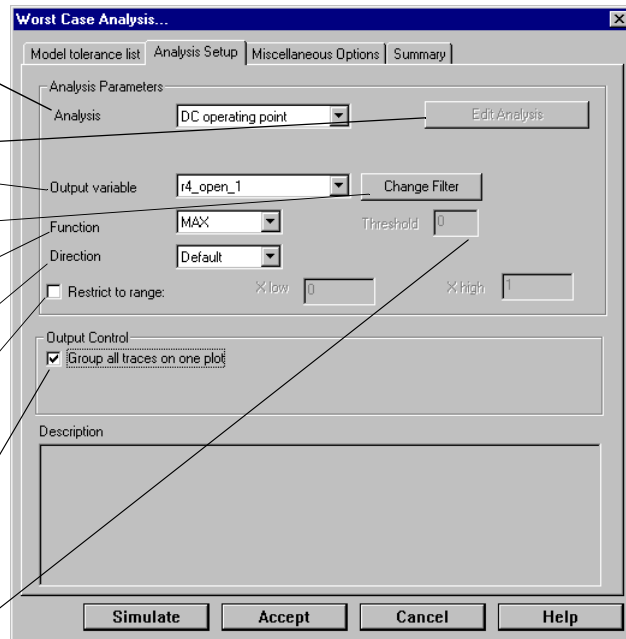
Choose a function: MAX, MIN, RISE\_EDGE, FALL\_EDGE.

Choose a direction: Default, Low or High.

Enable to restrict the x-axis range of the analysis being run. Set X low (default is 0) and X high (default is 1).

Click to group all traces on a single plot.

From RISE\_EDGE and FALL\_EDGE functions only: enter a value for the threshold voltage.



For DC circuits, the worst case analysis generates a plot of the circuit's possible output voltages ranging from the nominal specification value (1 on the x-axis) to the worst case value (2 on the x-axis). A list of the components and their worst case values appears in tabular form.

For AC circuits, the worst case analysis generates separate plots for the nominal and worst case runs. A list of the components and their worst case values appears in tabular form.

## 8.15 Pole Zero Analysis

### 8.15.1 About the Pole Zero Analysis



Pole zero analysis finds the poles and zeros in the small-signal AC transfer function of a circuit. The analysis begins by calculating the DC operating point and determining the linearized small-signal models for all nonlinear devices. From the resulting circuit, the analysis finds the poles and zeros of the transfer function.

Pole zero analysis is useful in determining the stability of electronic circuits. When designing circuits, it is important to know whether the output signal remains bounded or increases indefinitely following the application of an input signal. An unbounded output could damage or destroy the circuit; therefore, it is important to know if the circuit can accommodate the expected output before applying the input signal. A circuit is said to have *bounded input-bounded output* (BIBO) stability if any bounded input results in bounded output. BIBO stability can be determined by examining the poles of the transfer function of the circuit. Your circuit should have poles with negative real parts; otherwise, it could have an unintentionally large and potentially damaging response to certain frequencies.

Transfer functions are a convenient way of expressing the behavior of analog circuits in the frequency domain. A transfer function is ratio of the LaPlace Transform of the output signal to the LaPlace Transform of the input signal in a circuit. The LaPlace Transform of the output signal is commonly referred to as  $V_o(s)$  and the LaPlace Transform of the input signal is

referred to as  $V_I(s)$  where the parameter  $s = j\omega$ , or more commonly  $s = j2\pi f$ . A transfer function is in general a complex quantity the magnitude of which gives the magnitude response (or transmission) and the angle of which gives the phase response. One way of expressing the transfer function is the following:

$$T(s) = \frac{V_o(s)}{V_I(s)} = \frac{K(s + z_1)(s + z_2)(s + z_3)(s + z_4)\dots}{(s + p_1)(s + p_2)(s + p_3)(s + p_4)\dots}$$

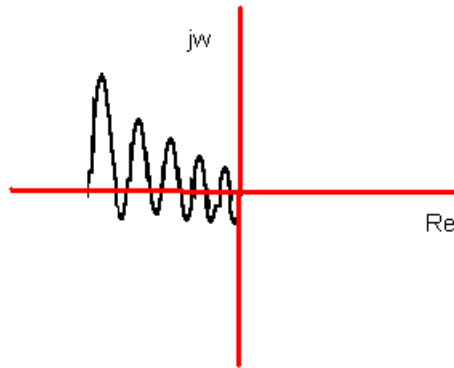
The numerator of the function contains the zeroes of the function ( $-z_1, -z_2, -z_3, -z_4, \dots$ ) and the denominator contains the poles of the function ( $-p_1, -p_2, -p_3, -p_4, \dots$ ).

The zeroes of the function are those frequencies at which the transmission will be zero. The poles of the function are the natural modes of the network, and define natural frequencies. Both poles and zeros can contain either real, complex, or purely imaginary numbers.

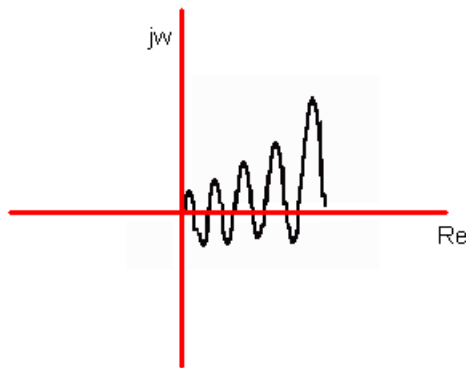
### 8.15.1.1 About Circuit Stability

As stated earlier, the stability of the circuit can be determined by examining the transfer function of the circuit. Since the transfer function is a representation of the circuit in the frequency domain, the location of the poles and zeros will be referred to the Complex plane. The complex plane is the set of axis in which the horizontal is defined as the Real Axis(Re) and the vertical is the Imaginary Axis(w).

When all the poles of the circuit have negative real parts, the poles are located on the left hand side of the complex plane. In this situation the circuit is stable, that is, it does not generate signals on its own. The following diagram illustrates the behavior of a stable circuit:



If there are poles present on the right hand side of the complex plane, then the circuit will generate a signal of its own and, therefore, be considered unstable. The following diagram illustrates the behavior of an unstable circuit:



As stated earlier, for absolute stability there can be no poles with positive real parts, since these may cause the output signal to become unbounded. Using the poles and zeros of the transfer functions of the circuit, you can get a graphical representation of the behavior of the circuit in the frequency domain. You can obtain the approximate plots of magnitude and phase of the transfer function using Bode plots.

### 8.15.1.2 About the Bode Phase Plot

To obtain the Bode plot for the magnitude of transfer function, the asymptotic plot for each pole and zero is first drawn. The slope of the high-frequency asymptote of the curve corresponding to a zero is +20dB/decade, and that for a pole is -20dB/decade. Then the plots are added together, and the overall curve is shifted vertically by an amount determined by the multiplicative constant of the transfer function (in this case K).

The Bode phase plot is done using the same concept; however, there are some differences. The asymptotic plots consists of three lines. The first line is a horizontal one at a level of zero up to  $s=0.1|p|$ , the second line has a slope of  $-45^\circ/\text{decade}$  and extends from  $s=0.1|p|$  to  $s=10|p|$ , the third line has a slope of zero at a level of  $-90^\circ$ . The complete phase response can be found by adding the plots of the poles and zeros.

The frequency response of the low pass filter is an example of the above discussion.

The circuit is defined by the following transfer function:

$$T(s) = \frac{a_0}{s + \omega_0} = \frac{-40}{s + 1592.4}$$

where the natural frequency (expressed in radians) is

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{2\pi(5\mu F)(20\Omega)} = 1.59\text{KHz}$$

and the dc gain

$$a_0 = \frac{-20\Omega}{0.5\Omega} = -40$$

As can be seen from the cursors, the break frequency in Hertz is 1.59KHz. This is the point at which the slope of the magnitude plot is -20dB/decade due to the pole present at this frequency. The phase plot displays a slope of  $-45^\circ/\text{decade}$  between 159 Hz and 159KHz.

In the case of higher order circuits, for example, the transfer functions contain multiple poles or zeros at certain frequencies. The order of the pole or zero, n, is determined by the number of times this pole is present at a certain frequency. In this case, when plotting the Bode magnitude plot each higher order pole has an asymptote of -20 ndB/decade and each higher order zero has an asymptote of +20 ndB/decade.

**Assumptions** Analog circuit, small-signal. Digital pins are treated as large resistances to ground.



## 8.15.2 Setting Pole Zero Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on input and output nodes (positive and negative). The input nodes are the positive and negative points in the circuit which are the transfer function inputs. Likewise, the output nodes are the positive and negative points in the circuit which are the transfer function outputs. You can use 0 (ground) for both positive nodes or both negative nodes.

Pole Zero Analysis Parameters are set in this screen:

Choose an analysis type: Gain Analysis (output voltage/input voltage), Impedance Analysis (output voltage/input current), Input Impedance (voltage/current as seen from the input terminals), Output Impedance (voltage/current as seen from the output terminals).

Choose input nodes on opposite sides of the input.

Choose output nodes on opposite sides of the output.

Choose analyses to be performed: Pole Analysis (finds poles of transfer function), Zero Analysis (finds zeros of transfer function), Pole and Zero Analysis (finds both).

Pole zero analysis produces the real and imaginary coordinates of the poles and/or zeros, depending on which analyses are enabled.

The Pole Zero analysis provides precise results on circuits containing passive devices (resistors, capacitors and inductors). Circuits containing active devices (transistor or opamps) will not always display the expected results.

**Note** The SPICE algorithm used in the pole zero analysis may occasionally result in an error message such as “Pole zero iteration limit reached, giving up after 200 iterations.” Note that the analysis may still have found all the poles and zeros even if you receive this message.

## Setting Pole Zero Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you only need to:

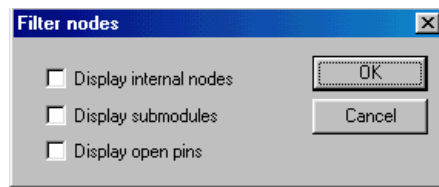
- select the analysis type by enabling the desired type
- select an input node from the **Input (+)** drop-down list and the **Input (-)** drop-down list
- select an output node from the **Output (+)** drop-down list and the **Output (-)** drop-down list
- select the analysis to be performed, by choosing from the **Analysis performed** list

## Setting Pole Zero Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

For more advanced use, you can filter the variables displayed to include internal nodes (such as nodes inside a BJT model or inside a SPICE subcircuits), open pins, as well as output variables from any submodules contained in the circuit.

➤ To filter the variables displayed:

1. Click **Change Filter**. The Filter Nodes screen appears.



2. Enable one or more settings.
3. Click **OK**.

# 8.16 Monte Carlo Analysis

## 8.16.1 About the Monte Carlo Analysis



Monte Carlo analysis is a statistical technique that lets you explore how changing component properties affects circuit performance. Multiple simulations are performed and, for each simulation, the component parameters are randomly varied according to the distribution type and parameter tolerances that you set in the screen.

The first simulation is always performed with nominal values. For the rest of the simulations, a delta value is randomly added to or subtracted from the nominal value. This delta value can be any number within the standard deviation. The probability of adding a particular delta value depends on the probability distribution. Two probability distributions are available:

**Uniform** is a linear distribution that generates delta values uniformly within the tolerance range. Any value in the tolerance range is equally likely to be chosen.

**Gaussian** distribution is generated with the following probability function:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{u-x}{\sigma}\right)^2}$$

where

- u = the nominal parameter value
- s = the standard deviation value
- x = the independent variable

The standard deviation,  $s$ , is calculated from the parameter tolerance according to:

$$\sigma = \frac{\text{tolerance percentage} \times \text{nominal value}}{100}$$

The percentage of the population included in the tolerance band is determined by a component's nominal parameter value plus or minus  $\sigma$  times the number of standard deviations, SD, in the tolerance band. SD is related to the percentage of population included as shown:

SD	Percentage of Population Included
1.0	68.0
1.96	95.0
2.0	95.5
2.58	99.0
3.0	99.7
3.29	99.9

For example, if you set the tolerance percentage to 5%, then, for a 1 k $\Omega$  resistor in your circuit,  $\sigma$  is 50  $\Omega$ . One standard deviation leads to a tolerance band of 0.95 k $\Omega$  to 1.05 k $\Omega$  (1 k $\Omega$  +/- 50  $\Omega$ ), and 68.0% of the population is included. At 1.96 standard deviations, the tolerance band is 0.902 k $\Omega$  to 1.098 k $\Omega$  (1 k $\Omega$  +/- 98  $\Omega$ ), and 95.0% of the population is included.

Note that the tolerance percentage is applied globally to all components.

**Assumptions** See selected analysis (DC operating point, transient or AC frequency).

## Setting Monte Carlo Analysis Tolerance Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and decide on an output node.

In the Model tolerance list tab, choose which tolerance parameters are to be used. You can do this using any of the following methods:

- To load the tolerance parameters from your circuit, click **Load tolerance parameters from circuit**.
- To edit a tolerance in the list, select it and click **Edit select tolerance**. The tolerance's current variable settings appear. Modify the variables as desired and click **OK** to save.
- To delete a tolerance from the list, select it and click **Delete tolerance entry**.
- To manually add a tolerance, click **Add tolerance**.

The Tolerance screen appears:

Choose type of sweep to be performed: Model Parameter or Device Parameter.

When selected, the current value and a description of the parameter appear.

Choose the type of distribution: Gaussian or Uniform.

Choose Unique (each random number generation is distinct), or a numbered lot (the same random number generation for various parameters).

Choose Absolute to enter a value, or Percent to vary the parameter by the specified percentage of its stated value.

Enter a percentage value, or a set value depending on the tolerance type selected.

Enter the desired variables in the appropriate fields.

## 8.16.2 Setting Monte Carlo Analysis Parameters

Monte Carlo Analysis parameters are set in the following screen:

Analysis to be swept for: DC Operating Point, Transient Analysis, AC Analysis. To edit the parameters of AC or Transient Analysis, click Edit Analysis.

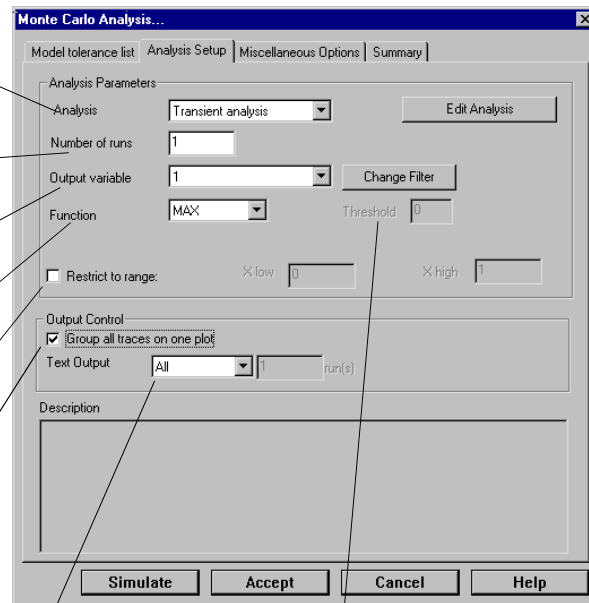
Number of runs must be greater than or equal to 2.

Choose output variable. To change the filter that affects the list of possible output variables, click Change Filter and choose the desired filter node.

Choose a collating function: MAX, MIN, RISE\_EDGE, FALL\_EDGE.

Option to restrict the x-axis range of the analysis being run. Set X low (default is 0) and X high (default is 1).

Enable to have all traces grouped on a single plot.



Choose from: All, Every, List, First, and None. If you choose Every, List or First, set the number of runs for which this applies.

For RISE\_EDGE and FALL\_EDGE functions only, enter a value for threshold voltage.

Monte Carlo analysis produces the appropriate voltage curves sequentially. The number of curves is equal to the number of runs you specified in the screen.

## 8.17 Fourier Analysis

### 8.17.1 About the Fourier Analysis

Fourier analysis is a method of analyzing complex periodic waveforms. It permits any nonsinusoidal period function to be resolved into sine or cosine waves (possibly an infinite number) and a DC component. This permits further analysis and allows you to determine the effect of combining the waveform with other signals.

Given the mathematical theorem of a Fourier series, the period function  $f(t)$  can be written as follows:

$$f(t) = A_0 + A_1 \cos \omega t + A_2 \cos 2\omega t + \dots + B_1 \sin \omega t + B_2 \sin 2\omega t + \dots$$

where:

$A_0$	=	the DC component of the original wave
$A_1 \cos \omega t + B_1 \sin \omega t$	=	the fundamental component (has the same frequency and period as the original wave)
$A_n \cos n\omega t + B_n \sin n\omega t$	=	the $n^{\text{th}}$ harmonic of the function
$A, B$	=	the coefficients
$\frac{2\pi}{T}$	=	the fundamental angular frequency, or $2\pi$ times the frequency of the original periodic wave

Each frequency component (or *term*) of the response is produced by the corresponding harmonic of the periodic waveform. Each term is considered a separate source. According to the principle of superposition, the total response is the sum of the responses produced by each term. Note that the amplitude of the harmonics decreases progressively as the order of the harmonics increases. This indicates that comparatively few terms yield a good approximation.

When Multisim performs Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT) calculations, only the second cycle of the fundamental component of a time-domain or transient response (extracted at the output node) is used. The first cycle is discarded for the settling time. The coefficient of each harmonic is calculated from the data gathered in the time domain, from the beginning of the cycle to time point “t”. That is set automatically and is a function of the fundamental frequency. This analysis requires a fundamental frequency matching the frequency of the AC source or the lowest common factor of multiple AC sources.

**Assumptions** None.

## 8.17.2 Setting Fourier Analysis Parameters

Before you perform the analysis, review your circuit and select an output node in the screen. The output variable is the node from which the analysis extracts the voltage waveform.

Fourier Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:

Set to the frequency of an AC source in your circuit. If you have several AC sources, use the lowest common factor of frequencies.

Click to have Multisim estimate fundamental frequency.

Set the number of harmonics of the fundamental frequency that are calculated.

Click to enter the amount of time during which sampling should occur (or use Set Transient Analysis).

Enable this option and click Edit analysis to set parameters for associated transient analysis.

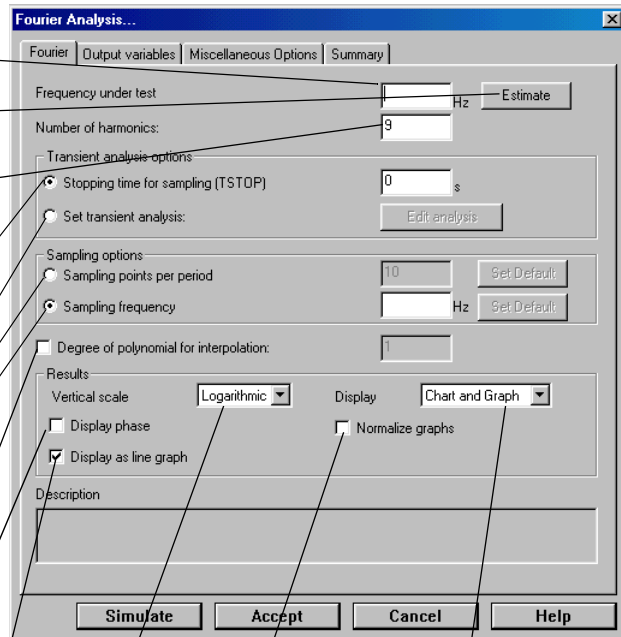
Enable to enter number of points to be sampled during period.

Enable to specify a sampling frequency.

Enable to enter degree to be used when interpolating between points on simulation.

Enable to display results as phase.

Enable to display results as line graph. If not enabled, results display as bar-graph.



Enable to normalize graphs. Normalized graphs are normalized against the 1st harmonic.

Choose a vertical scale: linear, logarithmic, decibel, or octave.

Choose a display option: chart, graph, or chart and graph.

Fourier analysis produces a graph of Fourier voltage component magnitudes and, optionally, phase components versus frequency. By default, the magnitude plot is a bargraph but may be displayed as a line graph.

The analysis also calculates Total Harmonics Distortion (THD) as a percentage. The THD is generated by notching out the fundamental frequency, taking the square root of the sum of the squares of each of the  $n$  harmonics, and then dividing this number by the magnitude of the notched out fundamental frequency.

$$THD = [(\sum_{i=2} V_i^2) / V_1] \times 100 \%, \text{ where } V_1 \text{ is the magnitude of the } i^{\text{th}} \text{ harmonics.}$$

### Setting Fourier Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, you just need to specify parameters for the following:

- frequency under test, either by clicking **Estimate** to have a value selected based on the AC sources in the circuit, or by entering a value in the **Frequency under test** field. This value should be the lowest common factor for the frequencies present in the circuit.
- number of harmonics, by entering a value in the **Number of harmonics** field. You can specify the stopping time for sampling to avoid unwanted transient results prior to the circuit reaching steady-state operation.
- stopping time for sampling by enabling **Stopping time for sampling** and entering a new stopping time for sampling. Although the Nyquist rate specifies only two times the highest frequency component being considered in the analysis as a suitable sampling rate, it is recommended that you specify a sampling frequency sufficient to obtain a minimum of 10 sampling points per period.
- sampling options by doing one of the following:
  - enabling **Sampling points per period** and enter a value for sampling points per period
  - enabling **Sampling points per period** and click **Set Default** to choose the default value of 10
  - enabling **Sampling Frequency** and enter a value in the appropriate field
  - enabling **Sampling Frequency** and click **Set Default** to choose the default value.

**Note** The sampling frequency should be equal to (the frequency under test) times (the number of harmonics plus one) times at least 10 sampling points per period.

### Setting Fourier Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

In addition to the basic procedures, you can also specify parameters for the following:

- degree of polynomial for interpolation, by enabling **Degree of polynomial for interpolation** and entering a value in the appropriate field. The higher the degree of polynomial the greater the accuracy of the results.
- results display format by doing one or all of the following:
  - choosing a vertical scale (linear, logarithmic, decibel or octave) from the **Vertical Scale** list
  - choosing a display option (chart, graph, or chart and graph) from the **Display** list
  - enabling **Display phase** to display results as phase
  - enabling **Display as line graph** to display the results as a line graph instead of a bar-graph.
  - enabling **Normalize graphs** to normalize the results with respect to the frequency under test.
- transient analysis option by enabling **Set transient analysis** and clicking **Edit analysis** to edit the transient analysis setup. For details, see page 8-14.



## 8.18 Trace Width Analysis

### 8.18.1 About Trace Width Analysis



The Trace Width analysis calculates the minimum trace width needed in the circuit to handle the peak current to be carried by that trace, once the schematic's connection is implemented as a trace in PCB layout software. The peak current is derived from simulation. This trace width becomes the default passed to Electronics Workbench's Ultiboard program.

Each component, passive or active, dissipates power in the form of heat. The power is generally calculated using  $(V \cdot I)$ , where  $V$  is the voltage across the component and  $I$  is the current passing through the component. Any wire in the network can be modeled by a resistor.

Depending on what the cross-section area of a wire is, the resistivity of wires differs: that is, the smaller the cross-section area is, the higher the resistivity will be. Through power dissipation in a wire, its surface temperature is going to rise. The temperature rise is called  $\Delta T$ , and is calculated as (maximum allowed temperature) - (operating temperature). You provide the value to Multisim as one of the input parameters, as described below.

There are practical limits to how much the temperature can rise above the nominal (operating) temperature. One limit is the functionality of the PCB—that is, the circuit may not function properly above a certain temperature. The cooling system provided for the PCB also affects  $\Delta T$ . If heat emitted from the PCB is absorbed by air, the circuit, which works at room temperature, may not work at 100° C.

The PCB layout technology limits the thickness of the copper used for wires. This thickness is related to the nominal weight, which is provided in  $\text{OZ/ft}^2$ , in the form of a table. Multisim uses the weight to provide the thickness to the calculator. Using transient analysis, the currents of each wire are calculated first. These currents are usually time dependent, that is, their amplitude changes in time to a positive or negative value. The maximum absolute value of the current passing through the wire is taken into account to find the width of the wire. Since the transient analysis is performed for discrete time points, the accuracy of the maximum absolute value depends on how many time points are selected. Here are a few recommendations to increase the accuracy of trace width analysis:

- Set the end time of the transient analysis (visible on the Analysis Parameters tab) to a time point where at least one cycle of the signal is processed. This is particularly the case if the signal is periodic. If not, you must set the end time to a value large enough for Multisim to capture the correct maximum current.
- Manually increase the number of points to 100 or more. The more points of the signal, the more accurate the maximum value. Note that increasing the number of time points beyond about 1000 will increase the execution time and slow down Multisim.
- Consider the effect of the initial condition, which can change the maximum of the signal at

starting time. It may slow down the simulation if the steady state (DC operating point, for example) is far from the initial condition (say, zero IC).

Once it knows  $I$  and  $\Delta T$ , Multisim uses the McHardy and Gandhi formula to find the width of the wire. The formula is:

$$I = K T^{0.44} A^{0.725}$$

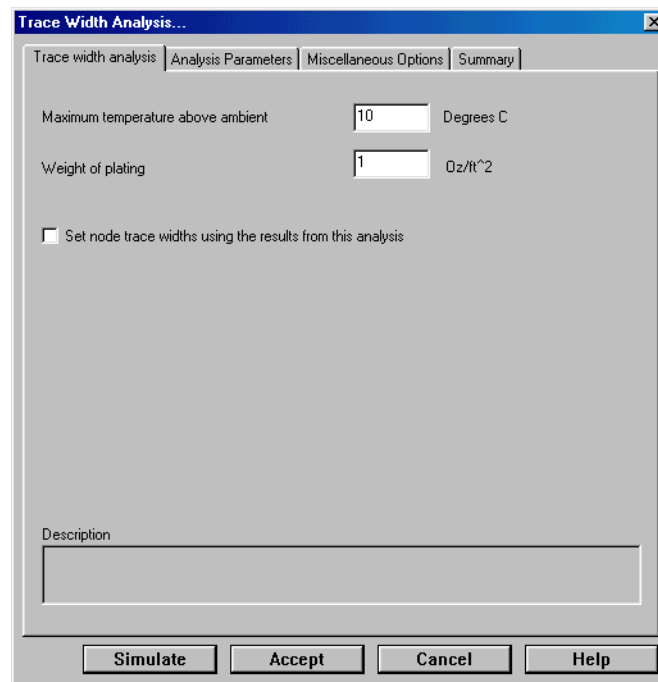
where:

- $I$  = maximum current in Amps
- $K$  = derating Constant (0.024 for inner)
- $T$  = maximum temperature rise above ambient in  $^{\circ}\text{C}$
- $A$  = cross-sectional area in square mils (not millimeters)

Note that one “mil” is 1/1000 of an inch.

## Setting Trace Width Analysis Options

Trace Width Analysis options are set under the Trace Width Analysis tab:



For normal use, on the Trace Width Analysis tab, you only need to:

- Enter a value in **Maximum temperature above ambient**. This is the maximum allowable temperature increase, above the ambient temperature, for this design.
- Enter a value in **Weight of plating** in units of ounces per square foot.

**Note** Enable **Set node trace widths using the results from this analysis** if you would like to have the node trace widths set according to the analysis results.

## 8.18.2 Setting Trace Width Analysis Parameters

Trace Width Analysis Parameters are set in the following screen:

Set initial conditions: Zero, User-Defined, Calculate DC Operating Point, or Automatically Determine Initial Conditions.

Set start time of transient analysis (must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than End time).

Set End time of transient analysis (must be greater than Start time).

Click to enter minimum number of time points (number of points between start and stop times).

Click to enter maximum time step the simulation can handle.

Click to generate time steps automatically.

Click to set a time interval for simulation output and graphing.

The screenshot shows the 'Trace Width Analysis' dialog box with the 'Analysis Parameters' tab selected. The 'Initial conditions' dropdown is set to 'Automatically determine initial conditions'. The 'Analysis' section includes: 'Start time (TSTART)' set to 0 s, 'End time (TSTOP)' set to 0.001 s, 'Set maximum timestep (TMAX)' checked, 'Minimum number of time points' set to 100, 'Maximum time step (TMAX)' set to 1e-005 s, 'Generate time steps automatically' checked, 'Set initial timestep' unchecked, and 'Timestep (TSTEP)' set to 1e-005 s. There are 'Reset to main transient values' and 'Reset to default' buttons on the right. At the bottom are 'Simulate', 'Accept', 'Cancel', and 'Help' buttons.

### Setting Trace Width Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

For normal use, the default settings on the Analysis Parameters tab are appropriate. They result in the transient response of the selected output variables starting at time 0 seconds and stopping after 1 ms. You may want to change the start time by entering a value greater than or equal to 0 and less than the End time in the **Start time** field, or the end time, by entering a value greater than the Start time in the **End time** field.

Once you have selected the required variables and defined the Start and End times, you can run the analysis.

### Setting Trace Width Analysis Parameters for Advanced Use

You can also use the Analysis Parameters tab to do the following:

- define the initial conditions at time 0 seconds by choosing an initial condition (Zero, User-Defined, Calculate DC Operating Point, or Automatically Determine Initial Conditions) from the **Initial conditions** list

**Note** If you select **Automatically Determine Initial Conditions**, Multisim will attempt to use steady state conditions to run the analysis. If this is unsuccessful, Multisim will set initial conditions to zero. If simulation is still not possible, Multisim will use the specified user-defined conditions.

- specify the number of points to be calculated
- define the maximum time step to be taken by the simulation engine by enabling **Maximum timestep (TMAX)** and entering the desired time step or by enabling **Minimum number of time points** button and entering the desired number of points to be calculated

**Note** The value of TMAX is determined by dividing the interval between the specified analysis start and end times by the minimum number of time points specified.

- specify the plotting increment to be used by enabling **Set plotting increment** and entering a value less than the specified maximum time step value in the **Plotting increment (TSTEP)** field. If possible, the size of the time steps taken during the simulation will begin with the plotting increment and will continue to increase to the value specified by the maximum time step.

You can have the initial conditions set to zero, or you can use the steady state values of the circuit under analysis. During and/or after circuit construction, you can specify node voltages. These forced values can also be used as initial conditions for the analysis.

If possible, the size of the time steps taken during the simulation will begin with the plotting increment and will continue to increase to the value specified by the maximum time step.

## 8.19 RF Analyses



RF analyses (Characterizer, Noise Figure and Matching Networks analyses) are performed through the Network Analyzer instrument and are described in the the “RF” chapter on page 14-15.

## 8.20 Nested Sweep Analyses



Temperature Sweep, Parameter Sweep and DC Sweep analyses can be performed in a nested fashion, with a series of sweeps being performed, each within the constraints of the sweep before it. For example, you could perform a temperature sweep on the results of a parameter sweep.

- To perform a Nested Temperature or Parameter Sweep Analysis:
  1. Open the Parameter Sweep screen by choosing either **Temperature Sweep** or **Parameter Sweep** from the **Analyses** menu.
  1. In the Parameter Sweep screen, from the **Analysis to Sweep** drop-down list, select Nested Sweep.
  2. Click **Edit Analysis**.
  3. The Nested Parameter Sweep screen appears. The top line indicates you are defining nested sweep level 1.

The label of the screen indicates this is the first level sweep.

Because you are defining a portion of a nested sweep analysis, you cannot simulate from this screen. Click **Accept** or **Cancel** to display the previous nested sweep level.

4. Set the parameters as desired.
5. To create another level of the nest, again select Nested sweep from the **Analysis to sweep** drop-down list.

6. Click **Edit Analysis**. A new Nested Parameter Sweep screen appears, this time indicating that you are at nest Level 2.

You can continue to add nested sweeps by repeating this procedure.

7. To return to the higher level, saving your changes, click **Accept**. To return to the higher level without saving your changes, click **Cancel**.
  8. When all nested analyses have been defined, click **Simulate**.
- To perform a Nested DC Sweep Analysis:
1. Select the source for the sweep from the **Source** drop-down list in the **Source 2** section of the screen.
  2. Enter a value in each of the following fields: **Start Value**, **Stop Value**, **Increment**.

## 8.21 Batched Analyses



You can batch together different analyses, or different instances of the same analysis, to be performed in sequence. This provides a convenient way for advanced users to perform multiple analyses from a single, interpreted command.

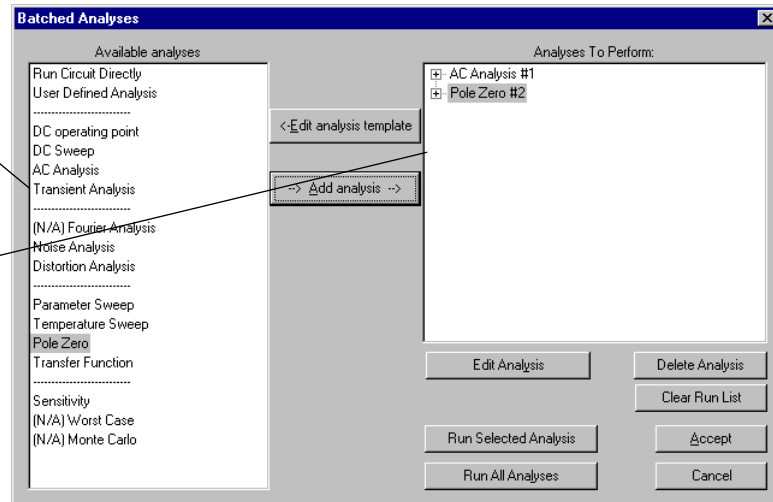
For example, you might use batched analyses to:

- repeatedly perform the same set of analyses, such as when trying to fine-tune a circuit
  - prepare demonstrations of circuit principles, for educational purposes
  - build a record of the analyses that you performed on the circuit
  - set up a sequence of long analyses to run automatically.
- To set up batched analyses:

1. Choose **Analysis/Batched Analyses**. The Batched Analyses screen appears:

This is the list of analyses that could be added to the batch.

This is the list of analyses to be performed in the batch. To see summary information about an analysis, click the "+" beside the analysis.



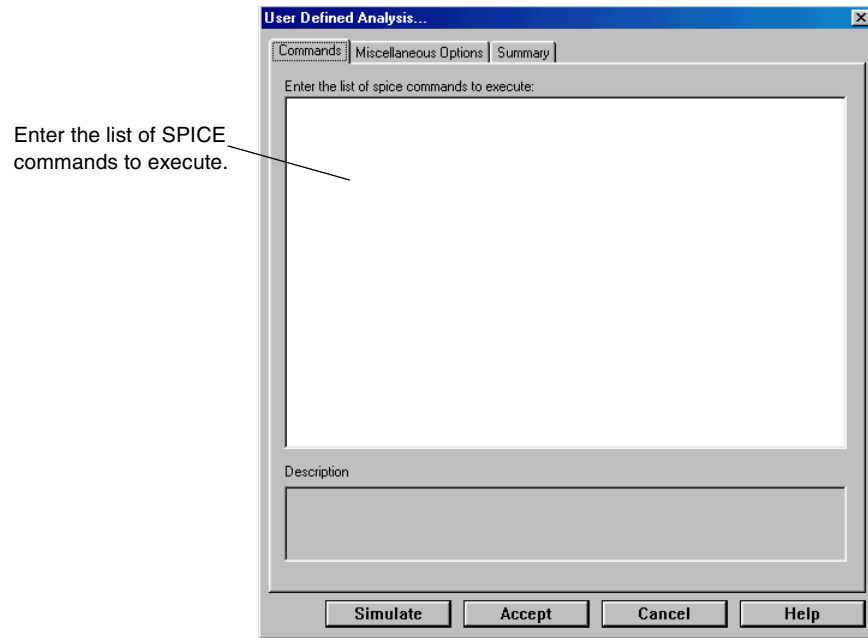
2. To add an analysis to the batch, select it and click the **Add Analysis** button. The parameters screen for the selected analysis, so you can set the parameters for the analysis. However, instead of an **Accept** button, the screen has an **Add to Batch** button.
3. When you have finished the settings for the analysis, click **Add to Batch**. The analysis is added to the **Analyses to Perform** list on the right. Summary information can be revealed by clicking the "+" beside the analysis.
4. Continue to add analyses as desired. Note that the settings for one instance of an analysis become the default settings for that analysis during this operation. For example, if you set your first DC Sweep to an increment of 0.6, the 0.6 increment is the default value when you add your next DC Sweep to the batch.
5. To run just one of the analyses in the batch, select it and click **Run Selected Analysis**. To run all of them, click **Run All Analyses**.

The Summary tab shows the results of the analyses performed in the session.

- To edit an analysis' parameters in the batch, select it and click **Edit Analysis**. The selected analysis' parameters screen appears, allowing you to make any modifications you wish to the analysis.
- To remove an analysis from the batch, select it and click **Remove Analysis**. To remove all analyses, click **Remove All Analyses**.

## 8.22 User-Defined Analyses

The user-defined analysis presents you with the following screen into which you can type SPICE commands to be executed to perform the analysis.



You require a working knowledge of SPICE to use this interface. IT provides an advanced, fully customizable way for you to set up your own analyses.

## 8.23 Noise Figure Analysis



This analysis is part of Multisim's RF Design module (standard in the Power Professional version, optional in the Professional version) and is described in the "RF" chapter.



## 8.24 Viewing the Analysis Results: Error Log/Audit Trail

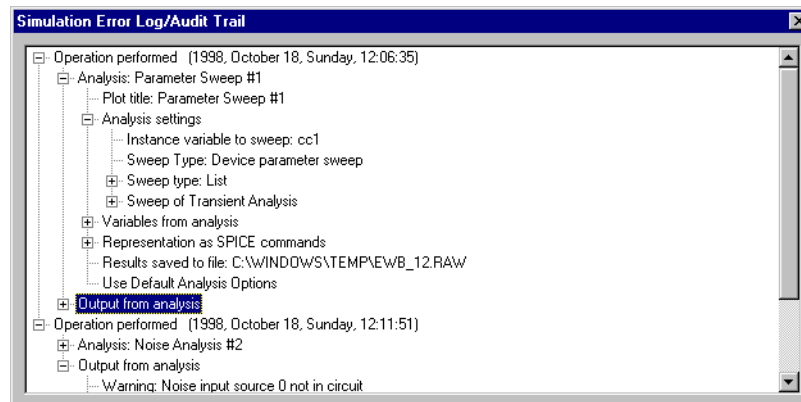
When you click **Simulate** to begin simulating the circuit using the chosen analysis or analyses, you may see one or both of the following views of the results:

- the error log/audit trail, which displays the results in text format (explained here)
- the Grapher, which displays the results in graphical format (explained in the next section)

If you set the analysis option ACCT on, the error log/audit trail also includes errors or warning messages generated during simulation, and a chart of simulation statistics. For more on analysis options, see “Analysis Options” on page 8-70.

To have the error log/audit trail appear, from the **View** menu choose **Show/Hide Simulation Error Log/Audit Trail**.

The error log/audit trail display is useful for diagnosing the analysis and its results. Here is an example display:



As with the summary information, you can show or hide details from this display. Each analysis you perform, either individually or in batch, during this Multisim session, is stored in the audit trail. The file is cleared when you exit Multisim.

## 8.25 Viewing the Analysis Results—Grapher



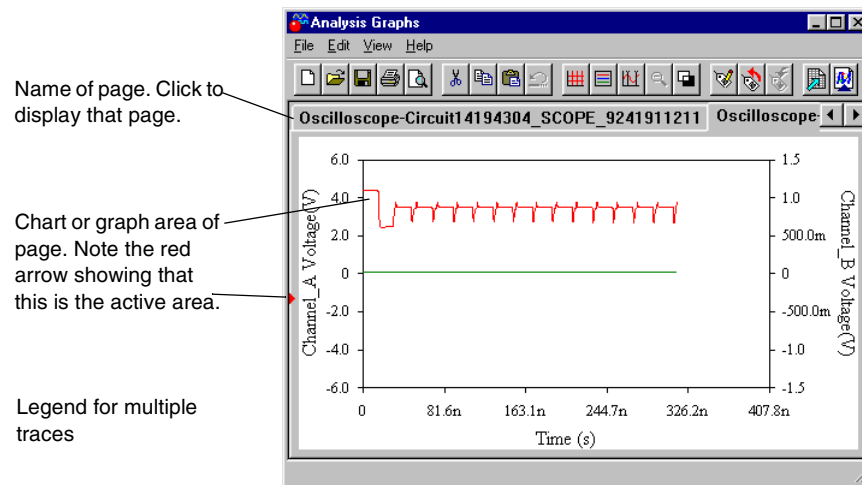
To have the Grapher appear, from the **View** menu choose **Show/Hide Grapher**.

The Grapher is a multi-purpose display tool that lets you view, adjust, save, and export graphs and charts. It is used to display:

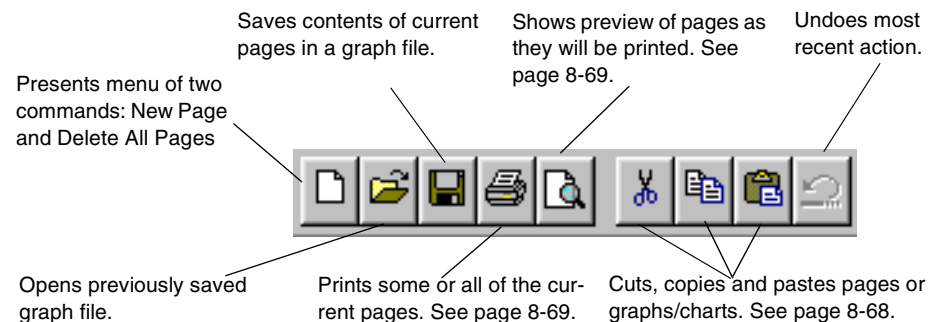
- the results of all Multisim analyses in graphs and charts
- a graph of traces for some instruments (for example, oscilloscope and Bode Plot).

The display shows both graphs and charts. In a graph, data are displayed as one or more traces along vertical and horizontal axes. In a chart, text data are displayed in rows and columns. The window is made up of several tabbed pages.

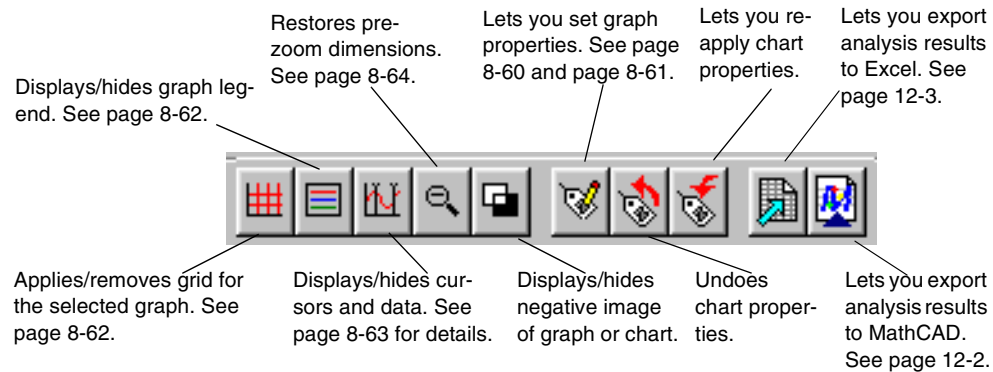
Each page has two possible active areas, indicated by the red arrow: the whole page, or the chart/graph displayed on that page. Some functions, such as cut/copy/paste, affect only the active area, so be sure you have selected the desired area before performing a function.



The window offers a number of buttons on a toolbar (which can be dragged to a new location):



When the window is on the screen, it remains visible until you do one of the following:



- Close the window.
- or
- Toggle off **Analysis/Display Graphs**.

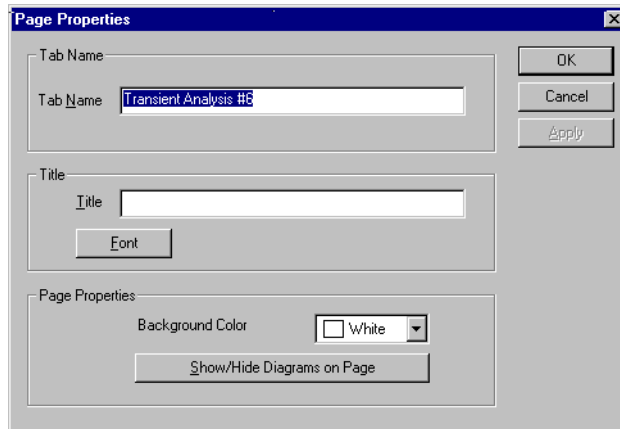
## 8.26 Working with Pages

Every analysis you perform on a circuit displays its results on a separate page. Every trace may also appear on a separate page, if that is how you have set up your analysis.

- To view a page, click its tab.
- To scroll through pages (when there are too many tabs to fit in the available space), click the forward or reverse arrow buttons that appear at the right edge of the tabs.
- To change page properties:
  1. Select a page by clicking its tab.



- Click the **Properties** button. The Page Properties screen appears.



To change:	Do this:
Name of the tab	modify <b>Tab Name</b> field
Title of chart or graph	modify <b>Title</b> field
Title's font	click <b>Font</b> button and choose from fonts displayed
Background color of page	select from <b>Background Color</b> drop-down list box
Which diagrams appear on the page	click <b>Show/Hide Diagrams on Page</b> and select from the list that appears.

- To apply the change and close the screen, click **OK**. To apply the change and leave the screen open for additional selections, click **Apply**.

## 8.27 Working with Graphs

To help you examine graphical data, you can use a grid, a legend and vertical cursors. You can also zoom in on any part of a graph. You can apply these tools separately or together. In addition, you can change several graph display characteristics from the tabs of the Graph Properties screen.

**Note** To display the Graph Properties screen or to use the buttons described in this section, you must have a graph selected. If the Page Properties screen appears, you have a *page* selected rather than a *graph*. Click on a graph to select it. A red arrow appears to the left of the graph to indicate it is selected.

**Note** The Graph Properties screen allows you to click either **OK** or **Apply**. Clicking **OK** applies the change and closes the screen. Clicking **Apply** applies the change and leaves the screen open for additional selections.

## 8.27.1 Grids and Legends

➤ To apply a grid to a graph:

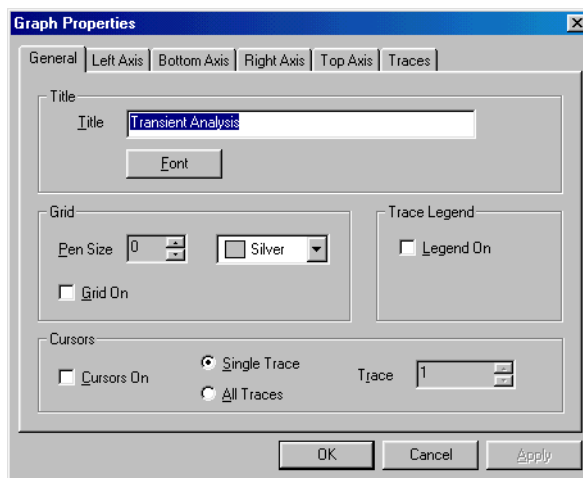


1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Toggle Grid** button. To remove the grid, click the button again.

or



1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears. Click the General tab.



3. Enable the **Grid On** option. If desired, change the grid pen size and color.

➤ To apply a legend to a graph:



1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Toggle Legend** button. To remove the legend, click the button again.

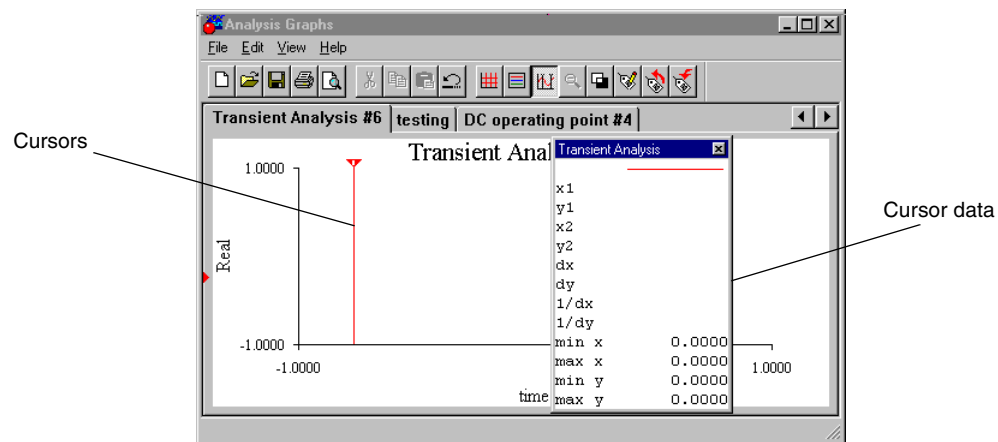
or

1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.
3. Select the General tab.

4. Enable the **Legend On** option. If desired, change the labels of the traces using the Traces tab. See page 8-67 for details.

## 8.27.2 Cursors

When you activate the cursors, two vertical cursors appear on the selected graph. At the same time, a window pops up, displaying a list of data for one or all traces.



The cursor data includes:

x1,y1	(x,y) co-ordinates for the left cursor
x2,y2	(x,y) co-ordinates for the right cursor
dx	x-axis delta between the two cursors
dy	y-axis delta between the two cursors
1/dx	reciprocal of the x-axis delta
1/dy	reciprocal of the y-axis delta
min x, min y	x and y minima within the graph ranges
max x, max y	x and y maxima within the graph ranges

➤ To activate the cursors:



1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Toggle Cursors** button. To remove the cursors, click the button again.

or



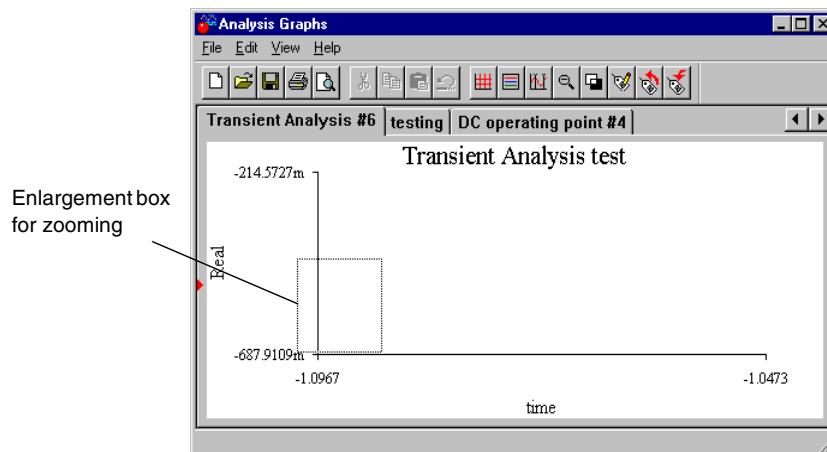
1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.

## Analyses

2. Select the General tab.
  3. Enable the **Cursors On** option.
  4. Select **Single Trace** to view cursor data for one trace or **All Traces** to
  5. view cursor data for all traces. If you select **Single Trace** and there is more than one trace in your graph, use the **Trace** field to select the one you want.
- To move a cursor, click and drag it horizontally.

### 8.27.3 Zoom and Restore

- To zoom in on any part of a graph:
1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
  2. Click and drag the pointer until the dotted enlargement box covers the region of the graph that you want to zoom in on



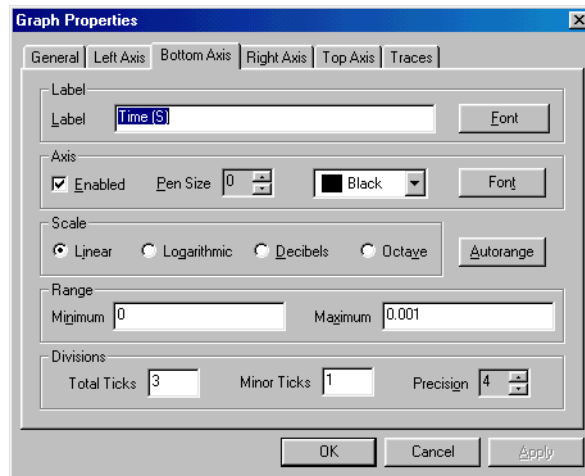
3. Release the mouse button. The axes are scaled and the graph redrawn based on the enlargement box.

or



1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.

3. Click an axis tab to zoom along that axis. For example, choose the Bottom Axis tab to zoom along the horizontal dimension. (Check the Traces tab to see which axis is used for the range you want to zoom.)



4. Type a new minimum and maximum.

- To restore a graph to its original scale, click the **Restore** button.



## 8.27.4 Title

- To apply a title to a graph:

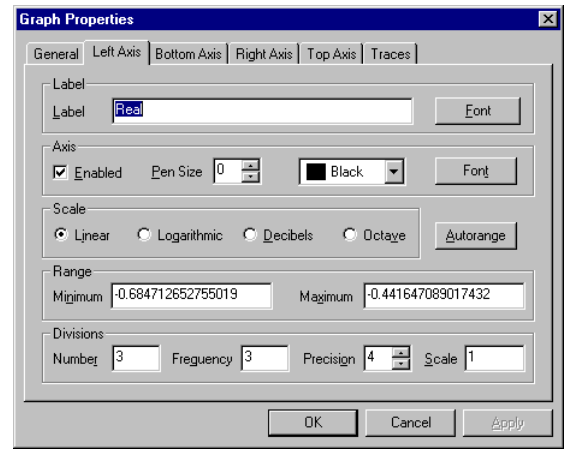
1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.
3. Choose the General tab.
4. Type a new title. To change the title's font, click the **Font** button.





### 8.27.5 Axes

You can change several characteristics of a graph's axes from the four axes tabs in the Graph Properties screen. The options are identical in each of the tabs.



- To change the characteristics of an axis:
1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
  2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.
  3. Click the axis tab for the axis you want to change.
  4. Change any of the axis' characteristics, using the following fields:.

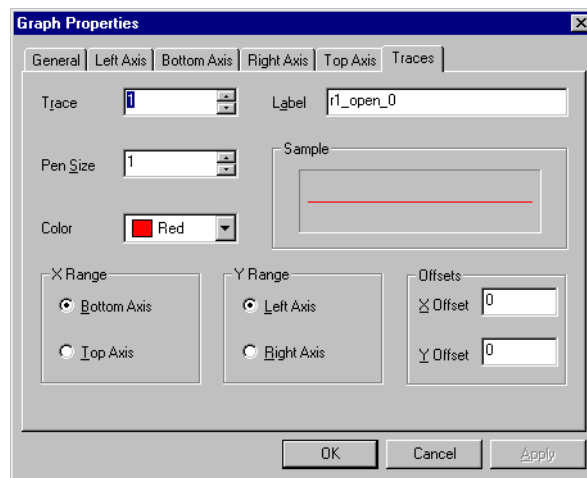


Field	Use
Label	Label for the axis. To change the axis font, click <b>Font</b> .
Pen Size	Controls thickness and color of axis and font of axis' values. To change color or font, click <b>Color</b> or <b>Font</b> .
Minimum/Maximum	Controls minimum and maximum values displayed. Values change when you zoom.
Number	Sets number of tick marks on axis.
Frequency	Sets occurrence of values on tick marks. For example, "2" means that a value appears every two tick marks.
Precision	Sets number of significant digits for axis values.
Scale	Sets multiplication factor for axis values. Changes the scale of the axis.

Field	Use
Enabled	Determines whether or not axis appears.

## 8.27.6 Traces

You can change several characteristics of each trace in a graph from the Traces tab in the Graph Properties screen.



- To change the characteristics of a trace:
1. Select a graph by clicking anywhere on it.
  2. Click the **Properties** button. The Graph Properties screen appears.
  3. Click the Traces tab.
  4. Select a trace.
  5. Change any of the trace's characteristics, using the following fields:



Field	Use
Trace	Specifies trace whose properties are being affected.
Label	Specifies label for trace. Appears in legend.
Pen Size	Controls thickness of trace.

Field	Use
Color	Controls color of trace. The <b>Sample</b> box shows a preview.
Bottom Axis/Top Axis	Controls X range of trace.
Left Axis/Right Axis	Controls Y range of trace.
X Offset/Y Offset	Value to offset trace from original coordinates.

## 8.28 Viewing Charts

To help you examine and organize a chart, you can sort rows, adjust column widths, change precision and add a title.

- To sort a row of data, click the column name button of the column you want to sort by. Sorting order is from low to high for numbers; otherwise, it is alphabetical.
- To adjust the width of a column, click and drag the left edge of the column name button.
- To change the chart's column precision (number of significant digits) or title:



1. Select a chart by clicking anywhere on it.
2. Click the **Properties** button. The Chart Properties screen appears.
3. To change the chart title, type a new title. To change the font, click the **Font** button.
4. To change a column's precision, select a column number and a precision (number of significant digits). Precision only affects columns that contain numerical values.
5. Click **OK**.

## 8.29 Cut, Copy and Paste

The Grapher window lets you cut, copy and paste pages, graphs and charts.

**Note** You must use the cut, copy and paste buttons from this window. You cannot use the Multisim menus, buttons or keyboard shortcuts for these functions.

- To cut, copy and paste pages:



1. Select a page by clicking on its tab.
2. Click the **Cut** or **Copy** button.
3. Click the **Paste** button. The cut or copied page appears.

**Note** When a page is selected (the red arrow points to the tab), cut, copy and paste affect page properties only. They do **not** affect the graphs or charts on the page.

- To cut, copy and paste graphs and charts:
  1. Select a graph or chart.
  2. Click the **Cut** or **Copy** button.
  3. Click the **Paste** button to paste the graph or chart onto the same page.  
or, to paste onto a new page:



- Click the **New** button.
- 4. Choose **New Page**.
- 5. Type a tab name and click **OK**.
- 6. Click the **Paste** button.

**Note** When a graph or chart is selected (the red arrow points to the graph or chart), cut, copy and paste affect the selected graph or chart only. They do **not** affect overall page properties.

- To open a new page, click the **New** button and choose **New Page**.
- To delete all pages, click the **New** button and choose **Delete All Pages**.
- To open an existing graph file:



- 1. Click the **Open** button. A file browser appears.
- 2. Select the file you want to open. Graph files have the file extension **.gra**.
- 3. Click **Open**.

- To save a graph file:



- 1. Click the **Save** button. A file browser appears.
- 2. Select a file you want to overwrite or type a new filename. Graph files have the file extension **.gra**. The file extension is automatically added.
- 3. Click **Save**.

## 8.30 Print and Print Preview

- To view the printed pages before you print:



- 1. Click the **Print Preview** button. One or two pages appear in the window.
  - Use **Next Page** and **Prev Page** to scroll through the pages.
  - Use **One Page/Two Page** to toggle between viewing one or two pages at a time.
  - Use **Zoom In**, **Zoom Out** to control the zoom on the pages.



- 2. Click **Print** to open the print screen and print the pages.

or

Click **Close** to close print preview.

➤ To print pages:

1. Click the **Print** button on the toolbar or from the print preview. The print screen appears.
2. If desired, enable **Print to file**.
3. Choose a print range.
4. Choose the number of copies.
5. Enable **Collate** if required.
6. Click **OK**.

Printed graphs indicate a key to the line colors or styles (for black and white printers) and label the names of all traces.

**Note** Colored lines are distinguished through different line styles for black and white printers.

## 8.31 Analysis Options

Multisim lets you control many aspects of the simulation used within the analyses, such as resetting error tolerances, selecting simulation techniques and viewing the results. Simulation efficiency is also dependent on the options you choose.

This section briefly describes the simulation options you have for controlling simulation used within the analyses and lists their default values. You will find these options through the Miscellaneous Options tabs of the various analyses screens, as explained on page 8-6.

Code	Option Name	Description	Default	Unit	Recommendation
ACCT	Print simulation statistics	Turns on/off display of statistical data on simulation-related information. Data may be useful for debugging simulation-related problems. Data appears in the Grapher screen.	Off	-	-

GMIN	Minimum conductance	Resets the minimum conductance used in any circuit branch. Cannot be zero. Increasing this may positively improve the convergence of the solution; however, it will also negatively affect simulation accuracy.	1.0e-12	mho	Do not change default.
RELTOL	Relative error tolerance	Resets the relative error tolerance of the simulation, which is the universal accuracy control. The value can significantly affect the convergence of the solution and the simulation speed. Value must be between 1 and 0.	0.001	-	Use typical values between 1.0e-06 and 0.01.
ABSTOL	Absolute error tolerance	Resets the absolute current error tolerance. Default is suitable for most bipolar transistor VLSI circuits.	1.0e-12	A	Generally, set to 6 to 8
VNTOL	Voltage error tolerance	Resets the absolute voltage error tolerance of the program.	1.0e-06	V	Generally, set to 6 to 8 orders of magnitude smaller than the largest voltage signal in the circuit.
TRTOL	Truncation error overestimation factor	Resets transient error tolerance. Only used in the local truncation error criterion.	7	-	Use default value
CHG-TOL	Charge error tolerance	Resets the charge tolerance in coulombs.	1.0e-14	C	Do not change default.
PIVTOL	Minimum acceptable pivot	Resets the absolute minimum value for a matrix entry to be accepted as a pivot.	1.0e-13	-	Do not change default.
PIVREL	Minimum acceptable ratio of pivot	Resets the relative value between the largest column entry in the matrix and an acceptable pivot value. Value must be between 1 and 0.	0.001	-	Do not change default.

## Analyses

TNOM	Nominal temperature	Resets the normal temperature at which model parameters are measured and calculated.	27	°C	Do not change unless you want your circuit to match data book specifications that were extracted at a temperature other than 27°C.
ITL1	DC iteration limit	Resets the upper bound limit to the number of Newton-Raphson iterations during a DC operating point analysis.	100	-	If you receive the error message "No convergence in DC analysis", increase the ITL1 value to 500 or 1000 and rerun the analysis.
ITL2	DC transfer curve iteration limit	Resets the DC transfer curve iteration limit.	50		
ITL4	Upper transient iteration limit	Resets the upper bound limit to the number of Newton-Raphson iterations at each transient time point. Increasing the value may slow down transient simulation time. Decreasing the value increases the chance of in-convergence.	10	-	If you receive the error message "Time step too small" or "No convergence in transient analysis", increase the ITL4 value to 15 and rerun the analysis.
DEFL	Default MOS-FET length	Resets the value for MOS channel length.	0.0001	μm	Use default value unless you know how to specify a value from a MOS device datasheet.
DEFW	Default MOS-FET width	Resets the value for MOS channel width	0.0001	μm	Use default value unless you know how to specify a value from a MOS device datasheet.
DEFAD	Default MOS-FET area of drain	Resets the value for MOS drain diffusion area.	0	m <sup>2</sup>	Use default value unless you know how to specify a value from a MOS device datasheet.

DEFAS	Default MOS-FET area of source	Resets the value for MOS source diffusion area.	0	m <sup>2</sup>	Use default value unless you know how to specify a value from a MOS device datasheet.
BYPASS	Allow bypass of unchanging elements	Turns off/on the device bypass scheme for nonlinear model evaluation. Turning off may increase simulation time.	On	-	Do not change default.
MAX-ORD	Maximum integration order	Sets the maximum order for integration when GEAR chosen as transient analysis integration method. Must be between 2 and 6. Using a higher order theoretically leads to more accurate results, but slows down simulation.	2	-	Use the default value for most circuit simulation.
TEMP	Operating temperature	Resets the temperature at which the entire circuit will be simulated. Setting in the Analysis Parameters screen will override.	27	°C	-
OLD-LIMIT	Use SPICE2 MOSfet limiting		-	-	
ITL6	Steps in source stepping algorithm	Sets the number of steps in the Gmin stepping algorithm. Helps find a solution during a DC operating point analysis. See "Convergence Assistance Algorithms" on page 7-9 for more information.	10	--	-
GMIN-STEPS	Number of Gmin steps	Sets the number of steps in the Gmin stepping algorithm. Helps find a solution during the DC operating point analysis. See "Convergence Assistance Algorithms" on page 7-9 for more information. If a zero value is specified, the Gmin stepping algorithm is disabled.	10	-	-



## Analyses

MIN-BREAK	Minimum time between breakpoints		0		
NOOP-ITER	Go directly to Gmin stepping		-	-	
METHOD	Integration method	Selects for transient analysis. Default provides faster simulations with same numerical accuracy, but can produce unintended results.	TRAP-EZODAL	-	Use GEAR (gear integration method) if unwanted numerical oscillations occur during simulation or if circuit contains ideal switches. Use default if circuit operates in oscillation mode, for example, oscillator circuits. Be aware that Gear integration may overdamp results.
TRYTO-COMPACT	Try compaction for LTRA lines	Applicable only to lossy transmission line component. When option turned on, Multisim tries to reduce data storage and memory usage needed for transient simulation of circuits containing lossy transmission lines.	Off	-	-
BADMO S3	Use old mos3 model (discontinuous with respect to kappa)		-	-	
KEEP-POP-INFO	Record operating point for each small-signal analysis	Retains the operating point information whether an AC, Distortion, or Pole-Zero analysis is run.	-	-	Particularly useful if the circuit is large and you do not want to run a redundant ".OP" analysis.
NOOPALTER	Do not do analog/event alternation in DCOP		-	-	

RAMP-TIME	Transient analysis supply ramping time	Ramps independent sources, capacitor and inductor initial conditions from zero to their final values during the time period specified.	0	s	-
MAXEV-TITER	Maximum event iterations at analysis point		0		
MAXO-PALTER	Maximum analog/event alternations in DCOP		0		
CONV-LIMIT	Enable convergence assistance on code models	Enables/disables a convergence algorithm used in some built-in component models.	ON	-	-
CONV-ABSSTEP	Absolute step allowed by code model inputs between iterations	Controls automatic convergence assistance by establishing an absolute step size limit in solving for the DC operating point.	0.1	-	-
CONV-STEP	Fractional step allowed by code model inputs between iterations	Controls automatic convergence assistance by establishing a relative step size limit in solving for the DC operating point.	0.25	-	-
AUTO-PARTIAL	Use auto-partial computation for all models		-	-	

## Analyses

RSHUNT	Shunt resistance from analog nodes to ground	Inserts resistance to ground at all analog nodes in the circuit. Reducing value reduces simulation accuracy.	Disabled (1.0e12 when disabled)	W	Should be set to some very high resistance, say $1\text{e}+12\Omega$ . If you get a “No DC path to ground” or a “Matrix is nearly singular” error message, try decreasing RSHUNT to $1\text{e}+9\Omega$ or $1\text{e}+6\Omega$ .
	Temporary file size for simulation.	Allows you to adjust the file size for storage of simulation results. When the file reaches its maximum size, you are prompted to stop simulation, use remaining disk space and continue, or discard existing data and continue.	10	Mb	If your circuit has many nodes and you want to scroll the oscilloscope back in time to the start of the simulation, you may need to increase the temporary file size.

## Chapter 9

# Postprocessor

9.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	9-1
9.2	Introduction to the Postprocessor. . . . .	9-1
9.3	Using the Postprocessor . . . . .	9-2
9.3.1	Basic Steps . . . . .	9-2
9.3.1.1	Using the Default Analysis . . . . .	9-4
9.3.1.2	Creating Multiple Traces . . . . .	9-6
9.3.2	Working with Pages, Graphs and Charts. . . . .	9-7
9.4	Postprocessor Variables . . . . .	9-8
9.5	Available Functions . . . . .	9-8

Postprocessor

# Chapter 9

## Postprocessor

### 9.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains how to use the Postprocessor to mathematically manipulate the results of simulation obtained through analyses in different ways. Several examples are provided at the end of the chapter.

To use the Postprocessor, you must have performed at least one analysis on your circuit. This chapter assumes that you are familiar with the analyses offered by Multisim, and the Analysis Graphs function that displays analysis results. For details, see the “Analyses” chapter.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 9.2 Introduction to the Postprocessor

The Postprocessor allows you to manipulate the output from analyses performed on a circuit and plot the results on a graph or chart. The plotted results are referred to as “traces”. Types of mathematical operations that can be performed on analysis results include: arithmetic, trigonometric, exponential, logarithmic, complex, vector, logic, etc.

The following examples illustrate possible uses of the Postprocessor:

- Divide the output curve by the input curve obtained from a transient analysis, and observe the results.
- Multiply a voltage by a current to observe circuit power.
- Assess the differences caused by minor changes to your circuit. For example, run an analysis on a circuit, then change one condition of the circuit (such as changing the input voltage of the component’s value) and run the analysis again. Subtract one set of results from the other to show the effect of the circuit modification.

## 9.3 Using the Postprocessor

The Postprocessor calculates the results of equations and plots these results as “traces” on graphs and charts. To use the Postprocessor, you build the equations yourself by combining the variables from previous circuit analysis results with mathematical functions.

To build equations for the Postprocessor, you must have performed at least one analysis. When you perform an analysis on a circuit, the results appear in the Grapher screen and are stored for use by the Postprocessor. Some analysis results may have been saved only for the Postprocessor. For information on performing analyses, see the “Analyses” chapter.

### 9.3.1 Basic Steps

- To construct an equation from which a trace will be plotted, you select variables (from previous analyses) and mathematical operators, successively moving from the left side of the equation to the right. Follow the steps below:

1. Click the Postprocessor button on the Design Bar. The Postprocessor screen appears.

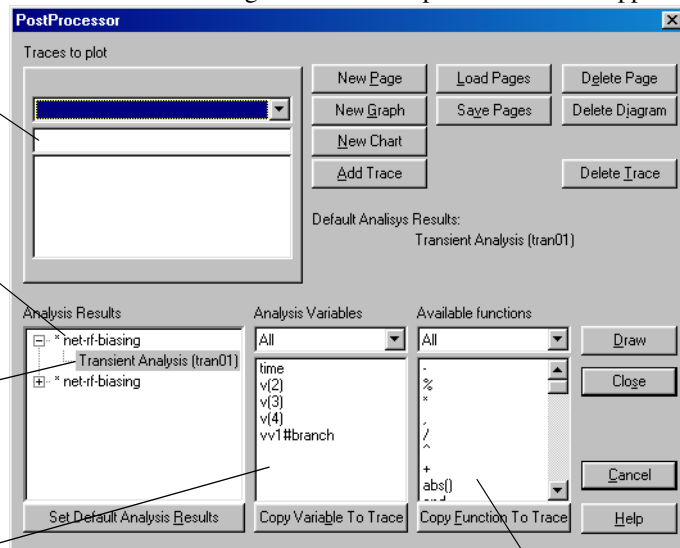


This is where you will build your Postprocessor equations.

This is the name of the circuit on which analyses have been performed in this session.

This is an analysis performed on this circuit.

These are the variables that resulted from the selected analysis.



These are the mathematical functions available for use in your equations.

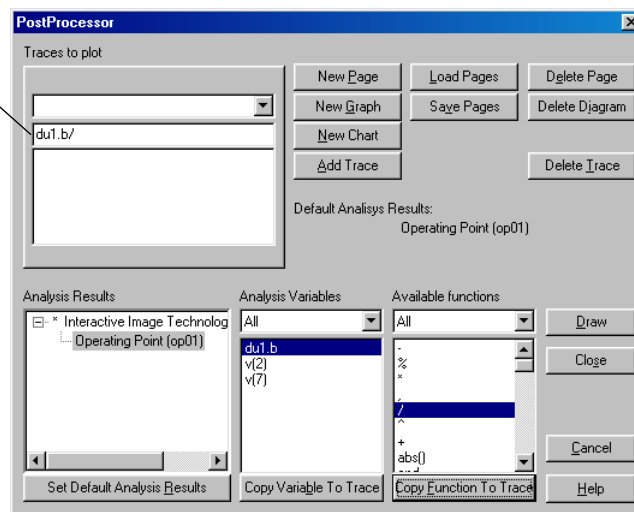
2. In the **Analysis Results** list, click the “+” sign beside the item naming the first analysis whose results you want to work with. Each analysis is identified with a name followed by a code in brackets. That code will be used to identify the variables from that analysis when

the trace is plotted. The variables that resulted from that analysis appear in the **Analysis Variables** list. For more about the syntax of these variables, see page 9-8.

To filter the **Analysis Variables** list to show only certain variables, choose from the drop-down list of options to show:

- all variables
  - top level variables only (not those in subcircuits)
  - subcircuit variables only
  - open pins variables only
  - device parameters variables only.
3. From the **Analysis Variables** list, select the variables you want included in the equations being used to define the trace, and click **Copy Variable to Trace**. The variable appears in the “Traces to plot” window, prefixed with the code of the analysis from which it is drawn (unless the selected analysis is the default analysis — for details on using the default analysis, see page 9-4).

Here is the equation you are building, which will be used to plot the trace. Note how the variables are prefixed with the analysis code. In this example, the first variable comes from the analysis “disto03” and the second from analysis “dc05”.

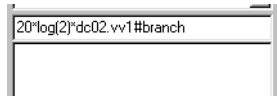


4. From the **Available Functions** list, select the mathematical function you want included in the equation for this trace, and click **Copy Function to Trace**. To filter the list to show only certain mathematical functions, choose from the drop-down list of options. For details about the available functions, see page 9-8.

**Note** Although it is possible to manually type or modify a trace’s equation, manual intervention can introduce syntax errors. Wherever possible, use the “copy” buttons to build your traces.



- Continue to choose analyses, variables and functions until the equation is complete. For example, your equation might look like this:



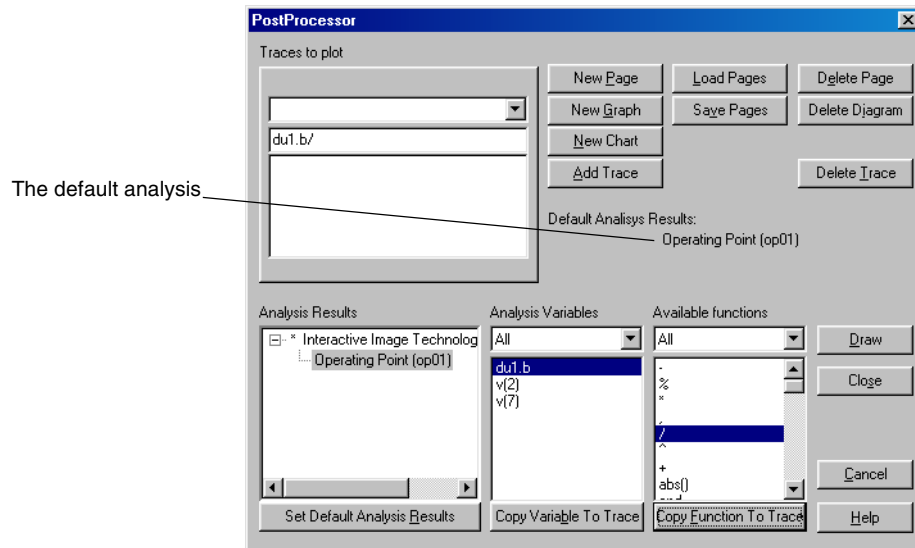
- To plot the traces defined by this equation, click **Draw**.
- You are prompted for a page name. This is the name of the tabbed page that will display the results in the Grapher. It is also the name given to the Postprocessor page on which the trace will be stored.
- Depending on the trace, you are prompted for a Grapher graph name, plot name, or both. If prompted for both, and you do not want to create one of them, click **Cancel** when prompted for that name.
- The results of the Postprocessor plotting the trace appear in the Grapher screen, on pages with the names you specified (that is, one for a plot, one for a graph), along with the results of the analyses previously performed. Results, including errors, are also recorded in the audit trail. If the audit trail is not already open, you can open it from the **View** menu.
- The equation as shown in the “Traces to plot” window moves down a line, leaving the top line free for a new trace. For more on working with multiple traces, see page 9-6.

### 9.3.1.1 Using the Default Analysis

The equation you build using the Postprocessor contains variables that are prefixed with their analysis' code. To simplify the equation and the trace displayed on the graph, you can set one of the analyses to be the default analysis.

The Analysis Results list always contains one analysis defined as the default. The default is the analysis that, in the absence of any other indication, the Postprocessor uses for calcula-

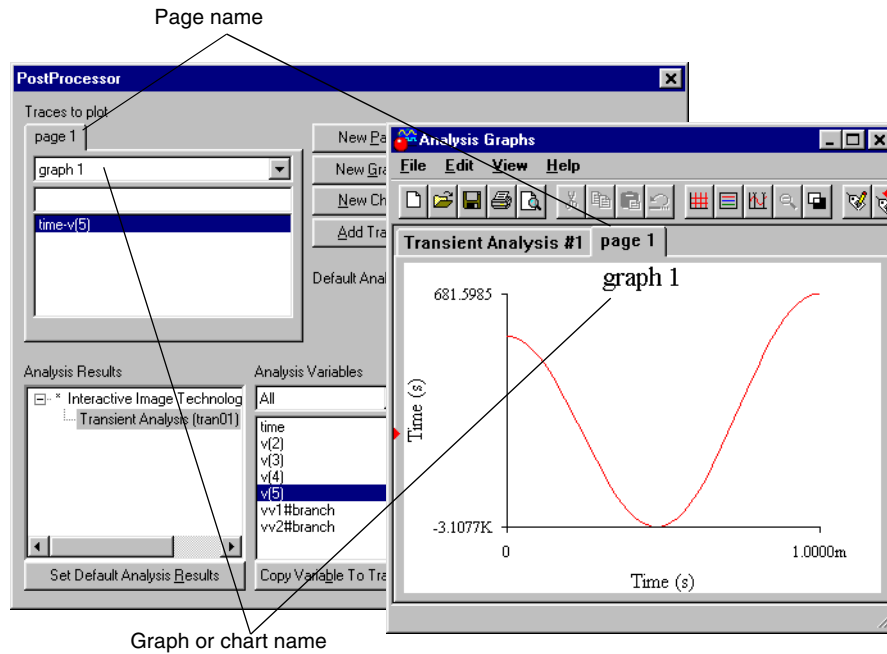
tions. Variables from the default analysis do not have identifying prefixes in the equation or when the trace is plotted.



The default analysis is identified on the Postprocessor screen at the bottom of the **Analysis Results** list. To change the default analysis, select the desired analysis and click **Set Default Analysis Results**. The equation changes to reflect your choice.

### 9.3.1.2 Creating Multiple Traces

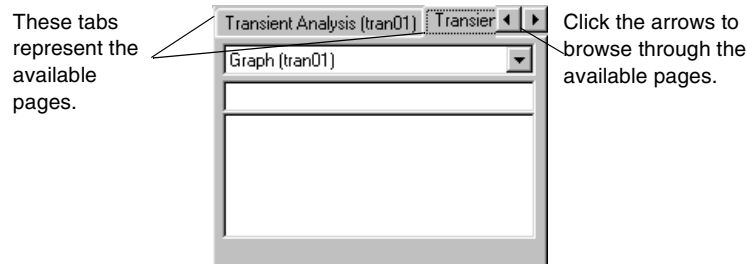
The Postprocessor screen uses the same conventions as the Grapher screen, as shown below:



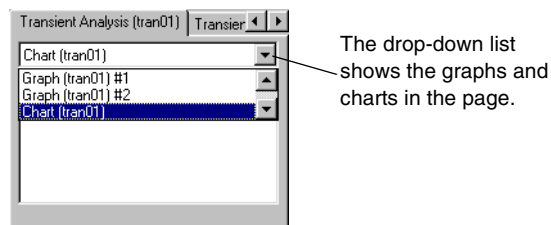
- To add another trace to a page:
1. Click on the tab of the page to which you want to add the trace.
  2. Create the trace as usual.
  3. When you click **Draw**, the trace is added to the current page. To add it without drawing, click **Add Trace**.

## 9.3.2 Working with Pages, Graphs and Charts

- To add another page for holding traces, click **New Page**. You are prompted for a name for the page. When you click **OK**, a tab with that name is added to the Postprocessor.



- To add a graph or chart to an existing page:
  1. Click on the tab of the page to which you want to add the graph or chart.
  2. Click **New Graph** or **New Chart**. You are prompted for a name.
  3. The name is added to the drop-down list for that page.



Each chart or graph on a page appears on the same tab in the Grapher screen.

- To remove a trace, select it and click **Delete Trace**.
- To delete a page, select it and click **Delete Page**.
- To save the current set of pages, click **Save Pages**. Navigate to the location where you want to save the file and provide a file name.
- To load a saved set of pages, click **Load Pages**, navigate to the location of the saved file, select it and click **Open**.

## 9.4 Postprocessor Variables

The variables that appear in the **Analysis Variables** list of the Postprocessor are based on the selected analysis. They can include any or all of the following:

- v(#) voltage in node, where # represents the node number
- vv# #branch branch current through voltage source “vv#” (vv# represents the voltage source name)
- expr.x# expression within subcircuit x#

## 9.5 Available Functions

The functions you can apply to the Postprocessor variables are:

Symbol	Type	Description
+	Algebraic	plus
-	Algebraic	minus
*	Algebraic	times
/	Algebraic	divided by
^	Algebraic	to the power of
%	Algebraic	percentage
,	Algebraic	complex 3,4 = 3 + j (4)
abs()	Algebraic	absolute value
sqrt()	Algebraic	square root
sin()	Trigonometric	sine
cos()	Trigonometric	cosine
tan()	Trigonometric	tangent
atan()	Trigonometric	inverse tangent
gt	Relationship	greater than
lt	Relationship	less than
ge	Relationship	greater than or equal to

Symbol	Type	Description
le	Relationship	less than or equal to
ne	Relationship	not equal to
eq	Relationship	equal to
and	Logic	and
or	Logic	or
not	Logic	not
db()	Exponential	$20 \log_{10}(\text{mag}(\text{vector}))$
log()	Exponential	logarithm (base 10)
ln()	Exponential	natural logarithm (base 3)
exp()	Exponential	e to the vector power
j()	Complex	$i (\sqrt{-1})$ times vector
real()	Complex	real component of vector
image()	Complex	imaginary part of vector
vi()	Complex	$\text{vi}(x) = \text{image}(\text{v}(x))$
vr()	Complex	$\text{vr}(x) = \text{real}(\text{v}(x))$
mag()	Vector	magnitude
ph()	Vector	phase
norm()	Vector	vector normalized to 1 (that is, the largest magnitude of any component is 1)
rnd()	Vector	random
mean()	Vector	results in a scalar (a length 1 vector) that is the mean of the elements of the vector
Vector( <i>number</i> )	Vector	results in a vector of length <i>number</i> , with elements 0, 1, ... <i>number</i> -1. If <i>number</i> is a vector than just the first element is taken, and if it isn't an image then the floor of the magnitude is used.
length()	Vector	length of vector

## Postprocessor

Symbol	Type	Description
deriv()	Vector	derivative of vector — uses numeric differentiation by interpolating a polynomial and may not produce satisfactory results, particularly with iterated differentiation. Only calculates the derivative with respect to the real component of the vector's scale.
max()	Vector	maximum value from vector
min()	Vector	minimum value from vector
vm()	Vector	$vm(x) = \text{mag}(v(x))$
vp()	Vector	$vp(x) = \text{ph}(v(x))$
yes	Constat	yes
true	Constat	true
no	Constat	no
false	Constat	false
pi	Constat	pi
e	Constat	natural logarithm base
c	Constat	speed of light in vacuum
i	Constat	square root of -1
kelvin	Constat	degrees kelvin
echarge	Constat	fundamental charge
boltz	Constat	Boltzman's constant
planck	Constat	Planck's constant







## Chapter 10

# HDLs and Programmable Logic

10.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	10-1
10.2	Overview of HDLs within Multisim . . . . .	10-2
10.2.1	About HDLs . . . . .	10-2
10.2.2	Using Multisim with Programmable Logic . . . . .	10-2
10.2.3	Using Multisim for Modeling Complex Digital ICs . . . . .	10-3
10.2.4	How to Use HDLs in Multisim. . . . .	10-3
10.2.5	Introduction to VHDL . . . . .	10-4
10.2.5.1	VHDL: A Standard Language . . . . .	10-5
10.2.5.2	A Brief History of VHDL. . . . .	10-5
10.2.6	Introduction to Verilog . . . . .	10-5
10.3	Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device . . . . .	10-7
10.4	Designing, Simulating, and Debugging with Multisim's VHDL . . . . .	10-8
10.4.1	What is Multisim's VHDL? . . . . .	10-8
10.4.1.1	Design Management Features . . . . .	10-8
10.4.1.2	Simulation Features . . . . .	10-9
10.4.1.3	Synthesis Features . . . . .	10-9
10.4.1.4	Feature Summary . . . . .	10-9
10.4.2	Creating a Project and Using the Hierarchy Browser. . . . .	10-10
10.4.2.1	Creating a Project File. . . . .	10-10
10.4.2.2	Setting Project Options . . . . .	10-11
10.4.2.3	Adding a VHDL Module. . . . .	10-13
10.4.2.4	Examining the Project Hierarchy. . . . .	10-14
10.4.3	Using the VHDL Wizard . . . . .	10-17
10.4.3.1	Invoking the New Module Wizard . . . . .	10-17
10.4.3.2	Specifying the Port List . . . . .	10-17
10.4.3.3	Adding Functionality to a Module . . . . .	10-19
10.4.3.4	Compiling a Module . . . . .	10-23
10.4.3.5	Updating (Rebuilding) Your Project Hierarchy . . . . .	10-24
10.4.4	Using the Test Bench Wizard. . . . .	10-24
10.4.4.1	Invoking the Test Bench Wizard . . . . .	10-25

10.4.4.2	Verifying the Port List . . . . .	10-26
10.4.4.3	Modifying the Test Bench . . . . .	10-27
10.4.5	Using Simulation . . . . .	10-29
10.4.5.1	Understanding Simulation . . . . .	10-29
10.4.5.2	Loading the Project . . . . .	10-30
10.4.5.3	Compiling Modules for Simulation. . . . .	10-31
10.4.5.4	Linking Modules for Simulation. . . . .	10-33
10.4.5.5	Setting Simulation Options. . . . .	10-34
10.4.5.6	Loading the Simulation Executable. . . . .	10-36
10.4.5.7	Starting a Simulation Run . . . . .	10-37
10.4.6	Working with Waveforms and Cursors. . . . .	10-38
10.4.7	Using the Debug Window . . . . .	10-39
10.4.7.1	Understanding Source-Level Debugging . . . . .	10-39
10.4.7.2	A Sample Project . . . . .	10-40
10.4.8	Using Multisim's LIB. . . . .	10-47
10.4.8.1	Multisim's LIB Overview . . . . .	10-47
10.4.8.2	Examining the Contents of a Library File . . . . .	10-48
10.4.8.3	Adding a .AN File to a Library. . . . .	10-48
10.4.8.4	Deleting a .AN File Reference from a Library . . . . .	10-48
10.5	VHDL Synthesis and Programming of FPGAs/CPLDs. . . . .	10-49
10.5.1	What does VHDL Synthesis do? . . . . .	10-49
10.5.2	Multisim's VHDL Synthesis Features. . . . .	10-50
10.5.3	Using Multisim's VHDL Synthesis . . . . .	10-51
10.5.3.1	Working with Multiple Modules . . . . .	10-52
10.5.3.2	Design Partitioning Recommendations. . . . .	10-55
10.6	Simulating a Circuit Containing a Verilog-Modeled Device . . . . .	10-57
10.7	Design, Simulation and Debug with Multisim' Verilog . . . . .	10-57
10.8	Verilog Synthesis and Programming of CPLDs/FPGAs. . . . .	10-59

# Chapter 10

## HDLs and Programmable Logic

### 10.1 About this Chapter

This chapter deals with Hardware Description Languages (HDLs) generally, and more specifically with the two most common HDLs: VHDL and Verilog, and their usage in Multisim. It also addresses one of the most common applications of using HDLs — designing with programmable logic devices and the process of synthesis.

This chapter is divided into three main parts: section 10.2 provides a brief overview of HDLs within Multisim, sections 10.3 to 10.5 deal with VHDL, and sections 10.6 to 10.8 deal with Verilog. Important information, particularly for newcomers to HDLs, also exists in the VHDL appendix.

This chapter is primarily of use to those with the VHDL or Verilog Design, Simulate and Debug module of Multisim, included in the Power Professional version and available as an add-on product to Professional Edition users. Also available is a separate add-on product that includes the ability to simulate a circuit containing a device for which the model already exists in VHDL or Verilog, but not the ability to write or design VHDL/Verilog source code.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 10.2 Overview of HDLs within Multisim

#### 10.2.1 About HDLs

HDLs are designed specially to describe the behavior of complex digital devices. For this reason they are referred to as “behavioral level” languages. They can use behavioral level models (instead of transistor/gate level, like SPICE) to describe the behavior of these devices. Using

HDLs avoid the unwieldy task of describing such devices at the gate level, greatly simplifying the design process.

Designers typically choose from two different HDLs: VHDL and Verilog. Multisim supports both of these languages.

HDLs are commonly used for modeling complex digital ICs that could not easily be modeled in SPICE, or for designing circuits in programmable logic. Multisim supports both of these applications of HDLs.

### 10.2.2 Using Multisim with Programmable Logic

Designing circuits using programmable logic is becoming increasingly common as engineers deal with the need for shorter design cycles, smaller products, and lower cost results. Programmable logic devices (PLDs) generally fall into three broad categories (listed in order of increasing complexity):

- PLAs (the original Programmable Logic Devices, introduced just after the earlier, simpler Programmable Array Logic)
- CPLDs (Complex PLDs)
- FPGAs (Field Programmable Gate Arrays).

All such devices share a common characteristic: they have standard blocks of digital logic and a means of interconnecting these blocks on the semiconductor. This allows you to program the device to perform a particular function. In spite of this common characteristic, however, each of these three broad classes of devices uses a different architecture for its logic blocks and the interconnections between them. Describing these varying architectures that the device vendors use for implementing blocks/interconnects within the semiconductor wafers is beyond the scope of this chapter, but is covered sufficiently in many text books on the subject.

This chapter deals with CPLDs and FPGAs because simple PLDs are not often designed using VHDL or Verilog. Such simple PLDs are now less common and typically programmed with the older ABEL or CUPL languages, not addressed in Multisim. The following is a list of the key steps in designing with CPLDs and FPGAs:

- creating/writing source code in VHDL or Verilog
- simulating/analyzing the operation/performance of that code
- debugging the code to generate final source code
- synthesizing the source code (specific to a particular device vendor)
- fitting (for CPLDs) or placing a routing (for FPGAs)
- physically programming the device.

The last two steps in the process must be done with tools provided by the programmable logic device vendor and are therefore not a part of Multisim.

### 10.2.3 Using Multisim for Modeling Complex Digital ICs

In addition to using Multisim for Programmable Logic design, you may also use it to write VHDL or Verilog code, modeling the behavior of complex digital ICs. Alternatively, you may accomplish the same thing by obtaining models for certain devices through the public domain, from device vendors, or from others in your company who have written or obtained them. If you already have a model, you do not need to program in VHDL or Verilog. Multisim will simulate such components as part of a board level circuit, as long as the model exists. See “Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device” on page 10-6 for details.

### 10.2.4 How to Use HDLs in Multisim



- To use Multisim for writing, simulating and debugging HDL source code and/or for synthesizing HDLs, click the **VHDL/Verilog** button on the design bar. You are offered the following choices:

- VHDL simulation
- VHDL synthesis
- Verilog simulation
- Verilog synthesis.

Each option brings up its own screen appropriate to the specific task. The options are described in this chapter.

- To use Multisim to simulate a circuit containing a device for which the model exists in VHDL or Verilog (instead of SPICE), just begin simulation, as described in the “Simulation” chapter. As long as the model exists in Multisim, or you have added it using the Component Editor (described in detail in the “Component Editor” chapter), Multisim will automatically select the appropriate type of simulation engine when you begin simulation, as explained in “Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device” on page 10-6. Multisim also deals with the communication between the various simulation engines, without manual intervention. This function is unique to Multisim and is described in “Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device” on page 10-6.

### 10.2.5 Introduction to VHDL

VHDL is a programming language that has been designed and optimized for describing the behavior of digital hardware circuits and systems. As such, VHDL combines features of a simulation modeling language, a design entry language, a test language, and a netlist language.

VHDL is an extremely comprehensive and extensive language, and cannot be entirely covered in this manual. However, an introduction to programming in VHDL, including a detailed primer and a set of examples, can be found in the “Verilog Primer” appendix.

As a simulation modeling language, VHDL includes many features appropriate for describing the behavior of electronic components ranging from simple logic gates to complete microprocessors and custom chips. Features of VHDL allow electrical aspects of circuit behavior (such as rise and fall times of signals, delays through gates, and functional operation) to be precisely described. The resulting VHDL simulation models can then be used as building blocks in larger circuits (using schematics, block diagrams or system-level VHDL descriptions) for the purpose of simulation.

Just as high-level programming languages allow complex design concepts to be expressed as computer programs, VHDL allows the behavior of complex electronic circuits to be captured into a design system for automatic circuit synthesis or for system simulation. This process is called “design entry”, and is the first step taken when a circuit concept is to be realized using computer-aided design tools.

Design entry using VHDL is very much like software design using a software programming language. Like Pascal, C and C++, VHDL includes features useful for structured design techniques, and offers a rich set of control and data representation features. Unlike these other programming languages, VHDL provides features allowing concurrent events to be described. This is important because the hardware being described using VHDL is inherently concurrent in its operation. Users of PLD programming languages such as PALASM, ABEL, CUPL and others will find the concurrent features of VHDL quite familiar. Those who have only programmed using software programming languages will have some new concepts to grasp.

One area where hardware design differs from software design is in the area of testing. One of the most important (and under-utilized) aspects of VHDL is its use as a way to capture the performance specification for a circuit, in the form of a test bench. Test benches are VHDL descriptions of circuit stimulus and corresponding expected outputs that verify the behavior of a circuit over time. Test benches should be an integral part of any VHDL project and should be created in parallel with other descriptions of the circuit.

VHDL is also useful as a low-level form of communication between different tools in a computer-based design environment. VHDL’s structural language features allow it to be effectively used as a netlist language, replacing (or augmenting) other netlist languages such as EDIF.

### 10.2.5.1 VHDL: A Standard Language

One of the advantages of using VHDL is that it is a standard in the electronic design community. As a result, you will be able to use your design concepts because the design entry method you have chosen is supported in a newer generation of design tools.

You will also be able to take advantage of the most up-to-date design tools and have access to a knowledge base of thousands of other engineers, many of whom are solving problems similar to your own.

### 10.2.5.2 A Brief History of VHDL

VHDL (VHSIC [Very High-Speed Integrated Circuit] Hardware Description Language) was developed in the early 1980s as a spin-off of a high-speed integrated circuit research project funded by the U.S. Department of Defense. During the VHSIC program, researchers had to describe circuits of enormous scale (for their time) and manage very large circuit design problems that involved multiple teams of engineers. With only gate-level design tools available, it soon became clear that better, more structured design methods and tools would be needed.

There are a number of progressively more advanced standards that define VHDL in detail, as described in the “VHDL Primer” appendix. All are supported by Multisim. The major milestones in the VHDL standards evolution are summarized below:

- first introduction of publicly available version of VHDL (1985)
- IEEE Standard 1076 — basis of almost all of today’s products, released in 1987 and updated in 1993/94
- IEEE Standard 1164 — solves problem of non-standard types
- IEEE Standard 1076.3 — the standard for synthesis
- IEEE Standard 1076.4 — adds timing information, known as VITAL.

## 10.2.6 Introduction to Verilog

For future implementation.



Page intentionally left blank.

## 10.3 Simulating a Circuit Containing a VHDL-Modeled Device

This section explains the simulation of a device that has a VHDL model as part of a board level circuit. The next two sections — “Designing, Simulating, and Debugging with Multisim’s VHDL” on page 10-7 and “VHDL Synthesis and Programming of FPGAs/CPLDs” on page 10-48 — introduce you to the VHDL design capabilities of Multisim for FPGAs, CPLDs or complex digital ICs. These sections are not intended as a VHDL reference, although you will find a basic introduction to the VHDL language in the “VHDL Primer” appendix.

Multisim has a unique co-simulation capability that lets you run a simulation without knowing how to create the models for each component. This is standard for Multisim — after all, when running a SPICE simulation of a board-level circuit, you do not need to create or understand the SPICE models of each component.

If you have purchased a version of Multisim that includes VHDL, or a VHDL add-in product, you can include, in your board level designs, devices for which VHDL models are available. When you run a simulation, in the same way you run a standard board level simulation, Multisim uses the correct simulation engines. Multisim also manages the process of interactivity among these multiple simulators and consolidates the results for analysis and display. You need not know how to program in VHDL to use such components and their models.

To include a VHDL-modeled device in your board level simulation, it must have a model written in VHDL and then compiled. Possible sources of such components are:

- public domain
- device vendors
- colleagues who have models for such devices or have written such models themselves.

Once you have such a model, you import it into Multisim using the Component Editor. See the “Component Editor” chapter for details.

This functionality vastly increases the power of your simulation by expanding the types of components that can be simulated to include even very complex digital parts, including programmable logic devices, for which SPICE models would be unreasonable.

- To simulate a circuit containing a VHDL modeled component, follow the same procedures as outlined in the “Simulation” chapter.

## 10.4 Designing, Simulating, and Debugging with Multisim's VHDL

This section describes the major programming, simulation/analysis and debugging capability for working at the VHDL source code level. It also contains an example design to assist in explaining the functionality of Multisim VHDL, which you may follow along with. You will find this section useful if you are writing your own models of complex digital components or, more likely, as the start of the programmable logic design process.

### 10.4.1 What is Multisim's VHDL?

Multisim's VHDL is a design entry and simulation system that is intended to help you use the VHDL language for advanced circuit design projects. It is also an excellent way to learn VHDL. The system includes a VHDL simulator, source code editor, hierarchy browser, source level debugging, and on-line resources for VHDL users. If you have purchased a synthesis option, Multisim's VHDL allows you to control synthesis options and start the synthesis process from within the Multisim's VHDL environment.

You can use Multisim's VHDL to create and manage new or existing VHDL projects. Because VHDL is a standard language, you can use Multisim's VHDL in combination with other tools, including schematic editors, high-level design tools, and other tools available from third parties.

#### 10.4.1.1 Design Management Features

Multisim's VHDL includes many useful features that help you to create, modify and process your VHDL projects. Some of these features are as follows:

- The Hierarchy Browser shows you an up-to-date view of the structure of your design as you are entering it. This is particularly useful for projects that involve multiple VHDL source files (called "modules") and/or multiple levels of hierarchy.
- The VHDL Wizard helps you create new VHDL design descriptions, by asking you a series of questions about your design requirements, and generating VHDL source file templates for you based on those requirements.
- The built-in dependency ("make") features help you streamline the processing of your design for simulation and for synthesis.

When you are ready to simulate your design, for example, you simply highlight the design unit (a source file module, entity, architecture, etc.) you wish to have processed and click a single button. There is no need to compile each VHDL source file in the design, or to keep track of your source file dependencies. Multisim's VHDL does it for you.

### 10.4.1.2 Simulation Features

The simulator built-in to Multisim's is a complete system for the compilation and execution of VHDL design descriptions. The simulator includes a VHDL compiler, linker, and simulator. VHDL design descriptions are compiled into a 32-bit native Windows executable form. When run, these executable files interact with the Multisim's VHDL system to allow interactive debugging of your circuit.

The Multisim VHDL compiler, linker and simulator are native 32-bit Windows applications; meaning that they are fast and capable of processing very large design descriptions.

Simulation results (in the form of graphical waveforms and/or textual output) can be easily saved for later or printed on any Windows-compatible printer.

### 10.4.1.3 Synthesis Features

The optional synthesis packages for Multisim's VHDL allow design descriptions to be quickly and easily processed into netlists optimized for specific target hardware, such as FPGA devices. Synthesis options are controlled from within the Options screen of Multisim's VHDL. The Hierarchy Browser is used to invoke synthesis, allowing complete control over the synthesis process. For details on Multisim's Verilog synthesis capability, see "Simulating a Circuit Containing a Verilog-Modeled Device" on page 10-55.

### 10.4.1.4 Feature Summary

The following features have been provided in Multisim's VHDL:

- **Source-Level Debugging**  
Source-level debugging is provided via a window that allows you to follow the execution of your VHDL design at the level of VHDL source file statements. This is particularly useful for debugging complex sequential statements, determining the order in which statements are processed, and understanding the impact of scheduling, delta cycles and other complex aspects of model execution.  
An important feature of the source-level debugging window is the ability to set break points in your VHDL code. Break points are points at which the simulation will pause execution, making it easier for you to step through the code to analyze its execution and find errors.
- **Multisim's VHDL LIB**  
Multisim's LIB program supplied with Multisim's VHDL can be used to create and maintain Multisim's VHDL library files from your previously-compiled VHDL object files. Multisim's LIB is a DOS application, and is described in detail in "Using Multisim's LIB" on page 10-46.

## 10.4.2 Creating a Project and Using the Hierarchy Browser

Multisim's VHDL operates on one or more VHDL source files that are referenced in a project file. This section describes how to create and use projects, and how to create or import VHDL source files into a project. It assumes you have already clicked the VHDL/Verilog button on the design bar, and then further selected **VHDL Simulation** from the pop-up menu that appears.

A project is composed of a project file and one or more VHDL source files, which are referred to as "modules". The project file, in addition to containing references to the various VHDL modules in your project, also includes various option settings that you have specified for the project. Each module (VHDL source file) includes one or more VHDL design units that can be selected as needed when the design is processed.

Project files (which are created with a .ACC file name extension when you choose File/Save Project) include information about the VHDL modules used in the design, as well as the project-specific options that you have specified. Project files do not include the actual VHDL source statements for your design; instead, the VHDL source statements are maintained in separate VHDL source files, which normally have .VHD file name extensions.

**Note** Multisim's VHDL allows you to use alternative file name extensions, such as .VHDL or VHO, but the built-in text editor will only recognize files with a .VHD file name extension for the purpose of VHDL syntax coloring.

### 10.4.2.1 Creating a Project File

➤ To create a project:

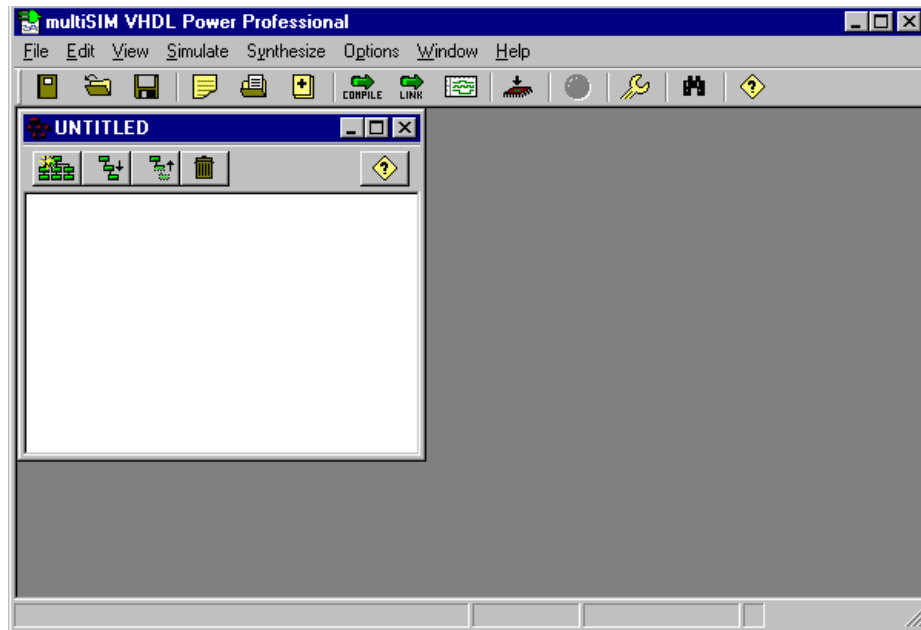


1. Click the **VHDL/Verilog** design bar button, and then choose **VHDL Simulation**. The Multisim's VHDL interface appears.



2. Choose **File/New Project**, or click the **New Project** button.

A blank project is created, and the Hierarchy Browser appears.



The Hierarchy Browser will contain references to each new VHDL module as it is added or created. Before continuing, it is a good idea to establish a working folder and project name by saving the project file.



- To save a project and give it a name, choose **File/Save Project**, or click the **Save Project** button.

After saving your project with a name, you are ready to begin creating or importing VHDL source file modules. First, however, you may want to set a few project options.

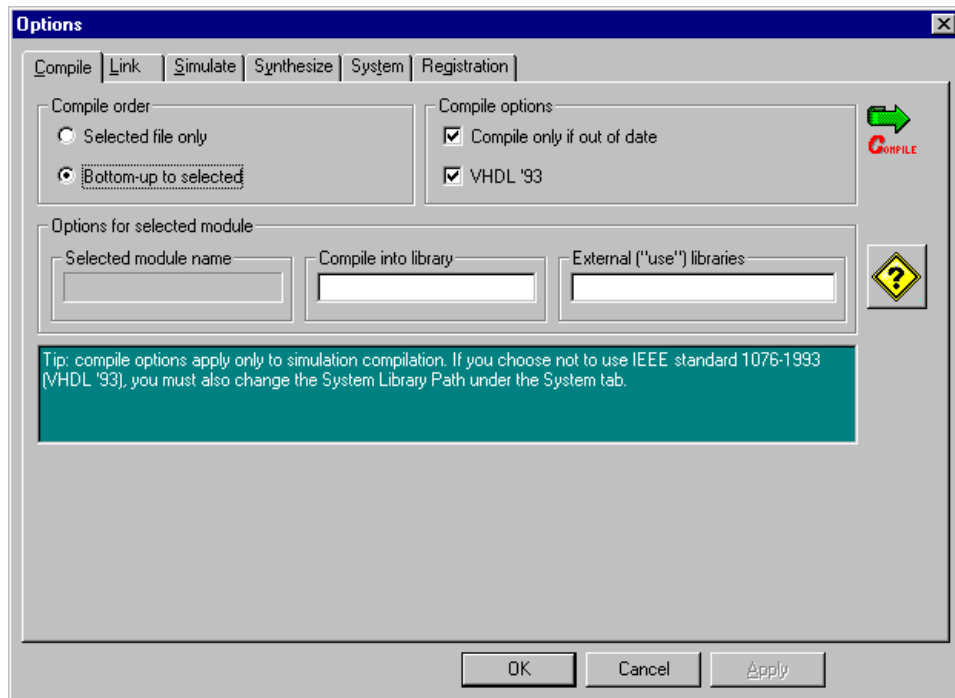
### 10.4.2.2 Setting Project Options

Multisim's VHDL includes a variety of program options that you can specify. Some options available in Multisim's VHDL (such as compile flags and library paths) are related to specific projects, while others (such as the text editor font and toolbar settings) are more general and system-wide. As you learn and use the many features of Multisim's VHDL, you will find it useful to customize the options settings for your own preferences, and for the requirements of your projects.

- To set Multisim's VHDL options:



1. Open the Options screen, either by choosing any item from the Options menu, or by clicking the **Options** button in the Multisim's VHDL toolbar.



2. Click the desired tab, and make your setting.

The Options screen allows you to set a variety of options related to compilation, linking, simulation, synthesis and general program operation. (The options available to you will depend on the product options that you have purchased, for example, Synthesis.)

Most options that you specify in the Options screen are saved with your project, so you can tailor the options to the requirements of a specific project. If you wish to save the options specified as the default options for all new projects, you can check the "Save options as default" option before exiting the Multisim's VHDL application.

When you have finished setting (or simply examining) the Options screen:

3. To exit the screen and save your new option settings, click **OK**. To exit the screen without saving the new settings, click **Cancel**.

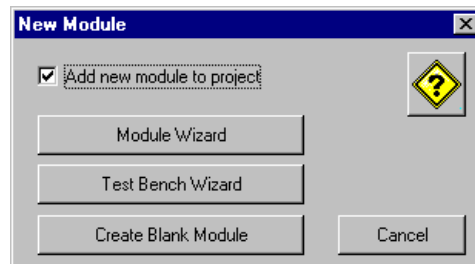
### 10.4.2.3 Adding a VHDL Module

There are two ways to add VHDL modules to your project, depending on whether you are building a project from existing VHDL source files or are creating a new project from scratch.

#### Creating a VHDL Module

If you do not already have VHDL source files to work with, begin by creating a new, blank VHDL module.

- To create a new VHDL module, choose **File/New Module**, or click the **Create New Module** button. The New Module screen appears.



**Note** If you have not already saved your project, you will be prompted to save it before the New Module screen appears.

The New Module screen has three buttons that allow you to create new modules. The **Module Wizard** and **Test Bench Wizard** buttons invoke the VHDL Wizard, which is described in detail in “Using the VHDL Wizard” on page 10-15. The **Create Blank Module** button adds a new, empty module to your project.

- To create a new, empty VHDL module, click the **Create Blank Module** button.

**Note** By default, the new module will be added to your project so it is displayed in the Hierarchy Browser. If you do not wish to have the module added to the Hierarchy Browser, you should disable the **Add new module to project** field in the New Module screen.

At this point, you could add some VHDL source statements to the empty module and save it (by choosing File/Save Module As).

- To remove the module, delete the newly-created module by first closing the text editing window, then highlighting the module name in the Hierarchy Browser and choosing File/Remove Module.

**Note** Removing a module from the Hierarchy Browser does not remove the file from your hard disk. Remove Module only removes the reference to the specified file from the project file.

## Adding an Existing VHDL Module

To import existing VHDL source files (created outside of Multisim's VHDL) into your project, or to copy and use a module (such as a test bench) from one of Multisim's VHDL standard examples, use the Add Module command to add one or more VHDL source file to the Hierarchy Browser display, and to the project. To understand how this works, use the Add Module command to import all the VHDL source file modules from one of Multisim's VHDL standard examples.

- To add an existing module:
  1. Choose **File/Add Module**, or click the **Add Module** button.
  2. Navigate to Multisim's VHDL examples folder (typically “\acc-eda\examples”) and select one of the example directories (for example, “vhd193\cache”).
  3. Highlight (press the SHIFT key and click) all .VHD files listed.
  4. Click **Open** to add all selected .VHD files to your project.

When you import modules using Add Module, if the selected VHDL source files are not in the current project folder, they will be copied to the current folder before being added to the project.

**Note** It is not possible to create projects that directly reference VHDL files located in other folders. You can, however, use the library features of Multisim's VHDL to create pre-compiled modules in different folders on your system. For more details on the library features of Multisim's VHDL see “Using Multisim's LIB” on page 10-46.

### 10.4.2.4 Examining the Project Hierarchy

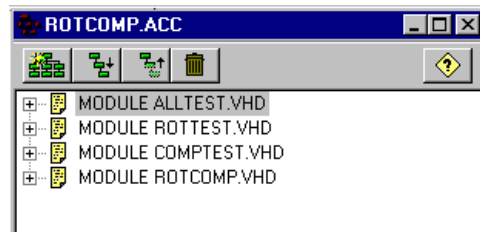
When you have created or imported one or more VHDL modules for your project, you can easily examine the hierarchy of each module and see the relationships between design units found within those modules.

- To examine the hierarchy of the project:
  1. Make the Hierarchy Browser the active window (by clicking within it, or on its title bar).
  2. Choose **File/Rebuild Hierarchy**, or click the **Rebuild Hierarchy** button on the Hierarchy Browser toolbar.



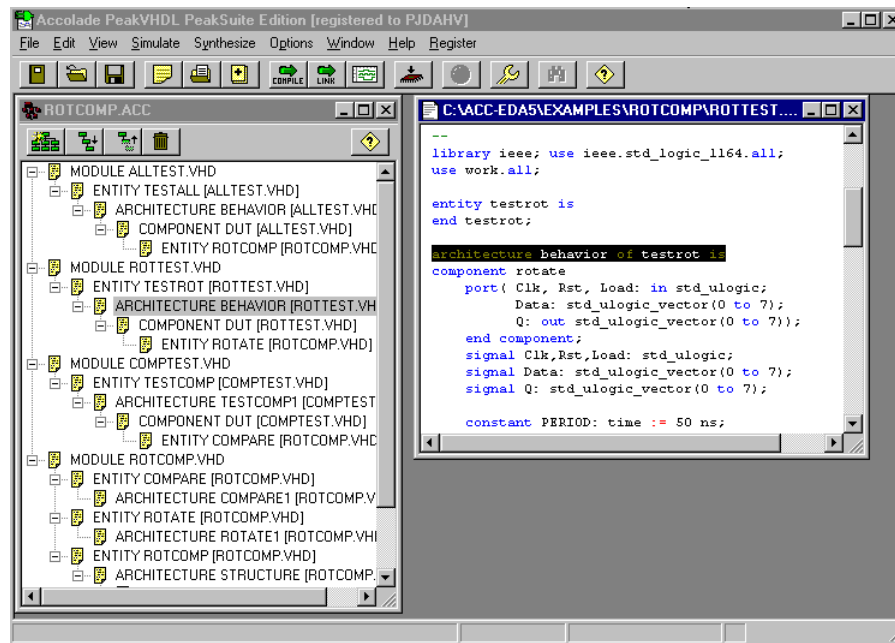


When Rebuild Hierarchy is invoked, all modules in the project are analyzed and a hierarchy tree is created. After the tree is created, you see small “+” icons appearing next to each VHDL module:



You can use these “+” icons to examine the contents of a module, or you can use the Show Hierarchy button to expand and view the entire project hierarchy.

When you examine the complete hierarchy for a module (either by repeatedly clicking on the “+” icons or by clicking once on the Show Hierarchy button), you see listed not only the design units that exist in the current module, but those that exist in other modules referenced from the current module as well. If you wish to examine the VHDL source file associated with any design unit listed in a module’s hierarchy tree, double-click on the design unit name and the source file is loaded into the built-in source file editor of Multisim’s VHDL. This editor (shown below) is a full-featured text editor, and includes features such as search and replace, keyword coloring, and drag-and-drop editing features.



**Note** If you prefer to use your own text editor, you can specify an alternate source file editor in the System Options screen.

Although you can edit and compile VHDL modules without first rebuilding the project hierarchy, you will not be able to link or load a module for simulation, or invoke synthesis or optimization, without first bringing the project hierarchy up-to-date. In addition, you should keep in mind that the project hierarchy is not updated automatically as you modify your project. You should therefore be sure to rebuild the hierarchy any time you make a change to the project that might affect the hierarchy of the project. Changes that can affect the hierarchy include:

- adding or removing VHDL modules
- changing compile library names
- adding or removing component references
- changing entity, architecture or component names
- modifying references to external packages.

### 10.4.3 Using the VHDL Wizard

The VHDL Wizard is a Multisim VHDL feature that allows you to quickly and easily create new VHDL modules and test benches. If you are familiar with writing VHDL source code, you do not need to use this wizard. Instead, you may simply begin design entry by clicking **Create Blank Module**, entering a file name and typing your code in the resulting screen.

However, even some VHDL experts find the use of the VHDL Wizard a time-saver. If you will not be using the wizard, you can skip directly to “Compiling a Module” on page 10-21.

The VHDL Wizard prompts you to enter a list of ports (input and output signals) describing the interface to your new design module, and from that list of ports automatically generates a template module or test bench. After the template module or test bench has been created, you can modify it to add the desired functionality and/or test stimulus.

This section is a step-by-step tutorial designed to show you how Multisim’s VHDL Wizards can make the creation of new design modules fast and easy.

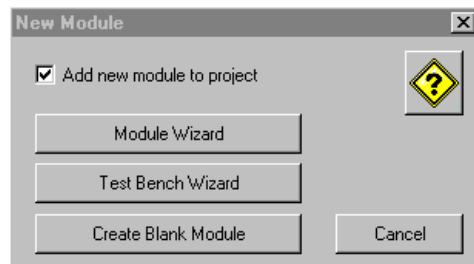
Before beginning this tutorial, you should create a new, empty project as described earlier.

### 10.4.3.1 Invoking the New Module Wizard

- To create a VHDL module using the VHDL Wizard:



1. Choose **File/New Module**, or click the **Create New Module** button on the toolbar.
2. When the New Module screen appears, click **Module Wizard**.

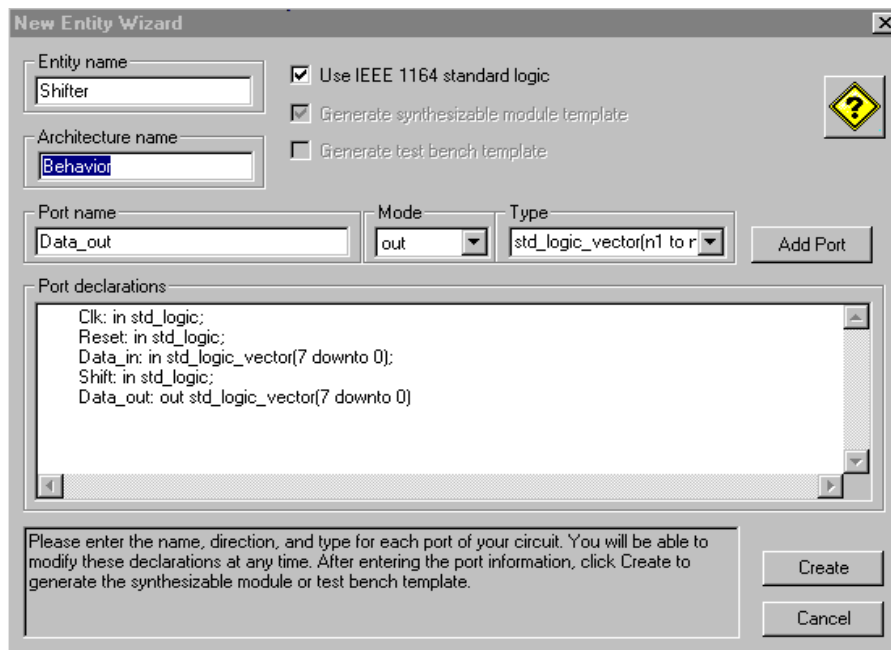


### 10.4.3.2 Specifying the Port List

The Module Wizard generates a template VHDL source file based on the I/O specification (the port list) that you provide. Entering your I/O is easy: just enter the port names, one at a time, along with their direction (or “mode”, in VHDL jargon) and type. The Module Wizard helps you by providing commonly-used modes and types in drop-down selection lists, and by checking to make sure the names that you enter are valid VHDL identifiers. If you are new to the VHDL programming language, see the “VHDL Primer” appendix.

For this tutorial example, we will create a simple shift register that accepts 8-bit data, and shifts (rotates) this data one bit position on the next rising edge of the clock.

- To describe the top-level entity and interface to this sample design in the Module Wizard:
  1. Enter the name of the new module (its VHDL entity name) in the **Entity Name** field.
  2. Enter the name of the new module's architecture in the **Architecture Name** field, or simply leave the field with its default value (architecture name behavior).
  3. Use the **Port Name**, **Mode** and **Type** fields to add port declarations for each of the inputs, as shown below. Be sure to select the correct mode ("in" or "out") for each port as shown. Click **Add Port** to add each port to the port declarations list.



As you enter the ports, you can make changes to them at any time by clicking in the Port declarations edit window. For example, you will probably want to edit ports that are array types to give them valid ranges as shown.

When modifying items within the Port declarations window, keep the following rules in mind:

- Each entry in the port list, with the exception of the last entry, must be terminated by a semicolon.
- There must be only one entry (port identifier) on each line; do not attempt to combine multiple port names on a single line.
- If you make use of IEEE standard logic data types (including `std_logic`, `std_ulogic`, `std_logic_vector` and `std_ulogic_vector`), you must make sure the **Use IEEE standard logic** option is selected.

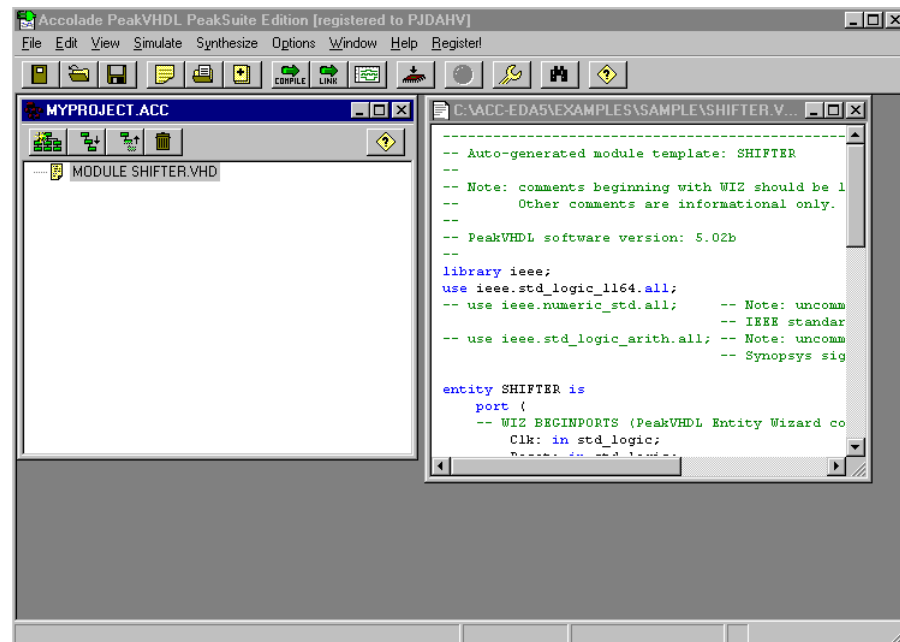
After you have entered all the ports for your design (and have verified that they have the desired modes and types), you are ready to create the new module and save it to a file.

4. Click **Create** in the Module Wizard screen.

The Module Wizard prompts you for a file name (typically a .VHD file).

5. Enter a file name (such as SHIFTER.VHD) or accept the default file name.

Multisim's VHDL saves your new module to the specified file and adds a reference to the file to your project, as shown below.



### 10.4.3.3 Adding Functionality to a Module

After the Module Wizard of Multisim's VHDL has created your module, you need to edit the module to add the appropriate functionality. Multisim's VHDL makes the process easier by generating sample code, and by inserting comments to help guide you as you modify your VHDL code.

Because most new VHDL modules you create will include at least one registered element, the Module Wizard inserts sample VHDL code and comments showing you how to write a synthesizable register element, with a suggested (synthesizable) style for describing the clock and reset logic. For example, the following VHDL source code was generated by the Module Wizard from the port specifications described in the previous section:

```

-----
-- Auto-generated module template: SHIFTER
-- Note: comments beginning with WIZ should be left intact. Other com-
ments are informational only.

library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
-- use ieee.numeric_std.all; --
-- use ieee.std_logic_arith.all; --

entity SHIFTER is
  port (
    -- WIZ BEGINPORTS (Multisim's VHDL Entity Wizard command)
    Clk: in std_logic;
    Reset: in std_logic;
    Data_in: in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
    Shift: in std_logic;
    Data_out: out std_logic_vector(7 downto 0)
    -- WIZ ENDPORTS (Multisim's VHDL Entity Wizard command)
  );

end SHIFTER;
architecture BEHAVIOR of SHIFTER is
  -- Note: signals, components and other objects may be
  declared here if needed.
begin

  -- Sample clocked process (synthesizable) for use in registered
  designs.

  -- Note: replace _RESET_ and _CLOCK_ with your reset and clock names
  as appropriate. (Delete this process if the design is not registered.)
  P1: process(_RESET_, _CLOCK_)
  -- Note: variables may be declared here if needed.
  begin
    if _RESET_ = '1' then
      -- Registers are reset here. Be sure you include reset values for all
      signals that are assigned logic in the process.
      elsif rising_edge(_CLOCK_) then
        -- Note: registered assignments go here. Remember that signal assign-
        ments do not take effect until the process completes.
        end if;
      end process P1;

  -- Note: concurrent statements (including concurrent assignments and
  component instantiations) go here.

```

```
end BEHAVIOR;
```

This template source code can be quickly and easily modified to described the desired function (a shifter). The exact changes needed for this template source code are:

- The template's "dummy" clock and reset signals (`_CLOCK_` and `_RESET_`) must be replaced with the actual clock and reset lines for the design (Clk and Reset, in this example).
- Reset assignments must be added (after the first if statement).
- The clocked operation of the design must be described, using whatever VHDL statements are appropriate.
- Concurrent statements (such as combinational assignments or component instantiations, if any) must be entered where indicated.

Continuing with the shifter example, we might modify the template source code to describe our shifter as follows:

```
-----
-- Auto-generated module template: SHIFTER

-- Note: comments beginning with WIZ should be left intact. Other comments
are informational only.

library ieee;
use ieee.std_logic_1164.all;
-- use ieee.numeric_std.all;
-- use ieee.std_logic_arith.all;

entity SHIFTER is
  port (
    -- WIZ BEGINPORTS (Multisim's VHDL Entity Wizard command)
    Clk: in std_logic;
    Reset: in std_logic;
    Data_in: in std_logic_vector(7 downto 0);
    Shift: in std_logic;
    Data_out: out std_logic_vector(7 downto 0)
    -- WIZ ENDPORTS (Multisim's VHDL Entity Wizard command)
  );

end SHIFTER;

architecture BEHAVIOR of SHIFTER is
  -- Note: signals, components and other objects may be declared here if
  needed.
begin
```

```
-- Sample clocked process (synthesizable) for use in registered
designs.
P1: process(Reset, Clk )
begin
    if Reset = '1' then
        -- Registers are reset here.
        Data_out <= (others => '0');
    elsif rising_edge(Clk) then
        -- Note: registered assignments go here.
        if Shift = '1' then
            Data_out <= Data_in(6 downto 0) & Data_in(7);
        else
            Data_out <= Data_in;
        end if;
    end if;
end process P1;

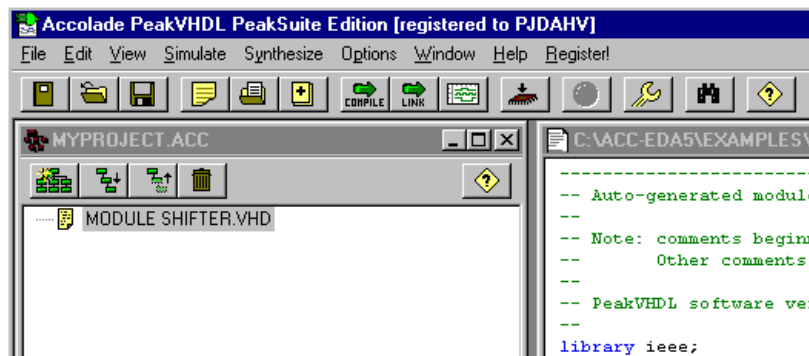
end BEHAVIOR;
```

For more complex (and realistic) designs, you will need to make many such changes and additions to achieve the desired functionality.

### 10.4.3.4 Compiling a Module

After you have modified your new module, you will need to compile it to verify that you have entered your VHDL statements correctly.

- To compile the file:
  1. Select your new module by highlighting its entry in the Hierarchy Browser, as shown below.

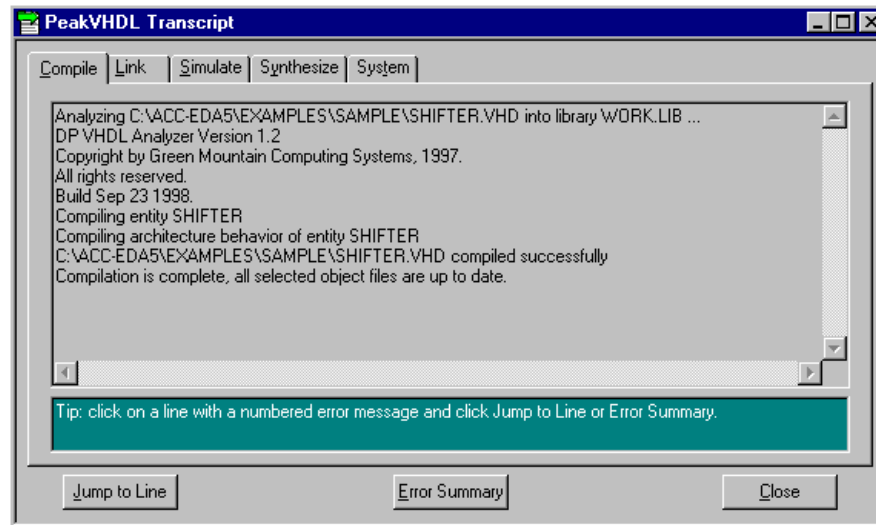






2. Choose **Compile/Compile Selected**, or click the **Compile** button on the toolbar.

A transcript window appears, displaying any error messages:

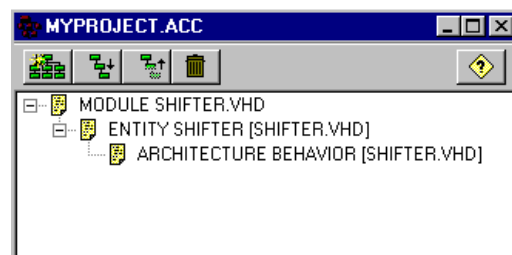


**Note** Depending on the number of syntax errors you have introduced during your editing session, you may need to compile the module more than once. Refer to “Using Simulation” on page 10-28 for more details about finding and fixing syntax and other errors.

### 10.4.3.5 Updating (Rebuilding) Your Project Hierarchy

After you have successfully compiled your new module, and any time you make a change to it (or any other file) that might affect the hierarchy of your design, it is important to update the information in the Hierarchy Browser by rebuilding the project.

- To rebuild your project, click the **Rebuild Hierarchy** button on the Hierarchy Browser toolbar.





After you have rebuilt the project hierarchy, you can view the hierarchy for your new module by clicking on the small plus sign icon to the left of the module name, or by clicking the **Show Hierarchy** button to expand the hierarchy for the entire project.

## 10.4.4 Using the Test Bench Wizard

Before processing a module for simulation, you will need to provide Multisim's VHDL with a test bench. Test benches are VHDL modules that provide input stimulus (and, if desired, output value checking) for VHDL modules that are to be simulated. There are many ways to write test benches (and you can examine many different test bench styles by perusing Multisim's VHDL examples folder), but nearly all VHDL test benches have the following in common:

- They have an entity declaration with no input or output ports.
- They have one or more component declarations describing the interface to the VHDL module being tested (called the unit under test, or UUT).
- They have a series of signal declarations defining local (top-level) signals onto which input values can be assigned, or from which output values can be observed.
- They have one or more component instantiations corresponding to the modules being tested. These component instantiations connect the local signals of the test bench to the corresponding ports of the unit under test (UUT).
- They have one or more process statements describing the sequence of inputs applied to the UUT, and the tests to be performed (if any) on the UUT outputs.

Writing a test bench that includes all of these elements is not difficult, but it can be tedious if the module being tested has many input and output ports.

The Test Bench Wizard helps by automatically generating a basic framework of a test bench, and reduces typing errors by automatically filling in such things as port lists, component declarations and component instantiations. The Test Bench Wizard also generates a sample process for a background clock, and generates informative comments that guide you as you develop your test stimulus.

Just as with the VHDL Wizard, it is not required that you use the Testbench Wizard to generate a testbench for your VHDL module. However, even if you choose not to use the Testbench Wizard, you must generate a testbench if you want to simulate the VHDL module. As a result, if you do not use the wizard, you need to write the source code yourself, after clicking **Create Blank Module** on the screen shown below.

### 10.4.4.1 Invoking the Test Bench Wizard

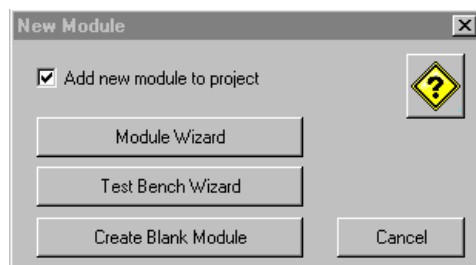
- To create a new VHDL test bench using the Test Bench Wizard:

1. Select (by highlighting) the VHDL module that this test bench will be referencing. For example, select module `SHIFTER.VHD`.

For a design with multiple VHDL modules, you would select the top-level module in your project's hierarchy, unless you are creating a test bench that is intended to test only one component of the design.



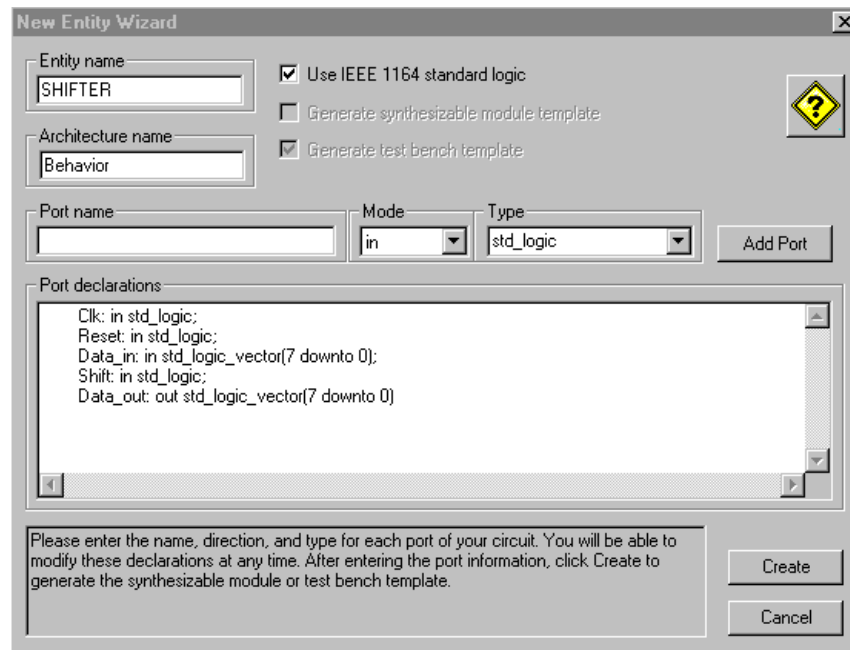
2. With the module to be tested highlighted in the Hierarchy Browser, choose File/New Module, or click the **New Module** button on the toolbar.
3. When the New Module screen appears, click **Test Bench Wizard**:



### 10.4.4.2 Verifying the Port List

When the test bench wizard is invoked it examines the port list of the module that you have selected (in this case `SHIFTER.VHD`) and attempts to fill in the port declarations edit box for

you, as shown below. All you need to do is verify that all of the ports have been listed along with their correct direction and type.



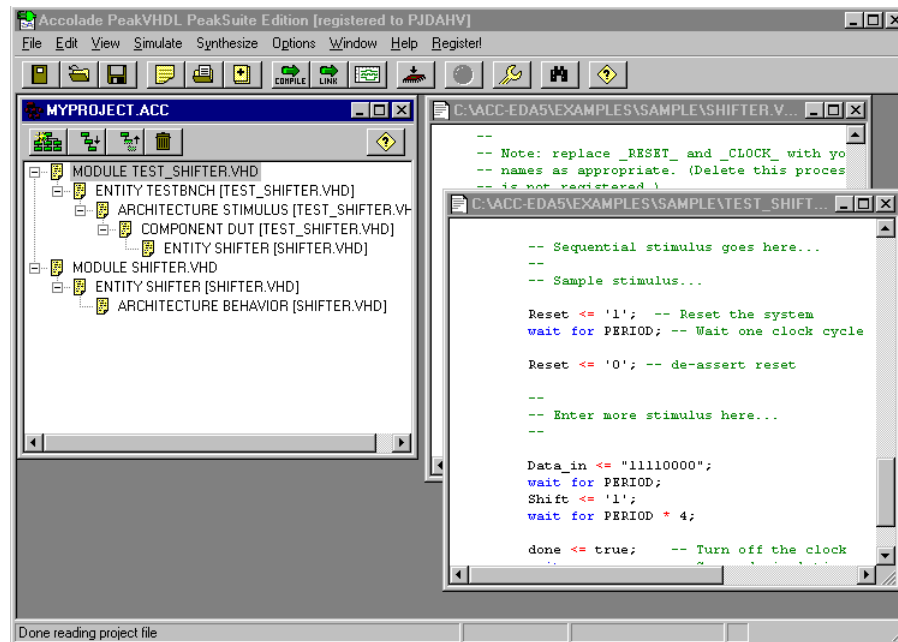
➤ To complete the test bench:

1. Examine the port declarations to ensure they match the declarations show, then click **Create**.

**Note** If you are generating a test bench for a module that was not created using the module wizard, you may need to manually enter the port list. You can save time by pasting text copied from an editor window.

2. When prompted, enter a name for the new test bench module, or accept the default name (in this case TEST\_SHIFTER.VHD).

Your new test bench module is now complete, and is displayed as shown below.



#### 10.4.4.3 Modifying the Test Bench

This test bench template source code must be modified to describe the desired test stimulus. The exact changes needed to this template will depend on how extensively you want to test the design.

- To create a simple test sequence for this shifter, make the following modifications to the source code:
  1. In process Clock1, replace the template's "dummy" clock signal (`_CLOCK_`) with the actual system clock signal `Clk`.
  2. In process Stimulus1, replace the assignments to `_RESET_` so they instead refer to signal `Reset`.
  3. Add some additional stimulus to this design as shown in the source file listing that follows. The sample stimulus assigns a value to signal `data_in`, then sets the shift input to '1'. A subsequent wait statement will cause the simulation to move forward for some period of simulated time (in this case 100ns). Similar sequences of assignments and wait statements apply additional test inputs.

```

CLOCK1: process
    variable clktmp: std_ulogic := '0';
begin
    wait for PERIOD/2;
    clktmp := not clktmp;
    Clk <= clktmp; -- Attach your clock here
    if done = true then
        wait;
    end if;
end process CLOCK1;

STIMULUS1: process
begin
    -- Sequential stimulus goes here...
    -- Sample stimulus...

    Reset <= '1'; -- Reset the system
    wait for PERIOD; -- Wait one clock cycle

    Reset <= '0'; -- de-assert reset

    -- Enter more stimulus here...

    Data_in <= "11110000";
    wait for PERIOD;
    Shift <= '1';
    wait for PERIOD * 4;

    done <= true; -- Turn off the clock
    wait; -- Suspend simulation
end process STIMULUS1;

end stimulus;

```

After you have made the above changes to your test bench template, save the module and compile it.

- To compile the module:
  1. Highlight the test bench module in the Hierarchy Browser and click **Compile** on the toolbar.
  2. After you have successfully compiled your new test bench, click **Rebuild Hierarchy** to bring the Hierarchy Browser display up-to-date.

Your project is now ready for simulation.

## 10.4.5 Using Simulation

This section describes how you can use the built-in simulator features of Multisim's VHDL to verify your VHDL design projects.

**Note** A Testbench is needed to simulate a VHDL module (the Testbench tells the simulator which stimulus to use). You must have a Testbench for your design at this point. If you have been working through the example used in this chapter, you have already created a Testbench. If you do not have a Testbench, create one now, following the instructions in "Using the Test Bench Wizard" on page 10-23.

### 10.4.5.1 Understanding Simulation

Simulation of a VHDL design description using Multisim VHDL involves three major steps:

1. Compiling the VHDL modules into an intermediate object file format.
2. Linking the object files to create a simulation executable.
3. Loading the simulation executable and starting the simulation.

Each of these three steps is represented by a toolbar button in the Multisim's VHDL application. If the dependency features of the application are enabled, the application checks the date and time stamps of files, and examines the hierarchy of your design to determine which files must be compiled and linked at each step. When a simulation executable has been successfully linked and loaded, the Waveform Display appears and you are ready to start a simulation run.

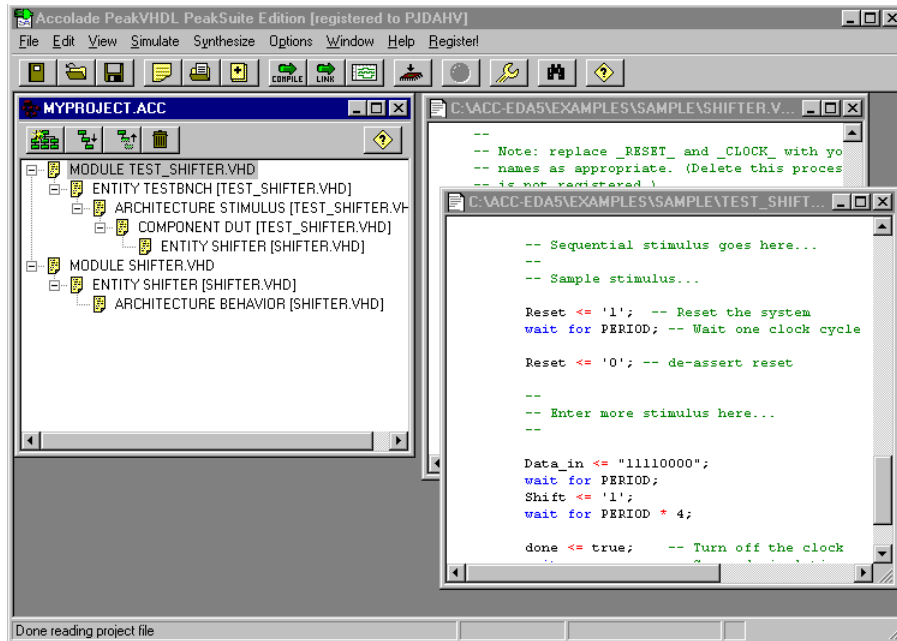
To help you understand this process, this section explains how to load and simulate the sample project developed in the previous section.

**Note** If you have not created a new project by following the example in this chapter, you can follow these steps using one of the standard examples provided with Multisim's VHDL.

### 10.4.5.2 Loading the Project

- To load the project:
1. Invoke the Multisim's VHDL application and choose File/Open Project.

2. Navigate to the Examples\Shifter folder (or to your project folder created in the previous tutorial) and choose the **Shifter.ACC** file. The project is loaded.



If you are following the example, you see that there are two modules listed in the Hierarchy Browser (shown in the screen below). These modules (TESTSHIF and SHIFTER) are VHDL modules that were entered to describe the operation of the sample circuit. TESTSHIF is a test bench for the circuit, while SHIFTER describes the function of the shifter circuit itself. You can examine or modify either of these modules by double-clicking on them to invoke a Source Code Editor window as described in “Modifying the Test Bench” on page 10-26.

The Hierarchy Browser does not provide any immediate indication of which module represents the “top” of your design. (The order of modules appearing in the Hierarchy Browser is not significant.)

You may choose to select different top-level modules depending on whether you are invoking simulation or synthesis, and depending on whether you want to simulate just a portion of the circuit or simulate the entire circuit. You may also have more than one top-level test bench in your project.

You can, however, display the hierarchy and file dependencies for any module displayed in the Hierarchy Browser by clicking on the “+” icons to the left of the module.

The Hierarchy Browser is the point from which you initiate all processing of your design, from compiling and linking to synthesis and simulation.



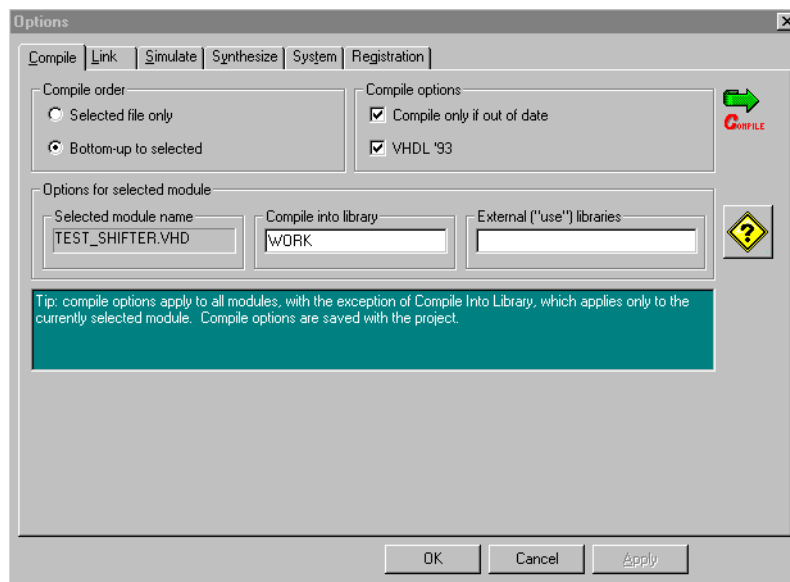
### 10.4.5.3 Compiling Modules for Simulation

Before compiling this design, take a moment to examine the compile options that have been selected.

➤ To check compile options:



1. Highlight the module in the Hierarchy Browser.
2. Choose **Options/Compile** or click the **Options** button to bring up the Compile Options screen. For example, for the module SHIFTER, the options should be set as shown below.



The options set are:

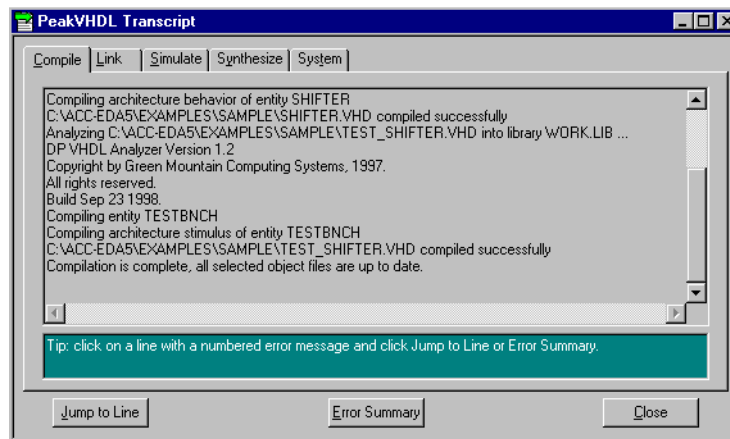
- **Bottom up to selected.** This option tells the compiler to examine the dependencies of the project, and to compile lower-level VHDL modules before compiling higher-level modules that depend upon them.
- **Compile only if out of date.** This option enables the date and time stamp checking features so that modules are not compiled unless they are out of date. This can save time when you are compiling a large project repeatedly (such as when fixing syntax errors in higher-level modules).
- **Compile Into Library.** This option specifies that the current module, SHIFTER, is to be compiled into a named library, in this case WORK.

3. When you have verified that the options are set to these values, click **Cancel** or **OK**.

The next step is to compile the source modules. With the **Bottom up to selected** option selected, you have two choices:

- You can first compile the SHIFTER module, then compile the TESTSHIF module.
  - You can simply compile the TESTSHIF module, and let the dependency features automatically compile the lower-level SHIFTER module.
- To use the second method to compile the two source files:
1. Highlight the TESTSHIF module in the Hierarchy Browser and click the **Compile** button on the toolbar.

During compilation, status and error messages are written to the Transcript window, as shown below. If you wish, you can save these messages to a file or print them.



When compiled, each VHDL source file (module) in the project is processed to create an intermediate output file (an object file). These files, which have a .O file name extension, must be linked together to form a simulation executable.

**Note** If system or other errors occur during the processing of this design example, you should check to make sure you have properly installed and registered the Multisim's VHDL software. The software will not operate without first being registered.

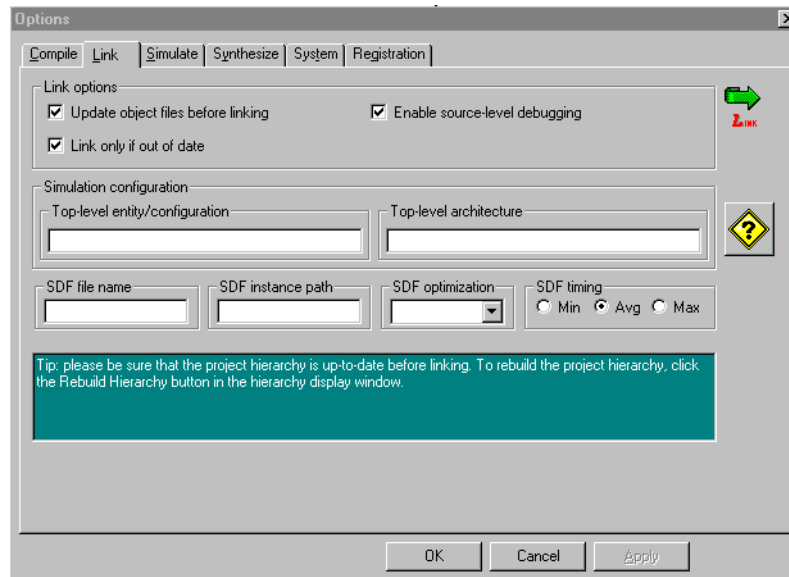
#### 10.4.5.4 Linking Modules for Simulation

Before linking the modules, take a moment to examine the link options.

- To examine the link options:
1. Highlight the module TESTSHIF in the Hierarchy Browser.



- Choose **Options/Link**, or click the **Options** button, and choose the Link tab to bring up the Link Options screen. The options should be set as shown below:



The options set are:

- **Update object files before linking.** This tells the linker to examine the dependencies of the project, and to compile lower-level VHDL modules before linking. (If the **Compile only if out of date** option is specified in the Compile Options screen, only those source files that are out of date will be re-compiled.)
  - **Link only if out of date.** This option enables the date and time stamp checking features so that the modules are not re-linked unless the simulation executable is out of date.
- When you have verified that the options are set to the values shown, click **Cancel** or **OK**.

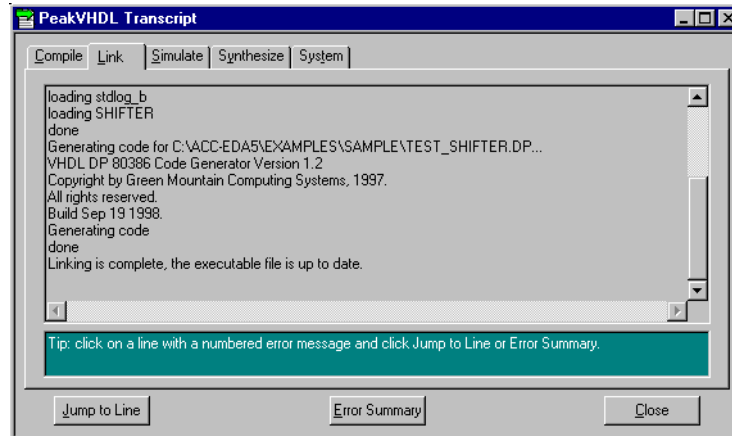
When linking a project, the Multisim's VHDL linker collects all object files required for the selected top-level module, and combines these object files with any libraries you have specified in your design (such as the IEEE standard logic library) to create the simulation executable.

- To link your design and create a simulation executable:



- Highlight the TESTSHIF module in the Hierarchy Browser.
- Click the **Link** button.

During the linking process, messages will be written to the Multisim's VHDL Transcript screen, as shown below:



The result of linking is a simulation executable file ready to be loaded for simulation.

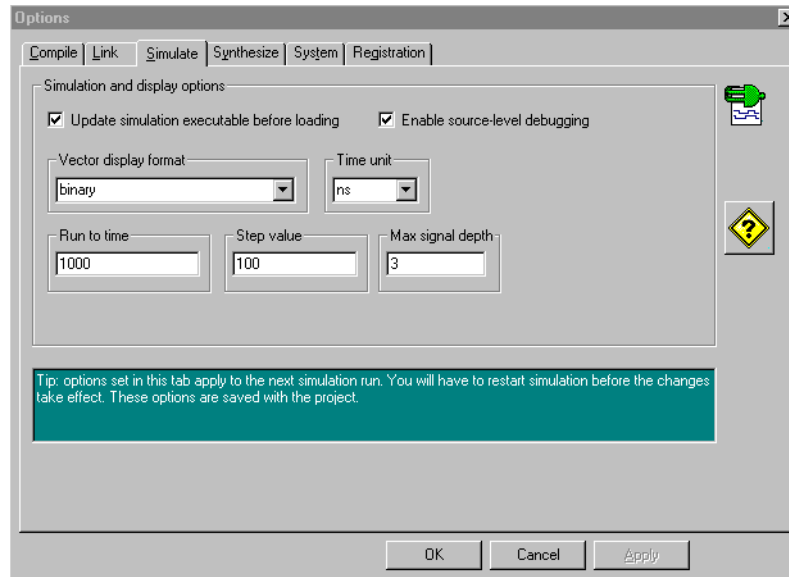
### 10.4.5.5 Setting Simulation Options

Before loading the simulation executable, take a moment to examine the simulation options.

- To examine the simulation options:
  1. Make sure the TESTSHIF module is still highlighted in the Hierarchy Browser.



2. Choose **Options/ Simulate**, or click the **Options** button and choose the Simulate tab to bring up the Simulate Options screen. The options should be set as shown below.



The options set are:

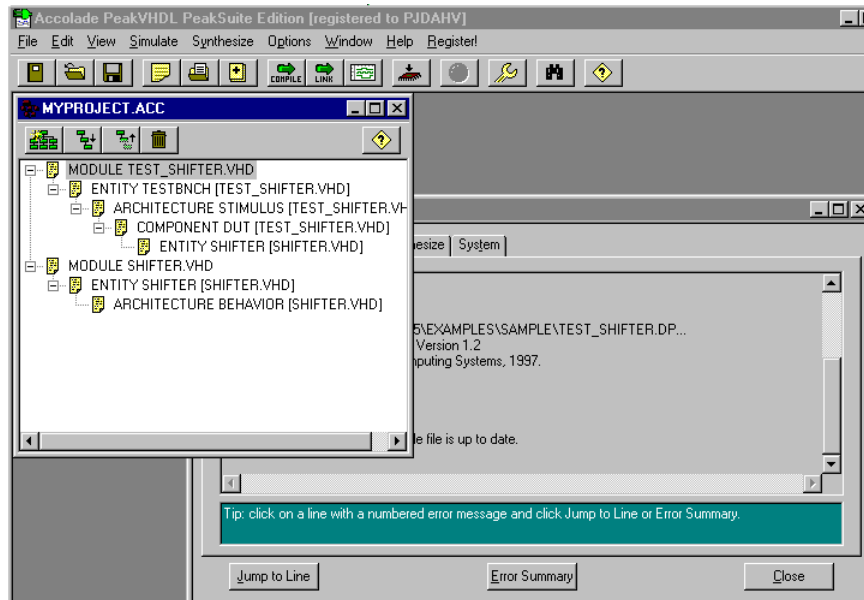
- **Update simulation executable before loading.** This option tells the simulator to examine the dependencies of the project and, if necessary, compile lower-level VHDL modules and re-link them before loading.
  - **Vector display format.** This option specifies how vector (array) data types should be displayed. This option should be set to “binary”.
  - **Run to time and Step value.** These fields allow you to specify a default amount of time that the simulation should run. These values can be changed during simulation if necessary.
  - **Time unit.** This field specifies the unit of time (e.g. ns, ps) to be used during simulation.
3. When you have verified that the options are set to the values shown; click the Close button to close the Options screen.

#### 10.4.5.6 Loading the Simulation Executable

At this point, you have compiled each of the VHDL modules into an object file format, and have linked all of the object files to form a simulation executable. To start the simulation process, you will use the Load Simulation button.

- To load the simulation executable:

1. Make sure the TESTSHIF module is selected in the Hierarchy Browser:



2. Click the **Load Simulation** button.

The simulation executable is loaded and the Multisim's VHDL simulation application appears, displaying a Select Display Objects screen. This screen allows you to choose signals to observe during simulation. If you click the **Add Primaries** button (the top-most button), all of the top-level signals in your design will be moved to the display window.

You can select other signals within your design to probe important signals in your design.

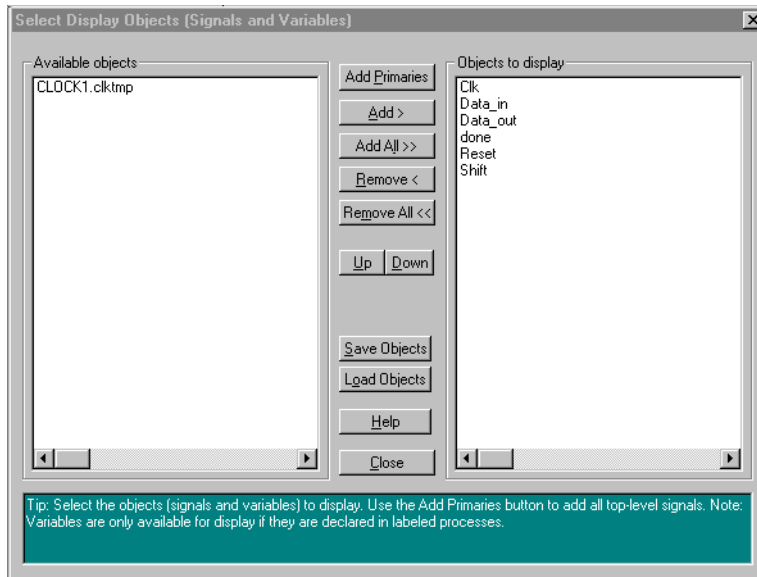
**Note** You can add as many signals as you wish from the Signal Display window, but the Multisim's SIM application may be slowed if you select too many signals. For this reason you should select only those signals that are relevant for verification and debugging of your design.

- To select signals to observe in simulation:
  1. Use the **Add Primaries** button to move the top-level signals from the **Available** list to the **Displayed** list.

or

  2. Highlight individual signals in the **Available** list and use the **Add** button to move individual signals to the **Displayed** list.
  3. Use the **Up** and **Down** buttons to rearrange signals, putting them in any display order you wish.

The screen below shows the Select Display Objects screen with some of the design's signals selected for display:



4. When you are satisfied with the selected signals, click **Close** to close the screen and prepare the simulation.

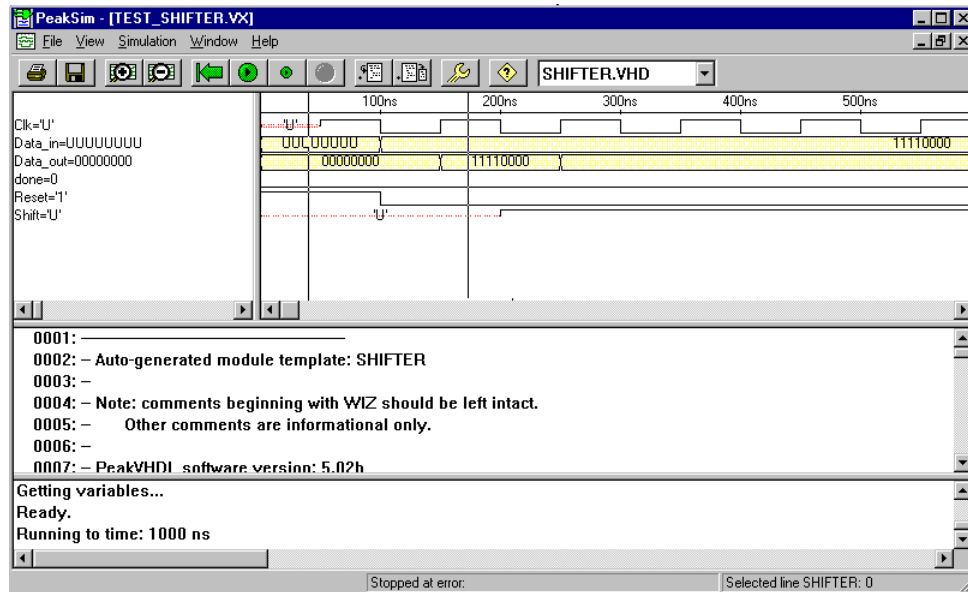
### 10.4.5.7 Starting a Simulation Run

After you have selected signals to observe during simulation, you can click on the GO button to start the simulation.

Simulation will run until one of the following is true:

- The specified simulation end time (duration) has been reached
  - All processes in your project have suspended.
- To start simulation using the previously-specified run time:

1. Click **Go** to simulate this project. The resulting waveform should look similar to that shown below.



2. Use the **Zoom In** button and the horizontal scroll bar to change the display range as shown.

## 10.4.6 Working with Waveforms and Cursors

The Multisim's SIM Waveform Display offers a variety of features for examining waveform results, saving and printing waveforms and measuring times between events.

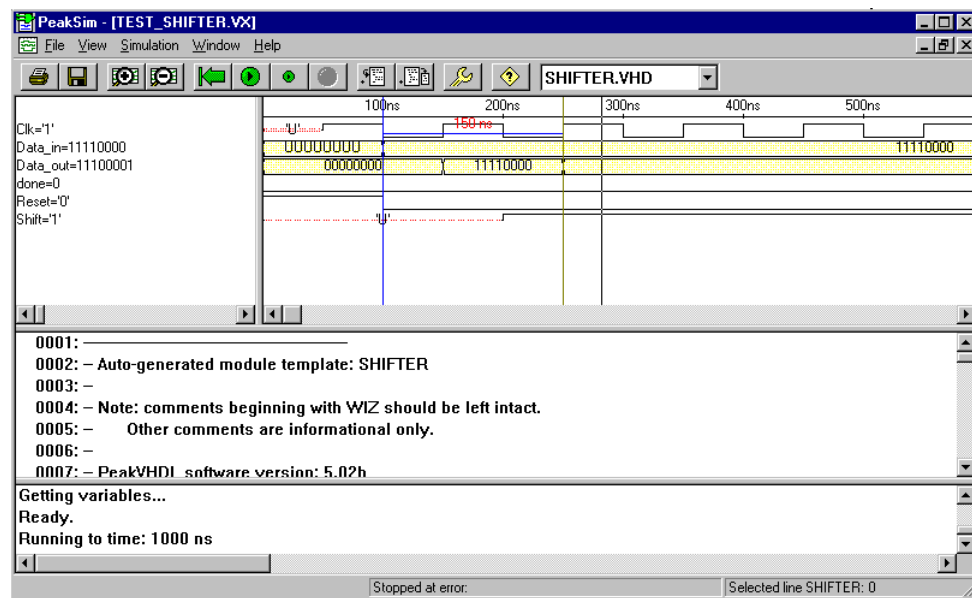
- To quickly pan across a dense (zoomed out) waveform and observe values, move the mouse pointer over the waveform display and observe the changing values displayed in the signal display area (the small window to the left of the waveform).

The Waveform Display also includes selectable cursors that can be used to accurately measure the distances between events, and to view the timing relationships between events on different signals.

- To add a cursor to the Waveform Display, click within the Waveform Display window.



A new cursor is displayed each time you click. When you add multiple cursors, Multisim's SIM adds a measurement line and value allowing you to quickly determine the time between two or more events (see the illustration below):



- To delete the cursors you have placed, choose **View/Remove All Cursors**.

## 10.4.7 Using the Debug Window

Multisim's VHDL includes a powerful feature called source-level debugging that allows you to observe how your VHDL design is being executed during simulation. Using this feature, you will be able to step through your VHDL code, set breakpoints, and more easily find and fix problems in your VHDL design description.

### 10.4.7.1 Understanding Source-Level Debugging

The source-level debug window allows you to follow the execution of your VHDL design at the level of VHDL source file statements. This is useful for debugging complex sequential statements, determining the order in which statements are processed, and understanding the impact of scheduling, delta cycles and other complex aspects of model execution.

To allow source-level debugging to be performed, the Multisim's VHDL linker must insert certain pre-compiled code statements into your simulation executable. These statements are

not visible, but you may notice your compiled VHDL projects require more disk space after linking with source-level debugging enabled.

During simulation of your design, Multisim's VHDL keeps track of which VHDL source file lines are related to the currently executing compiled and linked code, and displays the appropriate VHDL source file in a source file display window. In addition, Multisim's VHDL maintains a list of breakpoints that you have requested and stops the simulation whenever one of these break points is encountered. It then waits for you to either continue the simulation using the **Go** or **Step Time** buttons, or single-step through your code using the **Step Over** or **Step Into** buttons.

Whenever the simulator stops at a break point or is stepped to a new line in the VHDL source file, the waveform window is updated to display the current values of all selected signals. This feature allows you to observe the order in which signals and variables are updated in your design, and allows you to (for example) determine when you have incorrectly specified a signal or variable assignment.

### 10.4.7.2 A Sample Project

To give you a better understanding of source-level debugging, a sample project will be presented so you can see how it is compiled and run. You can follow along with this example by first opening the Multisim's VHDL standard example `getpizza`, which can be found in the `examples` folder of your Multisim's VHDL installation folder.

The `getpizza` example project is intended as an exercise in writing test benches, and is also useful for demonstrating the concepts of source level debugging. At the center of `getpizza` is a driving game that was inspired by the "ChipTrip" example first described by Altera Corporation using their AHDL PLD language. In this version of the design (which is described in more detail in *VHDL Made Easy*, published in 1996 by Prentice Hall), the objective is to create a sequence of test inputs that will cause an imaginary work-weary engineer to proceed from his office to the beach, as quickly as possible, without getting a speeding ticket. To make the trip more interesting, our hero must stop and pick up a pizza on the way. The map illustrates the possible routes that can be taken.

This map shows three different types of roads: freeways, commercial streets, and residential roads. The car being driven has only two possible speeds: fast and slow. When the car is driven slowly, it advances from one point on the map (say, from Ramp1 to Ramp2) in a given period of time. When driven fast, the car proceeds twice as far. There is no speed limit on the freeway, so the car can travel at full speed without fear of getting a ticket. On commercial streets, the car may exceed the speed limit just once and get away with it. On residential roads, any attempt to drive fast will result in a ticket.

In our simulation, and in the underlying design description, a fixed period of time is represented by a single clock cycle. Inputs for the speed and initial direction of travel are represented by signals `Speed` and `Dir`. The location of the car at any point is represented internally

to the circuit by a state machine, but it is kept hidden at the top level of the design and in the test bench itself. The current status and success or failure of a trip are observed on the signals DriveTime, Tickets, and Party, which tell the player how long the drive has taken, how many traffic tickets have accrued, and whether he or she has yet arrived at the beach with the pizza. (The VHDL source files and Multisim's VHDL project file for the entire design can be found in your `examples\vhd193\getpizza` installation folder.)

The test bench that we have written for this design reads symbolic test commands from a file, allowing the game to be easily tested and various driving scenarios to be described without having to re-compile the design each time.

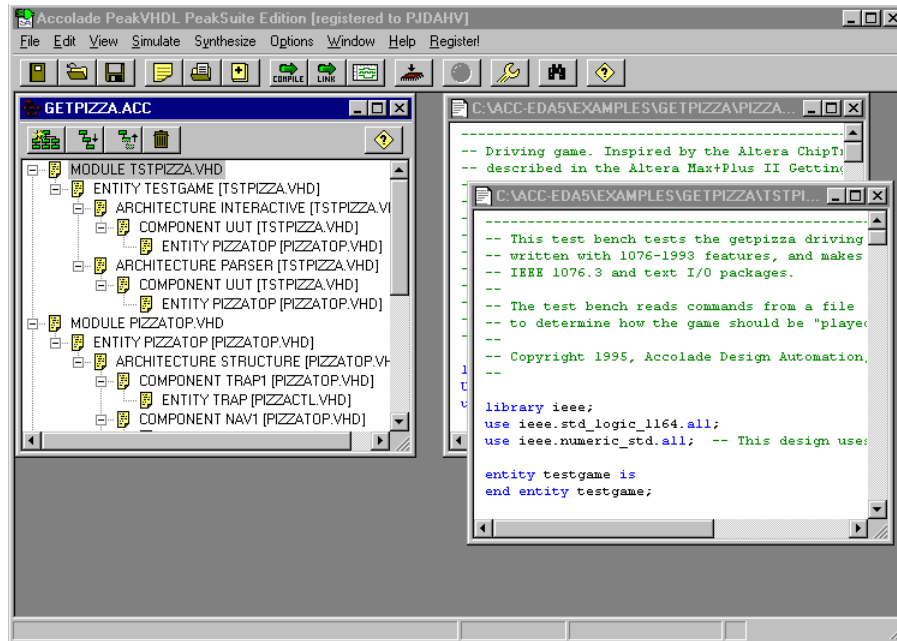
### Loading the Sample Project

- To load the sample project:



1. Invoke Multisim's VHDL and choose **File/Open Project** or click the **Open Project** button.
2. Navigate to the `examples\vhd193\getpizza` folder and select the `get-pizza.acc` project file.

After you have opened the project, you will see that there are four VHDL modules listed in the Hierarchy Browser. (You can invoke the text editor to examine these source files if you wish. To invoke the text editor, double-click on any entry in the Hierarchy Browser.) The `testpizza` module describes the test bench for this project, so select that module by clicking once on the **MODULE TESTPIZZA** entry in the Hierarchy Browser:

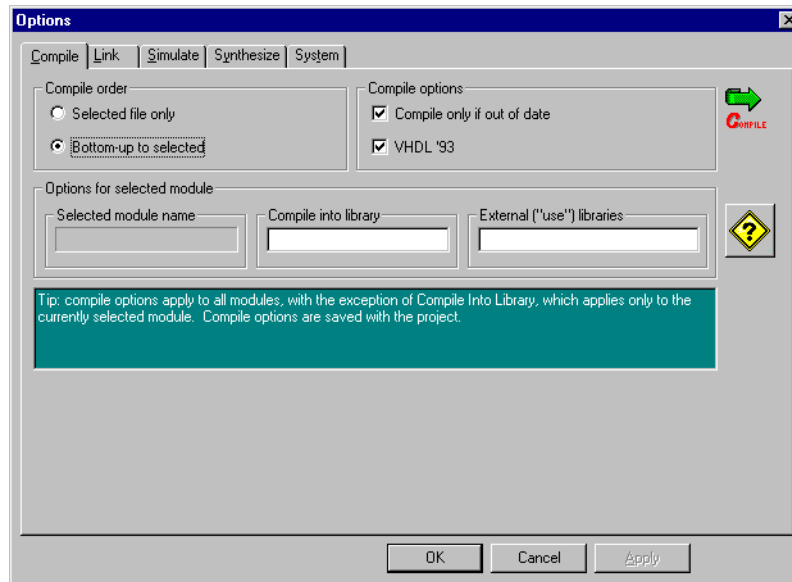


## Setting the Project Options

Before processing this project for simulation, we'll need to set certain project options to enable source-level debugging.

- To set these options:
  1. Choose **Options/Link Options** or click the **Options** button from the toolbar and select the Link tab.

2. Set the options as shown below:



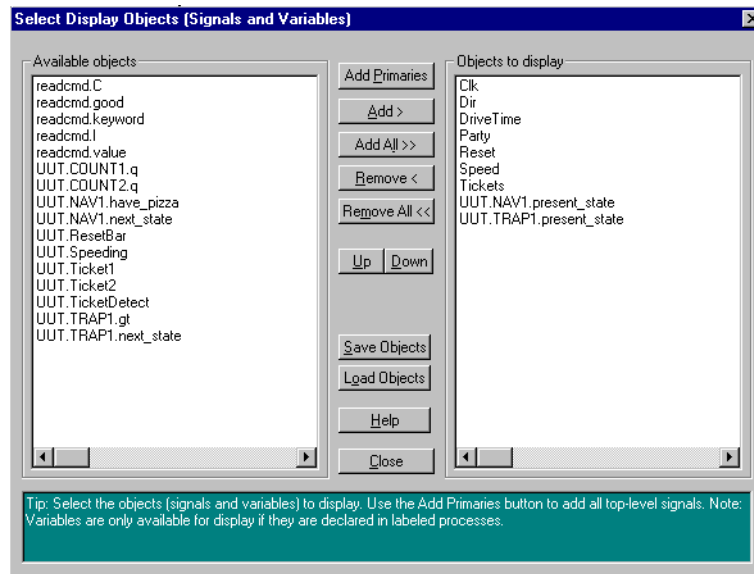
The important Link option being set for this example is the **Enable source level debugging** option. This option causes debugging code to be added to the compiled and linked simulation executable. Also note that the 1076-1993 option is set. This is required because the `get-pizza` example has been written using features of the IEEE 1076-1993 language specification.

## Loading the Simulation

Our sample project is now ready for simulation.

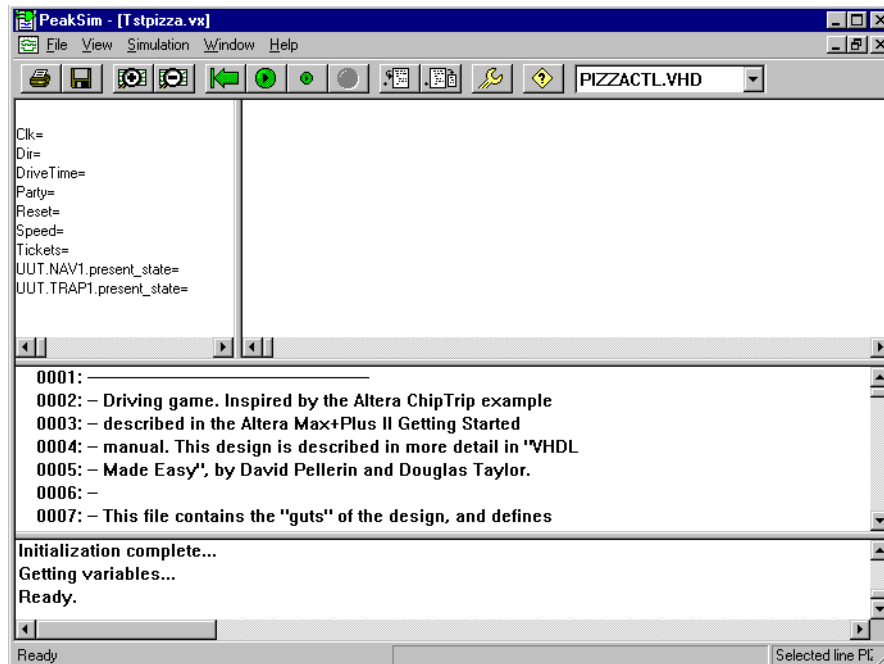
- To load this project for simulation:
  1. Select (highlight) the testpizza module by clicking on the MODULE TESTPIZZA entry in the Hierarchy Browser.
  2. Click the **Load** button, or select **Load Selected** from the Simulate menu.

Before loading the project, Multisim's VHDL compiles all VHDL modules and links them to create a simulation executable. After the simulation executable has been loaded, Multisim's VHDL displays a Signal Selection screen, allowing you to select signals for display.



- To select signals:
  1. Use the Available Signals window to select some or all of the signals in the design, or click **Add Primaries** to select all top-level signals in the design.

After you have selected signals for display, the waveform display and source-level debug windows appear as shown below.

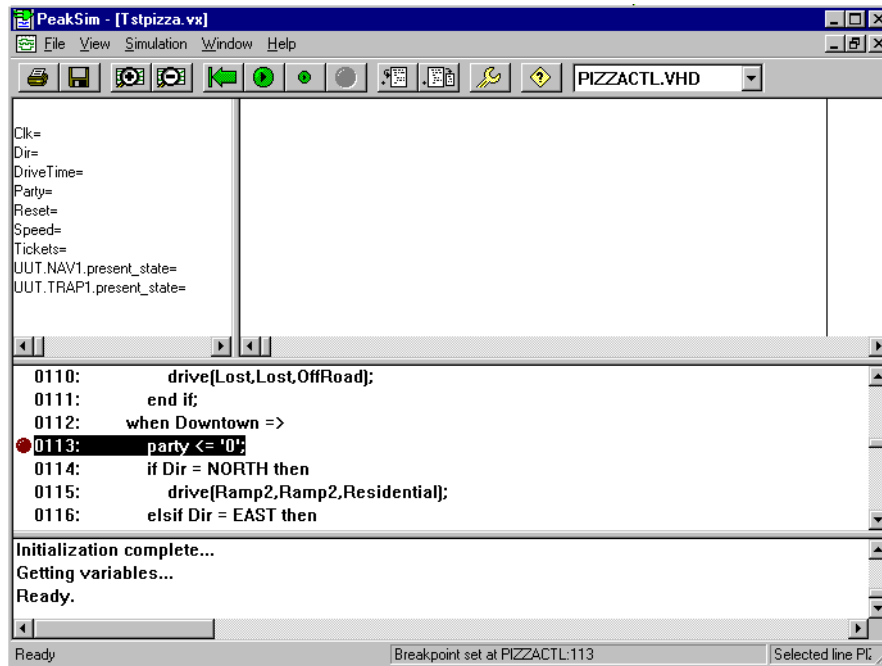


## Setting a Break Point

You can set or remove breakpoints before starting the simulation, or at any time the simulation is stopped. Before starting a simulation run, set a break point in the `pizzactl` module.

- To set the break point:
  1. Use the **module name** drop-down list box to select the `pizzactl` module.

2. Scroll through the `pizzactl` module and find the source file line shown below:



3. Set a break point at the indicated line number by double-clicking or choosing **Simulation/Toggle Breakpoint**.

## Running Simulation

Now you can start the simulation and let it run to the selected break point.



- To start the simulation, click the **Go** button.

The simulation executes until it encounters the breakpoint that you have selected, or until it reaches the specified simulation end time if no breakpoint is encountered. It then stops execution and displays the current module and source file line in the source file display window. It also updates the waveform display so you can see the current values of all signals and variables being displayed.

At this point you could single-step the design to view exactly how the state machine represented by this section of code operates, or click the Go button to continue to the next breakpoint (or to the specified simulation end time, if there are no more breakpoints set).

You should try using the single stepping features.

- To single-step the simulation, click the **Step Over** button repeatedly until the current line pointer (the green arrow icon) is at the position shown below.



The simulation is now stopped at a source file line that includes a call to a procedure named Drive. This procedure is defined elsewhere in the module (at the top of the architecture).

You can use the **Step Over** button at this point to continue to the next line in the file, or use the **Step Into** button to cause the simulation to enter the Drive procedure and stop at the first line in that procedure.

Try setting other breakpoints in the source files and continue the simulation (using the **Go** button) to get a feel for source-level debugging.

### Summary

This tutorial has shown how source-level debugging can be used to examine the execution of a VHDL design with more precision than is possible using only waveforms. When you combine source level-debugging with the waveform display and export features of Multisim's VHDL, and the text I/O features of VHDL, you have a powerful set of debugging tools at your disposal.

## 10.4.8 Using Multisim's LIB

Multisim's LIB is a utility that you can use to create Multisim's VHDL libraries and add or delete references to compiled VHDL modules (in the form of .AN files) from within existing library files.

### 10.4.8.1 Multisim's LIB Overview

Multisim's LIB is a DOS (command line) application that has been provided for Multisim's VHDL library creation and maintenance.

Why do you need Multisim's LIB? Multisim's VHDL library files (.LIB files) are created for you automatically when you specify a library name in the Compile Options screen and compile a VHDL source file from within Multisim's VHDL. (If you have not specified a library file, the default library name of WORK is assumed.) This method of automatically creating libraries is fine for most projects, and is quite convenient because it allows you to associate library names with VHDL source files and have them automatically compiled into the correct library every time.

There are a few limitations inherent in creating libraries from within Multisim's VHDL, however:

- Multisim's VHDL includes path (drive and folder) information in .LIB files that it generates. This makes it impossible to move existing projects to different drives or directories without recompiling the project, and makes library files essentially non-portable.
- Multisim's VHDL does not provide any way to move existing .AN files from one library to another without recompiling the VHDL source file. In some cases (such as when you

have purchased proprietary simulation models) you might not have access to the original VHDL source code.

- Multisim's VHDL does not provide any way to remove a library entry from an existing library. For example, you may need to remove and replace entries in the IEEE library provided with Multisim's VHDL if you are using other VHDL tools that have specific requirements for IEEE library contents.

### 10.4.8.2 Examining the Contents of a Library File

Multisim's VHDL library files (.LIB files) are ASCII text files (with the exception of the first two characters in the file) and can be examined using any text editor, including the text editor provided in Multisim's VHDL. Each line of the library file includes a reference to a specific design unit located in the library and a corresponding reference to a compiled VHDL source file (an .AN file). The information in the library file is used by the Multisim's VHDL analyzer and elaborator (during the compile and link processes) to locate and use externally-referenced design units such as packages, components and lower-level entities.

### 10.4.8.3 Adding a .AN File to a Library

You can use Multisim's LIB to add an existing .AN file (compiled VHDL module) to a library file. If the library file name you specify does not already exist, it will be created.

- To add an object file to a library or to create a new library, open a DOS window and type the command:

```
\ACC-EDA\PEAKLIB.EXE libname.LIB filename.AN
```

where `libname` is the name of the library (such as `IEEE.LIB`), and while `filename` is the name of an object file (such as `NUM_STD.AN`).

### 10.4.8.4 Deleting a .AN File Reference from a Library

To delete object files from a library, use the -D command, as in:

```
\ACC-EDA\PEAKLIB.EXE -D libname.LIB filename.AN
```

The reference to the .AN file will be removed from the library file.

## 10.5 VHDL Synthesis and Programming of FPGAs/CPLDs

Synthesis is the step of compiling VHDL source code into a netlist that can be used for programming a device. Multisim's VHDL Synthesis accepts design descriptions expressed in VHDL (either a single VHDL source file or a collection of many VHDL source files), and analyzes these design descriptions to produce a functionally equivalent, optimized version of the design in a format appropriate for the type of FPGA/CPLD you have specified. Multisim's VHDL Synthesis option is available in two forms: the first works with the programmable devices of a single vendor while the second works with all vendors supported by Multisim. Multisim's VHDL Synthesis algorithms are specifically designed to quickly and easily process VHDL into netlists optimized for each FPGACPLD device family.

VHDL Synthesis is intended to provide excellent performance (speed as well as device space optimization) using the simplest interface available. The user-interface is designed in a "click-and-go" style, meaning you simply configure a few options and Multisim does the synthesis for you. There is no need to provide detailed instructions to the synthesis engine.

Assistance is available through the online help file or, for more detailed information, the Technical Support department at Electronics Workbench.

### 10.5.1 What does VHDL Synthesis do?

VHDL Synthesis checks the design to ensure that it is synthesizable and that it describes a known type of digital hardware. It detects and generates such elements as flip-flops, latches, and combinational logic networks and performs logic optimization appropriate for the specified FPGA device or vendor.

Synthesizing a VHDL design description into an FPGA implementation involves the following steps:

1. Selecting a target FPGA family and setting the appropriate synthesis options.
2. Selecting and synthesizing all or part of the design to create one or more FPGA-specific netlists.
3. Importing the generated netlists into the appropriate vendor-supplied place-and-route software.
4. Merging and mapping the netlists (using the FPGA/CPLD vendor-supplied software) to create a device-specific FPGA/CPLD programming data file.

The first two steps are performed within Multisim's VHDL Synthesis. The second two steps are performed using the place-and-route software (typically provided by the FPGA vendor) or

the filter software (typically provided by the CPLD vendor). Once the process is complete, the programming file must be physically downloaded into the device.

The VHDL Synthesis options controls the level of optimization performed, specifies whether higher level macrocells (such as LPM primitives) should be automatically generated and indicates whether a given VHDL module describes a complete or partial design.

The result of VHDL Synthesis is one or more netlists ready for processing by a device vendor's FPGA place-and-route software. These netlists can be combined with other netlists from other sources (such as schematic capture systems) and merged during the place-and-route process.

## 10.5.2 Multisim's VHDL Synthesis Features

The following device families of FPGA/CPLDs are supported by Multisim's VHDL Synthesis:

- Actel
- Altera
- AMD/Vantis
- Generic PLD
- Lattice
- Lucent
- Quic Logic
- Xilinx

All but two of the above vendors are supported by Multisim, generating a single format netlist for the entire vendor's family, regardless of the specific device being used. That is, for those six vendors, all their devices use the same netlist format. Only Actel and Xilinx use different formats, depending upon which specific device from their portfolio you select.

Some key features of VHDL Synthesis are the following:

- Support for all leading standards, including IEEE 1076-1987 and 1076-1993, as well as 1164 and 1076.3.
- Supplied packages for source file compatibility with Synopsys, Exemplar, Viewlogic and other synthesis products.
- Direct generation of FPGA-specific netlists.
- Automatic inference of higher-level, FPGA-specific primitives.
- Partial compilation, allowing VHDL designs to be easily combined with other forms of entry.
- Automatic insertion of I/O pads and buffers for top-level modules.
- Synthesis attributes for source-level control of place-and-route software.
- Industry leading "click-and-go" simplicity.

### 10.5.3 Using Multisim's VHDL Synthesis

This section describes how to use Multisim's VHDL Synthesis to manage design descriptions during synthesis.

- To invoke Multisim's VHDL Synthesis, do one of the following:

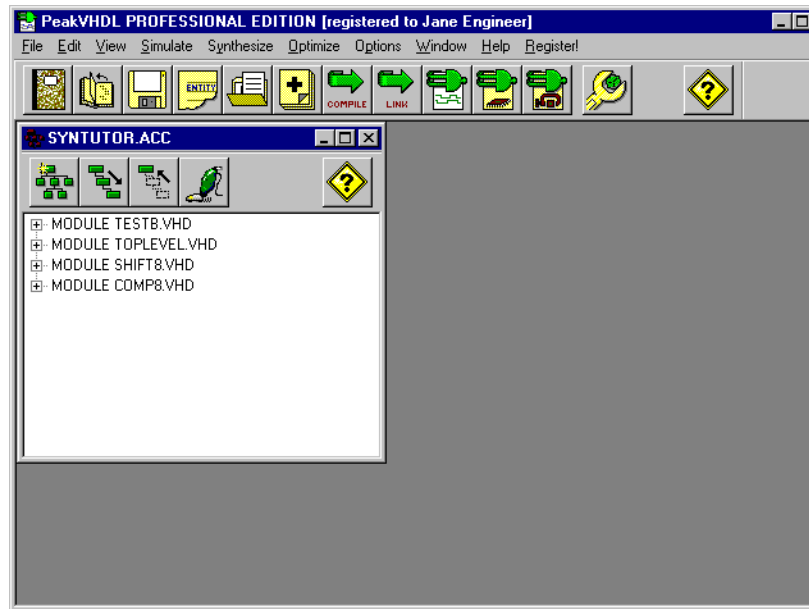


- From Multisim, click the **VHDL/Verilog** button on the design bar and choose **VHDL Synthesis** from the pop-up menu (you must have purchased this option to have access to this selection).
- Alternatively, you may choose VHDL Synthesis from either the Transfer or Simulate menu.

Either of these actions opens the main VHDL screen, where most VHDL work, including synthesis, begins. To see how VHDL synthesis is done, and to see Multisim's "click-and-go" synthesis capability in action, open the sample project as described below.

- To load the sample project:
  1. Choose **File/Open Project**.
  2. Navigate to C:\multisim\VHDL\example\VHDL\Syntutor directory and choose the syntutor.acc file.

The syntutor.acc project is loaded, as shown below.



The syntutor project contains four modules. Module **testbnch** describes a test bench for the circuits, while **count8**, **comp8** and **toplevel** form a synthesizable description of the design. Any of these four modules can be examined or modified using a source code editor, Hierarchy Browser as described in “Using Simulation” on page 10-28.

### 10.5.3.1 Working with Multiple Modules

When invoking synthesis while working with your project that contains more than one synthesizable module, select one of the synthesizable modules as the starting point for any given synthesis operation. The following are two options associated with any selected synthesizable module:

- Synthesizing only selected module. All references to lower-level modules are left unresolved and unconnected, to be brought together during the later merge operation.
- Synthesizing the selected module in combination with all other lower-level modules upon which the selected module depends.

The decision on how and when to combine different modules during synthesis depends on the following:

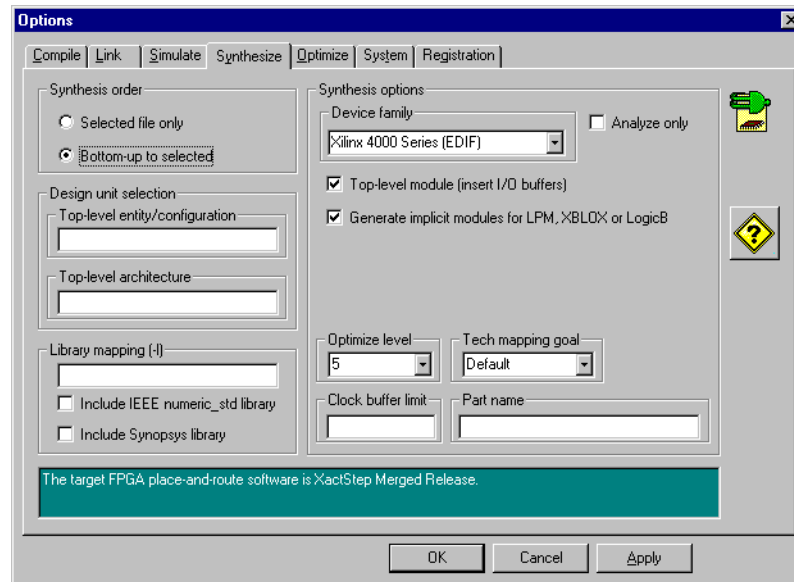
- capabilities of the FPGA vendor-supplied merging and mapping software
- nature of your design description
- overall design size.

### Combining Multiple Modules for Synthesis, Generating a Single FPGA Netlist

#### Setting Synthesis Options

- To process one or more modules into a single synthesized netlist, select a target device architecture first and set various synthesis options.
  1. Choose **Options/Synthesize** or click the **Options** button and select the Synthesize tab.

For this sample circuit, set the Synthesis options as shown below.



The options set are as follows:

- **Bottom-up to selected.** This option tells the synthesizer to examine the dependencies of the selected module, and to include lower-level VHDL modules in the current synthesis operation. If this option is not selected, only the selected module will be synthesized, and any references to lower-level modules will be left as unresolved references in the generated netlist.
- **Device family.** This option tells the synthesizer which device family is the target of synthesis. The device family you select for this option determines the type of netlist to be produced, instructs the synthesizer what sorts of device-specific optimizations to perform, and determines what other synthesis options are available. For example, select the device family Xilinx 4000 series (EDIF).
- **Generate implicit modules.** This option specifies that the synthesizer should attempt to infer higher-level functions (such as adders, comparators and multiplexers) from your design description. This option is only available when you have selected a device family that supports higher-level functions (or primitives) in the generated netlist.
- **Top-level module.** This option specifies that the selected module is the top-most module in the overall design hierarchy, and that I/O blocks, buffers or other I/O-related symbols should be automatically inserted into the generated netlist. When the highest-level module in your design description is also the highest-level module in your complete FPGA design, and its inputs and outputs will be connected directly to the FPGAs I/O pads, then you must select this option to allow I/O block or buffer symbols to be inserted.

2. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the Options screen.

### Selecting a Module to Synthesize

The design syntutor.acc project includes three synthesizable modules, any of which can be selected for synthesis and be converted to a corresponding FPGA netlist.

- To create a single output netlist representing the entire project, do the following:
  1. Select the highest-level synthesizable module, `toplevel.vhd`.
  2. Click once on the `MODULE TOPLEVEL.VHD` entry in the Hierarchy Browser window.

The `toplevel` module will be synthesized with any lower-level modules that it references as a result of the **Bottom-up to selected** option.

### Starting Synthesis

- To start Synthesis, choose **Synthesize/Synthesize selected**. You have now completed synthesis. The status and error messages are written to a file called `metamor.log`, located in your Project folder. These messages can then be printed as required.

**Note** The generated FPGA netlist is opened and displayed right after it is generated. For the selected Xilinx device family, Xilinx 4000 series (EDIF), the generated netlist is in EDIF format, `toplevel.edif`. This netlist is ready to be used in the Xilinx environment.

Any status and error messages are written to the Transcript window. These messages can be saved to a file and then printed as required.

During the synthesis process, the synthesizer does the following:

1. Verifies that the design statements are syntactically correct and synthesizable.
2. Determines the logic necessary to create an equivalent netlist.
3. Generates the netlist in a format appropriate for the selected FPGA family.

### Generating and Merging Multiple Netlists

In the previous example, three modules (`count8`, `comp8` and `toplevel`) were synthesized to create a single FPGA netlist. This method, however, is not recommended for very large design descriptions. It is easier and faster to synthesize the design in stages, each module in the design into a separate netlist. The resulting netlists are then merged by the FPGA vendor supplied place-and-route software. The precise method of merging is different for each FPGA vendor's tools and is described in the appropriate documentation.

The process of creating multiple netlists through the independent synthesis of two or more VHDL files introduces some additional constraints on the design description. The design description must be written in such a way that each module is completely independent of others, that is, is synthesizable. Generics cannot be passed through component instances that are



to be synthesized separately. For more information on the constraints of synthesis, see “Synthesis Constraints for Partitioned Design” on page 10-55.

### Setting Synthesis Options

- To process each module in the project syntutor individually, select a target device architecture first, Xilinx 4000 series (EDIF) and set various synthesis options as follows:

1. Choose **Options/Synthesize** or click the **Options** button and select the Synthesize tab.

The options set are similar to those of the previous section but with the following changes:

- **Selected file only.** Only the selected module will be synthesized. Any reference to a lower-level module will be left as unresolved references in the generated netlist.
- **Top-level module.** For this example, do not select the Top-level module option.

**Note** Selecting Top-level module for modules that are not the highest level in the hierarchy will result in an error during place-and-route. Similarly, failure to specify Top-level module option for the highest-level module will create errors, or the place-and-route tools will “optimize away” the entire design.

You should not select the Top-level module option if the FPGA project is to be combined with one or more higher level schematics. Instead, use the appropriate I/O block symbols from the schematic library.

2. Click **Apply**, then **OK** to close the Options screen.

### Selecting a Module to Synthesize and Starting Synthesis

Any of the three synthesizable modules can be selected in any order for synthesis and be converted to a corresponding FPGA netlist.

- To select the comp8 module, do the following:
  1. Click once on the MODULE COMP8 entry in the Hierarchy Browser.
  2. Choose **Synthesize/Synthesize Selected**.

The netlist file compare.edif has been created. Multisim VHDL Synthesis determines the name of the generated netlist from the top-level entity in the module.

3. Repeat the previous steps to synthesize modules shift8 and toplevel.

The netlists are now ready for use in the Xilinx XACT tools.

### 10.5.3.2 Design Partitioning Recommendations

Due to some inherent limitations in synthesis and place-and-route tools, it is highly recommended that you partition the design into manageable partitions or segments of no more than 10,000 equivalent gates logic before synthesis. Generated multiple netlists can then be merged into a single FPGA implementation.

The benefits of restricting the size of individual partitions or segments to no more than 10,000 equivalent gates include the following:

- Your designs will synthesize faster, and you will not have to resynthesize the entire project every time one VHDL source file is modified.
- Place-and-route software will operate more efficiently because important design hierarchy information will be preserved through synthesis.
- Depending on the FPGA family and design tools used, you may have an easier time analyzing post-route simulations because your hierarchical signals will be preserved.

### Synthesis Constraints for Partitioned Design

When you create multiple netlists from your design, you need to merge them after synthesis using the capabilities of the FPGA vendor-supplied place-and-route software. Creating multiple FPGA netlists from the independent synthesis of two or more VHDL files introduces an additional constraint on your design descriptions. You must write your design description in such a way that each partition is completely independent of all others, in terms of its being synthesizable. For example, it is not possible to pass generics through component instances that are to be synthesized separately.

Generic statements and corresponding generic maps often imply that different logic is to be generated from the lower-level VHDL description. It is not possible to support generics across independently-synthesized modules because Multisim's FPGA cannot preserve this information in the generated netlists (which do not have generic features).

## 10.6 Simulating a Circuit Containing a Verilog-Modeled Device

For future implementation.

## 10.7 Design, Simulation and Debug with Multisim' Verilog

For future implementation.

## 10.8 Verilog Synthesis and Programming of CPLDs/FPGAs

For future implementation.

# Chapter 11

## Reports

11.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	11-1
11.2	Bill of Materials (BOM) . . . . .	11-1
11.3	Database Family List . . . . .	11-2
11.4	Component Detail Report . . . . .	11-4



# Chapter 11 Reports

## 11.1 About this Chapter



Multisim allows you to generate a number of reports. This chapter explains the three major types of reports: Bill of Materials, Database Family List, and Component Detail Report.

Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

## 11.2 Bill of Materials (BOM)

A Bill of Materials lists the components used in your design and therefore provides a summary of the components needed to manufacture the circuit board. Information provided in the Bill of Materials includes:

- quantity of each component needed
- description, including the type of component (for example, resistor) and value (for example, 5.1 Kohm)
- reference ID of each component
- package or footprint of each component

**Note** The Bill of Materials is intended primarily to assist in procurement and manufacturing, therefore only includes “real” components.

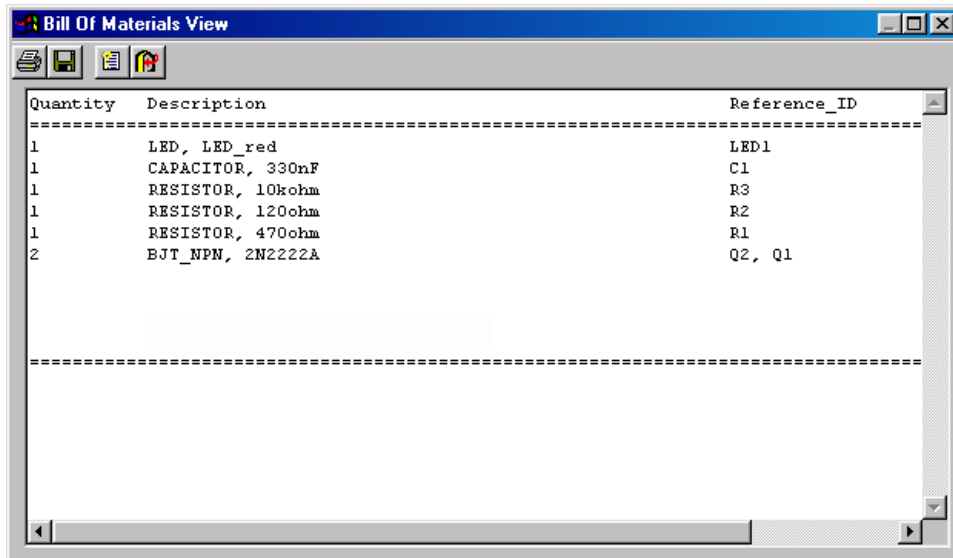
If you have purchased the Project/Team Design module, included in Power Professional and optional in the Professional Edition, the Bill of Materials will include all user fields and their values for each component that has such fields completed. For more on defining and completing user fields, see “Working with User Fields” on page 13-7.



➤ To create a BOM for your circuit:

1. Click the **Reports** button on the Design Bar and choose Bill of Materials from the pop-up menu that appears.

2. The report appears, looking similar to this:



Quantity	Description	Reference_ID
1	LED, LED_red	LED1
1	CAPACITOR, 330nF	C1
1	RESISTOR, 10kohm	R3
1	RESISTOR, 120ohm	R2
1	RESISTOR, 470ohm	R1
2	BJT_NPN, 2N222A	Q2, Q1

- To print the Bill of Materials, click the Print button. A standard Windows print screen appears, allowing you to choose the printer, number of copies, and so on.
- To save the Bill of Materials to a file, click the Save button. A standard Windows file save screen appears, allowing you to specify the path and file name.  
Because the Bill of Materials is primarily intended to assist in procurement and manufacturing, it includes only “real” parts. That is, it excludes parts that are not real or able to be purchased, such as sources or virtual components.
- To see a list of components in your circuit that are not “real” components, click the Others button. A separate window appears, showing these components only.

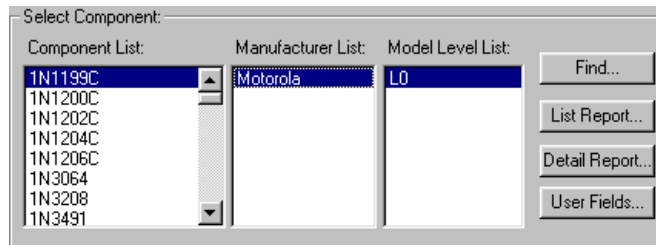
## 11.3 Database Family List

You can produce a Database Family List showing all the components in a family.

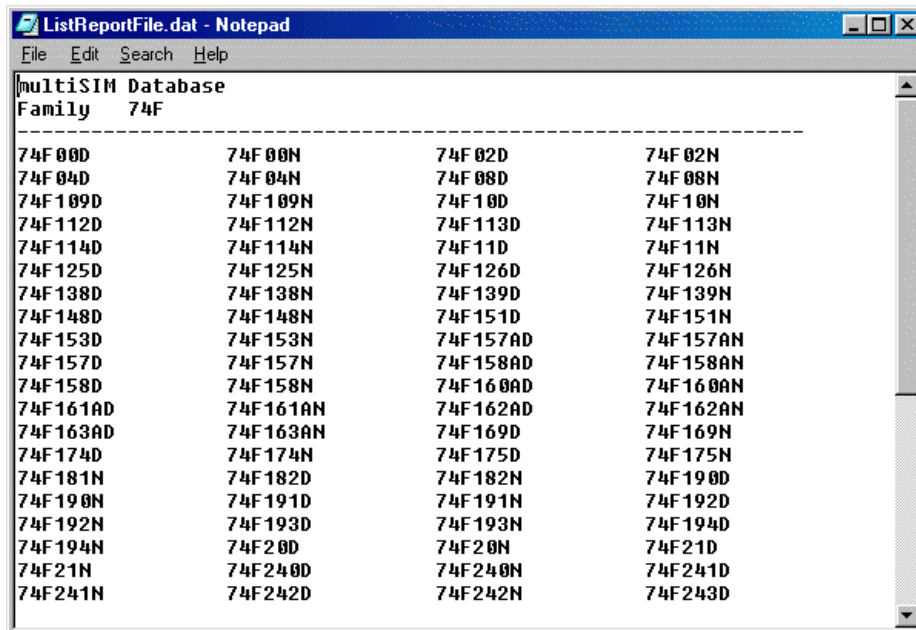
**Note** Although this report appears in the pop-up menu under the **Reports** Design Bar button, when you choose **Database Family List** you are reminded that this report is accessed through the Browser screen only. The Database Family List report is included in the **Reports** pop-up menu only as a way of listing all available Multisim reports in one location.

- To produce a Database Family List showing all the components in a specific family:

1. Access the database, as described in “Setting up Your Circuit Window” on page 3-1, to select a component Parts Bin and a family within that Parts Bin (for example, the 74STD of the TTL group).
2. From the Browser screen, click **List Report**.



- Note** Normally when you use the Browser you first select a specific component. This is not necessary when creating a Component Family list, since the list shows all the parts in this family.
3. A Notepad screen appears, listing all the components found within the currently selected family. For example:



4. Use any of the standard Notepad functions to search, scroll, file, edit or print this information.



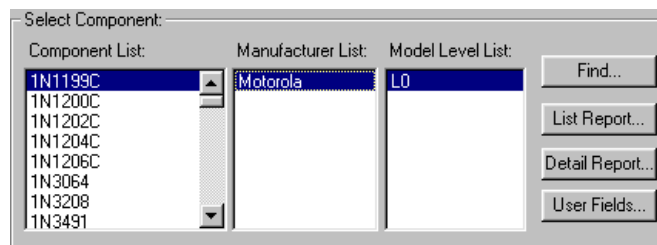
5. When done, choose **File/Exit**.

## 11.4 Component Detail Report

You can produce a Database Detail Report showing all the information stored in the Multisim database about a particular component.

**Note** Although this report appears in the pop-up menu under the **Reports** Design Bar button, when you choose **Database Family List** you are reminded that this report is accessed through the Browser screen only. The Database Family List report is included in the **Reports** pop-up menu only as a way of listing all available Multisim reports in one location.

- To produce a database family list showing detailed information about a specific component:
  1. Access the database, as described in “Setting up Your Circuit Window” on page 3-1, to select a component Parts Bin and a family within that Parts Bin (for example, the 74STD of the TTL group).
  2. In the Browser screen, select a specific component in the family and click **Detail Report**.



3. This produces a screen that contains all the details about the selected component, including its schematic symbols, manufacturer, electrical parameters, simulation model and footprint (package). For example:
4. Scroll through the information as necessary.
5. To print the information, click **Print**. You are prompted, with a standard Windows print screen, to choose a destination printer.
6. To close the screen, click **OK**.

## Chapter 12

# Transfer/Communication

12.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	12-1
12.2	Introduction to Transfer/Communication . . . . .	12-1
12.3	Transferring Data . . . . .	12-1
	12.3.1 Transferring from Multisim to Ultiboard for PCB Layout. . . . .	12-1
	12.3.2 Transferring to Other PCB Layout . . . . .	12-2
12.4	Exporting Simulation Results . . . . .	12-3
	12.4.1 Exporting to MathCAD . . . . .	12-3
	12.4.2 Exporting to Excel . . . . .	12-3

Transfer

# Chapter 12

## Transfer/Communication

### 12.1 About this Chapter

This chapter explains how to use Multisim to transfer either circuit schematics (in whole or in part) themselves, or the results of simulation.



Some of the features described in this chapter may not be available in your version of Multisim. Such features have an icon in the column next to their description. See page 1-2 for a description of the features available in your version.

### 12.2 Introduction to Transfer/Communication

Multisim makes it easy to transfer schematic and simulation data to other programs for further processing. It can even combine schematic information and simulation data for transfer together, a capability unique to Multisim. For example, when transferring your schematic to perform a PCB layout, Multisim can include optimized trace width information (calculated using the Trace Width Analysis during simulation).

### 12.3 Transferring Data

#### 12.3.1 Transferring from Multisim to Ultiboard for PCB Layout

One of the most common applications to which you may want to transfer data is a PCB layout program. Ultiboard, also from Electronics Workbench, is one of the industry's leading PCB layout tools and offers many advantages over other layout programs, including trace width optimization synchronized with Multisim simulation.



- To transfer a circuit design from Multisim to Ultiboard, in order to perform a PCB layout:
1. Click the Transfer button on the Design Bar.
  2. From the menu that appears, choose **Transfer to Ultiboard**.
  3. A standard file selector screen appears. Specify the name and location of the file to be created. Multisim then creates files that can then be loaded into Ultiboard.
  4. Load the created files into Ultiboard, following the instructions in the *Ultiboard User Guide*.

**Note** If changes are made to your design while in Ultiboard, you may want to backannotate them in Multisim. This is done using the **Transfer** menu (not the Design Bar button) and is explained in.

## 12.3.2 Transferring to Other PCB Layout

If you are using a PCB layout package produced by a vendor other than Electronics Workbench, you can create files in the necessary formats for transfer to the following third party layout packages:

- Eagle
- Lay
- OrCAD
- Protel
- Tango
- PCAD

- To transfer the circuit design to a third party layout package:



1. Click the Transfer button on the Design Bar.
2. From the menu that appears, choose **Transfer to Other PCB Layout**.
3. A standard file selector screen appears. Navigate to the desired folder, enter a file name and choose the desired manufacturer from the drop-down list. Multisim creates a file of the appropriate format that can then be loaded into the layout package of your choice.

## 12.4 Exporting Simulation Results

### 12.4.1 Exporting to MathCAD

You can export the results of your simulation to MathCAD, allowing you to perform sophisticated mathematical operations on your data.

**Note** This function is only available if you have MathCAD installed on your computer.

- To export the simulation results to a MathCAD session:



1. Click the Transfer button on the Design Bar.
2. From the list that appears, choose **Export Simulation Results to MathCAD**. A prompt screen appears, asking you to confirm that you want to open the Analysis Graphs window and continue with the export process.
3. Click **OK**. The Analysis Graphs window appears, showing the results of your simulation and/or analysis.
4. You use the Analysis Graphs window to define which data will be transferred to MathCAD. By default, MathCAD will assign the x and y coordinates of the current trace to the variables in1 and in2. If necessary, move the trace to the correct location by clicking on it (to check which trace is current, enable the cursors).



5. Click the **Transfer to MathCAD** button.
6. A new MathCAD session is started.

**Note** MathCAD will shut down when Multisim shuts down.

## 12.4.2 Exporting to Excel

You can export your simulation results to Excel, allowing you to use the data for further processing in a spreadsheet.

**Note** This function is only available if you have Excel installed on your computer.

- To export the simulation results to an Excel spreadsheet:



1. Click the Transfer button on the Design Bar.
2. From the list that appears, choose **Export Simulation Results to Excel**. A prompt screen appears, asking you to confirm that you want to open the Analysis Graphs window and continue with the export process.
3. Click **OK**. The Analysis Graphs window appears, showing the results of your simulation and/or analysis.
4. You use the Analysis Graphs window to define which data will be transferred to MathCAD. The Excel spreadsheet will contain the x and y coordinates of the current trace. If necessary, move the trace to the correct location by clicking on it (to check which trace is current, enable the cursors).



5. Click the **Transfer to Excel** button.

6. A new Excel spreadsheet is created, with data from the x coordinates in column one and data from the y coordinates in column two.
7. If desired, save the Excel spreadsheet.

## Chapter 13

# Project/Team Design Module

13.1	About this Chapter . . . . .	13-1
13.2	Introduction to the Multisim Project/Team Design Module . . . . .	13-1
13.3	Project Management and Version Control . . . . .	13-1
13.3.1	Setting up Projects . . . . .	13-2
13.3.2	Working with Projects. . . . .	13-3
13.3.3	Working with Files Contained in Projects. . . . .	13-3
13.3.4	Version Control . . . . .	13-4
13.4	Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-5
13.4.1	About Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-5
13.4.2	Setting up and Using Hierarchical Design . . . . .	13-6
13.5	Remote Control/Design Sharing. . . . .	13-6
13.6	Working with “Corporate” Level Data . . . . .	13-7
13.7	Working with User Fields . . . . .	13-7





## Chapter 13 Project/Team Design Module

### 13.1 About this Chapter



This chapter explains how you can use Multisim's Project/Team Design module, included in Power Professional versions and available as an optional module in Professional versions of Multisim.

### 13.2 Introduction to the Multisim Project/Team Design Module

Multisim's Project/Team Design module allows you to group circuit files into projects to support multiple users on a single project, embed circuits within circuits for powerful hierarchical design, develop the "corporate" database level for corporate-specific components, add user-specific information to the Multisim database, and share designs across a network or the Internet.

### 13.3 Project Management and Version Control

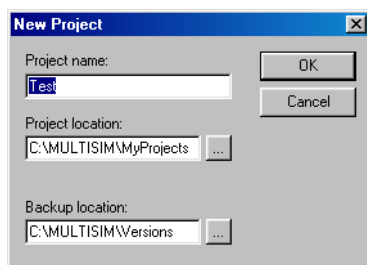
Multisim's project management and version control allow you to group together circuit files for fast retrieval and version control. If a user has opened a circuit file from a project and another user attempts to open the same file, that user is told that the file is in use and can only open it in read-only form. Individual users can also choose to open any circuit file as read-only, to avoid potential conflicts with other users.

#### 13.3.1 Setting up Projects

- To create a project container for circuit files:

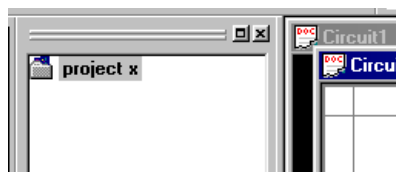
## Project/Team Design Module

1. Choose **File/New Project**. The New Project screen appears:



2. Specify the name for your project, the folder where the project files are to be stored, and the folder where backups of the project file are to be placed. If the folders do not already exist, they will be created. Click the button next to the location fields to browse for the desired location.
3. To save your changes, click **OK**. To cancel, click **Cancel**.

A project browser appears on your screen:



- To add files to the project:
  1. Right-click on the project name in the project browser. From the pop-up menu that appears, choose **Add file**.
  2. A standard file selector window appears. Navigate to the location of the file you want included in the project, select it and click **OK**.
  3. The file is added to the project and its name appears in the project browser.



**Note** A circuit file can be part of more than one project.

- To remove a file from a project, right-click on the file and choose **Remove**.
- To save a project, choose **File/Save Project**.
- To close the project, choose **File/Close Project**. Closed projects can be accessed quickly by choosing **File/Recent Projects** and choosing from the displayed list.

### 13.3.2 Working with Projects

- To open a file within a project:
  1. Right-click on the circuit file name in the project browser.
  2. From the pop-up menu that appears, choose either **Open** or **Open as Read-Only**. If the file is already open by another user, the **Open** command will not be available. If you open the file as read-only, you will not be able to save your changes to that file.or
  1. Double-click on a circuit file in the project browser. If the file is not in use by another user, it will open. If it is in use, you are prompted to open it as read-only.

**Note** Files in use by another user are displayed with a different color in the project browser than files which are not in use.
- To open a project:
  1. Choose **File/Open Project**. A standard Windows file browser appears.
  2. If necessary, navigate to the correct folder and open the project file (with a .msp extension).OR
  1. Choose **File/Recent Projects** and select the project from the list that appears.
  2. Once the project is open, the project browser shows a list of all the files within that project.

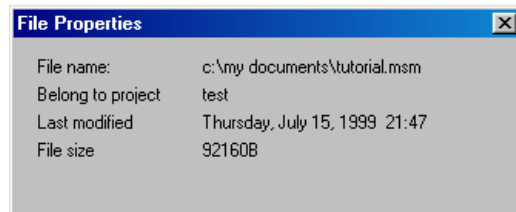
### 13.3.3 Working with Files Contained in Projects

You can lock, unlock and see summary information about any file in a project.

- To lock the file, preventing anyone else from opening it, right-click on the file name in the project browser and choose **Lock File** from the pop-up menu that appears.
- To unlock a file, freeing it for use by someone else, right-click on the file name in the project browser and choose **Unlock File** from the pop-up menu that appears.

## Project/Team Design Module

To see information on a file in a project, right-click on the file name in the project browser and choose **Properties** from the pop-up menu that appears. A screen similar to the following appears:

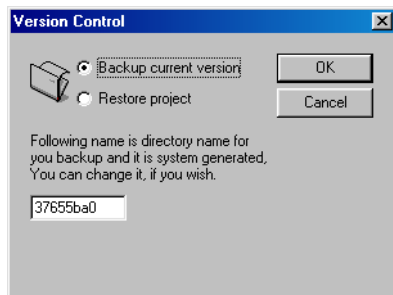


### 13.3.4 Version Control

At any given time, you can back up the contents of a project folder. You can then restore the folder as of that day.

➤ To back up a project folder:

1. Choose **File/Version Control**. The Version Control screen appears:



2. Select **Back up current version**.
3. The system generates a name for the backup, based on the system date. If you wish, you can change this by typing a new name in the field.
4. Click **OK**. The project file is backed up.

➤ To restore a backed up project folder:

**Note** Restoring a backed up project folder replaces the current folder. If you want to keep the current folder as well as the backed up version, save the folder to a new location or with a new name before proceeding.

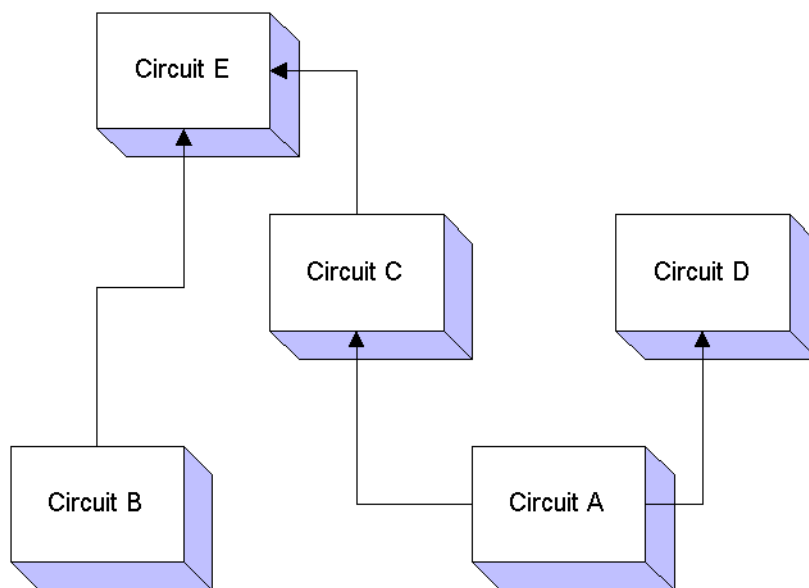
1. Choose **File/Version Control**. The Version Control screen appears.

2. Select **Restore project**. A screen listing the available backed up project folders appears.
3. Select the file you want and click **OK**.
4. You are prompted to confirm that you want to over-write the existing project folder contents with the backed up version.

## 13.4 Hierarchical Design

### 13.4.1 About Hierarchical Design

Multisim allows you to build a hierarchy of inter-connecting circuits, increasing the reusability of your circuit designs and ensuring consistency among a group of designers. Unlike the subcircuits described on page 3-23, the circuits set up this way are linked together so that changes are reflected in all associated circuit files. For example, you might build a library of commonly used circuits, stored in a central location. Those circuits could be contained in other circuits, which could, in turn, be used to create yet another level of circuit design. Since Multisim allows the interconnected circuits to be linked together, therefore updating automatically, you can ensure that refinements made to one circuit are carried out in all related circuits as well. In this way complex projects can be divided up into smaller interconnected circuits, each of which is dealt with individually, and all circuits are always updated automatically.



## 13.4.2 Setting up and Using Hierarchical Design

- To set up a circuit for use in hierarchical design, add input/output nodes at the desired locations in the circuit, as described in “Setting up a Circuit for Use as a Subcircuit” on page 3-24.
- To link or embed a circuit to another:
  1. Open the circuit to which you want another circuit linked.
  2. Choose **Edit/Place Hierarchical Block**. A standard Windows file browser appears.
  3. Locate the circuit file you want linked to the current circuit as a subcircuit and click **OK**. The circuit appears in its own circuit window so you can make any changes necessary, such as adding input/output nodes.
  4. Click on the original circuit window. The cursor changes to indicate the linked circuit is ready to be pasted.
  5. Click where you want the subcircuit placed. You are prompted for a reference ID for the subcircuit.
  6. Enter a subcircuit name and click **OK**. The subcircuit’s icon appears on the circuit window, so you can wire it into the schematic.
- To edit the subcircuit, either open it as usual or double-click on the subcircuit’s icon and, from the screen that appears, click **Edit Subcircuit**. When you save your changes, they are immediately reflected in any other circuits that are linked to this subcircuit.

## 13.5 Remote Control/Design Sharing



Multisim’s Remote Control/Design Sharing module allows you to share your designs with other Multisim users, and to control the PC of other users.

This module offers a way to share designs within a workgroup or engineering department, allowing multiple people to work on a design at the same time and see the changes made to the circuit by others. Electronic Workbench’s support department can also use this module to run Multisim on your PC, helping them diagnose any problems you might be encountering.

To use Multisim’s Remote Control/Design Sharing capability, you must have access to a network or the Internet, and have the free Microsoft application Netmeeting installed. To install a copy of this product, go to <http://www.microsoft.com/netmeeting>.

Once you have established a connection with another user, you can:

- send text messages back and forth (in a “chat” mode)
- see and/or talk to the user (if you have the necessary software and hardware to support audio/video links)
- use an electronic whiteboard to present ideas to other users

- send circuit files to other users
- let other users (including Electronics Workbench support personnel) control Multisim on your machine so you can work together
- control other Multisim users’ machines, so you can show them the changes you are making to a circuit.



- To use the Remote Control/Design Sharing module:
  1. Click the Transfer button on the Design Bar.
  2. From the list that appears, choose **Remote Control/Design Sharing**. Netmeeting is launched.

## 13.6 Working with “Corporate” Level Data

The “corporate” (Corp/Proj) level of the Multisim database is empty when you first use Multisim. It is intended to let you set up an area of the database with specific components that are available to a group of users or for a specific project. For example, you could use this to provide your engineers with a set of approved components with which to work. Typically, a manager or project leader in your company would populate this level of the database.

Alternatively, Electronics Workbench offers a service to fill this database level with your company’s data. Contact us for more information about this service.

## 13.7 Working with User Fields

User fields can be used for any purpose you wish. For example, you might use these fields to record the cost of a component (the price you pay to the supplier or vendor), lead time for ordering, preferred supplier, stock number, and so on. The information is particularly useful in reports and in searching the database for the most appropriate component. Different user fields are stored for each level of the database (for example, you might want to capture vendor information at the “user” level, and price information at the “corporate” level).

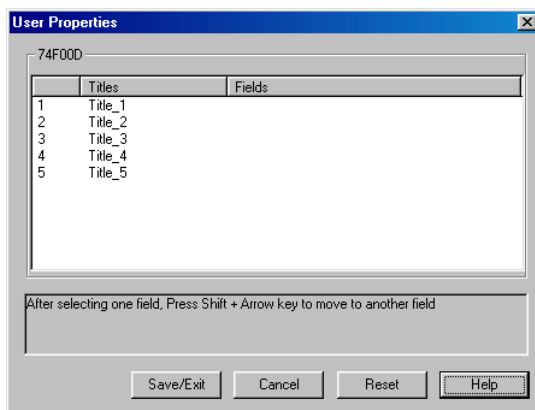
Each component can have up to five user fields. Fields consist of two elements: the field title and the field value. Field titles are shared across database levels (that is, all components in the same level have the same user field titles), and field values are unique to an individual component. Typically, a manager or project leader in your company would populate this level of the database. Alternatively, Electronics Workbench provides a service to fill such fields with data for you to meet your specifications.

- To set up or modify user field titles for a specific database level:
  1. Open the Browser screen for the database level you want to modify (either by clicking the appropriate button on the component family toolbar or by choosing **Edit/Place Component**).



## Project/Team Design Module

2. Click **User fields**. The User Properties screen appears:



3. Double-click the appropriate title until a frame appears around it.
  4. Enter or change the name for the title and press ENTER. This name will now appear in the User Properties screen for all components in this database level.
- To enter or modify field values for a specific component:
1. Open the Browser screen for the component whose field values you want to enter or modify (either by clicking the appropriate button on the component family toolbar or by choosing **Edit/Place Component**)
  2. Click **User fields**. The User Properties screen appears, showing the field titles defined for that database level.
  3. Double-click the appropriate “field” column until a frame appears around it.
  4. Enter or change the value, and press ENTER.

Click **Save/Exit** to save your changes and return to the Component Properties screen. To cancel your changes, click **Cancel**. To refresh the screen with the original user field information, click **Reset**.

**Note** You can also enter or modify user field titles or values through the Component Editor.

## Chapter 14

# RF

14.1	About This Chapter	14-1
14.2	Introduction to the Multisim RF Module	14-1
14.3	Components	14-2
14.3.1	About RF Components	14-2
14.3.2	Multisim's RF Components	14-3
14.3.3	Theoretical Explanation of the RF Models	14-3
14.3.3.1	Striplines/Microstrips/Waveguides	14-3
14.3.3.2	RF Resistors	14-5
14.3.3.3	RF Capacitors	14-5
14.3.3.4	RF Inductors	14-6
14.3.3.5	Active Devices	14-7
14.4	RF Instruments	14-9
14.4.1	Spectrum Analyzer	14-9
14.4.1.1	About the Spectrum Analyzer	14-9
14.4.1.2	Using Multisim's Spectrum Analyzer	14-9
14.4.1.3	Frequency Range	14-10
14.4.1.4	Frequency Spans	14-10
14.4.1.5	Frequency Analysis	14-11
14.4.1.6	Amplitude Range	14-12
14.4.1.7	Reference Level	14-12
14.4.1.8	Frequency Resolution	14-13
14.4.1.9	Examples	14-13
14.4.2	Network Analyzer	14-15
14.4.2.1	About the Network Analyzer	14-15
14.4.2.2	Using the Network Analyzer	14-16
14.4.2.3	Marker Controls	14-17
14.4.2.4	Trace Controls	14-17
14.4.2.5	Format Controls	14-17
14.4.2.6	Data Controls	14-18
14.4.2.7	Mode Controls	14-18

14.5	RF Analyses . . . . .	14-18
14.5.1	RF Characterizer Analysis . . . . .	14-18
14.5.2	Matching Network Analysis . . . . .	14-20
14.5.3	Noise Figure Analysis . . . . .	14-24
14.5.3.1	Noise Figure Analysis Tabs . . . . .	14-25
14.6	RF Model Makers . . . . .	14-26
14.6.1	Waveguide . . . . .	14-27
14.6.2	Microstrip Line . . . . .	14-28
14.6.3	Open End Microstrip Line. . . . .	14-29
14.6.4	RF Spiral Inductor . . . . .	14-30
14.6.5	Strip Line Model . . . . .	14-31
14.6.6	Stripline Bend. . . . .	14-32
14.6.7	Lossy Line . . . . .	14-34
14.6.8	Interdigital Capacitor . . . . .	14-35
14.7	Tutorial: Designing RF Circuits. . . . .	14-36
14.7.1	Selecting Type of RF Amplifier. . . . .	14-37
14.7.2	Selecting an RF Transistor. . . . .	14-37
14.7.3	Selecting a DC-operating Point . . . . .	14-38
14.7.4	Selecting the Biasing Network . . . . .	14-38
14.7.4.1	Selecting an Operating Frequency Point . . . . .	14-40
14.7.4.2	Analyzing the RF Network. . . . .	14-40

# Chapter 14

## RF

### 14.1 About this Chapter



This chapter describes the key capabilities included in the RF Design Module. This module is part of the Multisim Power Professional product, and is available as an optional add-in to the Professional Edition.

This chapter contains descriptions of the elements (components, model makers, instruments, analyses) of Multisim's RF Design module, as well as a tutorial demonstrating their use and some specific examples of RF functionality.

### 14.2 Introduction to the Multisim RF Module

The Multisim RF module is intended to provide fundamental RF circuit design features needed by engineers to design, analyze and simulate RF circuits.

The Multisim RF module is made up of the following:

- RF-specific components, including customized RF SPICE models
- model makers for creating your own RF models
- two RF-specific instruments (Spectrum Analyzer and Network Analyzer)
- several RF-specific analyses (circuit characterizer, matching network cells, noise figure).

Elements of the RF Design module are fully integrated into Multisim. That is, the instruments, analyses and components are installed in the same places and invoked in the same way as all other instruments, analyses and components. You will not see a separate access to the RF Design Module in Multisim's interface. Instead, for example, the RF components go into their own Parts Bin on the component toolbar and the RF instruments are accessed through the Design Bar's **Instrument** button. For example, the RF components go into their own Parts Bin on the Component toolbar and the RF instruments are accessed through the Instrument button on the Design Bar.

## 14.3 Components

### 14.3.1 About RF Components

Components in the electronics field fall into two categories — “lumped” components and “distributed” components. Lumped components are smaller than the wavelength, where:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f}$$

In these cases, the wavelength of the voltages and currents at which they are operating is significantly larger than the components themselves. Ohm's Law, in this case, is valid. For example, a 1/4 Watt resistor is about 0.270 inch long and 0.090 inch in diameter.

RF components, on the other hand, are most often “distributed elements”, where the phase of a voltage or current changes significantly over the physical extent of the device, because the device dimensions are similar to, in some cases even larger than, the wavelength. Standard circuit theory is therefore not always applicable to circuits that are working at a few MHz to above GHz.

The usual models for lumped components are often not valid in the RF world. For example, a capacitor can behave as an inductor or an inductor can behave like a capacitor at high frequencies.

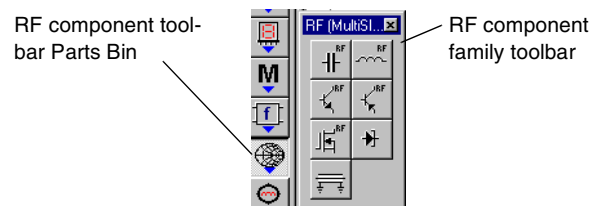
RF components exhibit parasitic effects, and have models different from those used in low frequencies. Connections between two nodes at high frequencies would exhibit different behavior from those at low frequencies, and are modeled using capacitances and inductances. These connections behave as transmission lines when implemented on a Printed Circuit Board (PCB). The board itself becomes part of the circuit, interfering with the normal circuit function. That is why low frequency circuit simulation EDA tools can become unreliable at higher frequencies.

Standard RF components include capacitors, inductors, toroids, ferrite beads, couplers, circulators, transmission lines or striplines, waveguides, and high frequency active devices such as transistors and diodes. More complex components, such as quadrature hybrids, mixers, filters, and attenuators, are built using these standard components. This chapter deals with the standard components and their models in high frequencies.

## 14.3.2 Multisim's RF Components

The RF Design module contains over 100 parts and models specifically built for accuracy at higher frequencies. This ability to handle higher frequencies helps overcome a typical problem with SPICE models, which tend to perform poorly at such frequencies.

These parts are found in the Component toolbar near the bottom in the Parts Bin that looks like this:



You access RF components as you would any other Multisim components. There are several Component Families in the RF Parts Bin, including: RF capacitors, RF inductors, RF npn BJTs, RF pnp BJTs, RF MOSFETs, RF tunnel diodes and RF striplines/waveguides.

Families containing components with wide commercial availability (e.g. RF npn BJT) have a large number of components within them. Families containing components that are not readily available “off-the-shelf” (e.g. RF inductors) contain only a few components. The latter were modelled using Multisim’s RF Model Makers, explained on page 14-9. RF Model Makers are also used to customise your own parts.

## 14.3.3 Theoretical Explanation of the RF Models

This section explains some of the scientific theory behind the operation of RF components and why they must be modelled differently at higher frequencies. You do not need to understand this information to use the RF components in Multisim, but it may be of interest to you. If it is not of interest, you may proceed to section 14.4 and begin using the RF components immediately.

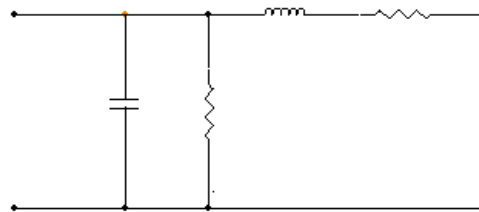
### 14.3.3.1 Striplines/Microstrips/Waveguides

Wires are used to connect two internal nodes on a circuit and show no difference in phase and magnitude between two connecting nodes. Wires, however, behave differently at RF frequencies depending on their length and diameter. One effect at RF frequencies is called “skin effect”, explained below.

A conductor, at low frequencies, utilizes its entire cross-sectional area as a transport medium for charge carriers. As the frequency is increased, an increased magnetic field at the center of

the conductor presents an impedance to the charge carriers, thus decreasing the current density at the center of the conductor and increasing it around its perimeter. This effect is called the “skin effect”, and occurs in all conductors, including resistor leads, capacitor leads, and inductor leads. As the frequency increases, this effect is more pronounced.

A simple wire connecting two nodes in high frequencies behaves as a transmission line. The following figure shows the equivalent circuit of a transmission line. There are four components. The capacitor is the result of an actual capacitance existing between the center of the conductor and the ground. Between these two plates is the dielectric, which is not perfect. This leakage is modeled using conductance G and is given per unit length of line. Also, due to the resistance of the conductor itself, we have a series resistance R. Its value depends on the resistivity of the material used, the length, the cross-section of the conductor, and the skin effects.



Every transmission line has a resistance, called its “characteristic impedance”. Most microwave systems have a characteristic impedance of 50 Ohm. This value is a compromise between maximum power handling capability and minimum attenuation. At 50 Ohm, there is a reasonably low attenuation, and adequate power handling capability.

If the outer diameter of the conductor of a coaxial line is shown by “D”, and the inner diameter is shown in “d”, and  $\epsilon$  is the dielectric constant of the cable, the characteristic impedance is calculated by the following formula:

$$Z_0 = \frac{138}{\sqrt{\epsilon}} \log_{10} \left( \frac{D}{d} \right)$$

The components C and L shown in the figure above are calculated as follows:

$$C = \frac{7.354\epsilon}{\log_{10}(D/d)} \quad ((PF)/(ft))$$

$$L = 0.1404 \log_{10}(D/d) \quad ((\mu H)/(ft))$$

A stripline is a useful form of transmission line. The stripline consists of a conducting strip lying between, and parallel to, two wide conducting planes. The region between the strip and the planes is filled with a uniform dielectric.

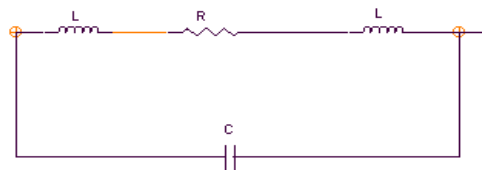
Microstrips are easy to fabricate using photolithographic processes. At the same time that a transistor is placed on top of the board, for example, a microstrip can also be placed. Microstrip is, therefore, easily integrated with other passive and active devices. A conductor of width  $W$  is printed on a thin, grounded dielectric substrate of thickness “ $d$ ” and relative permittivity “ $\mu_r$ ”.

A waveguide is a structure, or part of a structure, that causes a wave to propagate in a chosen direction.

If the waveguide boundaries change direction, the wave is constrained to follow. Waveguides come in a variety of types: simple parallel plate structure, cylindrical structures with conducting boundaries, rectangular waveguides, and circular waveguides. A transmission line or a stripline is a special case of waveguide.

### 14.3.3.2 RF Resistors

Resistors find many applications as terminators or attenuators. The equivalent circuit of a resistor at radio frequency is shown in the following figure. The inductor is calculated using the physical geometry of the resistor.



$$L = 0.0021 \left[ 2.3 \log \left( \frac{4l}{d} - 0.75 \right) \right] (\mu H)$$

$l$  = length of wire in cm

$d$  = diameter in cm

### 14.3.3.3 RF Capacitors

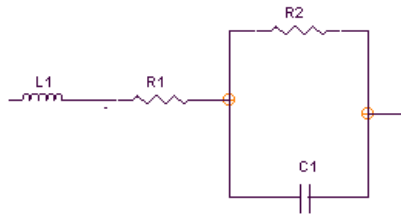
Capacitors are used for interstage coupling, for bypassing, in resonant circuits, and in filters. RF capacitors must be chosen carefully to ensure the best performance for specific applications. RF capacitors consist of two metal plates separated by a dielectric. The capacitance of an *ideal* capacitor has a direct relationship with the area ( $A$ ), and is proportional inversely to



the thickness of the dielectric ( $d$ ). Its relationship is expressed in the following formula, where  $\epsilon$  is the dielectric constant of the dielectric material.

$$C = \epsilon \frac{A}{d}$$

The actual capacitor shows imperfection. One type of capacitor is modeled as shown in the following figure.



In order to find the numerical values of the ideal elements in the model above, we need to consider a number of factors.

Let  $\phi$  represent the phase of current compared to the voltage. This phase is ideally 90, but is smaller for real components. The power factor (PF) is defined as  $\cos(\phi)$ . This factor is a function of temperature, frequency, and the dielectric material. The power factor is usually used to describe the capacitor in low frequencies.

This factor in higher frequencies is sometimes referred to as the dissipation factor. This factor describes how much power is dissipated, lost, or transformed to heat energy in RF frequencies. Another factor that defines the quality of the capacitor is closely related to power factor and is called Q factor. This factor is the reciprocal of dissipation factor. The larger the Q, the better the capacitor.

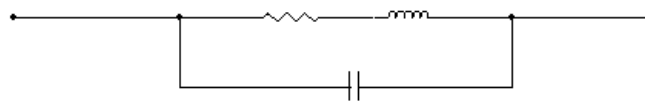
No dielectric material is perfect. Therefore, there is always leakage current between two plates. This behavior is best described by  $R_p$  which is usually around 100,000 MOhm. The series resistor is the AC resistance of the capacitor in high frequencies, and is obtained using  $\cos(\phi)/C\omega * 1e6$ . Here,  $\omega = 2\pi f$ .

There is a frequency point above which the capacitor starts to behave like an inductor.

#### 14.3.3.4 RF Inductors

Inductors are extensively used in resonant circuits, filters, and matching networks. The following figure shows a typical inductor modeled for RF frequencies. An inductor is a wire wound or coiled. Each two windings are at close proximity, which creates a distributed capacitor,  $C_d$ . The inductor would behave like a capacitor at high frequencies. There is always a series resistance which prevents the coil from resonating. The ratio of an inductor's reactance

to its series resistance is often used as a measure of the quality of the inductor. The larger the ratio, the better the inductor is.

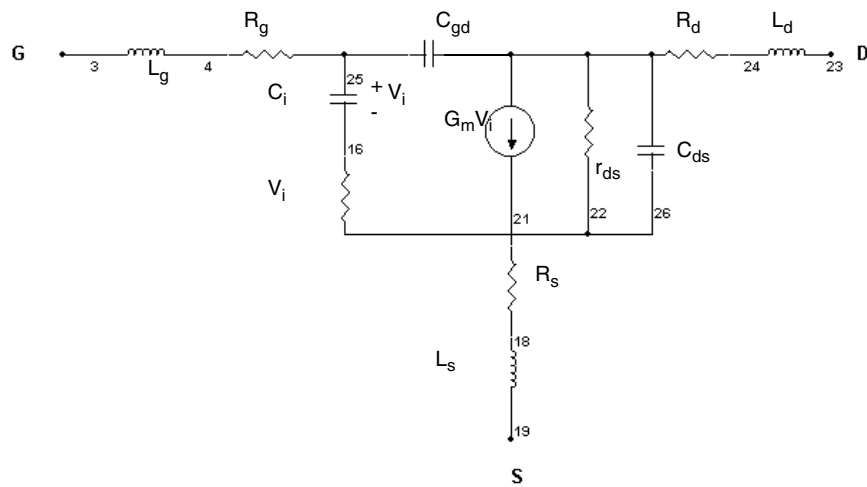
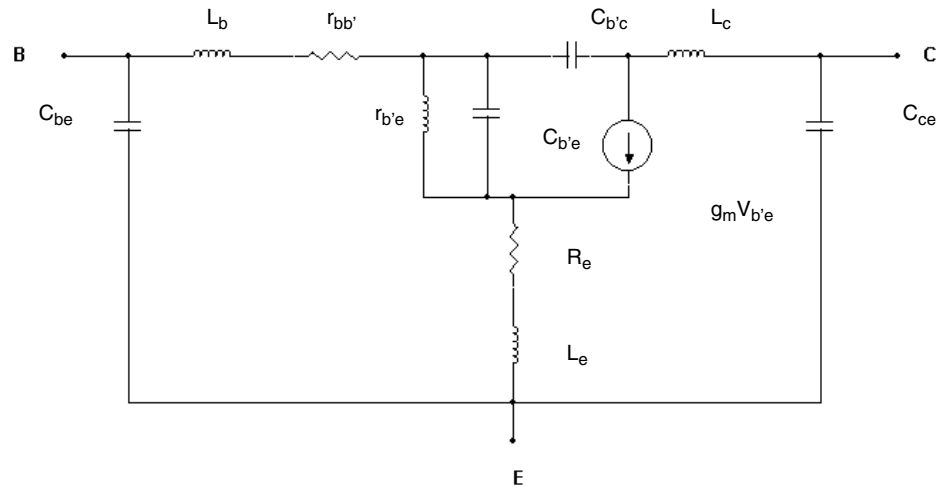


### 14.3.3.5 Active Devices

In low frequencies, active devices are modeled using a number of ideal components such as resistors and capacitors. In high frequencies, each of these ideal components should be replaced by its equivalent, as discussed earlier. For example, a resistor should be replaced by a resistor in series with an inductor. Some simplifications would reduce redundant components.

RF

Two inductors in series, for example, can be replaced by one inductor. A typical equivalent circuit of RF transistor is shown in the following figures.



The cutoff frequency  $f_c$  can be derived from the equivalent circuit and is inversely proportional to the transit time  $\tau_c$ :

$$f_c = \frac{g_m}{2\pi C_i} = \frac{1}{2\pi \tau_c} = \frac{v_s}{2\pi L_g}$$

where  $L_g$  is the effective length of the gate, and  $v_s$  is the saturation velocity that electrons travel.

Active components included in Multisim are RF\_BJT\_NPN, RF\_BJT\_PNP, RF\_MOS\_3TDN, and tunnel diode. See the “RF Components” appendix for information on these components.

## 14.4 RF Instruments

Multisim’s RF Design module provides two key instruments for successful RF circuit design and analysis: the Spectrum Analyzer and the Network Analyzer.

### 14.4.1 Spectrum Analyzer

#### 14.4.1.1 About the Spectrum Analyzer

The spectrum analyzer is used to measure amplitude versus frequency. This instrument is capable of measuring a signal's power and frequency components, and helps determine the existence of harmonics in the signal.

One area that has an interest in spectrum measurement is communications. For example, cellular radio systems must be checked for harmonics of the carrier signal that might interfere with other RF systems. Other interesting applications of spectrum analysis are distortions of the message modulated onto a carrier.

The spectrum analyzer displays its measurements in the frequency domain rather than the time domain. Usually the reference frame in signal analysis is time. In that case, an oscilloscope is used to show the instantaneous value as a function of time. Sometimes a sine waveform is expected but the signal, rather than being a pure sinusoidal, has a harmonic on it. As a result, it is not possible to measure the waveform’s level. If the same signal were displayed on a spectrum analyzer, its amplitude would be displayed, but so would its frequency components, that is, its fundamental frequency and any harmonics it may contain.

Time domain measurements such as rise and fall times, pulse width, repetition rates, delays, etc., cannot be easily obtained in frequency domain measurements. Therefore, both techniques are important.

#### 14.4.1.2 Using Multisim’s Spectrum Analyzer

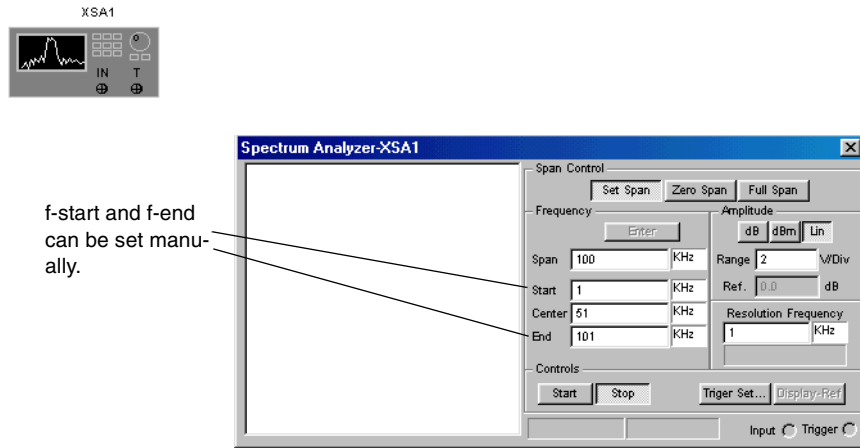
The spectrum analyzer in Multisim does not generate the noise one normally expects in a real spectrum analyzer. In reality, the noise generated by the spectrum analyzer itself (due to the random electron motion through the various circuit elements of an analyzer) is amplified by

the various gain stages in the analyzer, and ultimately appears on the CRT as a noise signal below which measurement cannot be made. With Multisim's spectrum analyzer, no additional noise is introduced by the instrument itself.

A number of parameters characterize a spectrum analyzer:

- frequency range in which the instrument operates
- frequency spans
- reference level
- measurement range.

These are all represented on the Multisim spectrum analyzer, and must be set manually.

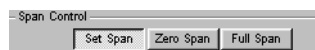


### 14.4.1.3 Frequency Range

Frequency range is the range of frequencies over which the spectrum analyzer will analyze signals. There are two frequencies that you manually set: f-start (minimum value 1kHz) is entered in the **Start** field and f-end (maximum value of 4 GHz) is entered in the **End** field. Zero frequency is not allowed for any of the frequency settings.

### 14.4.1.4 Frequency Spans

This parameter indicates the following frequency range to be displayed:



- If **Full Span** is selected, the entire instrument range, which is 1kHz to 4GHz, is displayed.
- If **Zero Span** is selected, a single frequency defined by the **Center** field is displayed.
- If **Set span** is selected, the frequency span is determined using either span control or frequency control, as explained below.

### 14.4.1.5 Frequency Analysis

There are two methods to select the frequency range:

- span control
- frequency control.

#### Span Control

This technique sets the span and the center frequencies, i.e., f-center and f-span.

- To set the span and the center frequencies, do the following:
  - Click **Enter** (in the **Frequency** area of the instrument's display) to automatically calculate the values of f-start and f-end using the following expressions:
 
$$f\text{-start} = (f\text{-center} - f\text{-span} / 2)$$

$$f\text{-end} = (f\text{-center} + f\text{-span}/2)$$

#### Frequency Control

You can define the starting and ending frequencies manually. In order to do this, you need to enter the numerical values of frequencies in the **Frequency** area of the screen. Their values should be non-zero values. When **Enter** is clicked, the center frequency (f-center) and the range of frequency displayed on the spectrum analyzer (f-span) are calculated automatically. The relationship among these parameters is expressed as follows:

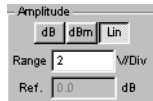
$$f\text{-center} = (f\text{-start} + f\text{-end})/2$$

$$f\text{-span} = (f\text{-end} - f\text{-start})$$

Frequency	
<b>Enter</b>	
Span	100 KHz
Start	1 KHz
Center	51 KHz
End	101 KHz

These two techniques are interrelated, that is, it is not possible to set all four parameters independently. Both techniques are useful. For example, if you want to see frequency components around one specific frequency such as 100 Mhz +/- 100kHz, then the frequency control technique is easier to apply. The center frequency, in this example, is 100 Mhz, and the span is  $2 \times (100\text{kHz}) = 200 \text{ kHz}$ .

### 14.4.1.6 Amplitude Range



You can set the amplitude range of the signal visible on the screen by choosing one of the following three options:

- **dB** - This option stands for  $20 \cdot \log_{10}(V)$ , where  $\log_{10}$  is the logarithm in base 10, and  $V$  is the amplitude of the signal. When this option is used, the signal is displayed by “dB per division”, shown in the right-hand side of the spectrum analyzer. The dB reading is of interest when measuring the power of the signal.
- **dBm** - This option stands for  $10 \cdot \log_{10}(V/0.775)$ . Zero dBm is the power dissipated in a 600 Ohm resistor when the voltage across it is 0.775 V. This power is equal to 1 mW. If the level of a signal is +10 dBm, it means that its power is 10 mW. When this option is used, the signal power is displayed based on the reference of 0 dBm. For applications in which the terminating resistor is 600 Ohm, such as in telephone lines, it is more convenient to read dBm as it is directly proportional to the power dissipation. However, in dB, you need to include the value of the resistor to find the dissipated power in the resistor. In dBm, the value of the resistor has been accounted for already.
- **LIN** - This option selects a linear display of the signal. To change the maximum amplitude displayed on the screen, enter a voltage value in the **Range** field.

### 14.4.1.7 Reference Level

The reference level is used to set the range of the input signal that can be displayed on the screen.

The axes of the spectrum analyzer are not marked by units and values. You can read the frequency and the amplitude of each point displayed on the screen by using the cursor. When the cursor is moved and placed on the point of interest, the frequency and the amplitude in V, dB, or dBm are displayed at the right-lower part of the analyzer.

You can observe more than one frequency and evaluate the results for the entire frequency range shown. You may want to know when the amplitude (in dB or dBm) of some components is above a certain limit in dB or dBm. For example, say you were interested in the (-3dB) amplitude. By locating (-3dB) points you can estimate the bandwidth of the amplifier. By clicking **Display-Ref**, you can set the reference level to (-3dB) and, using the cursor at the same time, you can find the lower edge and upper edge of the pass band.

You can also find out whether the amplitude of the signal is less than a certain value for a certain band of frequency. To do this, observe signals on the spectrum analyzer, and use the reference button. The maximum reference value in dB is set to (+30 dB). **Display-Ref** is available only if either **dB** or **dBm** are activated.

### 14.4.1.8 Frequency Resolution

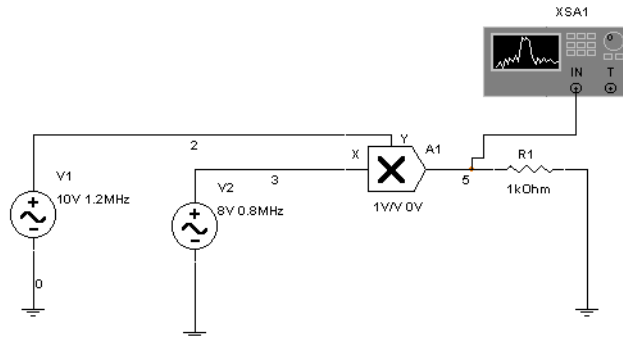
The frequency resolution is initially set to a minimum value of  $\Delta f = f_{\text{end}}/1024$ . However, you can change it to a greater value and observe the spectrum. You need to select the frequency resolution so that the frequencies are integer multiples of frequency resolutions.

**Note** For an accurate reading, the frequency components should not be below  $\Delta f$ .

### 14.4.1.9 Examples

#### Example 1

The following figure shows a mixer, which is often used in communications applications.



There are two input sinusoidal waveforms. Their frequencies are 0.8 MHz and 1.2 MHz. The amplitudes are set at 8 V and 10 V, respectively. Note that the amplitude is the peak value of the sinusoidal waveform—it is not the RMS value of the waveform. The mixer is set to multiply the signals with unity gain without introducing an offset in either of the input signals. You can expect to find two components at the output placed at  $(1.2+0.8) = 2$  MHz, and  $(1.2 - 0.8) = 0.4$  MHz.

- If you want to try this example for yourself, do the following:
1. Construct the network as shown above.
  2. Double click on the multiplier and set the gains to 1 and the offsets to zeros.
  3. Double-click on the spectrum analyzer and initialize it using one start and end frequencies (example 3 in this chapter shows another way to initialize the spectrum analyzer).
    - Set **Span** to 3MHz and **Center** to 1.8MHz.
    - Click **Enter**. The frequency value of f-start is automatically set to  $(1.8\text{MHz} - 3/2 \text{ MHz}) = 300 \text{ kHz}$ . The frequency value of f-end is automatically set to  $(1.8\text{MHz} + 3/2 \text{ MHz}) = 3.3\text{MHz}$ .

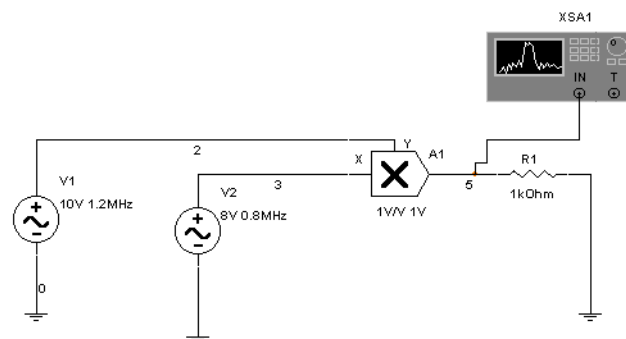


- Since the amplitude of the component is around  $(8 \times 10)/2 = 40\text{V}$ , set the amplitude range to 100 V in “LIN” mode.
4. Run the simulator.
  5. Double-click on the spectrum analyzer.
  6. Click **Start** and wait until the signal stabilizes

The spectrum analyzer starts performing the Fourier Transform of the input signal in time domain. However, since it begins with only a few samples, it does not provide accurate results initially. You must wait until the screen is refreshed a few times to obtain accurate readings of the frequency components and their magnitudes. At this time, the internal frequency resolution is equal to the user-defined frequency resolution. Both of these values are shown on the device. Using the cursor on the screen, you can read the amplitude and frequency of each component. In the example, the readings are the same as the calculated values, that is, two frequency components at 2MHz and 0.4 MHz, with 40 V magnitude.

## Example 2

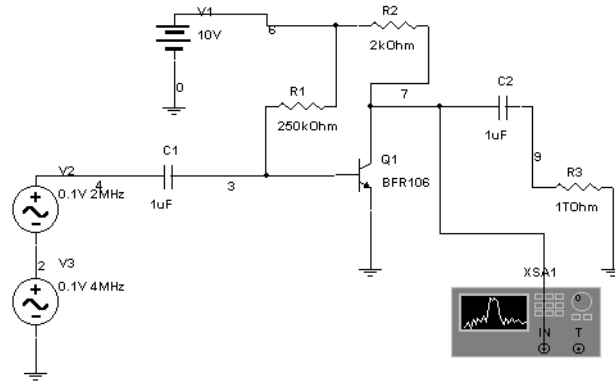
In order to run another example, you need to choose **Run/Stop** and stop the simulation running for the previous example. The second example has the same circuit structure, as shown below.



However, DC offsets (1 V) to the input and the output signals are introduced. Due to the offsets, you will have components at DC, as well as 0.8 MHz and 1.2 MHz. The spectrum analyzer shows the components and their amplitude on the screen if the same setting used in the previous example is also used here.

### Example 3

This example considers an active device that works in saturation. This structure is shown below:



➤ To initialize the spectrum analyzer:

1. Double-click on the spectrum analyzer.
2. Set **Start** to 1kHz and **End** to 11MHz.
3. Click **Enter**. The frequency value of f-span is  $(11\text{MHz} - 1\text{kHz}) = 10.999\text{kHz}$ . The frequency value of f-center is  $(11\text{MHz} + 1\text{kHz})/2 = 5.5005\text{ MHz}$ .
4. Set the range to 2 dB/division, and set the reference to 4 dB to demonstrate the application of reference dB level.

The frequency values of f-start and f-end are set so that the frequency components of interest are captured and their magnitudes can be studied. Using the spectrum analyzer, you can verify that there are more than two frequency components present at the output node. There are three components above 4 dB—zero frequency, 2MHz, and 4 MHz. Other frequency components are at higher frequencies and have dB level less than 4 dB.

## 14.4.2 Network Analyzer

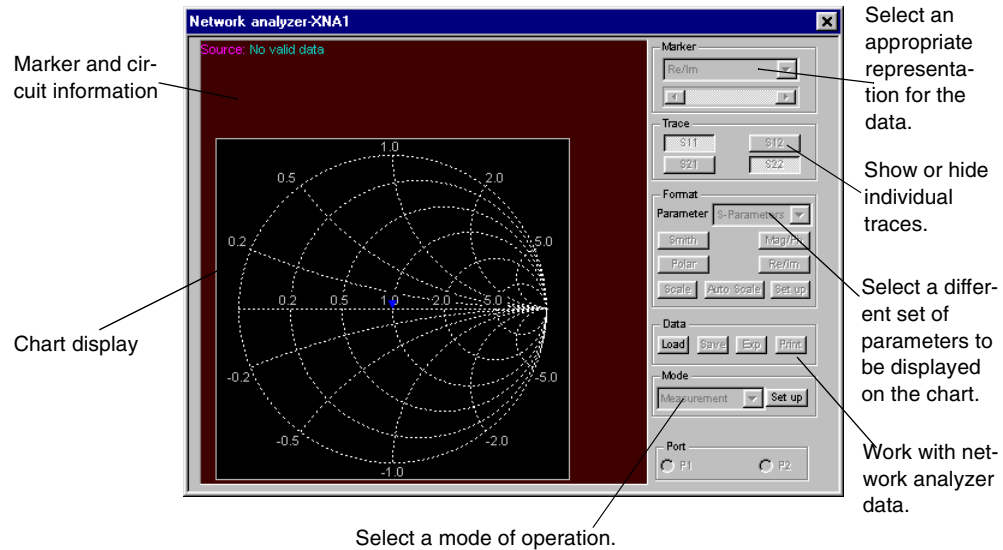
### 14.4.2.1 About the Network Analyzer

The network analyzer is used to measure the scattering parameters (or S-parameters) of a circuit, commonly used to characterize a circuit intended to operate at higher frequencies. These S-parameters are used for a variety of purposes, including in Multisim RF analyses. The network analyzer also calculates H, Y, Z parameters.

### 14.4.2.2 Using the Network Analyzer

The circuit is idealized as a two-port network. To properly use the network analyzer, the circuit must be left open at its input and output ports. During simulation the network analyzer completes the circuit being analyzed by inserting its sub-circuits. You need to remove these sub-circuits from the circuit before performing other analysis and simulation.

When you start simulation, the network analyzer automatically executes two AC analyses. The first AC analysis is applied at the input port to compute the forward parameters  $S_{11}$  and  $S_{21}$ . The second analysis is applied at the output port to compute the reverse parameters  $S_{22}$  and  $S_{12}$ . After the S-parameters are determined, you can use the network analyzer to view the data in many ways and perform further analyses based on the data.



The display of the network analyzer is divided into two regions:

- The left region contains a chart display area and a text display area that shows marker and circuit information.
- The right region contains the controls for the network analyzer.

### 14.4.2.3 Marker Controls

Select from the **Marker** drop-down list how you want data represented:

- Real/Imaginary

- Magnitude/Phase
- dB (Magnitude)/Phase.

Use the scroll bar below the list to step through each data point acquired for the circuit. Initially, the frequency points are selected in decade. The default frequency sweep range is between 1 MHz and 10 GHz. You can also use the PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keyboard keys to navigate the data set.

#### 14.4.2.4 Trace Controls

Use the **Trace** buttons to show and hide each individual trace on the chart. When the network analyzer is opened, S11 and S22 are shown in the trace area. The trace buttons change depending on what parameter or analysis is being looked at. The possible sets in “Measurement” mode are {S11, S12, S21, S22}, {Z11, Z12, Z21, Z22}, {H11, H12, H21, H22}, {Y11, Y12, Y21, Y22}, {K, |delta|}. The possible sets in “RF Characterizer” mode are {P.G., T.P.G., A.P.G.}, {V.G.}, and {Zin, Zout}. For more about these modes, see “Mode Controls” on page 14-18.

#### 14.4.2.5 Format Controls

##### Parameter Options

Select the set of parameters to be displayed on the chart. The parameters available depend on the network analyzer’s mode. In “Measurement” mode, you can choose from S-, Y-, H-, Z-parameters, and stability factors K and |delta|. In “RF Characterizer” mode, select from Power gains, Voltage gains, and Impedances.

##### Format Buttons

Use these buttons to display data using different chart formats. The formats available depend on the selected parameter group.

##### Setup Buttons

Use the **Scale** button to change the scaling of the current chart. Only Polar plot, Real/Imaginary plot and Magnitude/Phase plot can be changed.

Use the **Auto Scale** button to automatically scale the data so that it can be displayed within the current chart.

Use the **Setup** button to change the various display properties of the network analyzer.

#### 14.4.2.6 Data Controls

Use the **Save** button to save the current S-parameter data set to file.

Use the **Load** button to load a previously saved S-parameter data set into the network analyzer. Once the data is loaded, you can use all the functions provided by the network analyzer to view and analyze the data. The saved S-parameter file has the file extension .sp.

Use the **Exp** button to export the data set of the selected parameter group to a text file. For example, if the selected parameter group is Z-parameters displayed in magnitude/phase chart format, Z-parameters will be exported, and their values will be in magnitude/phase format.

Use the **Print** button to print the selected chart.

### 14.4.2.7 Mode Controls

From the **Mode** drop-down list, select the network analyzer mode:

- measurement mode, which provides the parameters in different formats
- RF Characterizer mode, which provides the power gains, voltage gains, and impedances seen from input and output ports
- “Match net. designer” mode, which opens a new window, explained below.

Use the first of the above choices to use the Network analyzer to perform measurement (its normal application). Use the second and third options to access the two RF analyses explained below.

Use the **Setup** button to enter the measurement settings for computing the circuit’s S-parameters.

## 14.5 RF Analyses

### 14.5.1 RF Characterizer Analysis

Multisim’s RF characterizer analysis tool helps designers study RF circuits in terms of the power gains, voltage gain, and input/output impedances. A typical application is an RF amplifier. The source signal at the input of an amplifier is usually provided by a receiver and its power is relatively small. The RF designer often intends to magnify the input signal and provide an output signal in terms of both voltage and current: i.e., the output power delivered to the load is considerably higher than that of the input signal. That is why the power transferability of the designed circuit is of interest. The power gains in Multisim are calculated by assuming that source and load impedances are 50 Ohm. You can change these values by clicking the **Setup** button next to the **Mode** drop-down list to specify that the RF simulator assumes

$$Z_I = Z_o \text{ and } Z_s = Z_o \text{ or } \Gamma_s = \Gamma_l = 0.$$

Another aspect of a circuit is the input and output impedances of the amplifier. An RF amplifier usually has more than one stage of amplification. Each stage of the amplifier is loaded by the input port of the next stage.

The loading effect is best understood by studying the input/output impedances. Most engineers would like to design an amplifier which has maximum input impedance in low RF frequencies, to reduce its loading effect on previous stage. On the other hand, the smaller the output impedance is, the better the output signal would be delivered. In higher RF frequencies, it is desirable to have an output impedance matching that of the load to minimize the reflection of signals. The Multisim RF characterizer analysis toolbox helps designers to study these impedances and choose the most appropriate frequency of operation.

- To use the simulator in order to read the desired variable:
    1. Connect the network analyzer to the amplifier.
    2. Run the simulator. Ignore the DC warnings and wait until the AC analyses are complete.
    3. Double click on the network analyzer.
    4. At the bottom of the right side of the control panel of the network analyzer, select “RF characterizer” from the **Mode** drop-down list.
    5. Under the **Trace** options, set the desired variable, from among T.G., A.P.G., and T.P.G. While the curves are plotted versus frequency, the numerical values are displayed at the top of curves for each frequency point.
    6. From the **Parameter** drop-down list, select “Gains”. Here, the voltage gain (V.G>) is plotted versus frequency and its value is given at the top of the curve.
- Note** Use Auto Scale each time you change the parameters to get a better reading.
7. In the **Parameter** drop-down list, select “Impedances”. The input/output impedances are provided in the form of a curve as well as printed out at the top of the curves.
  8. Use the frequency scroll bar to select the desired frequency for a specific variable.

## Power Gains

The Multisim RF Simulator calculates the General Power Gain (PG), Available Power Gain (APG) and Transducer Power Gain (TPG) for  $Z_o = 50\Omega$  at a given frequency. The dBMag is derived as  $10\log_{10} |PG|$ .

PG is defined as the ratio of the power delivered to the load and the average power delivered to the network from the input, and is given as  $PG = |S_{21}|^2 / (1 - |S_{11}|^2)$ .

The Transducer Power Gain, TPG is the ratio of the power delivered to the load to the power available from the source. For  $G_s = G_L = 0$ ,  $TPG = |S_{21}|^2$ .

The Available Power Gain, APG is the ratio of the power available from the output port of the network to the power available from the source and it is expressed as

$$APG = |S_{21}|^2 / (1 - |S_{22}|^2)$$

### Voltage Gain

Voltage Gain, VG, is obtained for  $\Gamma_s = \Gamma_1 = 0$  and is expressed as  $VG = S_{21}/(1 + S_{11})$ .

Voltage Gain expressed in dBMag is calculated as  $20 \log_{10} |VG|$ .

If you observe the time domain signals of the input and output while the transistors are operating in the linear region, you find that the amplitude of the output voltage signal (when 50 Ohm load and source impedances are used) to the amplitude of the input voltage signal is the same as V.G. given by Multisim. Note, however, that V.G. is calculated using S-parameters.

### Input/Output Impedances

These values are calculated assuming  $\Gamma_s = \Gamma_1 = 0$ . For this condition, we have:

$$Z_{in} = (1 + \Gamma_{in}) / (1 - \Gamma_{in}) \quad \text{where } \Gamma_{in} = S_{11} \text{ and}$$

$$Z_{out} = (1 + \Gamma_{out}) / (1 - \Gamma_{out}) \quad \text{where } \Gamma_{out} = S_{22}.$$

One must note that these values are normalized. The simulator prints denormalized values of  $Z_{in}$  and  $Z_{out}$ .

## 14.5.2 Matching Network Analysis

While designing RF amplifiers using Multisim, RF engineers need to analyze and, if necessary, modify circuit behavior. The Matching Network Analysis provides three options for analyzing circuit behavior:

- Stability circles
- Unilateral gain circles
- Impedance matching.

These options are described in detail in this section. Depending on the application, one or more of the options is used. For example, to design oscillators only stability circles are used. On the other hand, to match an unconditionally stable circuit, the simulator first analyzes the stability properties of the circuit then uses automatic impedance matching.

The three options are accessed from the Match Net. Designer window.

- To open the Match Net. Designer window:
  1. Double-click the Network Analyzer on the circuit window.
  2. From the **Mode** drop-down list, select “Match Net. Designer”. The Match Net. Designer opens in a new window.

## Stability Circles

Stability circles are used to analyze the stability of a circuit at different frequency points.

In an ideal design, when an input signal is delivered to the input port of a two-port network, the entire source signal is delivered without any loss. In practice, however, part of the input signal bounces back to the source. Then, when the amplified signal is delivered to the load impedance, part of this signal bounces back to the output port of the amplifier. The amplifier, if it is not unilateral, transfers the reflected wave back to the source impedance. A circuit is considered unstable if the signal reflected is equal to the signal delivered in either the input or the output port.

An RF engineer aims to minimize this “bounce” effect and deliver maximum signal to the load. The stability circles in the network analyzer help achieve this goal.

- To perform the analysis:
  1. Connect the biased amplifier to the network analyzer using two series capacitors (usually 100 F). The values of these capacitors are selected to minimize the numerical errors. In practice, however, two capacitors must be used to isolate the amplifier from the pre- and post-stage amplifiers in DC mode. Note that the impedance of these capacitors should not contribute to the attenuation of the input or output signal. The impedance of a capacitor is frequency dependant and is calculated using  $X_c = 1/(j\omega C)$  where “ $\omega$ ” is  $(2\pi f)$ .
  2. To activate the network analyzer, click the Simulate button on the Design Bar and choose **Run/Stop** from the pop-up menu. Wait until the AC-analyses are complete. Ignore the warning for DC-analysis.
  3. Double-click on the Network Analyzer icon on the circuit window.
  4. From the **Mode** drop-down list select “Matching Net. Designer.”
  5. Select the operating frequency at the bottom of the window.

The result is a Smith Chart showing an input stability circle and an output stability circle. A stability circle represents the boundary between the values of source or load impedance that cause instability and those that do not. The perimeter of the circle thus represents the locus of points which forces  $K=1$ . Note that either the inside or the outside of the circle may represent an unstable region. Unstable region are hashed on the Smith Chart.

There are three possible scenarios on the Smith Chart, as described below:

- **None of the Smith Chart is hashed** In this case the circuit is said to be “unconditionally stable”, meaning that any area of the Smith Chart represents a valid passive source or load impedance. The designer can, then, select the input or output impedances using other criteria (such as gain or noise criteria).
- **Parts of the Smith Chart are hashed** In this case the circuit is “potentially unstable”, meaning it is possible to select passive input or output impedance and still maintain the stability of the circuit. An input impedance should fall outside the hashed area of the input stability circle to achieve stability at the input port, while an output impedance should be



selected outside the output stability circle to achieve stability at the output port.

- **The entire Smith Chart is hashed** In this case, the circuit is unstable regardless of input or output impedances. The designer has a number of options to achieve stability, including changing the frequency of operation, changing the DC biasing of the transistor, changing the transistor itself, or changing the entire structure of the amplifier.

In addition to stability circles, there are two numerical values printed on the “Matching Net. Designer” window. They are  $\Delta$  and “K”. The design is unconditionally stable if  $(|\Delta| < 1)$  and  $K > 1$ . For  $K < 1$ , for example, the circuit is potentially unstable, and will most likely oscillate with certain combinations of source or load impedance.

### Unilateral Gain Circles

This option is used to analyze the unilateral property of a circuit. A transistor is said to be unilateral when there is no “bounce” effect, meaning the signal reflected from the output port to the input port is zero. This occurs if the reverse transmission coefficient,  $S_{12}$  or the reverse transducer power gain,  $|S_{12}|^2$  is equal to 0. This means that the input section of the amplifier is completely isolated from the output section. (Note that passive networks are usually not unilateral.)

The unilateral property of a network is determined by calculating the “Unilateral Figure of Merit” (U). If necessary, the frequency can be adjusted to improve the unilateral property.

- To calculate the “Unilateral Figure of Merit”:

1. In the Match Net. Designer window, select **Unilateral Gain Circles**.
2. Read the value of “U” or the “Unilateral Figure of Merit”.
3. Calculate the upper and lower limits of the following inequality using “U”.

$$1/(1 + U)^2 < G_T/G_{TU} < 1/(1-U)^2$$

where,  **$G_T$  – transducer power gain**, is defined as the ratio of the output power delivered to a load by a source and the maximum power available from the source, and  **$G_{TU}$**  represents the transducer power gain assuming unilateral property ( $S_{12}=0$ ) for the network.

You need not calculate  $G_T$  or  $G_{TU}$  since only the limits are of interest here. If the limits are close to one, or “U” is close to zero, the effect of  $S_{12}$  is small enough to assume unilateral property for the amplifier. If it is not, go to the next step.

4. Change the frequency so that the minimum “U” is read. This frequency suggests an operating point for the amplifier where the unilateral property is best met.

**Note** The operating frequency to achieve the best unilateral property for the amplifier does not necessarily coincide with the maximum gain for the circuit. The unilateral gain circles are developed to identify the best load and source impedances to minimize the error due to unilateral assumption and maintain a satisfactory level of gain. The gain circles are also used for a trade off between the gain and the bandwidth.

### Wide Band Amplifier

- To design a wide band amplifier, first find the maximum gain delivered by the circuit:
  1. Open up the network analyzer.
  2. From the **Mode** drop-down list, select “RF characterizer”.
  3. Read the value of TPG (transducer power gain or  $G_T$ ). This value is printed in dB.
  4. From the **Mode** drop-down list, select “Matching Net. Designer”.
  5. In the Match Net. Designer window, select **Unilateral Gain Circles**.
  6. In the Match Net. Designer window, change the value of  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  manually and individually until the circles become a dot on the Smith Chart.
  7. Calculate the maximum transferable power.

$$G_{\max} = G_s \text{ (dB)} + \text{TPG (dB)} + G_l \text{ (dB)}$$

The maximum gain is achieved only for a narrow band. Since the slightest change in the circuit component would change its performance, the maximum gain is not achievable in reality. For a wider band of frequency, use a gain of less than the maximum.

- Knowing the level of gain you want to achieve, select input and output impedances:
  1. Select the desired gain (should be less than the maximum gain calculated above).
  2. Choose  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  so that these three conditions are met:
    - $G_s + G_{TU} + G_l < G_{\max}$
    - $G_s < G_{s\max}$
    - $G_l < G_{l\max}$ .
  3. Enter the selected values for  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  and observe the circles. Select points on the circles closest to the center of the Smith Chart. These points are shown on the Smith Chart and circles by two triangles. The circle for  $G_l = 0$  dB always passes through the center. Therefore, the best point of the  $G_l$  to produce  $G_l = 0$  dB.

Any point selected on the Smith Chart is a normalized point. These points provide the impedances for the input and output ports that you then design manually.

**Note** To ensure these points will not cause instability, we recommend you follow instructions in “Stability Circles”. If the amplifier is “unconditionally stable”, it would be stable for any passive load or source network, so you need not check stability circles in this case.

### Impedance Matching

Occasionally, a design is considered “unconditionally stable”, meaning the amplifier does not oscillate in the presence of any passive load or source impedance. In this case, you can use the impedance matching option to automatically modify the structure of an RF amplifier to achieve maximum gain impedance.

To deliver maximum power, a circuit must match at both its input and output ports. In other words, there needs to be maximum matching between the output of the amplifier and the output impedance, and the input of the amplifier and the source impedance. There are eight possible structures for each port, although only a few of these provide complete matching.

- To use impedance matching to find a matching network:
  1. Connect the network analyzer to your amplifier as described on page 14-21. Do not forget the capacitors in order to prevent DC loading of the network analyzer.
  2. Run the simulator.
  3. Double-click on the network analyzer.
  4. From the **Mode** drop-down list, select “Matching Net. Designer”.
  5. In the Match Net. Design window, select **Impedance Matching**.
  6. Change the frequency to the desired operating point.
  7. Click **Auto Match**.

The instrument provides the structure as well the numerical values of components. You can click on the left and right sides of the Impedance Matching window and change the structure. However, only a few of the eight structures can provide matching.

### 14.5.3 Noise Figure Analysis

A measure of signal quality is its signal/noise ratio. Noise accompanies any signal at the input to a two-part device such as an amplifier or attenuator. Designers are interested to know how much noise is added to the output signal of a two-part network since these networks contribute to the output noise. Passive components (i.e. resistors) add Johnson noise while active components add shot or flicker noise. A measure of this signal/noise degradation is given by the noise figure:

$$F = \frac{S_S/N_S}{S_O/N_O}$$

where  $S_S/N_S$  is the input signal to noise ratio and  $S_O/N_O$  is the output signal to noise ratio.

Multisim calculates the noise figure using the equation:

$$F = \frac{N_O}{GN_S}$$

where  $N_O$  is the output noise power (which includes the noise due to two-part network and the magnified input noise)  $N_S$  is the thermal noise of the source resistor (this resistor generates noise equal to the output noise of the previous stage), and  $G$  is the AC gain of the circuit (the

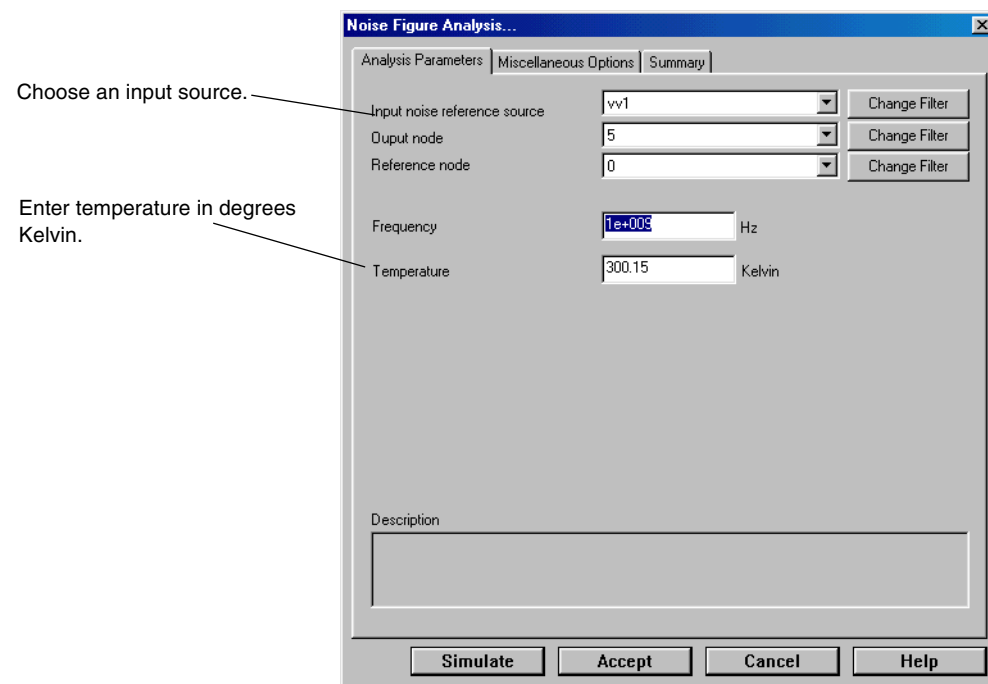
ratio of the output signal to the input signal of the two-part network). Note that the bandwidth of the signal has been considered in source resistor.

Finally, Multisim prints the Noise Figure in dB, that is  $10 \log_{10} (F)$ .

### 14.5.3.1 Noise Figure Analysis Tabs

Just as for other Multisim analyses, you need to fill in the appropriate fields from the Analysis Parameters tab.

Analysis parameters are shown below:



### Setting Noise Figure Analysis Parameters for Normal Use

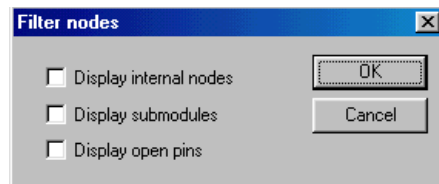
For normal use, you only need to:

- select an input source from the **Input noise reference source** drop-down list
- select an output node from the **Output node** drop-down list
- select a reference node from the **Reference node** drop-down list
- enter a value in the **Frequency** field
- enter a value in the **Temperature** field. The default setting of 300.15 degrees Kelvin is equivalent to 27 degrees Celsius.

You can filter the variables displayed to include internal nodes (such as nodes inside a BJT model or inside a SPICE subcircuits), open pins, as well as output variables from any sub-modules contained in the circuit.

➤ To filter the variables displayed:

1. Click the **Change Filter** button. The Filter Nodes screen appears.



2. Enable one or more settings.
3. Click **OK**.

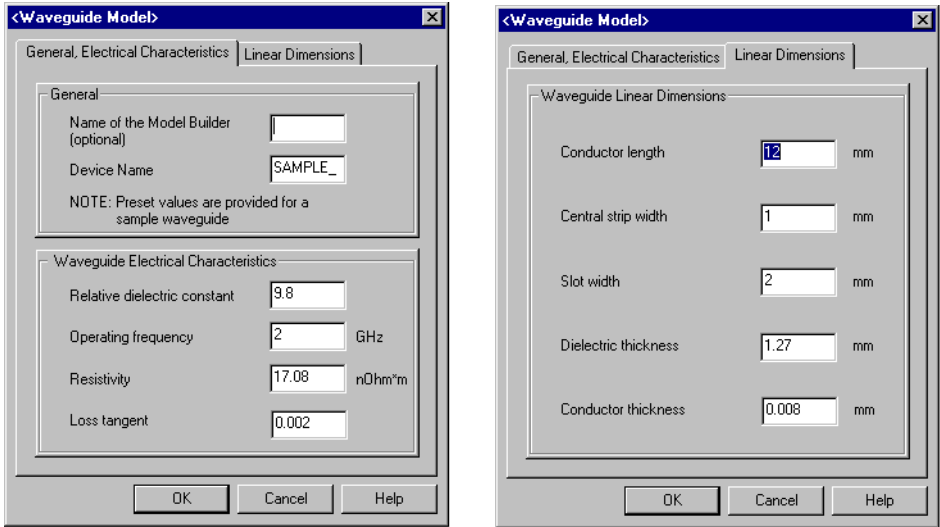
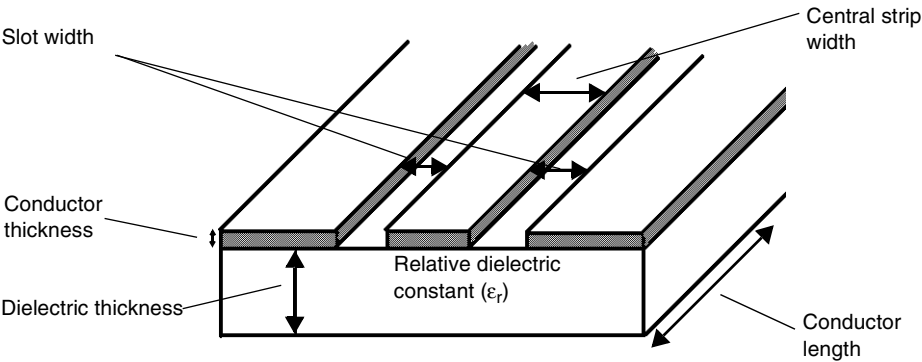
## 14.6 RF Model Makers

As with the other Multisim Model Makers, RF Model Makers automatically simulate models based on the input you provide. Whereas input for other model makers usually comes from data books, RF Model Makers can also receive other types of input, such as operating characteristics or physical dimensions, depending on the type of components you are modelling.

Multisim has RF Model Makers for the following types of components:

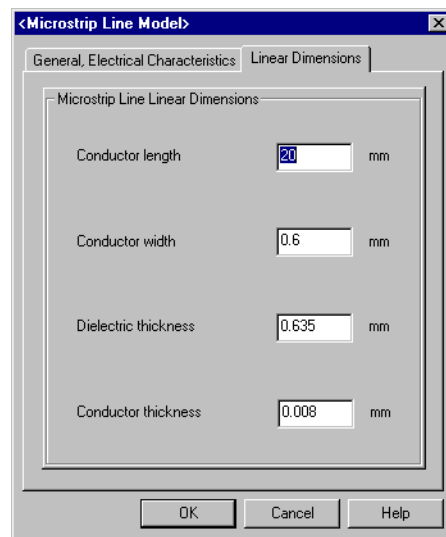
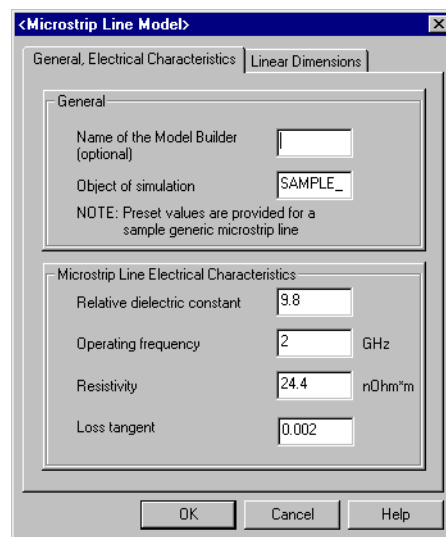
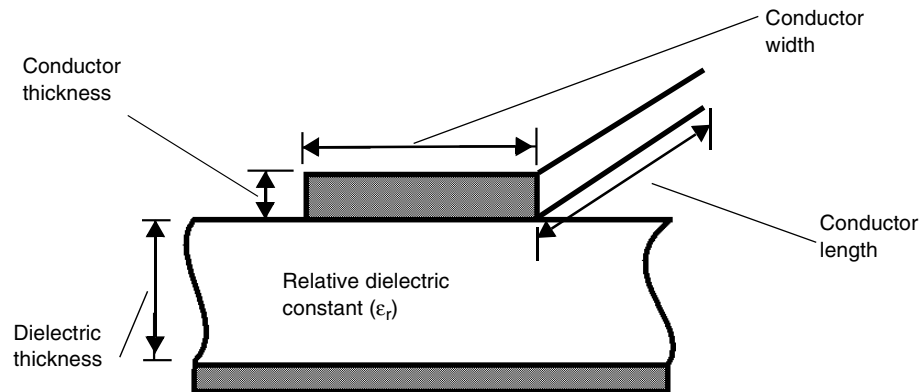
### 14.6.1 Waveguide

For Waveguide models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values:



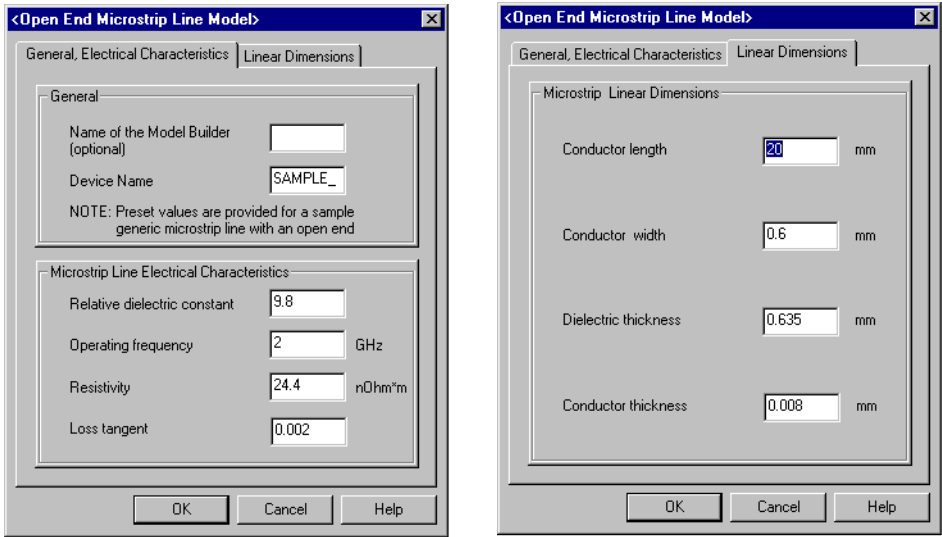
## 14.6.2 Microstrip Line

For the Generic Microstrip Line models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values:



### 14.6.3 Open End Microstrip Line

For Open End Microstrip models, enter values on the following tabs:

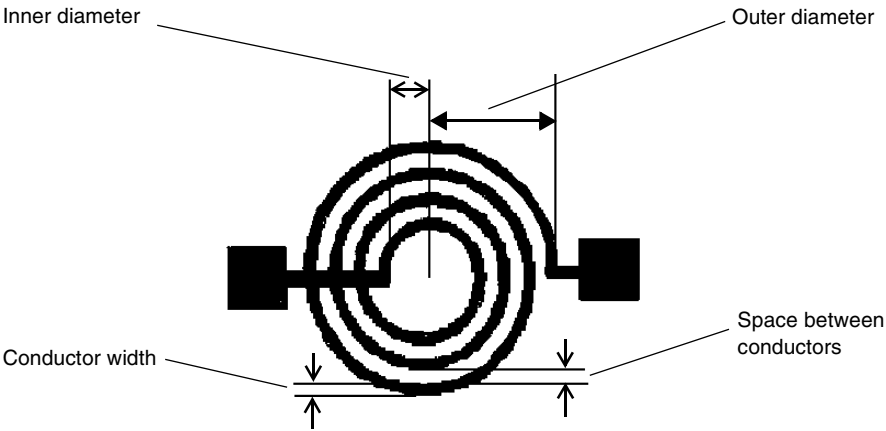


RF



### 14.6.4 RF Spiral Inductor

For the RF Spiral Inductor models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values:



<RF Spiral Inductor Model>

General, Linear Dimensions | Electrical Characteristics

General

Name of the Model Builder (optional)

Device Name

NOTE: Preset values are provided for a sample RF Spiral Inductor

Spiral Inductor Linear Dimensions

Outer diameter  mm

Inner diameter  mm

Space between conductors  mm

Conductor width  mm

Conductor thickness  mm

OK Cancel Help

<RF Spiral Inductor Model>

General, Linear Dimensions | Electrical Characteristics

Spiral Inductor Electrical Characteristics

Relative dielectric constant

Operating frequency  GHz

Resistivity  nOhm\*m

Shunt capacitance at outer conductor  pF

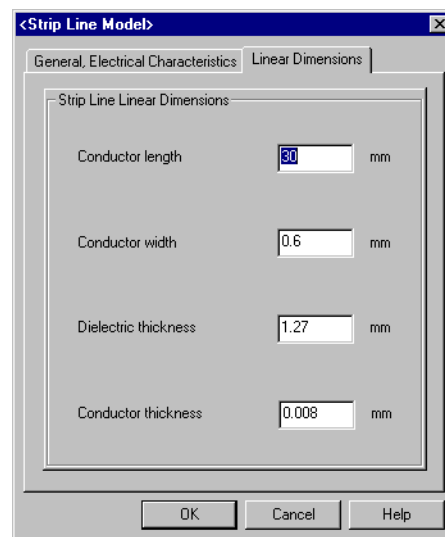
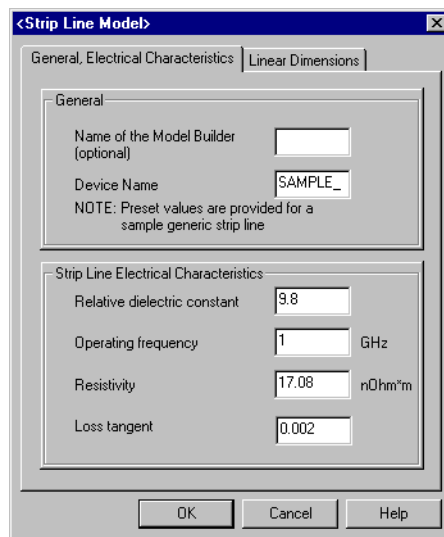
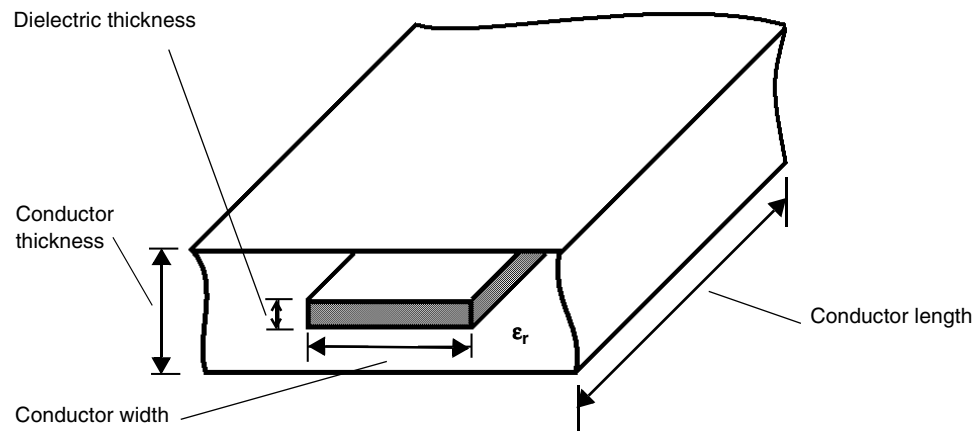
Shunt capacitance at inner conductor  pF

Total capacitance between conductors  pF

OK Cancel Help

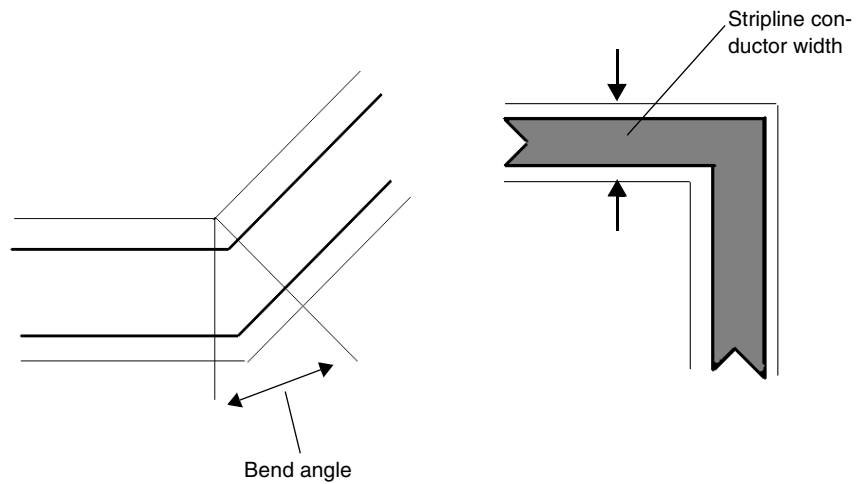
## 14.6.5 Strip Line Model

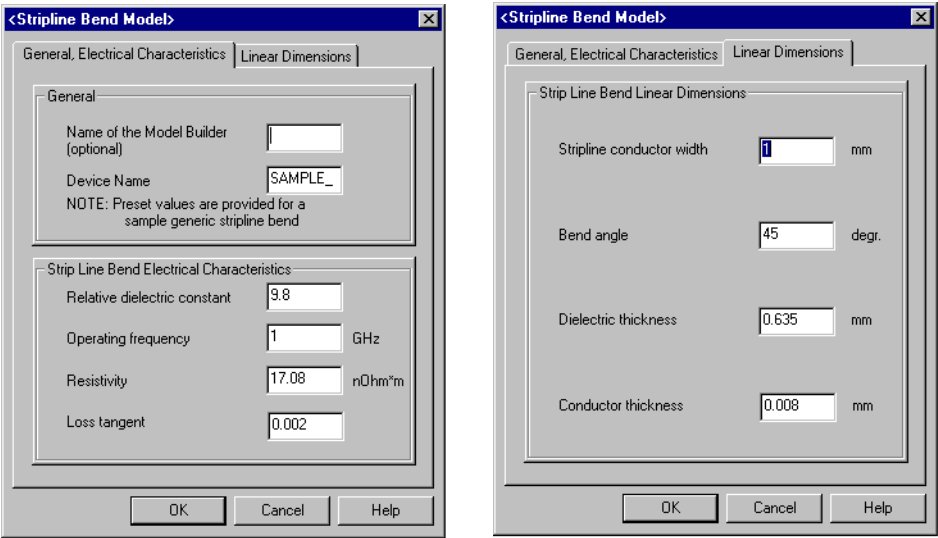
For the Strip Line models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values:



## 14.6.6 Stripline Bend

For the Stripline Bend models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values (refer to the Stripline diagram on page 14-31 for Relative dielectric constant ( $\epsilon_r$ ), Dielectric thickness and Conductor thickness):





### 14.6.7 Lossy Line

For Lossy Line models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following catalogue excerpt for assistance in identifying the values:


Phase velocity

Characteristic impedance

Line length

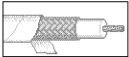
Nominal attenuation @ lower frequency bound

Nominal attenuation @ higher frequency bound



**50 Ohm Transmission Cable**  
RG-188A/U QPL  
26 AWG

1-800-BELDEN-1



Trade Number Industry Sds.	Std. Lgth. (ft.)	Std. Units (lbs.)	AWG (stranding) Type (dia.) Nom. D.C.R.	Core dia. Nom. O.D.	Shields Nom. D.C.R.	Nom. Imp. (ohms)	Vel. of Prop.	Nom. Cap.
83269	100	1.4	26 (7x.0067)	0.058 in.	96% SC Braid	50.0	69.5%	29.2 pF/m
	500	6.4	SCCCS 0.02 in.	0.108 in.	Inner			
	1000	12.4	84.1 ohms/m	8.5 ohms/m				
Metric	(Meters)	(Kg)			Inner			95.8 pF/m
	30.5	.64	508 mm	1.473 mm	27.9 ohms/km			
	152.4	2.9		2.743 mm				
	304.9	5.6	275.8 ohms/km					

**Description:**

**Insulation:** TFE Teflon

**Jacket:** TFE Teflon Tape

**Plenum Version(s):** n/a

Coaxial High Temperature MIL-C-17 Cable, 26 AWG stranded silver coated copper coated steel (SCCCS) conductor with TFE Teflon® insulation. Silver coated copper braid, 96% coverage. White TFE Teflon® tape jacket. MIL-C-17D Temperature Rating: 200°C. Suggested Operating Temperature Range (Non-UL): -70°C to +200°C. Maximum Operating Voltage (Non-UL): 900 Volts RMS. Passes VW-1 Vertical Wire Flame Test. For cables manufactured to the latest government revision of other MIL-SPEC requirements, please contact your nearest Belden® Regional Sales Office. Spools may contain more than one piece. Lengths may vary ±10% from length shown.

Attenuation			Attenuation		
Freq. MHz	Nom. Atten. (dB/100ft)	Nom. Atten. (dB/100m)	Freq. MHz	Nom. Atten. (dB/100ft)	Nom. Atten. (dB/100m)
1.0	1.2	3.93	1000.0	29.0	95.1
10.0	2.7	8.65			
50.0	5.6	18.36			
100.0	9.3	27.2			
200.0	12.0	39.3			
400.0	17.5	57.4			
700.0	23.7	77.7			
900.0	27.3	89.5			

<Lossy Line Model>

General, Line Characteristics | Attenuation, Frequency Range

General

Name of the Model Builder (optional)

Device Name: SAMPLE\_

NOTE: Preset values are for 83241 Belden

Lossy Line Characteristics

Line length: 100 ft

Characteristic impedance: 50 Ohms

Phase velocity: 69.5 %

OK Cancel Help

<Lossy Line Model>

General, Line Characteristics | Attenuation, Frequency Range

Lossy Line Attenuation

Nominal attenuation @: 0.34 dB/100ft

Lower frequency bound: 1 MHz

Nominal attenuation @: 13.5 dB/100ft

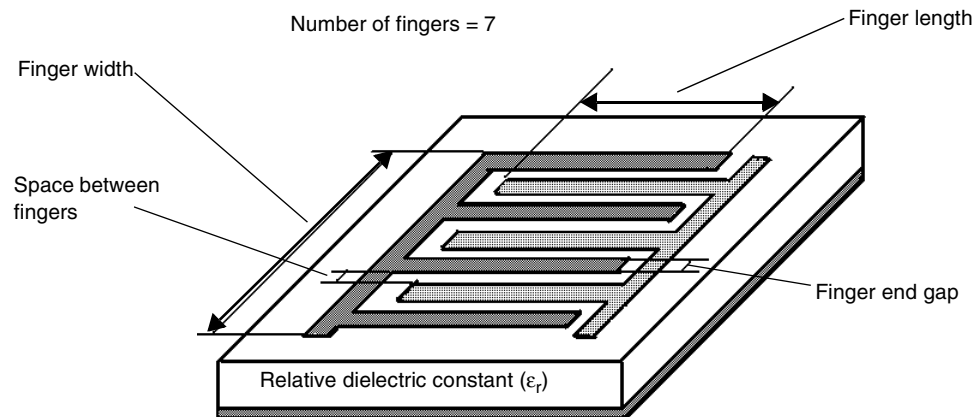
Higher frequency bound: 1000 MHz

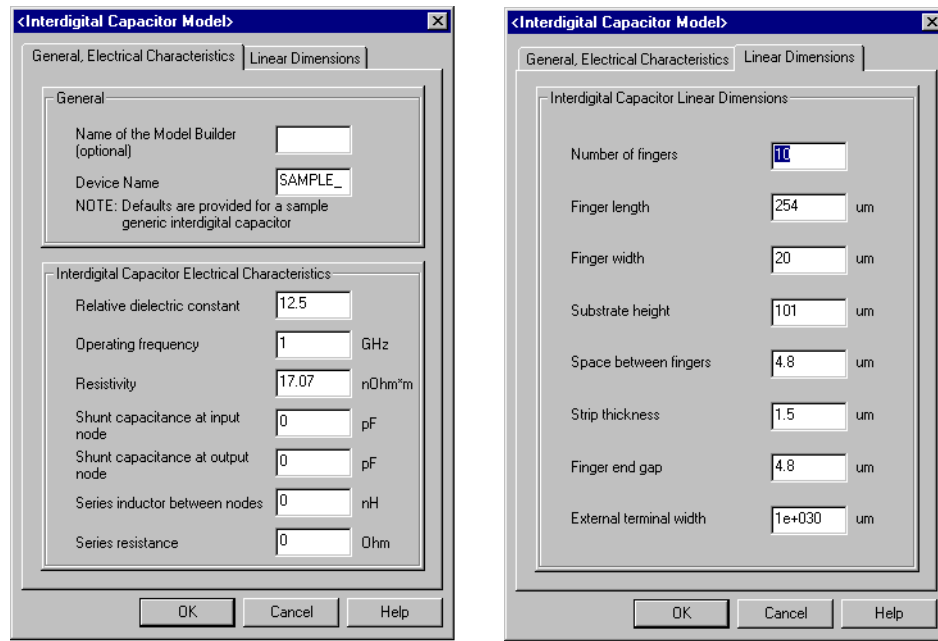
Operating frequency: 100 MHz

OK Cancel Help

## 14.6.8 Interdigital Capacitor

For Interdigital Capacitor models, enter values in the two tabs shown below. Use the following diagram for assistance in identifying the values:





## 14.7 Tutorial: Designing RF Circuits

This tutorial is intended to:

- provide an introduction to simple RF circuit design
- demonstrate to engineers how to use Multisim for designing an RF circuit. Each design step is accompanied by the required simulation steps in Multisim.

The methodology that an RF engineer uses to design an RF circuit differs from that used for a low-frequency circuit design. An RF designer looks at performance parameters such as S-parameters, input/output impedances, power gain, noise figure, and stability factor. These design parameters are not directly available from a SPICE simulation. Impedance matching is a phase of RF circuit designs where the designer uses a Smith Chart, and calculates the values of matching elements such that maximum power is transferred to the load impedance. The Smith Chart or the calculations are not provided by SPICE simulation.

## 14.7.1 Selecting Type of RF Amplifier

Select the type of amplifier based on the application. Amplifiers designed for low-power applications are different than those for low-noise applications. Similarly, broad-band amplifiers are different in terms of design and structure than those for high-gain amplifiers. Some of the possible applications are:

- **Maximum Power Transfer** — These types of amplifiers operate in a very narrow band of frequencies.
- **Design for Specified Gain** — Designers may intentionally introduce mismatching at the input and/or the output ports to improve the bandwidth, even though the resulting power transfer is not maximal.
- **Low-Noise Amplifier Design** — In receiver applications, you need a pre-amplifier with as low a figure noise as possible since the first stage of a receiver front end has a dominant effect on the noise performance of the overall system. It is not possible to obtain both minimum noise figure and maximum gain for an amplifier.
- **Oscillators** — To produce a sinusoidal steady-state RF signal, you can use active elements and intentionally introduce negative resistance.

The network analyzer provided by Multisim is not intended for high-power RF amplifiers, because the network analyzer performs small-signal analyses of the RF network only.

In this tutorial, we will design the amplifier for maximum power transfer. Then, we will provide design steps for constant gains.

- To prepare for the tutorial, open a new circuit window.

## 14.7.2 Selecting an RF Transistor

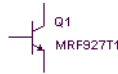
Different types of transistors are designed for a broad range of applications. For example, you may find many transistors for low noise applications. Cost of the transistor plays a significant role in choosing from those offered. In this tutorial, we will choose MRF927T1 because it is used for low power, low noise applications at relatively high frequencies.

- To select the MRF927T1 transistor in Multisim, do the following:
  1. Click the RF Parts Bin.
  2. From the **RF** component family toolbar, click the **RF\_BJT\_NPN bipolar transistor** button. The Browser screen appears.
  3. Scroll down in the component list until you find MRF927T1 and select it. Component data for that component appears in the screen.
  4. Click **OK**. The Product-RF screen closes and your cursor changes to indicate a transistor is ready to be placed.





5. Click to place the transistor on the circuit window. The results look similar to this:



### 14.7.3 Selecting a DC-operating Point

DC-operating point is referred to as  $V_{ce}$  and  $I_c$ . There are many reasons to select a specific DC-operating point. You need to consider “maximum swing” at the output, small/portable power source, and gain-bandwidth. Some DC-operating points are available in the data book, and others must be decided based on the application.

#### Vce Settings

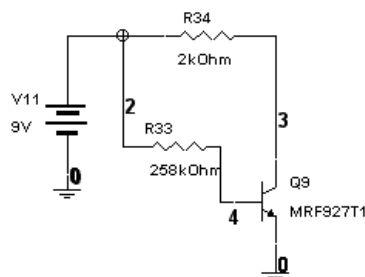
$V_{ce}$  is always less than  $V_{cc}$ , and it is usually around  $V_{cc}/2$  for maximum swing in a common-emitter configuration. For this tutorial  $V_{ce}=3V$  and  $V_{cc}=9V$  are selected.

#### Ic Settings

The nominal value of  $I_c$  for the selected transistor is 5mA. The power dissipated in transistor at any time is  $I_c \cdot V_{ce}$ . For this tutorial,  $I_c=3mA$  is selected to dissipate less power and to be close to the nominal value of  $I_c$ . This will let us achieve relatively good current-gain bandwidth and moderate voltage gain. (The voltage gain is maximum at  $I_c=1mA$  and the current gain-bandwidth is maximum at  $I_c=5mA$ .)

### 14.7.4 Selecting the Biasing Network

There are a number of possible structures to select from for proper DC-biasing of the network. It is important to note that the performance of the transistor and the amplifiers depends on DC-operating points. The following figure shows one possible biasing network.



This is the simplest structure for a biasing network. However, its thermal stability is poor. To find the resistor values for this structure you need to know five values:  $V_{ce}$ ,  $I_c$ ,  $V_{cc}$ ,  $V_{be}$ , and  $\beta$  (which is the DC-current gain of the transistor and is given in most data books).  $\beta$  relates  $I_c$  to  $I_b$  as  $\beta = I_c/I_b$ .  $V_{be}$  is the base-emitter voltage of transistor when it is active, and is typically 0.7 V. Both  $\beta$  and  $V_{be}$  depend on the values of  $I_c$  and  $I_b$ . The initial design process starts with typical values of  $R_c$  and  $R_b$  in the structure shown above. However, if accuracy is critical, you should use Multisim to ensure that the values of  $I_c$  and  $V_{ce}$  are as intended. In this tutorial, these selections are used:

- $V_{ce}=3V$
- $I_c=3mA$
- $V_{cc}=9V$
- $V_{be}=0.7V$
- $\beta=100$ .

The initial values of  $R_c$  and  $R_b$  are calculated as shown below.

$$R_c = (V_{cc}-V_{ce})/I_c = (9V - 3V)/3mA = 2\text{ K}\Omega$$

$$I_b = I_c/\beta = 3mA/100 = 30\text{ }\mu A$$

$$R_b = (V_{cc} - V_{be})/I_b = (9V - 0.7V)/30\text{ }\mu A = 277\text{ K}\Omega$$

➤ To select the DC operating points:

1. Draw the circuit shown above with  $R_b=277\text{ K}\Omega$  and  $R_c=2\text{ K}\Omega$ . Note that  $V_{cc}=9V$  and the transistor is MRF927T1.
2. Click the Analysis button on the Design Bar and choose **DC Operating Point**. The DC Operating Point Analysis screen appears.
3. Select the nodes representing the collector and base of the transistor.
4. Click **Plot during Simulation**.
5. Click **Simulate**.



The results will show a reading of  $V_c$  and  $V_b$ . In the DC-biasing network,  $V_c$  is  $V_{ce}$  and  $V_b$  is  $V_{be}$ . The first readings are  $V_{ce}=3.33V$  and  $V_{be}=0.8V$ . You can modify the value of either  $R_c$  or  $R_b$  or both, to achieve the desired DC operating point. After a number of iterations, you arrive at  $R_c=2\text{ K}\Omega$  and  $R_b=258\text{ K}\Omega$ . Reading the values of  $V_{ce}$  and  $V_{be}$  for the final simulation, you will note that

$$\beta = I_c/I_b = R_b \cdot (V_{cc}-V_{ce}) / [R_c \cdot (V_{cc}-V_{be})] = 94.36$$

which is close to the initial value of  $\beta$ .

### 14.7.4.1 Selecting an Operating Frequency Point

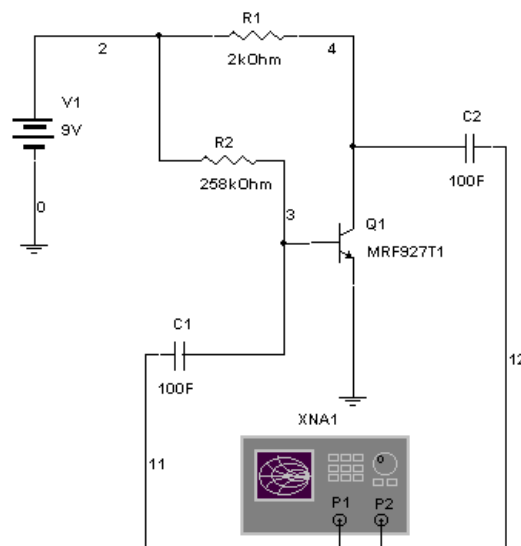
The operating frequency point chosen depends on the type of application, and is usually defined in the design specifications. For this tutorial, you can assume a single (center) frequency analysis of 3.02 GHz.

### 14.7.4.2 Analyzing the RF Network

➤ To perform the simulation:

1. Connect the biased transistor to the network analyzer using two series capacitors. These capacitors are used to isolate the network analyzer from the biasing network in DC mode. This step is necessary whenever the biasing network is important, that is, for active circuits only.

The connection should look like this:

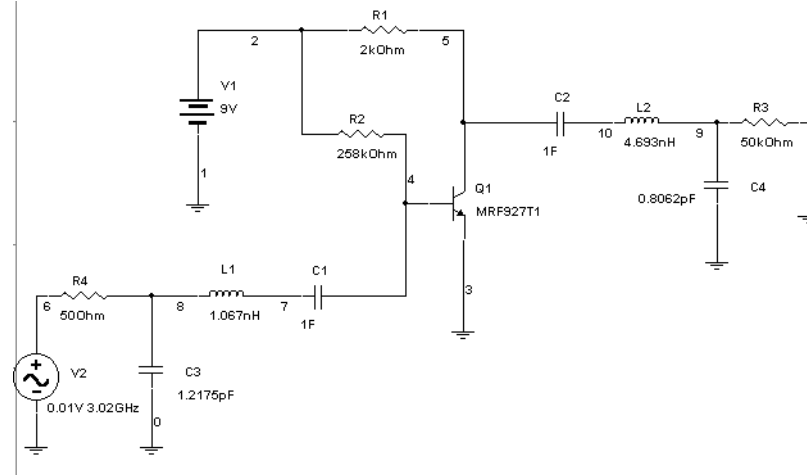


2. Choose **Simulate/Run** and wait until the AC analyses are complete. Ignore the warning for DC analyses.
3. Double-click on the Network Analyzer icon on circuit window, and from the **Mode** drop-down list, select “Match Net.Designer”.
4. On the Match Net.Designer window that appears, do the following:
  - set the frequency to 3.02 GHz
  - since the circuit is “unconditionally stable” for this frequency point, click **Impedance Matching**

- since the circuit is “unconditionally stable”, automatic impedance matching is possible. Click **Auto Match**.

The window provides the structure and the values necessary for conjugate matching; hence, maximum power transfer is achieved.

Below is our design for maximum power transfer at  $f=3.02$  GHz:



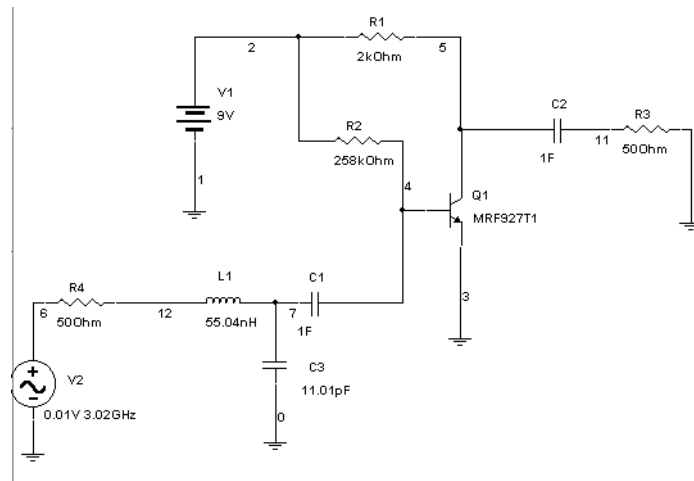
**Note** 1F is needed to isolate the active network from its matching network to keep the transistor in its biasing state.

Impedance matching yields maximum power transfer for a very narrow bandwidth. In real applications, however, you need to balance the power transfer and the bandwidth. For this reason, mismatching is intentionally introduced to the circuit.

- To design the amplifier for a constant gain less than the maximum possible gain, for better frequency response:
  1. Open the DC biased transistor circuit discussed previously.
  2. Open the network analyzer and change settings as follows:
    - select “RF Characterizer” from the **Mode** drop-down list
    - select “Power Gain” from the **Parameter** drop-down list
    - select “dB MAG” from the **Marker** drop-down list
    - set the frequency to 3.02 GHz
    - click **TPG** (Transducer Power Gain) under **Trace** and set its value to 4.3652 dB for our example.
  3. From the **Mode** drop-down list, select “Match Net. Designer” and, in the Match Net.Designer screen, click **Unilateral Gain Circles**.
  4. Change the value of  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  manually and individually until the circles become a dot on the Smith Chart. The example shows  $G_s=0.042$  dB and  $G_l=1.2650$  dB.

5. Calculate the maximum transferable power.  $P_{max} = 0.042 + 4.3652 + 1.2650 = 5.6722$  dB.
6. Select the gain desired. This gain should be less than 5.6752 dB. 3.5302 dB was selected as the power gain.
7. Choose  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  so that  $G_s + 4.3652 + G_l = 3.5302$  dB and  $G_s < 0.042$  dB and  $G_l < 1.2650$  dB. You selected  $G_s = -0.08350$  dB and  $G_l = 0$  dB.
8. Enter the selected values for  $G_s$  and  $G_l$  and observe the circles. Select point or points on the circles which are closest to the center of the Smith Chart. The circle for  $G_l = 0$  dB always passes through the center. Therefore, the best point of the  $G_l$  is the center itself. This means that 50 Ohm load is sufficient to produce  $G_l = 0$  dB. The best point on  $G_s$  for the example is  $Z_l = 2$  (normalized). Using this value, you can design the matching network at the input port of the amplifier. You must make sure that the selected point or points are stable. Therefore, it is recommended that you go back to "Stability Circles", and confirm the stability of the design. Since the amplifier is unconditionally stable, it would be stable for any passive load or source network. Hence, you need not check the stability circles.

The complete amplifier is shown in the following figure:



**Note** The matching elements are calculated manually in this example.

---

# Index

## Numerics

- 10-to-4 Priority Enc 308
- 12-In NAND w/3-state Out 304
- 12-stage Binary Counter 256
- 13-In NAND 303
- 13-input Checker/Generator 280
- 14-stage Bin Counter 248
- 1-of-10 Dec 252
- 1-of-16 Data Sel/MUX 310
- 1-of-16 Dec/DEMUX w/Input latches
  - 4514 276
  - 4515 277
- 1-of-8 Data Sel/MUX 311
- 2-bit Bin Full Adder 391
- 2-wide 4-In AND-OR-INVERTER 387
- 3 3-Input AND 309
- 3-to-8 Dec 305
- 3-to-8 line Dec/DEMUX 340
- 4000 series functions *See functions*
- 4000 series ICs 235
- 4-BCD to 10-Decimal Dec 375
- 4-bit BCD Down Counter 280
- 4-bit Bidirect Univ. Shift Reg 334
- 4-bit Bin Counter 243
  - 40161 243
  - 40193 248
- 4-bit Bin Down Counter 280
- 4-bit Bin Full Add 358
- 4-bit Bin Full Adder 392
- 4-bit Bin/BCD Dec Counter 253
- 4-bit Binary Counter
  - 74xx293 359
  - 74xx93 396
- 4-bit Binary Full Adder 237
- 4-bit Bistable Latches
  - 74xx375 369
  - 74xx75 389
  - 74xx77 390
- 4-bit Cascadable Shift Reg w/3-state Out 374
- 4-bit Comparator 286
- 4-bit Dec Counter
  - 40160 242
  - 40162 243
  - 40192 248
- 4-bit D-type Reg w/3-state Out 325
- 4-bit Mag COMP 393
- 4-bit Parallel-Access Shift Reg 335
- 4-bit Shift Register
  - 40194 248
  - 40195 248
  - 4035 254
- 4-bit Shifter w/3-state Out 362
- 4-to-16 Dec/DEMUX 313
- 4-to-16 Dec/DEMUX (OC) 316
- 4-Wide 2-In AND-OR-INVERTER 269
- 4-wide AND-OR-INVERTER 386
- 5-stage Johnson Counter
  - 4017 243
  - 4018 246
- 74xx series functions *See functions*
- 7-stage Binary Counter 249
- 8-Bit Bist Latch 296
- 8-bit Latch
  - 4099 271
  - 74xx259 354
- 8-bit Parallel-Out Serial Shift Reg 322
- 8-bit Priority Enc 281
- 8-bit Shift Reg 395
- 8-bit Shift Reg (sh/l d ctrl) 337
- 8-bit Shift Reg (shl/shr ctrl) 336
- 8-bit Static Shift Reg 240
- 8-bit Static Shift Register 249
- 8-In MUX w/3-state Out 274
- 8-In NAND
  - 4068 259
  - 74xx30 360

8-In NOR 265  
 8-stage Serial Shift Register 270  
 8-to-3 Priority Enc 309  
 9-bit Odd/even Par GEN 327  
 9-bit odd/even parity generator/checker 358

## A

about  
     manual 1-1  
     Multisim 1-1  
 AC analysis 8-11  
 AC current source 86  
 AC frequency model  
     capacitors 104  
     inductors 107  
 AC model 145  
 AC sensitivity analysis 8-24  
 AC small-signal model  
     bipolar junction transistors 141  
     diac 129  
     diodes 118  
     MOSFET 150  
     SCR 128  
     Shockley diode 133  
 AC voltage source 85  
 ADC DAC 187  
 adding components 5-5  
 addressing, word generator 6-33  
 advanced searching 4-22  
 algorithm  
     Gmin stepping 7-9  
     source stepping 7-10  
 Alu/Function Generator 327  
 AM source. *See* amplitude modulation source  
 ammeter  
     about 191  
     multimeter measurement options 6-20  
 amplifiers, wide bandwidth 173  
 amplitude modulation source 86  
 analog components  
     bipolar junction transistors (*see also* bipolar  
     junction transistors) 137

BJT arrays (*see also* BJT arrays) 146  
 comparator 171  
 Darlington connection (*see also* Darlington  
     connection) 144  
 diac (*see also* diac) 128  
 diodes (*see also* diodes) 115  
 DMOS transistor 159  
 full-wave bridge rectifier (*see also* full-wave  
     bridge rectifier) 124  
 GaAsFET (*see also* GaAsFET) 156  
 IGBT-IGBT 159  
 LED (Light-Emitting Diode) (*see also* LED)  
     122  
 MOSFET (*see also* MOSFET) 147  
 Norton opamps 171  
 opamps (*see also* opamps) 163  
 optocoupler 196  
 PIN diode 119  
 Schottky diode 126  
 SCR (Silicon-Controlled Rectifier) (*see also*  
     SCR) 126  
 Shockley diode (*see also* Shockley diode)  
     132  
 triac 130  
 triode vacuum tube (*see also* triode vacuum  
     tube) 196  
 varactor diode 131  
 voltage reference 198  
 voltage regulator 198  
 voltage suppressor 200  
 voltage-controlled analog 187  
 wide bandwidth amplifiers 173  
 zener diode (*see also* zener diode) 120  
 analog switch 187  
 analyses  
     about 8-1  
     AC 8-11  
     AC sensitivity 8-24  
     analysis parameter tab 8-2  
     audit trail 8-58  
     batched 8-55  
     cutting/copying/pasting pages, graphs, and

---

- charts 8-68
- DC operating point 8-9
- DC sensitivity 8-24
- DC sweep 8-22
- determining component use 3-18
- distortion 8-20
- Fourier 8-46
- incomplete 8-8
- miscellaneous options tab 8-6
- Monte Carlo 8-43
- nested sweep 8-54
- noise 8-16
- noise figure 14-18
- output variables tab 8-3
- parameter sweep 8-28
- pole zero 8-38
- printing graphs and charts 8-69
- results 8-58
- summary tab 8-8
- temperature sweep 8-31
- trace width 8-50
- transfer function 8-33
- transient 8-13
- user-defined 8-57
- viewing charts 8-68
- viewing graphs 8-61
- working with pages 8-60
- worst case 8-35
- analysis
  - performing (general instructions) 8-2
- analysis graphs window 8-58
- analysis options 8-70
- analysis output, manipulating 9-1, 9-2, 9-7
- analysis parameter tab, about 8-2
- AND-gated JK MS-SLV FF (pre, clr) 387
- AND-OR-INVERTER 386
- arrays, BJT 146
- audit trail 8-58
- automatic wiring 3-10
- autosave 2-8
- axes, Bode plotter settings 6-7

## B

- backing up projects 13-4
- bargraph
  - about 192
- batched analysis 8-55
- battery 84
- BCD up/down Counter 273
- BCD-to-Decimal Dec
  - 74xx145 307
  - 74xx445 378
  - 74xx45 379
- BCD-to-seven segment dec
  - 74xx246 343
  - 74xx247 345
  - 74xx248 347
  - 74xx249 349
  - 74xx46 380
  - 74xx47 383
  - 74xx48 384
- BCD-to-seven segment latch/dec
  - 4511 273
  - 4544 283
- BCD-to-seven segment latch/dec/driver 282
- bill of materials 11-1
- Binary up/down Counter 278
- bipolar junction transistors
  - about 137
  - AC small-signal model 141
  - characteristic equations 138
  - parameters and defaults 142
  - time-domain model 140
- BJT arrays
  - about 146
  - general-purpose high-current N-P-N transistor array 147
  - general-purpose P-N-P transistor array 146
  - N-P-N/P-N-P transistor array 146
- BJT model 5-29
- BJT. *See* bipolar junction transistors
- BJT\_NRES 144
- BJT\_PNP 144
- BJT\_PRES 144



- Bode plotter
  - about 6-6
  - axes settings 6-7
  - magnitude 6-7
  - phase 6-7
  - readouts 6-8
  - settings 6-7
- Boolean expressions
  - entering 6-14
- boost converter 200
- Browser screen 3-5
- browsing database 3-3
- BSpice model 5-22
- Bspice support 7-5
- buck boost converter 201
- buck converter 200
- buzzer
  - about 192
- C**
- capabilities
  - miscellaneous SPICE simulation 7-4
- capacitor virtual 112
- capacitors
  - about 102
  - AC frequency model 104
  - DC model 103
  - equations 103
  - time-domain model 103
- change, component value/model 3-16
- channel settings 6-27
- charts
  - cut/copy/paste 8-68
  - printing 8-69
  - using in postprocessor 9-7
  - viewing 8-68
- circuit
  - adding instruments to 6-2
  - consistency, checking in simulation 7-4
  - controlling display 2-5
  - equation 7-7
  - printing files 3-26
  - simulation. *See* simulation
- circuit window
  - placing components 3-4
- circuit windows
  - multiple 2-9
- clock 87
  - logic analyzer 6-17
- code
  - model 5-24
- code model 5-24
  - about 5-72
  - creating 5-73
  - implementation file 5-80
  - interface file 5-74
- coil, types of 230
- color
  - component 3-9
  - schemes 2-5
- comparator
  - about 171
  - parameters and defaults 172
- complex digital ICs, modeling 10-3
- Complex Programmable Logic Device. *See* CPLD
- component
  - creating model 5-18
  - editing model 5-18
  - general properties 5-6
  - moving 3-8
  - package information 5-24
  - pins 5-24
  - placing 3-9
- component color 3-9
- component detail report 11-4
- Component Editor
  - about 5-1
  - Footprint tab 5-24
  - general procedures 5-2
  - General tab 5-6
- components
  - about 4-1
  - adding 5-5

- 
- changing value/model 3-16
  - classification in database 4-3
  - copying symbols 5-10
  - corporate-level data 13-7
  - creating symbols 5-11
  - determining use in analyses 3-18
  - displaying information 3-15
  - editing 5-3
  - editing symbol 5-8
  - flipping 3-14
  - information stored 4-23
  - labels, assigning 3-19
  - models, entering 5-20
  - placed properties 3-14
  - placing 3-4
  - placing on circuit window 3-4
  - reference ID, assigning 3-19
  - removing 5-5
  - rotating 3-13
  - searching for 4-19
  - user fields 13-7
  - using global 4-26
  - virtual 3-4
  - wiring 3-9
  - COMS components
    - 74HC\_2V 179
    - 74HC\_4V 180
    - 74HC\_6V 180
    - CMOS\_10V 179
    - CMOS\_15V 179
    - CMOS\_5V 179
    - TinyLogic\_2V 180
    - TinyLogic\_3V 180
    - TinyLogic\_4V 180
    - TinyLogic\_5V 181
    - TinyLogic\_6V 181
  - connector, adding 3-13
  - connectors 99
  - control functions
    - current limiter block (*see also* current limiter block) 216
    - differentiator (*see also* differentiator) 210
    - divider (*see also* divider) 206
    - integrator (*see also* integrator) 212
    - limiter (*see also* limiter) 215
    - multiplier (*see also* multiplier) 205
    - three-way summer 220
    - transfer function block (*see also* transfer function block) 208
    - voltage gain block
    - voltage hysteresis block 213
    - voltage slew rate block 219
    - voltage-controlled limiter 218
  - controlled one-shot 98
  - convergence assistance 7-9
  - copying a component's symbol 5-10
  - coreless coil 113
  - corporate-level data, working with 13-7
  - CPLD 10-2
  - creating
    - component's symbol 5-11
  - creating projects 13-1
  - crystal 195
  - current limiter block
    - about 216
    - parameters and defaults 217
  - current-controlled current source 88
  - current-controlled voltage source 88
  - customizing
    - interface 2-4
    - nonlinear transformer 109
  - cut/copy/paste pages, graphs, and charts 8-68
- ## D
- Darlington connection
    - about 144
    - AC model 145
    - DC bias model 145
  - darlington PNP 146
  - data ready 6-34
  - Data Sel/MUX 312
  - Data Sel/MUX w/3-state Out 351
  - database
    - browsing 3-3

- classification of parts 4-3
- component classification 4-3
- levels 4-1
- structure of 4-1
- database family list 11-2
- database levels, working with 4-2
- database selector, using 4-2
- DC bias model 145
- DC current source 85
- DC model
  - capacitors 103
  - diac 129
  - diodes 116
  - inductors 106
  - MOSFET 148
  - Shockley diode 132
  - zener diode 120
- DC operating point analysis 8-9
- DC sensitivity analysis 8-24
- DC sweep analysis 8-22
- DC voltage source 84
- Debug window 10-38
- Decade Counter 359, 394
- decibels 6-22
- default analysis, postprocessor 9-4
- depletion MOSFET 147
- design bar 2-3
- design sharing 13-6
- diac
  - about 128
  - AC small-signal model 129
  - DC model 129
  - parameters and defaults 129
  - time-domain model 129
- differentiator
  - about 210
  - equations 211
  - parameters and defaults 212
  - sine wave 210
  - square wave 211
  - triangle waveform 211
- digital ground 84
- DIN symbols 3-3
- diode model maker 5-41
- diodes 115
  - AC small-signal model 118
  - DC model 116
  - parameters and defaults 118
  - time-domain model 117
- display details 2-5
- display information about placed components 3-15
- displaying or hiding grid, title block and page borders 3-2
- distortion analysis 8-20
- distortion analyzer 6-9
  - harmonic distortion 6-10
  - SINAD 6-10
- Divide-by-twelve Counter 396
- divider
  - about 206
  - equations 207
  - parameters and defaults 207
- DMOS transistor 159
- Dual 1-of-4 Dec/DEMUX
  - 4555 285
  - 4556 286
- Dual 2-to-4 Dec/DEMUX
  - 74xx139 306
  - 74xx155 314
- Dual 2-to-4 Dec/DEMUX (OC) 315
- Dual 2-Wide 2-In AND-OR-INVERTER 267
- Dual 3-In NOR and INVERTER 235
- Dual 4-bit Binary Counter
  - 74xx393 373
  - 74xx69 387
- Dual 4-bit latch 272
- Dual 4-bit latches (clr) 300
- Dual 4-bit Static Shift Reg 242
- Dual 4-In AND
  - 4082 266
  - 74xx21 339
- Dual 4-In NAND
  - 4012 239

---

- 74xx20 338
- 74xx40 375
- Dual 4-In NAND (OC) 340
- Dual 4-In NOR 236
- Dual 4-In NOR w/Strobe 351
- Dual 4-In OR 261
- Dual 4-input Multiplexer 282
- Dual 4-to-1 Data Sel/MUX
  - 74xx153 312
  - 74xx352 363
- Dual 4-to-1 Data Sel/MUX w/3-state Out
  - 74xx253 352
  - 74xx353 364
- Dual BCD Counter 279
- Dual Binary Counter 279
- Dual Com Pair/Inv 237
- Dual Data Sel/MUX w/3-state Out 362
- Dual Div-by-2, Div-by-5 Counter 372
- Dual D-type FF
  - (+edge) 240
  - (pre, clr) 389
- Dual JK FF
  - (+edge, pre, clr) 4027 251
  - (+edge, pre, clr) 74xx109 297
  - (clr) 74xx107 296
  - (clr) 74xx73 388
  - (-edge, pre, clr) 298
  - (-edge, pre, com clk & clr) 299
  - (pre, clr) 390
  - (pre, com clk & clr) 391
- Dual JK MS-SLV FF (-edge, pre) 299
- dual-channel oscilloscope 6-24

## E

- Edit menu 2-13
- editing a component's symbol 5-8
- editing components 5-3
- enhancement MOSFET 148
- entering info 5-20
- equation solution 7-7
- equations
  - bipolar junction transistors 138

- capacitors 103
- differentiator 211
- divider 207
- full-wave bridge rectifier 124
- GaAsFET 157
- inductors 105
- integrator 213
- limiter 215
- linear transformer 107
- multiplier 205
- relay 111
- resistors 102
- three-way summer 221
- transfer function block 208
- triode vacuum tube 197
- voltage gain block 210
- error log/audit trail 8-58
- Exc-3-Gray-to-Decimal Dec 377
- Exc-3-to-Decimal Dec 376
- Excel
  - exporting simulation results to 12-2
- exp. current source 96
- exp. voltage source 96
- exporting
  - simulation results to Excel 12-2

## F

- feature summary 1-2
- features 1-2
- Field Programmable Gate Array. *See* FPGA
- file
  - opening with project 13-3
- File menu 2-10
- files
  - adding to project 13-2
  - locking and unlocking 13-3
- flipping components 3-14
- FM source. *See* frequency modulated source
- Footprint tab 5-24
- Fourier analysis 8-46
- FPGA 10-2
- frequency 6-34

## Index

---

frequency modulated source	86	4024	249
frequency shift key modulated source	87	40240	250
FSK source. <i>See</i> frequency shift key modulated source		40244	250
		40245	250
full-wave bridge rectifier		4025	250
about	124	4027	251
characteristic equation	124	4028	252
model	124	4029	253
parameters and defaults	125	4030	253
function generator		4032	254
about	6-10	4035	254
rise time	6-12	40373	255
signal options	6-11	40374	255
functions		4038	255
4000	235	4040	256
4001	236	4041	256
4002	236	4042	256
4007	237	4043	257
4008	237	4044	257
4010	238	4049	258
40106	238	4050	258
4011	239	4066	259
4012	239	4068	259
4013	240	4069	259
4014	240	4070	260
4015	242	4071	260
40160	242	4072	261
40161	243	4073	262
40162	243	4075	263
40163	243	4076	263
4017	243	4077	264
40174	244	4078	265
40175	245	4081	265
4018	246	4082	266
4019	247	4085	267
40192	248	4086	269
40193	248	4093	269
40194	248	4094	270
40195	248	4099	271
4020	248	4502	271
4021	249	4503	271
4023	249	4508	272

---

4510	273	74xx134	304
4511	273	74xx135	304
4512	274	74xx136	305
4514	276	74xx138	305
4515	277	74xx139	306
4516	278	74xx14	306
4518	279	74xx145	307
4519	279	74xx147	308
4520	279	74xx148	309
4522	280	74xx15	309
4526	280	74xx150	310
4531	280	74xx151	311
4532	281	74xx152	312
4539	282	74xx153	312
4543	282	74xx154	313
4544	283	74xx155	314
4555	285	74xx156	315
4556	286	74xx157	315
4585	286	74xx158	316
74xx00	291	74xx159	316
74xx02	291	74xx16	318
74xx03	292	74xx160	318
74xx04	293	74xx161	319
74xx05	293	74xx162	320
74xx06	293	74xx163	321
74xx07	294	74xx164	322
74xx08	294	74xx165	323
74xx09	295	74xx166	323
74xx10	295	74xx169	324
74xx100	296	74xx17	325
74xx107	296	74xx173	325
74xx109	297	74xx174	326
74xx11	298	74xx175	326
74xx112	298	74xx180	327
74xx113	299	74xx181	327
74xx114	299	74xx182	328
74xx116	300	74xx190	330
74xx12	301	74xx191	331
74xx125	301	74xx192	332
74xx126	302	74xx193	333
74xx132	303	74xx194	334
74xx133	303	74xx195	335

## Index

---

74xx198	336	74xx373	368
74xx199	337	74xx374	368
74xx20	338	74xx375	369
74xx21	339	74xx377	369
74xx22	340	74xx378	370
74xx238	340	74xx379	370
74xx240	341	74xx38	371
74xx241	341	74xx39	371
74xx244	342	74xx390	372
74xx246	343	74xx393	373
74xx247	345	74xx395	374
74xx248	347	74xx40	375
74xx249	349	74xx42	375
74xx25	351	74xx43	376
74xx251	351	74xx44	377
74xx253	352	74xx445	378
74xx257	353	74xx45	379
74xx258	354	74xx46	380
74xx259	354	74xx465	381
74xx26	355	74xx466	382
74xx266	355	74xx47	383
74xx27	356	74xx48	384
74xx273	357	74xx51	386
74xx279	357	74xx54	386
74xx28	357	74xx55	387
74xx280	358	74xx69	387
74xx283	358	74xx72	387
74xx290	359	74xx73	388
74xx293	359	74xx74	389
74xx298	360	74xx75	389
74xx30	360	74xx76	390
74xx32	361	74xx77	390
74xx33	361	74xx78	391
74xx350	362	74xx82	391
74xx351	362	74xx83	392
74xx352	363	74xx85	393
74xx353	364	74xx86	394
74xx365	365	74xx90	394
74xx366	365	74xx91	395
74xx367	366	74xx92	396
74xx368	367	74xx93	396
74xx37	367	fuse	201

---

## G

- GaAsFET
  - about 156
  - equations 157
  - parameters and defaults 158
- GaAsFET\_P 158
- gain. *See* voltage gain block
- general component properties 5-6
- General tab 5-6
- general-purpose high-current N-P-N transistor array 147
- general-purpose P-N-P transistor array 146
- generator
  - function 6-10
  - sine wave 89
  - square wave 87
  - triangle wave 90
- global components, using 4-26
- Gmin stepping 7-9
- graphs
  - about analysis graphs window 8-58
  - cut/copy/paste 8-68
  - printing 8-69
  - using in post processor 9-7
  - viewing 8-61
- grid
  - displaying or hiding 3-2
  - showing 2-6
- ground 83
- grounding oscilloscope 6-26

## H

- hardware description language *See* HDL
- harmonic distortion
  - distortion analyzer 6-10
- HDL
  - about 10-1
- HDLs in Multisim 10-3
- Hex BUFFER
  - 4010 238
  - 4050 258

## Hex BUFFER (OC)

- 74xx07 294
- 74xx17 325
- Hex Buffer/Driver w/3-state
  - 74xx365 365
  - 74xx367 366
- hex display
  - about 192
- Hex D-type
  - Flip-flop 244
- Hex D-type FF
  - (clr) 326
  - w/en 370
- Hex INVERTER
  - (OC) 74xx05 293
  - (OC) 74xx16 318
  - (Schmitt) 40106 238
  - (Schmitt) 74xx14 306
  - 4049 258
  - 4069 259
  - 74xx04 293
  - Buffer/Driver w/3-state, 74xx366 365
  - Buffer/Driver w/3-state, 74xx368 367
- Hex INVERTER (OC) 293
- hierarchical block, using 13-6
- hierarchical design
  - about 13-5
  - setting up and using 13-6
- horizontal Bode plotter settings 6-7
- hysteresis block
  - about 213
  - parameters and defaults 214

## I

- IBEW components
  - coils 230
  - output devices 231
  - pilot lights 232
  - protection devices 231
  - relays 230
  - supplementary contacts 229
  - switches 99



- timed contacts 231
- IEEE standard 1076 43
- IEEE standard 1076.3 65
- IEEE standard 1076.3 (numeric standard) 44
- IEEE standard 1076.4 (VITAL) 44
- IEEE standard 1164 43
- IGBT-IGBT 159
- implementation file (code model) 5-80
- importing
  - to create a model 5-22, 5-23, 5-24
- In Use list 3-8
- incomplete analyses 8-8
- inductor virtual 113
- inductors
  - about 105
  - AC frequency model 107
  - DC model 106
  - equations 105
  - time-domain model 106
- information stored for components 4-23
- instruments
  - about 6-1
  - adding to a circuit 6-2
  - ammeter 191
  - bargraph 192
  - Bode plotter 6-6
  - buzzer 192
  - distortion analyzer 6-9
  - function generator 6-10
  - hex display 192
  - lamp 191
  - logic analyzer 6-15
  - logic converter 6-12
  - measurement options 6-20
  - multimeter 6-19
  - multiple 6-4
  - network analyzer 6-34
  - oscilloscope 6-24
  - probe 191
  - spectrum analyzer 6-29
  - using 6-3
  - voltmeter 191

- watt meter 6-30
- word generator 6-31
- integration
  - numerical 7-8
- integration order, maximum 7-9
- integrator
  - about 212
  - equations 213
  - parameters and defaults 213
- interactive
  - simulation 7-4
- interdigital model 14-35
- interface 2-2
  - customizing 2-4
  - design bar 2-3
  - elements 2-2
- interface file (code model) 5-74
- internal settings of multimeter 6-23

## J

- JFET\_N 153
- JFET\_P 156
- junction, adding 3-13

## L

- labels
  - assigning to components 3-19
  - assigning to nodes 3-20
- lamp
  - about 191
- LED
  - about 122
  - parameters and defaults 123
- levels of database 4-1
- LIB 10-46
- limiter
  - about 215
  - equations 215
  - parameters and defaults 215
- line transformer 230
- linear transformer

---

- about 107
- equations 107
- model 108
- parameters and defaults 108
- loading model 5-21
- locking files 13-3
- logic analyzer
  - about 6-15
  - adjusting clock 6-17
  - reset 6-17
  - start 6-17
  - stop 6-17
  - triggering 6-18
- logic converter 6-12
  - constructing a truth table 6-14
  - deriving truth table from a circuit 6-13
  - entering Boolean expressions 6-14
- Look-ahead Carry GEN 328
- lossless line type 1 201
- lossless line type 2 201
- lossy line model 14-33
- lossy transmission line 201

## M

- magnetic core 113
- magnetic relay 110
- magnitude 6-7
- manual
  - about 1-1
- manual wiring 3-10
- maximum integration order 7-9
- measurement options
  - ammeter 6-20
  - decibels 6-22
  - ohmmeter 6-21
  - voltmeter 6-21
- menu
  - Edit 2-13
  - File 2-10
  - pop-up 3-29
  - Simulate 2-18
  - Symbol Editor 5-12

- Tools 2-25
- Transfer 2-23
- View 2-16
- Window 2-25
- microstrip line model 14-28
- microstrip open end model 14-29
- misc. digital components
  - line driver 184
  - line receiver 184
  - line transceiver 185
  - TIL 183
  - VHDL 183
- miscellaneous options tab, about 8-6
- model 5-20
  - 3-terminal opamps 165
  - 5-terminal opamp 168
  - BJT values 5-29
  - changing component 3-16
  - copying 5-21
  - creating *See* model creation
  - full-wave bridge rectifier 124
  - linear transformer 108
  - loading 5-21
  - relay 111
  - SCR 126
  - triode vacuum tube 197
- model creation
  - by importing 5-22, 5-23, 5-24
  - using code modeling 5-72
- model parameters
  - opamps 163
- module
  - compiling 10-21
  - creating a VHDL module 10-16
  - RF 14-1
- Module Wizard, using 10-16
- module, adding functionality to 10-18
- momentary switches 229
- mono stable 188
- Monte Carlo analysis 8-43
- MOS\_3TDP 152
- MOS\_3TEN 152

MOS\_3TEP 152  
 MOS\_4TDN 152  
 MOS\_4TDP 152  
 MOS\_4TEN 152  
 MOS\_4TEP 153  
 MOSFET  
     about 147  
     AC small-signal model 150  
     DC model 148  
     depletion 147  
     enhancement 148  
     parameters and defaults 150  
     time-domain model 149  
 MOSFET model maker 5-46  
 motor 196  
 moving component 3-8  
 multimeter 6-19  
     internal settings of 6-23  
     signal mode 6-22  
     using ammeter measurement option 6-20  
     using decibel measurement option 6-22  
     using ohmmeter measurement option 6-21  
     using voltmeter measurement option 6-21  
 multiple instruments 6-4  
 multiple traces, postprocessor 9-6  
 multiplier  
     about 205  
     equations 205  
     parameters and defaults 206  
 Multisim  
     features 1-2  
     interface 2-2  
 Multisim versions 1-2  
 Multisim's VHDL  
     designment management features 10-7  
     feature summary 10-8  
     introduction to 10-7  
     simulation features 10-8  
     synthesis features 10-8  
     using 10-9  
     using VHDL Wizard 10-16

## N

nested sweep analysis 8-54  
 net 202  
 Netmeeting 13-6  
 network analyzer 6-34, 14-15  
 nodes, assigning labels 3-20  
 noise analysis 8-16  
 noise figure analysis 14-18  
 nonlinear dependent source 96  
 nonlinear transformer  
     about 109  
     customizing 109  
     parameters and defaults 110  
 Norton opamps 171  
 NPN/PNP Resistor Biased BJT 159  
 N-P-N/P-N-P transistor array 146  
 numerical integration 7-8

## O

Octal BUFFER w/3-state Out 341  
     74xx240 341  
     74xx244 342  
     74xx465 381  
     74xx466 382  
 Octal Bus Transceiver 250  
 Octal D-type  
     FF 357  
     FF (+edge) 368  
     FF w/en 369  
     Flip-flop 255  
     Transparent Latches 368  
 Octal Inv Buffer 250  
 Octal Non-inv Buffer 250  
 Octal Trans Latch 255  
 ohmmeter 6-21  
 OpAmp (operational amplifier) model maker 5-55  
 opamps  
     3-terminal  
         about 164  
         model 165

---

- parameters and defaults 167
- 5-terminal
  - about 167
  - interstage 169
  - model 168
  - output stage 170
  - parameters and defaults 170
- 7-terminal and 9-terminal 171
  - about 163
  - ideal model 163
  - model parameters 163
- opening
  - file within project 13-3
  - project 13-3
- optocoupler 196
- oscillator
  - voltage-controlled sine wave 89
  - voltage-controlled square wave 89
  - voltage-controlled triangle wave 90
- oscilloscope
  - about 6-24
  - channel settings 6-27
  - grounding 6-26
  - time base 6-26
  - trigger 6-28
- output device, types of 231
- output variables tab, about 8-3

## P

- package information 5-24
- page borders
  - displaying or hiding 3-2
- pages
  - cut/copy/paste 8-68
  - using in analyses 8-60
  - using in postprocessor 9-7
- page bounds, showing 2-6
- Parallel-load 8-bit Shift Reg
  - 74xx165 323
  - 74xx166 323
- parameter sweep analysis 8-28
- parameters and defaults

- 3-terminal opamps 167
- 5-terminal opamp 170
- bipolar junction transistors 142
- comparator 172
- current limiter block 217
- diac 129
- differentiator 212
- diodes 118
- divider 207
- full-wave bridge rectifier 125
- GaAsFET 158
- integrator 213
- LED 123
- limiter 215
- linear transformer 108
- MOSFET 150
- multipliers 206
- nonlinear transformer 110
- opamps 163
- SCR 128
- Shockley diode 133
- three-way summer 221
- transfer function block 208
- triode vacuum tube 197
- voltage gain block 210
- voltage hysteresis block 214
- voltage slew rate block 220
- voltage-controlled limiter 218
- zener diode 122

- passive components
  - capacitors (*see also* capacitors) 102
  - crystal 195
  - inductors (*see also* inductors) 105
  - linear transformer (*see also* linear transformer) 107
  - nonlinear transformer (*see also* nonlinear transformer) 109
  - relay (*see also* relay) 110
  - resistors (*see also* resistors) 100
- phase 6-7
- piecewise linear current source 93
- piecewise linear voltage source 91

- pilot light, types of 232
  - PIN diode 119
  - pin information 5-24
  - pins
    - adding to symbols 5-16
  - Place Component command 3-6
  - placing
    - component 3-9
  - placing components 3-4
  - PLD, about 10-2
  - PLL 188
  - pole zero analysis 8-38
  - polynomial source 94
  - pop-up menu 3-29
  - port list, specifying 10-16
  - postprocessor
    - about 9-1, 9-2, 9-8
    - basic steps 9-2
    - creating multiple traces 9-6
    - functions 9-8
    - pages, graphs and charts 9-7
    - screen 9-2
    - using the default analysis 9-4
    - variables 9-8
  - potentiometer 89, 112
  - Power MOS\_ 156
  - Power MOS\_Comp 156
  - Power MOS\_N 156
  - Power Pro
    - using code modeling 5-72
  - pre-defined fields in database 4-24
  - print page setup 2-8
  - printing
    - graphs and charts 8-69
  - printing circuit files 3-26
  - probe
    - about 191
  - Programmable Logic Device. *See* PLD
  - project 13-2
    - adding files to 13-2
    - opening 13-3
  - project hierarchy, updating 10-22
  - project management, about 13-1
  - Project/Team Design module 13-1
  - projects
    - backing up 13-4
    - creating 13-1
  - properties
    - place components 3-14
  - protection device, types of 231
  - PSpice model 5-22
  - pullup 113
  - pulse current source 94
  - pulse voltage source 94
  - push button switch 232
  - PWL source. *See* piecewise linear source
- Q**
- Quad 2-In AND
    - (OC) 74xx09 295
    - 4081 265
    - 74xx08 294
  - Quad 2-in Exc-OR gate 305
  - Quad 2-In MUX 247, 360
  - Quad 2-In NAND
    - (Ls-OC) 74xx03 292
    - (OC) 74xx26 355
    - (OC) 74xx38 371
    - (OC) 74xx39 371
    - (Schmitt) 4093 269
    - (Schmitt) 74xx132 303
    - 4011 239
    - 74xx00 291
    - 74xx37 367
  - Quad 2-In NOR
    - (OC) 74xx33 361
    - 4001 236
    - 74xx02 291
    - 74xx28 357
  - Quad 2-In OR
    - 4071 260
    - 74xx32 361
  - Quad 2-In XNOR
    - (OC) 74xx266 355

---

- 4077 264
- Quad 2-In XOR
  - 4030 253
  - 4070 260
  - 74xx86 394
- Quad 2-to-1 Data Sel/MUX 315, 316
- Quad 2-to-1 line Data Sel/MUX
  - 74xx257 353
  - 74xx258 354
- Quad Analog Switches 259
- Quad bus BUFFER w/3-state Out 301, 302
- Quad D-latch 256
- Quad D-type
  - FF (clr) 326
  - FF w/en 370
  - Flip-flop 245
  - Reg w/3-state Out 263
- Quad Ex-OR/NOR Gate 304
- Quad Multiplexer 279
- Quad RS latch w/3-state Out 257
- Quad SR latches 357
- Quad True/Complement BUFFER 256

## R

- readouts 6-8
- Recent Files 2-13
- Recent Projects 2-13
- reference ID, assigning to components 3-19
- relay
  - about 110
  - equations 111
  - model 111
  - types of 230
- remote control 13-6
- removing components 5-5
- reports
  - bill of materials 11-1
  - component detail 11-4
  - database family list 11-2
- resistance
  - about 101
- resistor virtual 112

- resistors
  - about 100
  - equations 102
- resizing toolbars 2-4
- RF BJT\_NPN 225
- RF BJT\_PNP 226
- RF components
  - about 14-2
  - interdigital model 14-35
  - lossy line model 14-33
  - microstrip line model 14-28
  - microstrip open end model 14-29
  - RF model makers 14-26
  - RF spiral inductor model 14-30
  - strip line model 14-31
  - stripline bend model 14-32
  - waveguide model 14-27
- RF design module 14-1
- RF inductor 225
- RF instruments
  - network analyzer 14-15
  - spectrum analyzer 14-9
- RF module 14-1
  - about 14-1
  - components (*see also* RF components) 14-2
  - instruments (*see also* RF instruments) 14-9
- RF MOS\_3TDN 226
- RF simulation 7-10
- RF spiral inductor model 14-30
- RF tutorial 14-36
- RFcapacitor 225
- rise time 6-12
- rotating components 3-13
- rpac 113

## S

- saving 13-2
  - project 13-2
- schematic capture 3-1
- Schottky diode 126
- SCR

- about 126
- AC small-signal model 128
- model 126
- parameters and defaults 128
- time-domain model 127
- search results 4-21
- searching for components 4-19
- searching, advanced 4-22
- sensing switches 229
- settings, oscilloscope channel 6-27
- sheet size 2-6
- sheet size, setting up 3-2
- Shockley diode
  - about 132
  - AC small-signal model 133
  - DC model 132
  - parameters and defaults 133
  - time-domain model 133
- show
  - grid 2-6
  - page bounds 2-6
  - titleblock 2-6
- signal mode 6-22
- signal options 6-11
- Simulate menu 2-18
- simulating circuit containing VHDL-modeled device 10-6
- simulation
  - about 7-1
  - Bspice/Xspice support 7-5
  - checking circuit consistency 7-4
  - choosing type 7-1
  - circuit 7-6
  - circuit equation 7-7
  - equation solution 7-7
  - Gmin stepping 7-9
  - interactive 7-4
  - maximum integration order 7-9
  - miscellaneous SPICE capabilities 7-4
  - numerical integration 7-8
  - RF 7-10
  - source stepping 7-10
  - stages of 7-6
  - starting and stopping 7-3
  - supported types 7-2
  - using 7-2, 10-28
  - VHDL 7-10
- SINAD 6-10
- sine wave 210
- sine wave generator 89
- solution, equation 7-7
- source
  - AC current 86
  - AC voltage 85
  - amplitude modulation 86
  - current-controlled current 88
  - current-controlled voltage 88
  - DC current 85
  - DC voltage 84
  - exp. current 96
  - exp. voltage 96
  - frequency modulated 86
  - frequency shift key modulated 87
  - nonlinear dependent 96
  - piecewise linear current 93
  - piecewise linear voltage source 91
  - polynomial 94
  - pulse current 94
  - pulse voltage 94
  - Vcc voltage 85
  - Vdd voltage 98
  - voltage-controlled current 88
  - voltage-controlled piecewise linear 91
  - voltage-controlled voltage 87
- source stepping 7-10
- spectrum analyzer 6-29, 14-9
- SPICE simulation
  - BSpice/Xspice support 7-5
  - circuit 7-6
  - circuit equation 7-7
  - equation solution 7-7
  - Gmin stepping 7-9
  - maximum integration order 7-9
  - miscellaneous capabilities 7-4

---

- numerical integration 7-8
- source stepping 7-10
- spiral inductor, RF 14-30
- square wave 211
- square wave generator 87
- standard searching 4-19
- strip line 227
- strip line model 14-31
- stripline bend model 14-32
- Strobed hex INVERTER 271
- structure of database 4-1
- summary tab, about 8-8
- summer, three-way 220
- summer, voltage 220
- supplementary contact, types of 229
- switch
  - push button 232
  - types of 99
- symbol
  - editing 5-8
  - pin 5-14
  - shape 5-14
- Symbol Editor
  - menus 5-12
  - palette 5-12
- Symbol Editor screen 5-11
- symbol set 2-8
- symbol set, choosing 3-3
- symbols
  - adding pins 5-16
  - copying 5-10
  - creating 5-11
  - labels 5-14
- Sync 4-bit Bin Counter 319
- Sync 4-bit Bin Up/down Counter 333
- Sync 4-bit Binary Counter 321
- Sync 4-bit Decade Counter 320
- Sync 4-bit Decade Counter (clr) 318
- Sync 4-bit up/down Binary Counter 324
- Sync 4-bit up/down Counter 331
- Sync BCD Up/down Counter 330, 332
- system toolbar 2-10

## T

- temperature sweep analysis 8-31
- terminal, types of 232
- test bench wizard 10-23
- three-way summer
  - about 220
  - equations 221
  - parameters and defaults 221
- time base 6-26
- timed contact, types of 231
- time-domain model
  - bipolar junction transistors 140
  - capacitors 103
  - diac 129
  - diodes 117
  - inductors 106
  - MOSFET 149
  - SCR 127
  - Shockley diode 133
- timer 188
- title block
  - displaying or hiding 3-2
- title block, about 3-21
- titleblock
  - showing 2-6
- tolerances 4-26
- toolbars
  - resizing 2-4
  - system 2-10
- Tools menu 2-25
- trace width analysis 8-50
- transfer
  - to Multisim PCB Layout 12-2
- transfer function analysis 8-33
- transfer function block
  - about 208
  - equations 208
  - parameters and defaults 208
- Transfer menu 2-23
- transformer
  - linear 107
  - nonlinear 109



transient analysis 8-13  
 Tri 3-In AND  
   4073 262  
   74xx11 298  
 Tri 3-In NAND  
   (OC) 74xx12 301  
   4023 249  
   74xx10 295  
 Tri 3-In NOR  
   4025 250  
   74xx27 356  
 Tri 3-In OR 263  
 triac 130  
 triangle wave generator 90  
 triangle waveform 211  
 trigger 6-28  
 triggering  
   logic analyzer 6-18  
   word generator 6-34  
 triode vacuum tube  
   about 196  
   equations 197  
   model 197  
   parameters and defaults 197  
 Triple Serial Adder  
   4032 254  
   4038 255  
 Tri-state hex BUFFER w/Strobe 271  
 truth table  
   constructing 6-14  
   deriving from circuit 6-13  
 TTL components  
   74F 177  
   74LS 177  
   74S 177  
   74STD 177  
 tunnel diode 226

## U

unlocking files 13-3  
 user fields  
   working with 13-7

user interface  
   about 2-2  
   customizing 2-4  
   design bar 2-3  
   elements 2-2  
 user preferences, about 2-4  
 user-defined analysis 8-57  
 using instruments 6-3

## V

value, changing component 3-16  
 varactor diode 131  
 variable capacitor 112  
 variable inductor 112  
 variables, postprocessor 9-8  
 Vcc voltage source 85  
 Vdd voltage source 98  
 version control  
   using 13-4  
 version control, about 13-1  
 vertical Bode plotter settings 6-7  
 VHDL  
   examples 65  
   introduction to 10-3  
   model 5-23  
   sample circuits 45  
   simulation 7-10  
   standards history 43  
   Wizard 10-16  
 VHDL model 5-23  
 VHDL synthesis  
   using 10-50  
 VHDL synthesis and programming of FPGAs/  
   CPLDs 10-48  
 VHDL synthesis features 10-49  
 VHDL Wizard, invoking 10-16  
 VHDL-modeled device, simulating circuit  
   containing 10-6  
 View menu 2-16  
 virtual components 3-4  
 voltage  
   gain 87

---

voltage differentiator. *See* differentiator  
voltage gain block  
    about 209  
    equations 210  
    parameters and defaults 210  
voltage hysteresis block  
    about 213  
    parameters and defaults 214  
voltage integrator. *See* integrator  
voltage limiter. *See* limiter  
voltage reference 198  
voltage regulator 198  
voltage slew rate block  
    about 219  
    parameters and defaults 220  
voltage summer  
    about 220  
voltage suppressor 200  
voltage-controlled analog 187  
voltage-controlled current source 88  
voltage-controlled limiter  
    about 218  
    parameters and defaults 218  
voltage-controlled piecewise linear source 91  
voltage-controlled sine wave oscillator 89  
voltage-controlled square wave oscillator 89  
voltage-controlled triangle wave oscillator 90  
voltage-controlled voltage source 87  
voltmeter  
    about 191  
    multimeter measurement options 6-21

## W

watt meter 6-30  
Waveform Display 10-37  
waveforms and cursors 10-37  
waveguide model 14-27  
wide bandwidth amplifiers 173  
Window menu 2-25  
wire color, color  
    wire 3-12  
wire, re-shaping 3-12

wiring  
    automatic 3-10  
    combining automatic and manual 3-11  
    manual 3-10  
wiring components 3-9  
word generator 6-31  
    addressing 6-33  
    enabling data 6-34  
    entering words 6-32  
    setting clock frequency 6-34  
    triggering 6-34  
    using word patterns in 6-33  
worst case analysis 8-35

## X

XSPICE  
    model 5-22  
Xspice  
    simulation 7-5

## Z

zener diode  
    about 120  
    DC model 120  
    parameters and defaults 122  
zoom level, default 2-6